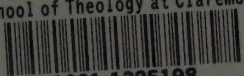


School of Theology at Claremont



1001 1325198



Theology Library

SCHOOL OF THEOLOGY  
AT CLAREMONT  
California



Scarce

fac

B

219

LIBRARY  
SOUTHERN CALIFORNIA SCHOOL  
OF THEOLOGY

~~817 West 34th Street~~

~~Los Angeles 7, Calif.~~

CLAREMONT, CALIF.

Popular religious fiction / edifying novel  
in wh. are set forth ideals of poverty  
& chastity: miraculous power &  
protection are displayed. The heroes  
are men of exemplary patience &  
kindness. Virtue always  
triumphs. The common  
people are more  
friendly than the  
rich & ruling  
classes /

THE  
CONTENDINGS OF THE APOSTLES.

VOL. II.

THE ENGLISH TRANSLATION.

„Schon im zweiten Jahrhundert waren zahlreiche Sagen über die Schicksale der Apostel, zum Theil sehr abenteuerlicher Art, im Umlauf. Bei der Dunkelheit, welche über der Wirksamkeit und dem Lebensausgange der meisten Apostel schwebte, zeigte sich frühzeitig die fromme Phantasie geschäftig, die Lücken auszufüllen, welche die geschichtliche Erinnerung der Kirche gelassen hatte. Manche dieser Sagen verdanken ihren Ursprung lediglich dem Streben, die fromme Wissensbegierde und die Wundersucht der Gläubigen zu befriedigen; andere dienen dem Lokalinteresse verschiedener Landschaften und Städte, welche ihr Christenthum gern der unmittelbaren Wirksamkeit eines Apostels verdanken, oder ihre Bisthümer auf unmittelbar apostolische Stiftung zurückführen wollten. Häufig beutete der kirchliche oder dogmatische Parteigeist die fromme Leichtgläubigkeit aus, bemächtigte sich älterer Sagen, um sie für bestimmte Tendenzen zu verwerthen, oder dichtete neue hinzu, um mittelst der allezeit willkommenen Wunderlegenden zugleich den damit künstlich verslochtenen Lehren und Parteianschauungen Eingang zu verschaffen.“

Lipsius, Die Apokryphen Apostelgeschichten

Bd. 1, s. 1.

BS  
244D  
G3  
V.2

Gadla Hawaryat.

11

መጽሐፈ ፡ ገድለ ፡ ሐዋርያት ።

THE  
CONTENDINGS OF THE APOSTLES

BEING

THE HISTORIES OF THE LIVES AND MARTYRDOMS  
AND DEATHS OF THE TWELVE APOSTLES  
AND EVANGELISTS

THE ETHIOPIC TEXTS NOW FIRST EDITED FROM MANUSCRIPTS  
IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM,

*WITH AN ENGLISH TRANSLATION,*

BY

E. A. WALLIS BUDGE, M. A., LITT. D., D. LIT., F. S. A.

FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE,  
AND TYRWHITT SCHOLAR, KEEPER OF THE EGYPTIAN AND ASSYRIAN ANTIQUITIES  
IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM.

*VOL. II.*

*THE ENGLISH TRANSLATION.*

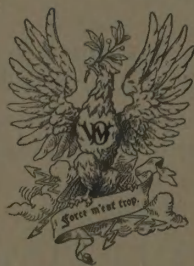
LONDON: HENRY FROWDE

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE, AMEN CORNER, E. C.

NEW YORK: 91 & 93 FIFTH AVENUE

1901.

Theology Library  
SCHOOL OF THEOLOGY  
AT CLAREMONT  
California



A 22-604

PRINTED BY W. DRUGULIN, LEIPZIG, GERMANY.

TO THE MEMORY OF  
JOHN,  
THIRD MARQUESS OF BUTE, K. T.,  
ETC. ETC. ETC.

UNDER WHOSE DIRECTION  
IT WAS BEGUN

THIS WORK  
IS GRATEFULLY DEDICATED

BY THE EDITOR AND TRANSLATOR.



## PREFACE.

The present volume contains English translations of the series of Ethiopic texts which were published in the first volume of this work in 1898, and relate the history of the Contendings of the Twelve Apostles and of certain of the Seventy-Two Disciples. The translations may be divided into three groups:—1. Those which have been made from the British Museum Manuscript Oriental 678, wherein they precede the colophon on Fol. 137<sup>b</sup>, and seem to have formed in the XVth century of our era, when the manuscript was copied, a complete Ethiopic work entitled “Gadla Hawâryât”. 2. Those which have been made from the miscellaneous texts which follow the colophon. 3. Those which have been made from the British Museum Manuscript Oriental 683, a manuscript which probably dates from the period of the first half of the XVIIth century, and which contains the works which may be called “The Acts of Saint Peter”, and “The Acts of Saint Paul”.

The legends of the Apostles and Disciples originated at a very early period, probably during the second century, among certain heretical sects, and they exist in modified forms in languages both of the East and of the West. It is probable that some of them were written first of all in a Semitic dialect, Hebrew or Syriac, and it is certain that translations, or works based upon them, very soon after appeared in Greek. The legends of the Apostles written in the dialect of Coptic spoken in Upper Egypt, belong to such *πράξεις* or *περίοδοι τῶν ἀποστόλων*, and certain of them are undoubtedly as old as the VIth century, although no copy of them older than the IXth century is known to us. In the course of time versions of the legends of the Apostles were composed in the dialect of Coptic spoken in the Thebaïd and in part of Lower Egypt. As long as Coptic was generally understood throughout Egypt the Coptic version would, naturally, be the most used in that country, but as the Copts, little by little, lost their power, copies of their favourite version of the histories of the Apostles ceased to be multiplied. Meanwhile the Arabic language was making its way steadily among the Egyptian Christians, and as a result an Arabic version of the Coptic histories of the Apostles made its appearance, probably in the second half of the XIIIth century. The Arabic version cannot have been made from

the Syriac, for a comparison of the Arabic with the Syriac version shows that its diversities from the Syriac are more striking and more numerous than its similarities to the Coptic. Of this Arabic version several copies are known, and all of these have been copied from one Arabic original which was translated from the Coptic. From the Arabic the Ethiopic version was made, probably during the early part of the XIVth century; this is the last of the three great Oriental versions of the histories of the Apostles which grew up under the care of the Patriarchate of Alexandria.

The translations have been made as literal as possible, and all words added have been indicated by brackets; a few brief notes, and a list of passages in the Bible either quoted or referred to in the histories, and an Index, &c., have been added. The text of the "Gadla Hawâryât" in the older manuscript is exceedingly difficult to understand in some places, and is, moreover, corrupt in others, and an examination of the group of manuscripts Oriental 677, 679, 680, 681, 682, 684 and 685, all of which were written in the XVIIIth century and closely resemble each other, shews that such passages gave trouble to the Ethiopian scribes and copyists, and that they tried to make them more intelligible in the newer versions by amplifications or paraphrases. The meanings which are given to some passages of the kind in the

following pages have been deduced from the group of manuscripts referred to above.

This edition of the "Gadla Ḥawâryât" or "Contendings of the Apostles" and the English translation of the same were begun at the suggestion of the late Marquess of Bute, who was deeply interested in the literature of the ancient Christian people of Egypt, Nubia, and Ethiopia. The plan of the edition is due to Lord Bute, who approved of the manuscripts which have been followed in the printed text, and decided that it was unnecessary to add to it more than a limited number of the variant readings from the late manuscripts as specimens; to have given them all would have required a volume to be devoted to the purpose. The cost of the publication of these volumes, as well as of several other important Oriental texts and translations, was defrayed by his Lordship who followed with interest the progress of the work until his death on the 9th of October 1900, when students of many branches of Ecclesiastical and Oriental research lost a learned colleague, a sympathetic friend, and a generous patron.

E. A. WALLIS BUDGE.

London: July 4th, 1901.

## CONTENTS.

	Page
PREFACE BY THE ETHIOPIAN TRANSLATOR	5
THE HISTORY OF SAINT PETER . . . . .	7
THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT PETER . . . .	32
THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT PAUL . . . . .	43
THE GENEALOGIES OF THE TWELVE APOSTLES . . . . .	49
THE EPISTLE OF DIONYSIUS THE AREOPAGITE TO TIMOTHY . . . . .	51
COLOPHON . . . . .	69
THE PREACHING OF SIMON, THE SON OF CLEOPAS . . . . .	70
THE MARTYRDOM OF SIMON, THE SON OF CLEOPAS . . . . .	75
THE PREACHING OF SAINT JAMES THE JUST	78
THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT JAMES THE JUST . . . . .	82
THE PREACHING OF SAINT BARTHOLOMEW IN THE OASIS . . . . .	90
THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT BARTHOLOMEW IN NAIDAS . . . . .	104
THE ACTS OF SAINT ANDREW [MATTHEW] IN THE CITY OF KAHĒNĀT . . . . .	111

	Page
THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT MATTHEW IN PARTHIA . . . . .	130
THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT LUKE . . . . .	137
THE PREACHING OF SAINTS PHILIP AND PETER . . . . .	146
THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT PHILIP IN PHRYGIA . . . . .	150
THE PREACHING OF SAINTS ANDREW AND PHILEMON AMONG THE KURDS . . . . .	163
THE ACTS OF SAINTS ANDREW AND BAR- THOLOMEW AMONG THE PARTHIANS . . . . .	183
THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT ANDREW IN SCYTHIA . . . . .	215
THE PREACHING OF SAINT JOHN THE EVANGELIST . . . . .	222
THE HISTORY OF THE DEATH OF SAINT JOHN THE EVANGELIST . . . . .	253
THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT JAMES . . . . .	264
THE PREACHING OF SAINT MATTHIAS IN THE CITY OF THE CANNIBALS . . . . .	267
THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT MATTHIAS . . . . .	289
THE ACTS OF SAINT JAMES IN INDIA . . . . .	295
THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT JAMES . . . . .	304
THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT MARK THE EVANGELIST IN ALEXANDRIA . . . . .	309
THE PREACHING OF SAINT THOMAS IN INDIA . . . . .	319
THE MARTYRDOM OF THOMAS IN INDIA . . . . .	346
THE PREACHING OF JUDAS THADDEUS IN SYRIA . . . . .	357

	Page
COLOPHON . . . . .	368
THE PREACHING OF SAINT MATTHIAS . .	370
THE ACTS OF SAINT THOMAS IN INDIA:—	
THE FIRST ACT . . . . .	404
THE SECOND ACT . . . . .	419
THE THIRD ACT . . . . .	433
THE FOURTH ACT . . . . .	443
THE FIFTH ACT . . . . .	447
THE SIXTH ACT . . . . .	455

## THE ACTS OF SAINT PETER:—

CHAP. I. CONCERNING THE MANIFESTATION OF AND HOW OUR LORD ASCENDED INTO HEAVEN, AND HOW HE BLESSED THE APOSTLES, AND MADE KNOWN UNTO THEM CONCERNING THE ANGELS WHO SING PRAISES BEFORE HIM, AND THE SIMILITUDE OF THEIR FORMS, AND THEIR ORDERS, AND THEIR ORDI- NANCES, AND WHATSOEVER APPER- TAINETH THEREUNTO . . . . .	466
„ II. HOW PETER SAW A MIGHTY SIMILI- TUDE OF THE LADY OF US ALL, MARY, THE SPOTLESS WOMAN, AND HER HO- NOURABLE GLORY . . . . .	472
„ III. OF THE COMING OF CLEMENT INTO THE FAITH OF CHRIST, AND HOW PETER CHOSE HIM TO BE HIS DISCIPLE, ALONG WITH HIS BRETHREN, AND HOW THEY CAME UPON THEIR FATHER AND THEIR MOTHER AFTER THEY HAD LOST ALL	

	Page
HOPE OF THEM; TOGETHER WITH THE MIRACLES AND THE STORIES WHICH SHOULD HERE FOLLOW . . . . .	481
CHAP. IV. CONCERNING THE PREACHING OF PE- TER AND JOHN IN THE CITY OF AN- TIOCH, AND THEIR CALLING OF MEN TO THE TRUE FAITH OF OUR LORD JESUS CHRIST, AND THE MIRACLES WHICH THEY WROUGHT THEREIN; OF THE COMING OF SAINT PAUL UNTO THEM, AND THE MATTERS WHICH FOLLOWED THEREUPON . . . . .	491
„ V. HOW PETER PREACHED IN THE CITY OF ROME AND CALLED MEN UNTO THE FAITH OF CHRIST, AND HOW MIRACLES WERE WROUGHT BY HIM THERE, AND OF THE COMING OF PAUL, AND BAR- NABAS, AND TIMOTHY, AND TITUS, AND OF MYSELF, CLEMENT, AND OF THE MATTERS WHICH APPERTAIN THEREUNTO . . . . .	505
„ VI. HOW SATAN TOLD PETER WHAT HE WOULD DO AGAINST THE BELIEVERS, AND THE PRIESTS, AND THE SERVANTS OF GOD, AND HOW HE WOULD LEAD THEM ASTRAY IN THE LAST DAYS . . . . .	510
„ VII. HOW PETER RETURNED TO THE CITY OF ROME AND MADE AN END OF SIMON MAGUS, AND REVEALED THE FAITH OF CHRIST UNTO THE PEOPLE THEREOF,	

AND HOW THEY WERE BAPTIZED, AND BUILT CHURCHES, AND HOW THE DIS- CIPLES WERE GATHERED TOGETHER UNTO PETER, AND HOW THEY AP- POINTED A LAW AND A CANON SUIT- ABLE TO THE BELIEVERS, AND HOW THEY SEALED THEM WITH THEIR SEALINGS, AND EXCOMMUNICATED ALL THE TRANSGRESSORS, AND OF THE MIRACLES AND STORIES WHICH AP- PERTAIN THEREUNTO . . . . .	514
CHAP. VIII. HOW CLEMENT ASKED PETER CON- CERNING THE REMAINDER OF THE MYSTERIES, AND HOW PETER REVEAL- ED UNTO HIM THE REMAINING MAT- TERS OF THE ORDINANCES OF THE MYSTERY, AND THE LAW, AND THE COMMANDMENTS, WHICH OUR LORD JESUS CHRIST HAD GIVEN UNTO HIM, AND CONCERNING OTHER DIVINE HIS- TORIES . . . . .	523
THE HISTORY OF THE CONTENDING OF SAINT PAUL:—	
PREFACE . . . . .	527
CHAP. I. THE ELECTION OF PAUL BY CHRIST .	528
„ II. PAUL'S PERSONAL APPEARANCE AND EDUCATION . . . . .	530
„ III. HIS PERSECUTION OF THE CHRISTIANS, HIS CONVERSION, HIS MEETING WITH BARNABAS, &c. . . . .	533

	Page
CHAP. IV. PAUL AND BARNABAS GO FROM PAPHOS TO PERGA . . . . .	540
„ V. PAUL AND SILAS GO TO THESSALONICA	548
„ VI. CHRIST APPEARS TO PAUL IN ACCHO	565
„ VII. THE HISTORY OF PAUL AND SECUNDUS	567
„ VIII. PAUL IN ATHENS . . . . .	575
„ IX. THE STORY OF DEMETRIUS THE SILVER- SMITH, &c. . . . .	580
„ X. THE STORY OF PAUL AND PHILIP IN LYSTRA . . . . .	611
„ XI. THE STORY OF PAUL AND PHILIP IN LYSTRA . . . . .	616
„ XII. PAUL DEPARTS FROM JERUSALEM TO PREACH THE GOSPEL . . . . .	656
„ XIII. PAUL IN THE CITY OF GÂHLEYÂ . .	658
„ XIV. PAUL IN THE ISLAND OF MANÂFEKET	683

THE CONTENDINGS OF THE APOSTLES.



IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE SON,  
AND OF THE HOLY GHOST, ONE GOD. HERE  
BEGINNETH THE BOOK OF THE DISPENSATIONS OF  
THE APOSTLES AND OF CERTAIN OF THE SE-  
VENTY AND TWO LESSER DISCIPLES, AND OF  
THE ACCOUNTS OF ALL THAT HAPPENED  
UNTO THEM IN EVERY COUNTRY, AND  
OF THE RECORD OF THOSE WHO  
SUFFERED MARTYRDOM, AND OF  
THOSE OF THEM WHO DIED  
A NATURAL DEATH. MAY  
THEIR PRAYERS AND  
BLESSINGS KEEP US  
THY SERVANTS FOR  
EVER AND EVER.  
AMEN.



PREFACE  
BY THE ETHIOPIAN TRANSLATOR.

[Page 5] In the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Here beginneth the Book wherein have been gathered together the acts of the chosen disciples, [who were] the servants of our Lord and God and Redeemer, Jesus Christ, the Voice of the Living God, [and the accounts] of the Twelve pure and holy | Apostles, and of their journey-  
ings and wanderings through all the world; and of how  
the story of them and of their preaching, among all peoples  
in every country and in all the ends of the earth, hath  
come down [to us]; and of how their teaching was a con-  
fession of belief in the Holy Trinity — Father, and Son,  
and Holy Spirit, One God — and One of the Three Who  
took upon Himself flesh of the Virgin Mary, the holy  
God-bearer, for the redemption of Adam and of his progeny.  
And in this Book are [the accounts also] of the acts  
which they wrought, both signs and wonders, in the Name  
of our Lord Jesus Christ, and by the might of His glorious  
Cross; and of how they drove out devils; and of how they  
raised the dead to life; and of how they healed the sick of  
every kind of disease; and of how by the help of the  
Holy Ghost they wrought the wondrous deeds which shed  
light upon the hearts of men; and of what happened

A. fol. 1a.  
col. 2.

A. fol. 1b.  
col. 1.

[Page 6] unto them when they made answer unto mighty kings; and of how they endured patiently scourgings and beatings with many stripes; and of how they suffered long with depraved peoples until they converted them to the belief of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God, Who was of olden time, and Who was before the world; and of how they died or suffered martyrdom, each in the country [to which he had gone], by the hands of kings and governors, and of when, and on what day, and in what months their deaths and martyrdoms took place. May their prayer and blessing, and the prayer of our Lady Mary, and the blessing and prayer of the company of the saints keep us always and for ever and ever. Amen.

## THE HISTORY OF SAINT PETER.

[Page 7] With thanks unto God, and with the help of our Lord Jesus Christ, | we begin [to write] the preaching of the blessed Saint A. fol. 1b.  
(Peter, the chief of the Apostles, the chosen one who was acceptable col. 2.  
[unto God], and the story of his life and preaching unto the people  
who were in the city of Rome. May their prayers keep us all, al-  
ways and for ever and ever. Amen.

And it came to pass that when Peter had arrived in the city of Rome, which is the principal abode of the Roman Emperors, he entered into the Taṭrâbîlôn, that is to say, the Four Gates, or the great abode wherein there were gathered together the prefects, and all the nobles of the Roman Emperors, and he cried out forthwith, saying:—

“Blessed are the merciful, for on them shall mercy  
“be shewn.”

“Blessed are the pure in heart, for they shall see  
“God.”

“Blessed are the pure in body, for they shall become  
“the habitation of the Holy Spirit.”

“Blessed are the peacemakers, for | they shall be B. fol. 1b.  
“called and shall become the children of God.” col. 2.

“Blessed are those who give to the poor, for unto A. fol. 2a.  
“them | shall God give in return.” col. 1.

"Blessed are those who have wives, and who are as  
 "if they had them not, for they shall become the children  
 "of life, and shall inherit everlasting life." [Page 8].

And it came to pass that when they heard the voice  
 going in among and round about the pillars of the four  
 sides (*or* corners) of the habitation (*or* throne), the pillars  
 cried out and said, "Amen"; and the voice remained in  
 the hearing of those who were assembled there. Now  
 there was there a certain man in whom Satan had dwelt  
 for [seventy] years, and at that moment he threw him  
 down upon the ground among those who were gathered  
 together there; and he went forth from him in the sight  
 of all the people by reason of his hearing the voice which  
 had come out from the pillars. And the prefects were  
 greatly disturbed by reason of this thing, and they were  
 afraid with an exceedingly great fear, and they came  
 into their habitations wondering with a great wonder, and  
 every man of those who had heard [the voice] told each  
 his wife. And it came to pass that among the nobles  
 there was a certain prefect called Kewestôs, who had a

A. fol. 2a. wife | whose name was 'Akrôsyâ. And her husband said  
 col. 2. unto her, "Knowest thou not what hath happened this  
 B. fol. 2a. "day?" And she answered and said unto him, "What  
 col. 1. "[hath happened], O my lord?" And he answered and  
 said unto her, "This day we were gathered together in  
 "the Taṭrâbîlôn, I and the assembly of the prefects, and  
 "all the elders of the kingdom, when there came and  
 "entered into our midst a man [Page 9] called Peter.  
 "And he spake unto us words, the like of which neither  
 "we nor our fathers ever heard, and at length stone pillars  
 "spake in answer unto him. Now there was there a

"certain man in whom Satan had dwelt for seventy years, "and Satan went forth from him when the stone pillars "said 'Amen'." And his wife 'Akrôsyâ answered and said unto him, "O my lord, tell me everything which "thou didst hear of the words of Peter, that I also may "believe thereon." And Ḳewestôs her husband said unto her, "Peter spake, saying:—

'Blessed are the pure in heart, for they shall see God.

'Blessed are the merciful, for on them shall mercy 'be shewn.

'Blessed are the | pure in body, for they shall become A. fol. 2b.  
'the habitation of the Holy Spirit.' col. 1.

'Blessed are the peacemakers, for they shall be called 'and shall become the | children of God'. B. fol. 2a.

'Blessed are those who give to the poor, for unto col. 2.  
'them shall God give in return'."

But he hid from her and did not tell her of the words which Peter spake concerning him that had a wife, because he was afraid that his wife would not receive him. Now because God had opened her mind, and had lightened the eyes of her understanding, she said unto him, "Of all the words which thou didst hear "from Peter is there not one which thou hast hidden "from me?" Then Ḳewestôs said unto her, "There is one "word which I have not told thee; but now, if thou "wishest [Page 10] that I should tell thee what remaineth "of the words of Peter, shall I tell thee?". And she said unto him, "Yea, O my master, tell me everything "that thou didst hear from him". Then Ḳewestôs answered and said unto her, "I heard him say, 'Blessed are A. fol. 2b.  
'those who have wives, | and who are as if they had col. 2.

"them not, for they shall inherit the life which is everlasting". And his wife answered and said unto him, "O my brother, what can be better than this saying? And now, I would look upon his face, and I, even I, entreat thee, O my brother, to grant me the petition which I make unto thee"; and Κewestôs said, "Speak thou". Then she said unto him, "We have dwelt together for a long time, and we have lived in the plea-

B. fol. 2b. "sure and | delights of the flesh, which is full of pollution,  
col. 1.

"and we have begotten three male children; one of them is dead, but two of them remain [alive], and through them have we set aside our grief. Doth it please thee that we should desire to become like unto those concerning whom Peter said, 'They shall inherit the land of life which is everlasting'?" And her husband answered and said unto her, "I consent"; and he repeated the saying, and said unto her, "If thou desirest that it shall be so, come thou with me into the temple, that we may make

A. fol. 3a. "a covenant | together to keep our bodies pure unto God  
col. 1. "and [without] intercourse until our death."

So they hastened forth together into [Page 11] the temple, and they made a covenant according to what they had said, and as they were coming out from the temple, after they had made their covenant, Κewestôs said unto his wife, "If it be that we are to keep this one saying of Peter, it is right that we should observe all that he spake. For besides this I heard him say, 'Blessed are those who give to the poor, for God shall give unto them in return'. Dost thou wish us to give all our possessions unto the poor and the orphans so that God may give unto us gifts in return?" And she said

B. fol. 2b. "unto them in return". Dost thou wish us to give all  
col. 2.

unto him, "This saying is a good one". Then Ḳewestōs called the steward of his house, and all his overseers, and said unto them, "Go ye and open my storehouses, "and give ye all my possessions unto the poor and needy, "and unto the orphans. And ye shall not seek from "them any price or pledge whatsoever in return, and ye "shall not write it against them in [your] books, so that "they may be called upon to pay it back; but it is "meet | for you to give [the things] unto them in the fear A. fol. 3a.  
"of God. And God, the God of Peter, shall be witness col. 2.  
"for you that ye have favoured neither the great nor  
"the man of lowly estate, and that ye have not accepted  
"the person of any man. And we desire that this work  
"[be carried out forthwith], for it is good." [Page 12]  
Then his overseers went straightway, and opened all his  
storehouses, and they gave everything which was therein  
unto the poor, and unto the orphans, and unto all those  
who were in distress and difficulty. And Ḳewestōs and  
his wife 'Akrōsyà gave away everything which they had  
in their houses, gold, and silver, and apparel, and | other B. fol. 3a.  
things, and they left nothing at all for themselves; and col. 1.  
they set at liberty the best men among their slaves.  
And they became like people who possessed nothing at  
all except their daily bread, and they gave thanks unto  
God, and laid hold upon the teaching of Peter.

And it came to pass after those days that the | Em- A. fol. 3b.  
peror sent messengers unto Ḳewestōs, [bidding him] to col. 1.  
come to him in order that he might take counsel with  
him concerning certain anxious business in connexion  
with his kingdom, for his speech was wiser and his  
understanding was greater than that of any other of his

senate; now when KĒwestôs saw the messengers of the emperor, he was afraid with a great fear. And he came into his house, and said unto his wife, "What shall I do? "For behold, the emperor hath sent unto me and commanded me to come to him, and I have nothing in my hand wherewith to make a gift unto his [Page 13] mighty "majesty and most honourable excellency so that he "may not be angry with me." Then his wife 'Akrôsyâ answered and said unto him, "Fear not, O my lord, for "God, the God of Peter, in Whom we have believed,

B. fol. 3a. "will | prosper thy way, and will give thee grace before  
col. 2. "the emperor." Then KĒwestôs said unto her, "Behold,

"I have found a device which will save me; I will hide  
"myself. Do thou, this night, go forth with thy ser-

A. fol. 3b. "vants, | and having caused a lamp to be lit, thou shalt  
col. 2. "wander about through the streets of the city seeking

"me and saying, 'My husband hath become mad, and  
"I know not whither he hath gone'. And thou shalt  
"shed tears, and shalt utter cries and say, 'If only I could  
"find his body that I might prepare it for the grave and  
"bury it, so that wild beasts might not devour it, [I should  
"rejoice']. Then will the envoys hear [thy cries], and  
"will go back to the emperor and tell him this thing,  
"and he will cease to seek for me further. Now, I am  
"afraid of him."

Then 'Akrôsyâ his wife answered and said unto him,  
"O my lord, act not in this way, [and carry not out] this  
"device, for it is not a good thing; and thou must not  
"become a stumblingblock to those of the men of the  
"city of Rome who believe in the God of Peter. For if  
"thou doest thus the multitude will say of thee, 'That

"which he spake unto Peter was not true, and the desire  
 "which he had was not of God [Page 14] in the matter  
 "of the thing which he gave unto the poor and needy,  
 "and unto the | orphans; and he goeth out of his mind B. fol. 3b.  
 "whenever he remembereth his possessions which have col. 1.  
 "departed from him"; this is the cause of his madness. A. fol. 4a.  
 "And this thing is not a good thing." And she spake col. 1.  
 unto him saying, "Thou must not let thy faith suffer  
 "diminution, for a thing of this kind tendeth to destroy  
 "souls. But rise up, now, and go to the house of thy  
 "brother, and ask him to lend thee a little of his money  
 "until thou shalt return from the emperor and bring back  
 "his money; and if he will not do [this] for thee, take  
 "thy servants which are left, and let those whom he  
 "wisheth to have be a pledge unto him [for thy debt]."

Then Kewestôs, having hearkened unto the voice of  
 his wife, went unto the house of his brother; and when  
 his brother saw him afar off, he went into his house and  
 shut his door. And when Kewestôs drew nigh there-  
 unto, he cried out unto him, saying, "Rise up, O my  
 "brother, and help me, for one brother should help the  
 "other, even as the city wherein is a strong man armed";  
 but his brother would have none of him. And he made  
 answer to him, and after many words — now he con-  
 versed with Kewestôs from the roof of his house — he  
 looked at him, and said unto him, "What wouldst thou  
 "have, O madman? Thou hast wasted all thine own  
 "possessions among(?) all the people | of [Page 15] Rome, A. fol. 4a.  
 "and because thou didst hearken unto the voice of a col. 2.  
 "deluded man thou hast scattered abroad all thy riches, B. fol. 3b.  
 "and hast given them unto the poor and unto the or- col. 2.

"phans; and now that thou hast destroyed thyself, and  
 "hast made an end of thine own riches, thou hast come  
 "to make an end of me, and of the possessions which  
 "are mine. Depart now from me lest thou hear that  
 "which will make sad thy heart, for the emperor hath  
 "sent [me] to thee to cut off thy head. Now, I shall  
 "shew no compassion upon thee, for thou hast appointed  
 "the poor to be thy children, notwithstanding all the  
 "people who dwell in this city."

Then Kewestôs returned to his house being grievously sore at heart, and tears streamed from his eyes because of the things which he had heard from his brother. And he said unto his wife 'Akrôsyâ, "Dost thou  
 "know what my brother hath done? He would not  
 "hearken unto my request at all, and he hath given me  
 "nothing: on the contrary, he hath made my heart sad  
 "by the words which he spake unto me, and by his insults and abuse of me". And his wife said unto him, "I  
 "desire thee, O my brother, not to vex thine heart, for

A. fol. 4b. "the God of Peter, in Whom we have believed, | will  
 col. 1.

"help us; He is a mighty God, and He will not cast us  
 "off." And she said unto him further, "Wait a little  
 "while I go into the house, for I may find one who will

B. fol. 4a. "provide thee with what is necessary for thy journey." |

col. 1. Then 'Akrôsyâ went quickly and lit a lamp, and searched  
 [Page 16] in the window which was in her house and  
 found two *'astâra*, that is to say, two *dînôra* (or staters)  
 which she had not found previously when she gave her  
 money to the poor. And she brought them out to her  
 husband, and said unto him, "O my lord, I have found  
 "these in the window; take these with thee to provide

"what is necessary for thee on thy journey, and depart  
 "in peace. And God, the God of Peter, in Whom we  
 "have placed our confidence, will guide thee, and He  
 "will make thy way prosperous, and He will fulfil thy  
 "petition, and will bring thee unto the king. And he  
 "shall give thee gifts to mark his favour to thee, and  
 "thou shalt come back speedily unto us in peace".

Then Kewestôs took the two tin '*astâra* (staters), and  
 all the | goods which he had need of for his journey; A. fol. 4b.  
col. 2.  
 and he took two of his servants, and departed to the  
 king. And as he was going along upon the road he was  
 thinking anxiously in his heart, and saying, "How is it  
 "possible for me to meet the emperor in this travel-stained  
 "apparel? But I have only these garments in which I am  
 "and no change of apparel". Now whilst he was sadly  
 thinking these things within himself on the road, he  
 saw two men fighting. And he said within himself, | B. fol. 4a.  
col. 2. "I  
 "hearkened unto everything which Peter [Page 17] said,  
 "and I have given everything which I had unto the poor:  
 "and needy, and I have accepted his words. Now he said,  
 "'Blessed are the peacemakers, for they shall be called  
 "'and shall become the children of God'; and behold I.  
 "even I, will go to these two men, and will make them  
 "to be friends, each with the other, so that I also may  
 "become a child of God." So Kewestôs turned aside  
 out of the path whereon he was travelling, and drew  
 nigh unto the two men | who were fighting, and said A. fol. 5a.  
col. 1.  
 unto them, "Wherefore do ye fight together?" And one  
 of them answered and said, "My lord, judge thou between  
 "us, for it is God Who hath sent thee to us to make us to  
 "be at peace each with the other. Know thou, then,

- "O my lord, that we were journeying together along the  
 "road, he and I, and that I was in front whilst he was  
 "behind me. And I saw in front of me this stone, and  
 B. fol. 4b. "I stretched out my hand and seized it | before he could  
 col. 1. "do so; now, [Page 18] he is stronger than I am, and he  
 "wisheth to take it away from me by force, and it is for  
 "this reason that we are fighting together. He saith, 'It  
 "'belongeth to me'; and I say, 'It belongeth to me'."  
 Then Kewestôs answered and said unto them, "How do  
 "ye know what this stone is?" And they said, "We do  
 "not know, for the knowledge thereof is hidden from us,  
 "and we know not what it is". And Kewestôs said unto  
 A. fol. 5a. them, "I have two fine 'astâra (staters), take them, | and  
 col. 2. "let each of you have one, and give me this stone; in  
 "this manner ye shall put away enmity from between  
 "you, and peace shall be between you both". So they  
 gave him the stone and received from him the two 'astâra  
 (staters), and then they embraced each other according  
 as he had commanded them. Then Kewestôs went on  
 his way to the emperor, together with the messengers.  
 And it came to pass that when he had drawn nigh unto  
 Jerusalem, he answered and said unto those who were  
 travelling with him, "Come, let us go up into Jerusalem  
 "that we may worship in the temple"; and they consented,  
 and went up with him, and they entered into the temple,  
 B. fol. 4b. and | fulfilled (i. e., said) their prayers.  
 col. 2. And Kewestôs departed and came unto a certain  
 man who worked in gold, and he shewed him the stone,  
 and said unto him, "O, [Page 19] my brother, look at  
 "this stone, for I know not what it is". And when the  
 worker in gold had looked at the stone he praised God,

and said unto Kewestôs, "Where didst thou | find this A. fol. 5b.  
 "stone?" And Kewestôs said unto him, "I will tell thee, col. 1.  
 "O my brother;" and he told him everything which had  
 happened concerning the stone. Then the worker in gold  
 said, "O my beloved brother, for many years past Dêmâs  
 "the priest hath not offered up incense by reason of this  
 "stone. For he [wished] to have found twelve stones,  
 "and but for wanting this stone he would have completed  
 "the number of twelve, which is according to the [number  
 "of the twelve] tribes of Israel; and now, I will instruct  
 "thee how thou mayest bring this stone to the priest, and  
 "whatsoever thou desirest of all his possessions will he  
 "give unto thee". Then Kewestôs went with the stone to  
 the priest. And it came to pass that when the high  
 priest saw the stone, he fell down upon the earth, and  
 worshipped, and said, "I give thanks unto God Almighty;"  
 and he commanded that all the people should be gather-  
 ed | together unto him. And he said unto them, "O my B. fol. 5a.  
 "brethren, behold, I will make known unto you the number col. 1.  
 "of the years which have elapsed since I was able to  
 "offer up incense in the temple because of this | [Page 20] A. fol. 5b.  
 "stone. When Nebuchadnezzar seized all the possessions col. 2.  
 "of the house of God, this stone was missed, and it hath  
 "never been found until this day. And behold, God hath  
 "had compassion upon us, and He hath sent to us both  
 "this man and this stone which we have sought diligently,  
 "so that our prayer might come unto God Almighty; and  
 "it is meet that we should make an offering unto God,  
 "every man according to his ability, from his own possess-  
 "ions". So the people rose up and departed from him,  
 and every man came and brought as much as he was

able [for his offering]; and much possessions were gathered together, both of gold and of silver. And it came to pass that when these things had been gathered together, the high priest gave them to Kewestôs, and blessed him, and said, "This is a gift from God Almighty unto thee in return for this stone; may He give thee a reward according to His good pleasure". And Kewestôs received all the | blessed things which the high priest gave him, and it was double the amount of his own riches which he had given to the poor; and he gave thanks unto God, and became strong in the faith. Then Kewestôs set out with the messengers on the road to the emperor, and in him were fulfilled the words which [Peter] spake [Page 21], "Whosoever sheweth compassion upon the poor and needy, unto him shall God give gifts in return."

B. fol. 5a. col. 2.  
A. fol. 6a. col. 1.

And it came to pass that as Kewestôs was journeying along the road, he heard a Voice from heaven which cried out, saying, "O Kewestôs, Kewestôs"; and he answered, "Here am I, O my Lord". And the Voice answered and said, "Inasmuch as thou hast hearkened unto the voice of My Apostle Peter, and hast believed the words which he spake, saying, Whosoever sheweth compassion upon the poor and needy, unto them shall God give gifts in return, this blessing hath come upon thee; and not this alone but [other] blessings shalt thou have. For it shall come to pass when thou diest, and dost depart from out of this old world, that thou shalt attain unto rest, and absence of sorrow, | and beautiful things which the eye hath not seen, nor the ear heard, and which the heart of man hath never been able to imagine". Then

A. fol. 6a. col. 2.

Ʒewestôs rejoiced in his spirit, and his faith was increased, and his heart became strong, and he departed to the king, who | received him with an honourable reception, B. fol. 5b.  
col. 1. and made him a beautiful habitation with him, and commanded that he should abide with him for three years.

And it came to pass that after Ʒewestôs had gone away from his own abode, his brother came unto his wife 'Akrôsyâ with a devilish counsel which Satan had sown in his heart, and he said unto her, "My brother will never come back again [Page 22], for the emperor will punish him because he hath hearkened unto the voice of a sorcerer, and hath scattered his possessions among the poor and needy, and the orphans, and hath made the poor and needy, who belong not to his kin, his children. And behold, I wish thee to become my wife. And I will gather together all the riches which formerly belonged to my brother, and I will make those among whom he wasted his possessions to bring back whatsoever they have | in their hands, for [I know] that thou art a woman A. fol. 6b.  
col. 1. who cannot [endure] a deed like unto this". Then 'Akrôsyâ answered and said unto him, "O fool, and most abominable man, how can the evil thought of going up upon thy brother's bed have ever entered into thy heart? Shouldst thou not rather have been | desirous of B. fol. 5b.  
col. 2. comforting thy brother's children during their father's absence, and of driving away their grief by means of thy riches until their father returned to them?" Now the brother of Ʒewestôs wished to take her by force, and when 'Akrôsyâ knew that he was able to do so, and would carry out his evil desire, she answered him with words according to his wish, and appointed him a time

three days hence; so he departed from her with this understanding. Then she called her chosen handmaiden and said unto her, "Thou shalt by no means let [Page 23] "any man know where I have gone." And she called  
 A. fol. 6b. her two children | and said unto them, "O my children,  
 col. 2. "hearken unto my voice, and go forth with me to 'Etnôsyâ "(Athens?), that ye may be instructed in wisdom and "learn discipline, until your father shall return unto you;" and she took her servants with her, and came to the sea-coast, where she found a ship ready to sail, and she departed [therein].

And it came to pass that, when she had gone a distance of thirty cubits from the harbour, a mighty wind blew violently on the sea, and the ship was broken to pieces, but one of 'Akrôsyâ's children climbed up upon one of the timbers of the ship, and by the good pleasure of God Almighty, the sea washed him ashore at Alexandria. And the younger child and his mother also clung to a piece of wood belonging to the ship, and God delivered them from the billows of the sea, which washed them on to a little island in the sea, and the island had  
 B. fol. 6a. the name of | Keprâ (Cyprus).

col. 1. And God called to Peter, and commanded him to  
 A. fol. 7a. go to the city of Alexandria to seek out the chosen ser-  
 col. 1. vants of God who were meet to receive mercy; so Peter went to the city of Alexandria. And it came to pass that when he was coming [nigh to the city], he first of all went round about it, even as he did in the city of Rome, saying [Page 24]:—

"Blessed are the merciful, for on them will God shew "mercy.

"Blessed are the peacemakers, for they shall be called and shall become the children of God.

"Blessed are those who give to the poor and needy, for unto them will God give in return".

"Blessed are they who have wives, and who are as if they had them not, for they shall inherit the land of life which is for | ever."

B. fol. 6a.

col. 2.

And there was no man among all the people of the city of Alexandria who accepted his words | except the young man who had escaped from the waves of the sea, the son of Kewestôs, and he came to Peter, and fell down before him, and embraced his feet. And Peter said unto him, "Who art thou? For of all this multitude not one hath hearkened unto my words except thyself." And the young man answered and said unto him, "O my father, I am from the city of Rome, and whilst I was there a man like unto thee came to the city of Rome, and discoursed with words like unto those which thou speakest. And my father and mother believed his words, and distributed all their possessions among the poor and needy, and the orphans. Now after they had given away all that they had, the emperor sent [messengers] to seek out my father, and he departed to him, and he hath tarried there a long time. And Satan sowed the thought of evil in the heart of my father's brother, and he [Page 25] rose up against my mother and wished her to be a wife unto him; but she rejected him and refused to | do his will. Then she took | me and my brother, wishing to bring us to 'Etñeyâs (Athens?), that we might be instructed in knowledge and taught discipline until our father should come back to us, and to keep

A. fol. 7a.

col. 2.

A. fol. 7b.

col. 1.

B. fol. 6b.

col. 1.

"us at a distance since [her] enemy wished to act thus  
 "[unto her]. Now when we were leaving the harbour,  
 "and were at no great distance therefrom, a mighty wind  
 "rose up against us at sea, and the ship was broken to  
 "pieces. But by the will of God Almighty I was enabled  
 "to seize upon a piece of wood belonging to the ship,  
 "and the waves of the sea washed me to this city; but  
 "what hath become of my mother and my brother I  
 "know not." And Peter said unto him, "Dost thou wish  
 "to become my disciple?" And the young man answered  
 and said, "I do"; so he became a companion unto Peter,  
 and there was no man among the people of that city  
 who answered him a word.

And the Spirit of God sent a message to Peter to  
 A. fol. 7b. go forth from | Sadôm to Egypt, and He commanded  
 col. 2. him, saying, "In this city the blood of the saints shall be  
 "poured out in the last days, and the days [Page 26]  
 B. fol. 6b. "wherein thy voice shall | be heard in this city are not  
 col. 2. "yet fulfilled. Rise up thou, and this thy disciple, and  
 "come to Ɣeprâ (Cyprus), for there are there servants  
 "who are ready to enter into submission unto Me." So  
 Peter made haste to go down [to the sea] with his dis-  
 ciple, and he came to the sea-coast and found a ship  
 ready to sail; and he embarked therein, wishing to travel  
 on his way, and to arrive at the city of Ɣeprâ (Cyprus).  
 And it came to pass that when Peter had arrived at the  
 harbour of the city he saw a large number of people on  
 the sea-coast, walking to the east and to the west and  
 looking into the sea. And he said unto all those who  
 were with him in the ship, "O my children, when we  
 "arrive in port, wishing to go down [from the ship], do

"not | hurry to disembark, because I would see what those  
 "people are doing, for I would not that the Enemy should  
 "see any obstacle before me; but after I know [this] let  
 "all the people go on their way."

A. fol. 8a.  
 col. 1.

Then Peter went down out of the ship and came to those people [on the shore], and behold, there was a woman weeping, and a number of people were following after her. And Peter answered and said unto her [Page 27], "O noble | lady, why weepest thou, and what  
 "seekest thou here that thou walkest along the shore of  
 "this sea?" Then the woman answered and said, "O my  
 "Lord, I and my two children were journeying together  
 "in a ship, and the ship was broken to pieces at sea;  
 "and the waves of the sea washed my younger son and  
 "myself to this city, but I know not what hath become  
 "of my elder son. Every day I come to the sea, and  
 "call upon God | to hear me, and to shew me the body  
 "of my son, that I may take it out of the water and  
 "prepare it for burial and bury it. Now I know that I  
 "weary the hearts of the people of this city both by  
 "weeping myself and by making them weep, but I have  
 "hope in God Almighty, and in the prayers of Saint Peter,  
 "and He will give them a good reward for that they  
 "have mourned for me. Now I am a woman who have  
 "come hither from a foreign country." Then did Peter  
 know that it was she who had given birth to his disciple,  
 and he said unto her, "Come thou to | this young man,  
 "and peradventure thou wilt know if he be thy son."  
 And she said, "Willingly, O my lord." So Peter went  
 with her to the [Page 28] ship, and he cried out, saying,  
 "O Clement, rise up and come down out of the ship,"

B. fol. 7a.  
 col. 1.

A. fol. 8a.  
 col. 2.

B. fol. 7a.  
 col. 2.

and as soon as he saw his mother and his brother he knew them, and because of this they fell down upon the ground at the | feet of Peter and were afraid. Then  
 A. fol. 8b. col. 1. Peter lifted them up, and said unto them, "Rise up, O  
 "my children, and acknowledge the grace of the gift of  
 "God unto you which hath not permitted your bodies to  
 "perish in the sea. And I command you to return to  
 "your city of Rome, for, behold, your father hath arrived  
 "before the king who hath received him graciously, and  
 "he will return unto you in peace; and your father's brother  
 "is dead, and ye shall in no wise be sorrowful." And  
 Peter gave them his disciple and sent them back to their  
 city in peace. And after Peter [had taught the people] the  
 mysteries of life he dwelt in that city preaching unto  
 B. fol. 7b. col. 1. them the belief in God, and in His | Only Son, and in  
 His Holy and Life-giving Spirit, until all those who  
 were in that city believed; and the wife of Kewestôs came  
 A. fol. 8b. col. 2. to the | city of Rome, with her two children, in peace.

Now there would have been none who knew what things had happened unto 'Akrôsyâ, unless she herself had told her chosen handmaid who ministered unto her everything which had befallen her, how the ship was dashed to pieces, [Page 29] and how God Almighty restored her and her sons to each other, after they had been overwhelmed by the sea and cast away destitute, and how, through the prayers of Saint Peter, after thirteen days they were dwelling in their own home again, and they remembered the might of God always.

And the two sons of the lady 'Akrôsyâ drank water out of an uncovered vessel in which there was poison, and they died straightway; and their mother wept bitter

tears over them, saying, "Woe is me, O my children, "that ye were not able to escape from the writing which "was written concerning you; for your death was to be "through water, and for this reason did the ship perish "the | first time. Now | God did not wish to inflict sorrow B. fol. 7b.  
 "upon me, and to destroy your lives by the sea, for I col. 2.  
 "believed in the words of Peter the holy Apostle, and he A. fol. 9a.  
 "restored your bodies unto me alive; but behold, O my col. 1.  
 "children, as soon as ye were restored to your home, ye "died through water. Nevertheless I give thanks unto God "for His great glory; for He it is Who created you, and "He it is Who hath taken you." Then she rose up quickly and took the dead bodies [Page 30] of her sons, and made them ready for burial with her own hands, and her chosen handmaid brought them into the innermost part of her house, [and placed them] in the storehouse thereof which was full of sweet odours; then she shut the doors of her chamber and went forth into her dwelling room, and she abode there and proclaimed the majesty of | God Almighty. And she commanded her hand- A. fol. 9a.  
 maid to keep secret the matter of how her sons had col. 2.  
 died, so that no man might know it, and also that she should not tell the children's father when he should come that they were dead, so that his heart might not be pained; "When God wisheth it, then we shall find a way "to tell him without other men knowing it," [she said].

And it came to pass that when | three years were B. fol. 8a.  
 ended Kewestôs returned from the emperor, and all the col. 1.  
 prefects and nobles of the city of Rome heard [it and said], "Kewestôs the noble prefect hath arrived in his city "alive." Then the people of the city dressed themselves

- in their fine apparel, and all those who dwelt in his neighbourhood took branches of trees in their hands, [and went] outside the city to receive him. Now in former
- A. fol. 9b. times the two sons of KĒwestôs had each a | white horse,  
col. 1. and whensoever they heard that their [Page 31] father was coming from the presence of the emperor they used to put on fine apparel, and mount their horses, which they had decorated with trappings of gold and silver, and then ride out to meet their father and escort him until he came into the city. And it came to pass that when KĒwestôs came into the city to his habitation, and did not see his two sons who in times past had been wont to go out from the city to meet him, he questioned his wife 'Akrôsyâ, and said unto her, "Where are my sons that
- B. fol. 8a. "I do not see them with the other people? | And what hath  
col. 2. "happened to them that they have not come to meet "me according to their use and wont?" And 'Akrôsyâ his wife answered and said unto him, "Fear not, O my "brother, for their absence is not due unto evil intent. "Thou knowest that long ago we gave away all our "possessions to the poor and needy, and to the orphans,
- A. fol. 9b. "and that we have | nothing left of all our rich things  
col. 2. "which is fit for them to adorn themselves with like the "rest of the folk. When I knew of thy coming and of "thy drawing nigh to the city, I sent the children to my "sister that she might give them fine apparel, wherewith "they might adorn themselves, and which would be of "service to make glad thy habitation, together with these "people who are gathered together that they may say "unto thee, 'Peace, O thou who hast come'. Now when "they have returned from my sister's house they shall

"come into thy presence". Then those who were gathered together unto Kewestôs led the discourse [Page 32] on to the matter of the emperor, and of the kind of life which he lived.

And it came to pass that when the sons of Kewestôs tarried long in coming, he spake a second time and said unto his wife, "Behold, for three years past I have remained without seeing my sons, and my love for them is exceedingly great." Then Ak rôsyâ answered and said unto him, "They have not been able to come unto thee by reason of the press | of the multitude; but when the people have departed they will come unto thee." B. fol. 8b.  
col. 1.

And it came to pass that when the sun had set, and the time for the | evening meal had drawn nigh, all the nobles of the city and all the prefects made ready much food for the supper, and they sent it to the habitation of Kewestôs, where they would have eaten it together. But 'Akrôsyâ, the wife of Kewestôs, went forth to them, and restrained them, saying, "Know ye not that I have not seen my lord for many days—for he was not with me—and that I would be with him this night, so that I might tell him everything which hath happened unto me since he departed from me. To-morrow, however, by God Almighty's good pleasure, ye shall gather together unto him, and everything which ye wish shall be [done]." And it came to pass that when all the people had come into their houses 'Akrôsyâ his wife shut all the doors of her house, and she brought nigh unto him a table and said unto him, "Rise up, [Page 33] O my lord, and eat what hath been brought [unto thee], for the time of the evening meal is past." Then Kewestôs

A. fol. 10a.  
col. 1.

- answered and said unto her, "As God, the God of Peter;  
 A. fol. 10a. "liveth, I will eat no bread | whatsoever until I know why  
 col. 2. "my two sons have tarried, and why they have not come  
 B. fol. 8b. "to meet me". And his good wife | answered and said  
 col. 2. unto him, "Make thou a covenant with me that when  
 "I have told thee the matter thou wilt receive my words,  
 "and wilt not reject me by reason of them; and after-  
 "wards I will bring thy children unto thee." And he  
 said unto her, "If they be sufficient [to explain the matter]  
 "unto me I will not reject thee: speak on." Then 'Akrôsyā  
 answered and said unto him, "O my lord, as soon as  
 "thou hadst set out on thy wanderings, there came unto  
 "me a certain rich man and he placed with me a jewel,  
 "a pearl most precious, the price of which man knoweth  
 "not, and he commanded me to keep watch over it. So  
 "I took the pearl from him into my keeping, and it was  
 "of brilliant beauty, for it shot out rays of light by night  
 "as well as by day. And my soul loved it, and my  
 "spirit longed for it, and I thought within my heart, say-  
 "ing, 'When the owner of the precious jewel cometh I  
 "'will deny [that I have received] it'. And behold, he  
 "came back from his journeying and sought from me  
 "that which he had given me, but I denied [that I had]  
 A. fol. 10b. "the pearl. | Then he said unto me, 'I will not quarrel  
 col. 1. "with thee, lest the people of this city make a mock of  
 "'me [Page 34] because I am quarrelling with a noble  
 B. fol. 9a. "and honourable, and freeborn lady whose husband is |  
 col. 1. "away from her; but I will wait until thy husband re-  
 "'turneth from his journey, for I know that he is a man  
 "'who feareth God Almighty, and that when he knoweth  
 "'of the matter of the pearl he will restore it unto me'.

"Now I know that the man hath knowledge of thy arrival  
 "from thy journeying, and that he will come and seek  
 "for that which belongeth unto him; and I ask thee that  
 "when he cometh thou wilt help me, so that I shall not  
 "be obliged to give up anything unto him."

And it came to pass that when Kewestôs heard his  
 wife's words he answered and said unto her, "O abomin-  
 "able woman, how did this evil thought of denying that  
 "which belongeth to the man ever enter into thy heart?  
 "But when he cometh | I will command thee to restore A. fol. 10b.  
 "to him that which is his; and if I only knew where he col. 2.  
 "was, I would go to him [and tell him] to come and take  
 "from thee that which belongeth unto him before I eat  
 "[my] food. Knowest [Page 35] thou not that those who  
 "desire the possessions of | others [commit] great sin?" B. fol. 9a.  
 And when 'Akrôsyâ heard these words from him, and col. 2.  
 knew the firmness of his belief and faith; she took hold  
 of his hand and brought him into the inner chamber of  
 her house, and going in front she opened the curtains of  
 the place where her children were. Then she said unto  
 Kewestôs, "Look at what is in this treasure-chamber and  
 "thou shalt see thy sons"; and straightway when he saw  
 his dead sons he lifted up his voice, and wept aloud.  
 And his wife answered and said unto him, "Remember,  
 "O my lord, what thou didst say unto me, for thou  
 "saidst, 'When the owner of the pearl cometh, and  
 "seeketh that which is his, thou shalt not withhold it  
 "'from him'. Behold, thou seest | their bodies perfect as A. fol. 11a.  
 "they were in times of old, their hands, and their feet, col. 1.  
 "and all their members; and nothing of their bodies what-  
 "soever is wanting, except the souls which dwelt in thy

"sons and which are now with God Almighty. These, then, are the pearl, and these are the things which He  
 B. fol. 9b. "gave to be guarded in the | flesh, until such time as He  
 col. 1. "[wished] to take them [again]: no man can restrain Him  
 "when He wisheth [to act]. God gave, and God hath  
 "taken; as God wisheth so let it be! May God's name  
 "be blessed, now, henceforth, and for ever. Amen."

Then 'Akrôsyâ said unto Kewestôs, "Rise up quickly,  
 "and let us ask God to put away grief from us; our sons  
 "are dead." So they rose up quickly, and they stretched  
 A. fol. 11a. out their hands in [prayer in] the [Page 36] | inner chamber  
 col. 2. of their house with unity of will and lowliness of heart,  
 to God Almighty, the Living One, the Omnipotent, Who  
 doeth whatsoever He pleaseth. And it came to pass  
 that when they had prayed a long time they heard a  
 Voice going round about them in a bright cloud which  
 spake, saying, "O Kewestôs, Kewestôs, inasmuch as ye  
 "have hearkened unto and have accepted the voice of  
 "Peter, My disciple, ye shall not be angry at all the  
 "sorrow which hath come upon you, and ye shall not  
 "grieve by reason of the death of your sons, for I will  
 "deal graciously with you and will give them back to  
 "you alive. Haste ye then, and rise up, and make suppli-  
 "cation unto Almighty God, saying, 'O God of Peter who  
 "'came to the city of Rome, the man in whom we be-  
 "'lieved, and whose power through Jesus Christ, the Na-  
 B. fol. 9b. "zarene, we | knew, in his name we ask Thee to make  
 col. 2. "'our sons 'Aklamâtôs (Clement) and Kanâyôs to live  
 "'again'; and they repeated their petition even as the  
 A. fol. 11b. Voice commanded them. Then straightway | their two  
 col. 1. sons rose up from the dead and lived again, because

they (i. e., their father and mother) had put their trust in God. And they went round about in the city and in all the country, saying, "Blessed be God Almighty, the "God of Peter, the holy Apostle of Jesus Christ the Son "of God, the Living One, Who giveth life to the dead! "He it is Who healeth all who are sick, and He is the "Physician of souls and of bodies." Now this story went forth into all lands, and all those who heard it praised God, to Whom, Father, and Son, and Holy Ghost, be glory and power for ever and ever! Amen. And 'Akla-mitôs (Clement) prepared himself and became a bishop, and he appointed his brother a deacon; may their prayers and blessing | come to us and preserve us for ever and  
B. fol. 10a.  
col. 1.  
ever! Amen.

## THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT PETER.

A. fol. 11b. [Page 37] In the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of  
 col. 2. the Holy Ghost, One God. Here beginneth the Martyrdom of Saint  
 B. fol. 32b. Peter, the Chief of the Apostles, the Chosen one of our Lord Jesus  
 col. 2. Christ, who ended his strife in the city of Rome. May his prayer  
 and blessing be with his handmaiden Walatta Madhan.

And it came to pass that Peter was in the city of Rome rejoicing in God, together with his brethren, and he was giving thanks by day and by night, and was praising God because of the multitudes of the people that were coming unto him the whole day long, and that were believing in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ. Now among the crowds of people who came unto Peter were four women who were concubines of 'Akrēpōs (Agrippa[?]), the governor of the city, and whose names were 'Akmâba, 'Akrâbânyâ, Kariyâ, and Dêweris.<sup>1</sup> And when they heard the teaching of Peter, and everything which he commanded therein—for he commanded that they should keep themselves pure, | and that they should not pollute their  
 B. fol. 33a. bodies with sinful acts—they received | it with gladness,  
 col. 1. and they made a covenant among themselves that they  
 A. fol. 12a. col. 1.

---

<sup>1</sup> Agrippa's concubines were called Agrippina, Eucharía, Euphemia, and Dione; see Lipsius, *Apostelgeschichten*, vol. II, p. 91.

would not go up into the bed of 'Akrëpôs, and that they would keep themselves undefiled.

And it came to pass that when this news came unto 'Akrëpôs he was exceedingly sorry, for he loved these women dearly; and he sent his messengers to follow them, so that he might know whither they went, [and if they went] to Peter. And he sent a message unto them, saying, "Wherefore hath Peter taught you not to dwell "with me, and to keep away from my bed? Know ye, "then, that I will blot you out of existence, and that I "will burn him alive with fire." But the women refused to do for him that which he wished, and they were not in any way afraid of his words; and none of them did according to his will, for [Page 38] they were strong in the faith of our Lord Jesus Christ.

Now there was an exceedingly beautiful woman whose name was 'Aksentiân (i. e., Xanthippe), the wife of one of the emperor's | friends who was called Altâ-A. fol. 12a. col. 2. bîyôs, (i. e., Albinus), and she came forth continually, | B. fol. 33a. col. 2. along with these four women, to Peter and listened unto his teaching; and she also withdrew herself from her husband's bed. Then was Altâbîyôs wroth with Peter with a great wrath like unto that of a lion, and he wished to kill him, for he knew that it was he who taught them to keep themselves undefiled. And many of the women who heard the teaching of Peter withdrew themselves from their husbands, and in like manner a great number of men withdrew themselves from their wives, and they kept themselves pure in humility. And there arose a great tumult in the city of Rome by reason of this thing, and 'Altâbyôs cried out to 'Akrëpôs and said unto him,

"Give me judgment against Peter the Christian who hath  
 "been the means of putting me away from my wife, and  
 A. fol. 12b. "if thou wilt not give me judgment I will punish him |  
 col. 1. "rightly for myself." Then 'Akrēpôs answered and said  
 unto him, "My suffering is very much greater than thine,  
 "for he hath made those whom I love to be separated  
 "from me." And 'Altâbyôs said unto him, "Why delayest  
 B. fol. 33b. "thou to seize him and to slay him | as thou desirest? Now,  
 col. 1. "he is a magician. And let us bring back our women  
 "to ourselves, and take mighty vengeance upon him by  
 "reason of those whom he hath seduced. Have we not  
 "power over this man, seeing that we are the prefects of  
 "the city?"

And it came to pass, whilst they were taking counsel  
 together over this matter, that 'Aknēstiyân (Xanthippe)  
 learned all their counsel, and she sent to Peter and made  
 him to know everything which they had counselled con-  
 cerning him, so that he might go forth from the city of  
 Rome, he and all his brethren who believed. Then Mar-  
 kalyôs (Marcellus) [Page 39] the believer and his brethren  
 entreated Peter to go forth from the city; and Peter  
 A. fol. 12b. hearkened unto their words, | and went forth out of the  
 col. 2. city alone, and he changed his garb and his apparel, so  
 that no man should know him. And it came to pass that  
 as he was going out through the gates of the city, he  
 met our Lord coming into the city, and He was in the  
 form in which he had seen Him aforetime in the flesh.  
 And when Peter saw Him he worshipped Him, and said  
 unto Him, "Whither goest Thou, O my Lord?" And  
 our Lord said unto him, "I am going into the city of  
 "Rome to be crucified therein." And Peter said unto

Him, | "Wilt Thou be crucified a second time, O my  
 "Lord?" Then as our Lord went up from Peter, and all  
 his senses returned to him, he saw our Lord ascending  
 into heaven; and he sorrowed not in his mind, but went  
 back into the city rejoicing and giving praise unto God  
 Almighty because our Lord said that they would crucify  
 Him, and because it must needs be that they would find  
 him (i. e., Peter). Now aforetime when He was in the  
 flesh | He spake unto Peter, saying, "When thou art old,  
 "another shall gird thee and shall carry thee whither thou  
 wishest not to go".<sup>1</sup>

B. fol. 33b.  
col. 2.

A. fol. 13a.  
col. 1.

And it came to pass that, when he returned to the  
 city, he told his brethren all that he had seen, and all  
 that he had heard from our Lord Jesus Christ, and every-  
 thing which He had spoken unto him. And when the  
 brethren heard [these things] their souls were sorrowful,  
 and they wept bitter tears, and said, "We entreat thee,  
 "O our father Peter, to teach us, for our knowledge of  
 "the knowledge of God is little, and our faith is not  
 "strong." And Peter answered and said unto them, "If  
 "God hath | willed it so let it be. But whether we wish  
 "it, or whether we wish it not, God Almighty shall  
 "strengthen you in His faith and in His knowledge, and  
 "He will strengthen those whose hearts are in fear, so  
 "that they will be able to teach the others among you.  
 "[Page 40] And as for me, if God Almighty be pleased  
 "for me to remain in the body, I am powerless to refuse  
 "[to do so]; and if He desire | to take me unto Himself,  
 "I will rejoice and be glad." And it came to pass that,

B. fol. 34a.  
col. 1.

A. fol. 13a.  
col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> See St. John xxi. 18.

when Peter spake and told them these things, the brethren were exceedingly sorrowful, and they were sad in their hearts.

And by reason of these things 'Akrēpōs, the governor of the city, sent four of his soldiers and commanded them to seize Peter, and to bring him unto him—[now] Peter saw the strength of their wrath—and he ordered them to crucify him on account of [his] faith and belief. And it came to pass that, when the company of the believing brethren heard [these things], they made haste and came together with all the people of the city, and the rich and the poor, and the widows, and the strong and the infirm, and they wished to take Peter away

B. fol. 34a. from | that place. And they cried out, and shouted with  
col. 2. a loud voice, saying, "What offence hath Peter committed,

A. fol. 13b. "O 'Akrēpōs? And what work of | evil hath gone forth  
col. 1. "from him? Now tell us this, and if thou wilt not declare "it unto us we will set thy city on fire before thou shalt "crucify this man." Then Peter beckoned to them to be silent, and he answered and said unto them, "O men, "who have given yourselves unto the Great King, that is "to say, Jesus Christ, upon Whose faith ye have laid "hold, remember the miracles which ye have seen God "Almighty work by my hand. Remember ye that which "I have taught you concerning the suffering of our Lord. "Remember ye the miracles which ye have seen [wrought] "in His name, and do ye patiently wait, for He will come "to reward each man according to his deeds. And curse "ye not 'Akrēpōs, for he is an emissary of his father "Satan; and all this matter which hath arisen [Page 41] "shall be ended in myself. And why should I be per-

"turbed at going up upon the cross?" And he stood up  
 before | them, and set [before them these words], | saying, B. fol. 34b.  
 "In the name of the cross, the hidden mystery, the gra- col. 1.  
 "cious gift which the tongue of the children of men can- A. fol. 13b.  
 "not describe, which is found in the Name of the cross, col. 2.  
 "in the Creation which put on human form, and which  
 "cannot be comprehended—God Almighty. O memorial  
 "of the Sublimity which cannot be understood, and which  
 "the children of men cannot describe with [their] polluted  
 "lips! It is meet in this hour, which is the conclusion of  
 "my life, that I should reveal Who Thou art, and that I  
 "should relate Thy history and should not keep silent  
 "concerning the cross, which is a glorious mystery, and  
 "that I should make mention of its majesty unto all the  
 "people who shall hearken unto my words. O ye men,  
 "whose hope is in Christ, besides Whom no one hath  
 "been revealed unto us, it is through the belief which is  
 "His that ye have been able to contend. And behold,  
 "this hour is indeed the end of my life; hearken ye unto  
 "my words, and make | yourselves to be remote from A. fol. 14a.  
 "all evil works, and turn away your eyes from every col. 1.  
 "kind of vanity, O ye my brethren and children, | whom B. fol. 34b.  
 "I have made to know Christ and the mystery of His col. 2.  
 "salvation."

And it came to pass after these words that Saint  
 Peter turned his face to the captain of the soldiers, and  
 said unto them, "Perform ye what they have commanded  
 "you [to do]; but I entreat you to crucify me with my  
 "head downwards, and lift ye my feet upwards." So  
 they lifted him up on to the cross, and they did even  
 as he wished; may his prayer and blessing keep us! Amen.

And after<sup>1</sup> they had hung him upon the cross, even as he had asked, he began to speak in a loud voice, and to say unto them, "O ye men who have the power to hear, hearken ye diligently unto what I shall say unto you. And now ye shall know that my being hung upon the cross is the mystery of every thing which hath been created, and that to everything which hath been made there must be an end, [even as there was] a beginning. For the old man, which made itself manifest in me, descended upon me in its person, and shewed forth that [Page 46] the birth which was aforetime was like unto death; and this moved, and came down, and its power to break was lost in the earth, and it shewed forth its two forms in me and appeared in power. By this it came to pass that the right was like unto the left, and the left was like unto the right, and it changed its nature and the signs thereof, so that a man might imagine that it was good and excellent, even as God Almighty spake in a mystery, saying, 'Ye shall not make the right

A. fol. 16a. "as the left, nor that which is above | as that which is  
col. 2. "below, nor that which is in front as that which is below  
"or is behind, so that ye may not know the kingdom of  
"God'. This thought now hath been upon me and known  
"of me from times of old; and this form in which ye see  
"me, that is to say my being hung upon the cross, is  
"the manifestation of the man which was born first of  
"all, that is to say, Adam. And now, O my beloved, ye  
"who are hearkening unto me at this moment, cast ye

---

<sup>1</sup> The narrative of the history of Saint Peter is continued on page 46, line 22.

"away your former error, and flee therefrom, so that ye  
 "may ascend straightly the Cross of Jesus Christ. For He  
 "it is of Whom it is written that He only is the Word,  
 "and it is of Him that the Holy Spirit spake, 'Who is  
 "'Christ but the Word and the Speech of God Almighty?'"<sup>1</sup>  
 "He is the Word so that He might become the Being  
 "Who straightly ascended the Wood whereon He was  
 "crucified; and He is the Speech, which was of old time,  
 "and which created man, and it was He Who was nailed  
 "to the cross . . . . ."<sup>2</sup>

| And the blessed Peter, whilst he was upon the <sup>A. fol. 16b.</sup> wood of the cross, prayed and spake thus, "I give thanks <sup>col. 1.</sup>  
 "unto Thee, O Thou Holy Word, Christ, the Lord of the  
 "universe, not with a tongue of guile and not with the  
 "lips wherefrom go forth the words of falsehood and  
 "truth, and out of which proceedeth the speech of folly,  
 "but we give thanks wholly unto thee with that voice,  
 "O King, Thou Holy Word, Jesus Christ, [Page 47] which,  
 "though it keepeth silent, yet is heard, and being manifest  
 "and heard is yet unheard, which goeth not forth and  
 "yet by grace cometh forth, and the nature of which,  
 "although unknown, is beautiful. With this voice we give  
 "thanks unto thee, O Jesus Christ, and Thou hearkenest  
 "thereunto and Thou keepest silence, O Thou Whom the  
 "Spirit hath made to be king over us, inasmuch as Thou  
 "knowest [it]. Thou art our Father, and our Mother, and  
 "our Friend, and our Brother; Thou art our Steward,  
 "and Thou art He Who giveth [unto us]. In Thee is  
 "everything made perfect, Thou art He Who holdeth [in

<sup>1</sup> Compare St. John I. 1; 1 St. John I. 1.

<sup>2</sup> The text is here corrupt.

"His hand] the universe, and besides Thee there is none  
 A. fol. 16b. "other at all, O Christ, the holy Word, | the Tree of Life.  
 col. 2. "In this Being then have I taken refuge. And as for  
 "you, [if ye do thus] ye shall comprehend that which  
 "He spake aforetime, saying, 'Things which the eye hath  
 "'not seen, nor the ear heard, neither hath it entered into  
 "'the heart of man to conceive';<sup>1</sup> for these I entreat Thee,  
 "O Lord, because Thou didst declare that Thou wouldst  
 "give [them unto us]. We entreat Thee, and we make  
 "supplication unto Thee, and we give praise unto Thee,  
 "and we bless Thee, O Thou Who dost never come to  
 "an end, and we give thanks unto Thee, O Thou Who  
 "art holy, and we put our trust in Thee with heart  
 "and soul, O Thou Who slumberest not. We are beings  
 "of no account, but Thou only art holy, and art in the  
 "Father, Who is immortal, and the Father is in Thee,  
 "and to Thee be glory for ever and ever! Amen and  
 "Amen". And many people made answer, and they all  
 said, "Amen and Amen".

Then straightway did the blessed Peter, the chief of  
 the Apostles, the noble man, who was betrayed, the  
 guide to the kingdom of heaven, yield up his soul to God  
 Almighty, being crucified upon the wood of the cross.  
 A. fol. 17a. May his | prayer and his intercession keep us for ever  
 col. 1. and ever. Amen and Amen. Then Marcellus<sup>2</sup>, the dis-  
 ciple of Saint Peter, came and took him down from the  
 cross and washed his body with one thousand [measures]  
 of milk and wine. And he brought one hundred and  
 fifty-seven manehs of myrrh, and one hundred and fifty-

<sup>1</sup> Compare 1 Corinthians ii. 9; Isaiah lxiv. 4.

<sup>2</sup> He was originally a follower of Simon Magus.

seven manchs of spice, and another hundred and fifty-seven manchs of aloes<sup>1</sup>, and with these [Page 48] he anointed the body of Peter; and next he brought a long coffin, and having filled it full of honey he laid him therein, and buried him in his own grave<sup>2</sup>.

And Peter appeared unto Μακêlôs (Marcellus) in a vision of the night, and said unto him, "Hast thou not heard that our Lord said, 'Let the dead bury their "dead":'?"<sup>3</sup> And Marcellus said unto him, "Yes". And Peter said unto him, "Whatsoever be the amount which thou hast just expended upon the dead thou hast lost it, for thou being a living being hast [spent it] upon thy "dead brother." And when Marcellus awoke from his sleep he told the brethren concerning the vision which he had seen, so that they might be strong in the faith of Christ and in Jesus; and he himself awaited anxiously the coming of Paul to Rome. And it came to pass that after a while Nero the Emperor knew that Peter had perished, and all people (*literally*, the world) threw the blame upon 'Ακρêpôs (Agrippa) the prefect, for it was through his counsel that Nero had slain him. And Nero desired earnestly to pass a heavy sentence of punishment upon him, and to inflict many pains and penalties upon him, for many of the people who followed Peter, as well as those who were remote from the faith, had Agrippa treated in like manner; and for this reason Nero continued in a state of wrath for many days, and he

A. fol. 17a.  
col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> See LIPSIUS, op. cit., vol. ii. p. 118, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> On the burial place of Saint Peter see LIPSIUS, op. cit., vol. ii. p. 20 ff.

<sup>3</sup> St. Matthew viii. 22.

would not speak unto him. Then Nero sought out all those who had been instructed by Peter [that he might slay them]. And there appeared unto him by night a man who tormented him and said unto him, "O Nero, henceforward do not slay the servants of Christ, for thy persecution is killing them; and now cease thou to harass  
A. fol. 17b. "them"; and | Nero the Emperor, being afraid at these  
col 1. words, ceased to harass the servants of Christ in those days. And the blessed Peter, the chosen one, the glorious one, the chief of the Apostles, departed from this world before the fifteenth day of the Calends of June, or according to the Ethiopian reckoning, on the fifth day of the month Hamlē<sup>1</sup>. May his prayer, and his blessing, and [Page 49] his intercession be with us for ever and ever! Amen, Amen, and Amen. Glory be to the Father Who chose Peter and appointed him [to be] the chief of the Apostles; and adoration [be] to the Son Who gave him the keys of the kingdom of heaven; and thanksgiving [be] to the Holy Spirit Who made his tongue to be keen as a knife which cutteth; and to God Almighty be the praise, and the thanksgiving, and the majesty, and the honour, and the adoration which are meet for Him for ever and ever! Amen, and Amen.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., June 29.

## THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT PAUL.

[IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE SON, AND  
OF THE HOLY GHOST, ONE GOD.

Here beginneth the Martyrdom of Saint Paul, who was the first to teach the Gentiles, which took place on the fifth day of the month of Hamle<sup>1</sup>. In the peace of God, Amen. May his prayer and his blessing be with his handmaiden Walatta Madhan].

And first of all he taught the multitude and said [unto them], "O men in whom there is understanding, "hearken ye, and know, and lay this to your hearts, so "that ye all may know the mystery of the first creation "[Page 42], and every work that belonged to the first "man which took place. Now, I am in bondage to the "Emperor, but this | my life belongeth not to my Emperor, <sup>A. fol. 14a.</sup> "even though it be my life which shall have an end; but <sup>col. 2.</sup> "my life which is for ever shall have no end. And "although thou hast commanded that they cut off my "head, I shall again appear unto thee and shall be alive "[again], so that thou mayest know the truth of my "words. For I have my life in my King Jesus Christ, "Who shall judge the quick and the dead, and shall re-

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e. June 29.

"ward every man according to his work, whether it be  
"good or whether it be evil."

And it came to pass that, when the Emperor Nero  
had heard these words from Paul, he made a sign to his  
executioner wrathfully, and commanded him to make  
haste to slay him; and when Kesîtôs (Acestus?) and  
Lîkôs (Longinus?), the Emperor's nobles, heard [these  
words] they took Paul out so that might cut off his head.  
And they said unto Paul, "Where is thy king in whom  
"thou trustest? Hast thou no wish to forsake him, for

A. fol. 14b. "whose sake thou bearest all [these] tortures?" And |  
col. 1. Paul answered and said unto them, "O men whose ob-  
"ject of worship is error, and who lack the knowledge of  
"God, turn ye and repent, so that ye may be saved from  
"the punishment which shall come upon those who deny  
"Him; it is not as ye imagine, that we shall gather to-  
"gether the army of an earthly king like unto yourselves,  
"but we shall be rewarded in the palace of the heavenly  
"King. Because of the sins of the world He Himself will  
"come to judge the world; and unto all those who be-  
"lieve in Him He will give the life which is everlasting."

And it came to pass that, when the Emperor's nobles  
heard this, they bowed down unto him and said, "Work'  
"thou on our behalf so that we may be of those who  
"are worthy of this King, and we will set thee free [to  
"go] whithersoever thou wishest." And Paul said unto  
them, "I am neither afraid of nor am I terrified at  
"[Page 43] your torturings, that I should flee from God  
"Almighty, nay, I am the servant of our Lord Jesus

A. fol. 14b. "Christ, the Living King. | And, since I know that this  
col. 2. "[King] Who [liveth] for ever died, I cannot do according

"to what ye say unto me. But I shall live with my God, "Who [liveth] for ever, and I shall do His will, for unto "Him shall I return, and with Him I shall dwell when "He cometh in His glory."

And the Emperor's nobles said unto him, "How is "it possible for thee to do this after they have cut off "thy head? Hast thou the power to come alive again?" Now whilst they were conversing together in this wise the Emperor sent [men] to find out whether Paul's head had been cut off or not; and it came to pass that they [came and] saw him alive. And Paul said unto them, "Believe ye in the Living God Who shall deliver all those "who believe in Him from death". And they answered and said unto him, "Behold now, thou must certainly "die, and when we see that thou hast risen from the "dead we will believe"; and they returned to the Emperor. Now Kistôs (Titus) and Lûkâs (Luke) besought | Paul A. fol. 15a. earnestly, saying, "Teach us the way of salvation". col. 1.

And Paul said unto them, "To-morrow come ye at "daybreak unto the grave wherein they shall have de- "posited my body, and there ye shall find two men pray- "ing; these shall be Tîtô (Titus) and Lûkâs (Luke), and "they shall teach you the doctrine of salvation, and shall "bring you nigh unto our Lord Jesus Christ, our God in "truth." Then Paul, [who was standing] among all the multitudes that were gathered together to see his martyr- dom, looked towards the East, and he spread out his hand[s], and prayed a long time in the Hebrew tongue. And it came to pass that, when he had made an end of his prayer, he spake again unto the multitude of people who tarried [there] with faithful words in our Lord, and

many of them [Page 44] believed by reason of the graciousness of his speech, and the light which was in his countenance, and the grace which was upon him.

A. fol. 15a. And the two messengers returned to Nero the Em-  
col. 2. peror, and told him how they had found | Paul and Kîstôs (Titus) and Lûkâs (Luke) talking together, and how Paul was teaching them the faith. Then was the Emperor exceedingly wroth, and he sent a mighty man of valour with a sword to cut off Paul's head quickly. And it came to pass that, when the swordsman arrived, the holy man bowed his head, and remained silent and spake no word; and he continued thus with his head bowed for a long time with the swordsman standing before him; and when the swordsman had drawn his sword from its sheath his hands shook to such a degree that he could not bring it down upon Paul. Then finally he strengthened his heart and smote him, and the head of Saint Paul fell upon the ground; and there went forth from the body of the saint milk and blood in such quantities that they reached unto the garments of the swordsman. And those who were gathered together [there] marvelled, and they glorified God Who had given such a great and gracious gift unto His holy disciple Paul.

A. fol. 15b. And the swordsman returned and told the Emperor  
col. 1. everything which had taken place, and the Emperor Nero marvelled, and all his | prefects and governors who were sitting with him were greatly terrified. And it came to pass that at the ninth hour of the day Paul appeared unto the Emperor, and said unto him, "I am the disciple  
"of Jesus Christ who came to thy city, and I have taken

“therefrom certain of the people thereof for my King; “behold now, I am alive at this present, and I am not “dead. And as for thee, behold, much affliction shall “come upon thee because thou hast shed the blood of “many righteous people; and after a few days there shall “come upon thee everything which I have said unto thee”. And as Paul was saying these words he disappeared from him.

Then Nero the Emperor [Page 45] commanded that all those who were shut up in prison and who believed in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ should go forth therefrom, together with Baṭrêḵ<sup>1</sup>, the servant of the Emperor, and him who was called Barsēyôs (Justus?), and him who was called Lûḵâs (Luke), and Ḳûstôs (Acestus?), and Kîstôs (Titus).

And the chosen friends of the Emperor went | early A. fol. 15b. col. 2. in the morning to the grave of Paul, and when they drew nigh thereunto they saw two men standing [there] praying, and Paul also was standing between them in great glory; and they who saw him were terrified, and they trembled by reason of their great fear at his glorious appearance. And Titô (Titus) and Lûḵâs (Luke) were afraid of them, and they took to flight. Now those servants of the Emperor, whom we have already mentioned, sought to find Titô (Titus) and Lûḵâs (Luke) again, and [when] they had found them they said unto them, “We “have sought you not to put you to death, but that ye “may give us life everlasting, even as Paul, who was “standing between you at this hour, commanded us”.

---

<sup>1</sup> Probably Patroclus, a pander of Nero.

And it came to pass that when Titus and Luke heard these words from them, they straightway rejoiced exceedingly; and they spake unto them the words of instruction, and they taught them the truth in our Lord Jesus Christ, and they gave unto them the doctrine of the life which is for ever and for ever. Amen.

A. fol. 16a.      Here endeth the Martyrdom of Saint Paul. May his prayer  
col. 1.      and his blessing keep us! Amen, Amen, and Amen.

---

## THE GENEALOGIES OF THE TWELVE APOSTLES.

| Here followeth the work which Abbâ Dionysius<sup>1</sup>, Bishop of A. fol. 17b.  
the country of the East, translated concerning the twelve Apostles, who col. 2.  
were of the Twelve Tribes of Israel. B. fol.  
254b.

The father of Simon, who was surnamed Peter, and col. 1.  
of Andrew his brother, was of the house of Rôbêl (Reuben),  
and his mother's mother was of the house of Simon  
(Simeon); Simon Peter's mother loved him greatly, and  
she named him Simon after the name of her father's  
family, and because Andrew's father loved him greatly  
he counted him among the family of his father Reuben.  
Zebedee was of the house of Levi and he took to wife  
a woman of the house of Judah, who bore [to him] two  
sons, called James and John. Now because the father of  
James loved him greatly he counted him among the  
family of his father Levi, and similarly, because the mother  
of John loved him greatly she counted him among the  
family of her father Judah; and for this reason she brought  
him forth to Jesus, for she herself was of the | house of A. fol. 18a.  
Judah, and Christ also was of the house of Judah, accord- col. 1.

---

<sup>1</sup> His commemoration is celebrated on the 6<sup>th</sup> day of Tēkēmt,  
i. e., October 3.

ing to the flesh. And they were surnamed "Children of  
 "thunder", for they were of both the priestly house and  
 of the royal house. And Philip was of the house of  
 Zebulun. And Bartholomew was of the house of Naph-  
 tali; now his name was formerly [Page 50] John, but our  
 Lord changed his name because of John the son of  
 Zebedee, His beloved. And Matthew was of the house  
 of Issachar. And Thomas was of the house of Asher.  
 And James, the son of Alphaeus, was of the house of  
 Gad. And Thaddaeus was of the house of Joseph. And  
 Simon, the son of Cleopas, who is the same as Nathaniel,  
 was of the house of Benjamin. And Judas Iscariot was  
 of the house of Dan; now Dan sold his brother Joseph  
 for twenty pieces of silver, and | in like manner Judas  
 sold our Lord for thirty pieces of | silver.

B. fol.  
 254b.  
 col. 2.  
 A. fol. 18a.

Glory [be] to the Father, Who loved Jacob, and  
 Who multiplied his seed upon the earth; and adoration  
 [be] to the Son Who chose unto Himself Twelve Apostles  
 that they might dwell with Him in His kingdom; and  
 thanksgiving [be] to the Holy Spirit Who gave them  
 knowledge and understanding to preach throughout the  
 whole world concerning the Holy Trinity, One God, to  
 Whom be glory, and majesty, and honour, for ever and  
 ever. Amen, and Amen.

---

## THE EPISTLE OF DIONYSIUS THE AREOPAGITE<sup>1</sup> TO TIMOTHY.

| IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE SON, AND A. fol. 18b.  
OF THE HOLY GHOST, ONE GOD. col. 1.  
B. fol.

The Homiletic Epistle, which was sent by the holy and blessed Dionysius, the Areopagite, to Timothy, the apostle and disciple of Paul the elect, concerning the conclusion of the testimonies of Peter and Paul, the holy Apostles, in the city of Rome on the fifth day of the month Hamle, in the peace of God the Father. May his prayer and blessing be with His handmaiden Walatta Madhan! Amen. 103a.  
col. 1.

Verily salutation [be] to the divine disciple, and to the spiritual son, and to the vigilant heart who standeth firm, the shepherd who shepherdeth the flock, and filleth the ordinances of his God, who abideth patiently his trials and afflictions, [Page 51], who is over all priests and teachers, who is sincere and careful, the spiritual father Timothy, from Dionysius. This [man Paul] is [our] joy, A. fol. 18b.  
O thou who hast put on God, for he was crucified with col. 2.  
Jesus Christ, and he suffered with Him, and he laboured B. fol.  
in His spiritual | mission. He was | the sea of wisdom, 103a.  
col. 2.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., Pseudo-Areopagita. The following epistle cannot, of course, be attributed to the Dionysius, who was the first bishop of Athens, and the convert of Saint Paul.

the father of tongues, the light of the churches, the teacher of the sheep which have been scattered abroad, the axe wherewith the doors of sin were broken to pieces and dashed to the ground, the diamond which cut out and destroyed the errors of evil, the loadstone which blotteth out sin, and destroyeth the foolish, and dissolveth their folly upon them. He was the earthly angel and man, the heavenly man, the valiant one, the victorious soldier, the divine likeness, the God-like and Christ-like image, the foe of the Jews, the scatterer of the Jews who were gathered together, the majesty of the churches, the might of the Spirit, the shield of righteousness, the messenger of Christ, the preacher of the Gospel, the rooter out of idolaters, the joy of the churches, the divine mouth and the tongue of the Spirit. He was the gatherer to-

A. fol. 19a. gether of the scattered, the consoler | of those who had  
col. 1. transgressed, the father of those who were orphans, | the  
B. fol. support of the widows, the raiser up of those who had  
103b. fallen, the strengthener of those who were standing, the  
col. 1. healer of those who were sick, the vivifier of the bones  
which were broken, the spotless body, who gathered to-  
gether [men in] cities, who made the plains to be in-  
habited, the ship of salvation, the skilful sailor, the orderer  
of the deeds of evil-doers, and he rooted out and ordered  
the arrangement of things which are below.

Behold, our teacher hath left us in the toil of afflictions, and he hath gone to Christ Jesus. O my brother Timothy, where then is thy watchful teacher? Where is thy spiritual father? Where is the disciple [Page 52] who was beloved of his teacher? Whence shall he come unto us henceforth in peace? Shall he come from out

of the sea? or from the desert? or from Galatia? or from Spain? or from Corinth? or from Asia? O my brother Timothy, behold, | from henceforth thou shalt be an orphan, and one who is alone; behold, thy career hath been cut off suddenly. Henceforth he will not write unto thee with his holy hands, saying, "O my beloved son", and | he will never again send a message to thee that thou shouldst go to thy teacher in divers cities. O my brother Timothy, where now hast thou heard that thy father Paul existeth this day? according to the word of our Lord which saith, "Verily I say unto you, ye shall "desire to see him, that is to say, your teacher, [for] a "season, and ye shall see him not".<sup>1</sup> O my brother Timothy, behold, there have come this day sorrow and joy, a day of cloud and darkness. Who now will weep with [thee even] as the Prophet saith, "Who will give "me water for my head, and a fountain of tears for mine "eyes?"<sup>2</sup> And I will continue to weep both by day and by night by reason of the [extinction of the] light of the Church. | O my brother Timothy, gather now together all thy Scriptures, for from henceforth thou wilt find no man who will be able to interpret for thee the prophecies of the Prophets. From now and henceforth say, even as the prophet Amos said, "I am a keeper of cattle".<sup>3</sup> And henceforth thou wilt never desire to minister unto him in his fetters, and thou wilt no longer read his honourable and blessed | messages which were wont to come unto thee. For he will never again send unto thee

A. fol. 19a.  
col. 2.B. fol.  
103b.  
col. 2.A. fol. 19b.  
col. 1.B. fol.  
104a.  
col. 1.<sup>1</sup> Compare St. Luke xvii. 22.<sup>2</sup> Jeremiah ix. 1.<sup>3</sup> Amos i. 1; vii. 14.

an epistle, [saying] that he hath been scourged, or that he is naked; and thou wilt not be terrified by hearing that he is in the midst of great tribulations. And he will never write another epistle unto thee, saying, "From "Paul, a prisoner for Christ;" and he will never [Page 53] again desire thee to preach in the cities, saying, "Receive "my beloved son Timothy." O my brother Timothy, A. fol. 19b. bring forth with thee [the Book of] | Jeremiah the prophet, col. 2. for it is that which saith, "My heart is sad, and bitter, "and broken, and it cannot rest."<sup>1</sup> Who is there who when he knoweth will not suffer sorrow and pain, and be in grief and in mourning? Who is there whom the agonies of death will not compass when he heareth this cry of woe? O ye priests, put on sackcloth! O ye who minister at the altar of the sanctuary, weep ye and lament! For a voice of wailing hath been heard in Râmâ, and lamentation, and not of lamentation only, but of B. fol. lamentation | and death, for in one day bitter scourgings 104a. have come. In one day two terrible sorrows [have come col. 2. upon us], and at one time was heard the news of breakings, and of sorrow which was more than all [other] sorrows, and of lamentation which was greater than all [other] lamentations. Now are fulfilled the words of A. fol. 20a. Israel Jacob, saying, "I have lost Joseph, and Simeon | I col. 1. have not found";<sup>2</sup> for Paul, the light of the Church, hath no longer being, and Peter, the foundation of the Church, and the hope of those who believe, can no longer be found. Behold, now are fulfilled the words of the prophet, saying, "The stone of holy things hath been rejected and

<sup>1</sup> Compare Jeremiah xxiii. 9.

<sup>2</sup> Genesis xlii. 36.

“rolled away.”<sup>1</sup> This day have been fulfilled the words of the prophet David, saying, “They gave the dead bodies “of Thy servants as food for the fowl of the heavens, “and the flesh of Thy righteous ones unto the beasts of “the wilderness”.<sup>2</sup>

Where now is the career which Paul was hastening to run? Behold, it hath ceased! And behold, his holy feet rest from the toil of the roads; his | feet stumbled (literally, fell) not, but were agile, and swift, and beautiful amid the [Page 54] uproar which was in the house of darkness. He shall not [again] be shut up in prison, and his pure | hands shall never [again] be bound behind [him]; henceforth he shall neither journey to the city of the Nations, nor enter into [foreign] countries and islands. He shall not [again] stretch out his hands in the ropes which cause pain, and he shall not again be imprisoned in the instruments of torture. Into what country did he not enter? And in what region did he not travel round about? What labour was too heavy for his holy hands? How many were the godly Epistles which he wrote? How long, though bound with chains, did he keep the Law of the Most High, and at the same time teach it and honour it by day and by night, and write [his Epistles] as he toiled for it and laboured for it? And how many times did the people of the Jews receive it? [And his hands] were bound and tied behind [him], and yet he remembered the life-giving sufferings of Christ! Where is that holy | body which received scourgings, and which endured patiently severe | afflictions? Where is that

B. fol.  
104b.  
col. 1.

A. fol. 20a.  
col. 2.

B. fol.  
104b.  
col. 2.  
A. fol. 20b.  
col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> See Psalm cxviii. 22; 1 St. Peter ii. 4—7.

<sup>2</sup> Psalm lxxix. 2.

mouth which spake? and the tongue which was fashioned by the Spirit? Where is that master of wisdom who declaimed the teachings of philosophy? Where is the soul which was clothed with God? O my brother Timothy, let us celebrate the feast, the feast of feasts, and let us offer up unto that man an offering, yea, an acceptable offering. And be thou mindful of the memorial of him, the glory of the saints!

And who is there that will not lament over those men who, though being fit for the honourable estate of heaven, were handed over unto death, even as if they had been workers of iniquity? O my brother Timothy, hadst thou seen that marvellous conflict, or hadst thou heard thereof at thy place on the Euphrates the magnitude of thy grief might have been imagined. But now, let not thy sorrow be multiplied, for thou wast not present at the time when they brought them out to receive [the stroke of] the sword [Page 55] and to finish their martyrdom. What man can there be who would not

A. fol. 20b. have been in great tribulation in that sad | hour, or who  
col. 2. would not have been in despair of soul, and withered in  
B. fol. heart? especially when their hands were fettered with  
105a. chains like those who were to be slain. And round  
col. 1. about the Emperor were gathered together crowds of  
venerable men, and aged men, and honourable men of  
the Jews, and of the peoples who were accursed idolaters,  
to see those marvellous men. And who would not have  
wept in that hour when they spat in their faces, and  
cast filthy spittle upon them, and when they received  
cruel blows on their bodies from this side and from that  
and from round about? Yet Peter and Paul uttered no  
word and kept silence, and they bore [everything] in

patience, and were even as two simple lambs. And each of them was exhorting the other to be cheerful in spiritual love, as they were being handed over to death, and they were brethren of one body [which was about to become] a pure sacrifice; and one of them | they delivered A. fol. 21a. col. 1. over unto crucifixion, and the other unto death by the sword. What heart is there that will not | lament when it heareth these two brethren Peter and Paul, who were, in very truth, righteous, and just, and perfect, saying one to the other, "Go forth in peace, O head of the Church?"

The heavens were terrified when these [two] sainted men took their departure; and the earth quaked when it received the blood of the souls of these pure and righteous men; and the souls [of the righteous] suffered pain by reason of the death of these spiritual and sainted men; and the princes of the angels trembled at the strife of the aged and honourable men. And who could be so destitute of intelligence and understanding that, when he saw Peter, the chief of the Apostles—unto whom had been given the keys of the kingdom of heaven, who had power and permission to bind and to loose the bonds of sin for the righteous, and [Page 56] for the penitent, and for the just souls—hanging | upon a cross, with his head down- A. fol. 21a. col. 2. wards, he would | not suffer pain on his behalf? If a man did B. fol. 105a. col. 2. not thus suffer he must be one whose heart had withered.

O my brother Timothy, I was not nigh unto him when he received the sentence of death in that hour and on that day, for I had gone away with Paul my master; now the two were not in one place where they could finish their testimony together. And oh, what cruel and bitter woe was there to me, my brother Timothy, when

B. fol. 105b. col. 1.

the swordsman ordered Saint Paul to bow his head beneath the sword! now his blessed eyes were filled with tears. And woe be unto me, O my brother [Timothy], for I saw him at that hour looking towards heaven, and making over his face the holy sign of the Cross of life, and then holding his peace, he bowed his head and moved it not beneath [the stroke of] the sword.

A. fol. 21b And woe be unto me, O my brother | Timothy, for in  
col. 1. that hour I saw him bathed in his own blood. And woe

B. fol. be unto me, O Paul my spiritual | father, that thou wast  
105b. prepared for this death. Woe be unto me, O my pure  
col. 2. and shining father. Woe be unto me, O my gracious and honourable master. Woe be unto me, because he hath left me alone. Where hast thou gone, and [why] hast thou cast me off? Whither hast thou removed thyself, and [why] hast thou forsaken me? Whither hast thou removed thyself, thou glory of Christ-like men and of Christians, thou teacher of the polluted Gentiles? Who can keep silent from proclaiming the grace which magnified the Church? Who can restrain himself from proclaiming thy understanding whereby thou didst bring forth the instruction of heavenly and divine words? How can I go to thy disciples, O just master, and what shall I say unto them when they enquire of me concerning thee? Shall I tell them that thou art confined in a place

A. fol. 21b. [Page 57] of restraint, or | shut up in a prison? And  
col. 2. what dost thou desire from those to whom I shall declare

B. fol. thy message? Henceforth we have no desire towards |  
106a. any one of them. In Jerusalem I received [my] fetters,  
col. 1. and after two years I removed myself from thee into Rome.

The prophet David mourned in his lamentation, saying, "Woe be unto me, O my son!"<sup>1</sup> And like unto him this day I mourn, saying, "Woe be unto me, O my father; woe be unto me, O my master!" For, for this blow no healing whatsoever can be found, and for this grief there is no consolation, and for this sickness (*or* pain) there is no healing. [O Peter and Paul,] in the days of your lives ye were joined together in your works, but in your deaths ye were separated, each from the other; and ye were rejected and cast forth like the carcases of beasts upon the highways. How many churches | looked for-  
ward to your coming? How many priests watched for  
your salutations! How many people awaited eagerly the  
arrival of your epistles, and your homilies! But this day  
the sending of your disciples from Rome your city | hath  
come to an end, and this day your disciples have become  
orphans. Henceforth who shall go up and make peace  
to exist among those who are at enmity with one another?  
Henceforth who shall search out and interpret for us the  
Divine Scriptures? Henceforth we shall not hasten to go  
to the city of Rome, and we shall no longer say, "Come,  
"let us gather together, and let us go to Saint Paul, our  
"master, that we may hear from him the interpretation  
"of the Holy Scriptures". And henceforth we shall have  
no desire for the Books of the Prophets, for we shall  
not be able to find any one who can interpret [them]  
unto us. Unto whom wilt thou entrust thy disciples, O  
righteous master? Blessed be the city | of Rome because  
it was worthy to be the dwelling-place [Page 58] of

A. fol. 22a.  
col. 1.B. fol.  
106a.  
col. 2.A. fol. 22a.  
col. 2.<sup>1</sup> 2 Samuel xviii. 33.

these martyrs, who were in very truth heavenly martyrs.

Behold now, the holy city of Rome is to be compared unto the holy city of Jerusalem, [which is] free indeed. Jerusalem received Christ, the King of Glory, and the city of Rome received His blessed Apostles; Jerusalem is adored by reason of Him that was crucified therein, | and the city of Rome is rich by reason of him that was crucified in her.

B. fol.  
106b.  
col. 1.

O my brother Timothy, I saw a great marvel on the day wherein the two disciples Peter and Paul were crowned. When the one separated from the other at the time when they finished their testimony, I saw them entering in before me through a gate, the one holding the hand of the other, and they were clothed in the apparel of the kingdom [of heaven], and upon their heads two richly | decorated crowns of the kingdom [of heaven] were placed, and their crowns shone brightly, and lightnings and flames of fire shot forth therefrom over their heads, even as light and fire shoot forth from the sun when he riseth in heaven in the month of Marmûdâ<sup>1</sup>. Now, I was not the only one who was worthy of this wonderful sight, for there was a certain blessed woman, of the family of the unbelieving Emperor Nero, [who also saw it] and this woman was she whom Paul the Apostle had baptized, and had brought in [among] the Christians. And it came to pass that, when the wicked men brought him forth that he might yield up | his soul, and finish his testimony, he took her

A. fol. 22b.  
col. 1.

B. fol.  
106b.  
col. 2.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., Barmûdâ, the Coptic Φαρυσοῦροι, or March 27 — April 26.

garment from her, and said unto her, "When I return unto thee I will bring it to thee". And when they came to the place wherein he was to finish his testimony, with patience, and quietness, and silence, he bowed down his head beneath the sword, [and he remained] motionless, with his face shrouded in the [woman's] garment. And it came to pass that, when the soldiers who had taken Paul away and slain him, returned, the | woman from A. fol. 22b. whom he had taken her garment said unto them, [Page 59] col. 2.

"Where is Paul?" And they answered and said unto her, "We left him in the 'armatên<sup>1</sup>, slain and cast down upon the "ground; with him is thy garment, and his face is wrapped "therein". And the woman, who was in very truth a Christian, said unto them, "Verily ye lie, for Paul and Peter "have at this moment passed before me [coming] towards "me. They were arrayed in apparel which | was more B. fol. "beautiful than royal raiment, and upon their heads were 107a. "two royal and richly ornamented crowns, and their col. 1. "appearance was exceedingly venerable, and hard for the "sight to bear. And as for me, I looked until I was "terrified at the sight of them. And Paul restored to me "my garment which he took out of my hand, and behold "here it is;" and straightway she took it in her hand, and shewed it unto them, saying, | "Behold, here is my A. fol. 23a. "garment which he took from me out of my hand". And col. 1. when they saw it they were astonished with a great astonishment, and they gave glory unto God, saying, "Verily, His power is great, and His Majesty is exceedingly terrible, and His work is marvellous; by reason of

<sup>1</sup> B has ἄσπετος :

"the praise which is ascribed unto Him He is greatly to  
 "be feared, and He is glorified by His saints". And it  
 came to pass that in that hour the Christians believed in  
 God, the Lord Jesus Christ, by reason of this great  
 miracle.

And now, O my brother Timothy, behold, thy  
 B. fol. master hath departed unto our | Lord Jesus Christ, Whom  
 107a. he loved greatly and exceedingly. As Saul the king and  
 col. 2. Jonathan his son were separated neither in the days of  
 their life nor in the day of their death, so shall we not  
 be separated from them against our will. And in this  
 A. fol. 23a. separation there is | no despair, for the separation wherein  
 col. 2. there is despair of hope is when the angels of death  
 separate the one from [Page 60] the other, but not from  
 their kindred; and even if they were remote from the  
 following (*or* train) of the blessed, that is, the pure and  
 spiritual disciples of the Lord, this would not be the  
 cutting off of hope. But the cutting off of hope would  
 be separation from God, for which there can never be  
 any consolation, and no one among the friends of a man  
 who could draw nigh unto him would be able to console  
 him in his trouble. [The souls of the righteous] converse  
 together, and they possess memory, and honour, and they  
 B. fol. have understanding of deeds, and they | comprehend words.  
 107b. And verily, the two Apostles and envoys, Peter and Paul,  
 col. 1. have their habitation in that exalted and heavenly abode,  
 and their souls are held to be worthy of the immortal  
 A. fol. 23b. life which | endureth for ever. And no soul whatsoever  
 col. 1. of all the souls [which are there] is able to join itself  
 unto the souls of the two Apostles, for they are surrounded  
 and shrouded by terrible majesty, and by angels who

strike awe into [those who see them]. Now Paul was one who cursed God through the Law of Moses, but he became one who honoured and glorified Him beyond measure, and above the Law of Moses. And again Paul was a foe and a calumniator of Christ through the Law of the Jews, but he became a calumniator, and a persecutor, and an enemy of the Jews on behalf of Christ; and besides, he became an ally and a friend of Christ, and a teacher, and a preacher, and a legislator for the peoples of the Gentiles, and a pillar of the Church. Paul was the region of the sunrise unto those who believed, and he gathered together the wicked peoples who were | scattered abroad. Paul was shut up in prison and stoned with stones by the people who were evil. Paul was the delight of those who were in sorrow, and he was the | light of ChristianA. fol. 23b. folk. O the depth of the riches of the knowledge [and] col. 2. wisdom of God! Aforetime Paul laid waste and tore down the churches, but afterwards [Page 61] he became one who built them up, and an heir of the kingdom of heaven.

And do thou, O my brother Timothy, understand how to act, and read thou all the Scriptures; and God Almighty, the Father of all mercies, shall make rich thy soul speedily in the heavens. Where is Paul? And where is Peter? Where are these prophets who were indeed divine? Woe unto the children who have lost their fathers and mothers! Woe unto the disciples who cannot find their master! Woe unto the sheep when they have not their shepherd! Woe unto those who are | sick when they cannot find the physician to heal them! O thou Tongue which fashionedst | celestial words! O thou found- B. fol. 108a. col. 1. A. fol. 24a. col. 1.

ation of divine rule which canst [not] be described! Thou Sea which canst not be fathomed! Thou Depth which canst not be found out! Paul was a fortress which could not be overturned, and he was the enricher of the poor and needy, and he was the ravisher and the careful searcher out of the Heavenly Scriptures. If thou hadst told us that thou wouldst remove thyself from us, and that we should be forsaken men and cast away, and that thou wouldst depart speedily to Christ, we might have sought out and found some one who would interpret for us thy homilies, and epistles, and discourses.

And what shall we do now that we have lost the opportunity of meditating upon thy writings which were wont to give us consolation? Woe unto us because of this grief which hath come upon us! O my brother Timothy, thou shalt not read the ancient Scriptures [only], but keep in remembrance the spiritual canons which Paul the chosen one commanded us to observe, and understand that every word which | Paul our master spake from God is a portion which will redeem with power [our] souls, for | even thus did the expounder of divine words command. Now the divine Paul commanded, saying, "Unless there shall be in the church [Page 62] two interpreters, the "Scriptures shall not be read overmuch;" behold now, the master-workman hath taken away the knowledge of all interpretations.

O my brother Timothy, fast, and pray, and keep watch, and make supplication that Christ may make us worthy of the salvation of the divine kingdom, together with Paul our master. Now the disciple of Elijah the prophet enquired of his master with an enquiry which was

exalted above the flesh; do thou then take heed that thou art not kept back from the gift of grace. And why did he become worthy of all gifts? Because he did the will (*or* pleasure) of his master in such a way that the whole 'anâšēr trembled before him; now [the word] 'anâšēr meaneth "the four quarters of the world". And Elisha neither | removed himself nor departed from the service of his master, and although | all men made a mock at him and shewed enmity towards him he never left him. And behold, that same Elijah had many disciples, but of them all there was only one who was nigh unto him, and that was Elisha. And the children of Israel hated him and said unto him, "This is the disciple of the false prophet, this is the disciple of him that contendeth against the Law." But Elisha did not answer them a word concerning this, and for this reason he became worthy of the gift which he asked for from his master.

And again, O my brother Timothy, know thou that Paul had many disciples, yet none of them except thyself endured patiently all the tribulations [which he endured]. Verily thou art [worthy] of the gift of grace, and of the good reward, and of the wages of thy toil, and He will reward thee therewith in return for the hardship, and toil, and | labour | which thou didst endure patiently, together with the [Page 63] blessed and honourable Apostles Peter and Paul, through the prayers of all those who ministered unto them in their imprisonment. And may God the Father of all, the Stablisher of all, and the Sustainer of all, the Guide and Light of all through His only Son and His Holy Ghost, open the heart so that thou mayest celebrate his festivals, and mayest keep his words in

B. fol.

108b.

col. 1.

A. fol. 24b.

col. 1.

A. fol. 24b.

col. 2.

B. fol.

108b.

col. 2.

such wise that thou mayest rejoice with him when he cometh in glory with his Creator.

And now, thou shalt write unto all the churches which shall come after us, generation after generation, that they may pay honour unto this day, and may celebrate the festival with joy, and with the carefulness which is born of the Spirit, even as [the angels] in heaven celebrate a festival in honour of Peter and of Paul, and of all their disciples. But this day | of the festival is not | the day of the festival of all the Apostles, for the day of the festival of each of the Apostles is well known, and hath been set apart, and is recognized and understood, even as it is written in "GADLA IḤAWÂRYÂT", and the day of the ending of the testimony of each one of the Apostles is well known, and hath been set apart and recognized. And they shall honour and magnify this day with joy and gladness, because of the honour and majesty of Peter and Paul who revealed the light, and were the wall, and the pillar, and the ornament, and the joy of the Church. Now on the twelfth day of the month Ḥadâr is the festival of the mighty, and holy, and exalted Archangel Michael, whereon all the heavenly hosts are gathered together to celebrate with joy and gladness the festival to the honour and majesty of the angel of their mighty one, and the captain of their army, Michael the angel of powers. And similarly, all the holy Apostles shall on the fifth day of the month Ḥamlê [Page 64] celebrate a festival both in the heavens and in the earth, and in all the churches, and wheresoever their memorial abideth, and wheresoever [the history of] their contendings, and their discourses are read, and all the Apostles shall

A. fol. 25a.  
col. 1.  
B. fol.  
109a.  
col. 1.

A. fol. 25a.  
col. 2.  
B. fol.  
109a.  
col. 2.

celebrate a festival of our gracious and beloved masters, Peter and Paul, with joy. And do ye likewise, O children of the holy Church, if ye desire the salvation of your souls, celebrate their festival, and honour their memory with holy care and with spiritual desire on the day of the festival of the Apostles, so that your souls may be sanctified and your bodies redeemed. And celebrate ye the festival of the Apostles on this day with praise, and prayer, and thanksgiving, and glorifying, and sanctification, and vigils by night and by day unceasingly; in this manner ye shall celebrate a spiritual festival. And again, celebrate ye the festival of the body with joy; and satisfy | with food the hungry, and clothe ye the naked, and comfort ye those who are in sorrow, so that your festival may be celebrated to the full. For He saith in the [book of the] prophet of our Lord, "Blessed is he who hath "seed in Zion and houses in Jerusalem<sup>1</sup>." [Now let your] seed be in the belly of the poor and needy who hunger, [in the form of] meat, and drink, and good things, that it may take root, and grow up, and bear fruit, and heap up riches for you in Zion, the holy city of the king of kings, and that ye may find spiritual houses in Jerusalem, the holy city and the free, which is in the heavens.

A. fol. 25b.  
col. 1.  
B. fol.  
109b.  
col. 1.

And build ye churches in the names of the Apostles, and in the names of all the saints, and martyrs, and archangels. And ye shall not only build churches, but ye shall ornament them with all honour and with care, and in the love and fear of God Almighty, with all your strength, and with all your heart[s], like [Page 65] the bride

<sup>1</sup> Compare Zechariah viii.

of a king who is about to give his daughter to the son of a king. In this wise shall ye make beautiful a church when ye have built it, so that | God Almighty may see the beauty of your works, and may accept your labour, and may multiply your reward, and may give unto you His good things so that ye may inherit His kingdom, even as it is written, "He will reward every man according to his work, whether it be good or whether it be evil"<sup>1</sup>. And as for you, may He do for you according to the multitude of His mercy; and may He help those of you who do His will; and may He make pure your bodies and sanctify your souls, and heal the sickness of your souls, and your bodies, and lengthen your days, and multiply His blessing in the houses of all those of you who are here. And of those who are gathered together here to celebrate the festival of the blessed Apostles He will enlighten the eyes of your hearts, through the prayer and petition of the pure Virgin, the mother of God, MARY the holy woman who brought life unto all creation; and through the | supplications of the exalted Archangels Michael and Gabriel; and through the prayer of Saint John, who is more exalted than all the saints and prophets and than all those | who are born of women; and by the contendings and the blood of the victorious martyrs. And may He put an end to, and destroy, and keep away from you the works of devils. And now to the Father be praise, and to the Son be thanksgiving, and to the Holy Spirit be dominion, and worship, and blessing, as is meet always and at every season, on earth and in heaven, and at all

---

<sup>1</sup> St. Matt. xvi. 27; 2 Cor. v. 10.

times, and henceforth, and for ever and ever. Amen, Amen, and Amen.

Here endeth the Homiletic Epistle of Abba Dionysius [Page 66] [which was written] to be a consolation to Abbâ Timothy [at] the time of his sorrow, by the help of Jesus Christ our Lord, to Whom be glory for ever and ever! Amen.

## COLOPHON.

The honourable, and spiritually minded, and blessed, and pure father, Abbûna Mark of Dabra Sabrà, was concerned in the preparation of this book for the Ethiopian brethren [and] monks, and our brother Krêstadâlû (Christodoulos) was wont to read [it] unto them, and to bring them consolation thereby. May our good God lengthen his days, and make beautiful the days of his life, and may his | prayer be received according to the greatness of his love, even as He received the son of the wise man who repented and returned unto his father, by the intercession of the angels [and] spiritual beings, and by the contendings of the victorious martyrs, and by the prayers of all the saints who have pleased God for ever and ever! Amen.

O ye my brethren who have gathered yourselves together to hear the words of this book, may God make your portion to be with the blessed Apostles! Amen.

B. fol.  
110a.  
col. 2.

## THE PREACHING OF SIMON, THE SON OF CLEOPAS.<sup>1</sup>

A. fol. 26a. [Page 67] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE  
col. 2. SON, AND OF THE HOLY SPIRIT [ONE GOD]. IN THE NAME  
B. fol. OF THE HOLY AND GLORIOUS TRINITY, THE SUSTAINER  
111a. OF ALL, THE MERCIFUL AND GRACIOUS.  
col. 1.

The preaching of the blessed Saint Simon, the son of Cleopas, who was surnamed Judas, which is interpreted Nathaniel, who became Bishop of Jerusalem after James, the brother of our Lord. May his prayer and blessing be with his handmaiden Walatta Madhan! In the peace of God, Amen.

And it came to pass that, when the Apostles were gathered together on the Mount of Olives that they might divide all the countries of the world among them, and as they were praying and blessing God Almighty, our Lord Jesus Christ came among them and said unto them, "May the peace of My Father dwell upon you, O My "holy disciples." And they cast lots, and the lot went forth to Judas the Galilean to go to the country of  
B. fol. Samaria, and to preach therein the Gospel of our Lord  
111a. Jesus Christ. And Simon | answered and said unto our  
col. 2.

---

<sup>1</sup> See LIPSIVS, *Apostelgeschichten*, Vol. ii. pt. 1. p. 142 ff., and p. 152.

| Lord, "Be Thou but with us, O Master, in whatever  
 "place we may be, and we will endure whatsoever cometh;  
 "only let our father Peter go with us, so that he may  
 "bring me unto the country of Samaria." And God (*or*  
 the Lord) said unto him, "Peter's lot is to go to the  
 "country of Rome and to preach therein; but he shall go  
 "with thee until he shall have brought thee [to thy country]  
 "in peace. And after thou hast made an end of thy  
 "preaching and of thy tidings which thou shalt proclaim  
 "among the people thereof, thou shalt return to Jerusalem;  
 "and after the death of James the Just thou shalt be  
 "appointed Bishop therein; [Page 68] and after him thou  
 "shalt finish thy strife, even as James the Just finished  
 "his strife in that same place. Behold now, O My chosen  
 "one Simon, go forth in peace; and may the might of  
 "My Father give thee help;" and our Lord blessed him  
 and all the [other] Apostles, and He went up into heaven  
 with great glory.

And it came to pass after our Lord had gone up  
 into | heaven that Simon rose | up and prayed; and he  
 came to Jerusalem, and Peter also was with him. And  
 they went first of all to Samaria and preached unto the  
 people there the story of the Gospel; and Simon the  
 Apostle went among their assemblies and preached unto  
 them in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ. And it  
 came to pass that, when the Jews who dwelt in that  
 place heard [thereof], they rose up against him, and they  
 beat him sorely and with many stripes, and then they  
 dragged him outside the city; and Peter laid hold upon  
 him and went forth therefrom. But Simon returned unto  
 the people, and stood up among those who were gathered

A. fol. 26b.  
col. 1.

A. fol. 26b.  
col. 2.  
B. fol.  
111b.  
col. 1.

together [there], and he dwelt with them for three days and preached unto them the Name of Christ; and among them were certain men who would not believe. Now at the end of the three days the son of the chief of the synagogue, whose name was James, fell sick and died. And a certain man among those who had believed upon the word of Simon came unto the father of the young man who was dead, and said unto him, "Behold, there

A. fol. 27a. "is an | Apostle of Christ here; let him pray over the young

col. 1.

B. fol.

111b.

col. 2.

"man." And the man went | quickly and called the Apostle of our Lord Jesus Christ, and he came with joy, and stood over the young man who was dead. And he said unto the father of the young man who was dead, "Dost thou believe in Him Whom they crucified, and that "He is the Son of God, and that through Him thou wilt "see the glory of God?" And the father of the young man who was dead said unto him, "If thou raise up my "son from the [Page 69] dead, and I see him alive "[again], I will believe in Jesus Christ Who was crucified, "and [will believe] that He is the Son of the Living God." Then the Apostle turned his face to the East and prayed, saying, "O my Lord Jesus Christ, Who wast crucified in "the days of Pontius Pilate, Who didst prepare me for

A. fol. 27a. "this work that I might preach in Thy | blessed and

col. 2.

"Holy Name, Who didst suffer for our sakes that Thou "mightest redeem us out of the hands of those that hate "us, look now upon this young man who hath died, and "in Thy good pleasure command that he may be raised "up; and let him praise Thy Name this day among the "people of this city, so that they may believe in Thy "holy Name."

And it came to pass that when Simon, the blessed Apostle, had said those words he turned his face towards the place where the young man was, and he said, "In the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit, rise up, so that all those who are gathered together may see thee alive, and may believe in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ." Then straightway the young man | opened his eyes and rose up and sat down; and Simon commanded that they should bring unto him food that he might eat. Now when those who were gathered together saw this wonderful thing they marvelled; and they all drew nigh and bowed down to the ground before the Apostle, and they all believed in God, and said, "O God, the God of | Simon, the Apostle of our A. fol. 27b.  
B. fol. 112a.  
col. 1.

"Lord Jesus Christ, we believe in Jesus Christ, [and we col. 1.  
"believe] that He is the son of the Living God." And the father of the young man and all those [who were gathered together there] bowed down at the feet of the holy man, the Apostle, and said unto him, "O master, "how shall we be saved?" And he said unto them, "Believe ye with all your hearts, and ye shall be saved." Then he taught them the Holy Scriptures, and he baptized all those who dwelt in the city in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, [Page 70] and of the Holy Spirit; and he administered unto them the Holy | Mysteries, and B. fol. 112a.  
col. 2.  
commanded them to build churches. And he appointed the chief of the synagogue, whose name was Cornelius, to be their Bishop; and he set over them priests and deacons, and he gave them the Holy Gospel, and he dwelt with them for thirty days, teaching them the Law of God.

And it came to pass after these things that he returned  
A. fol. 27b. to Jerusalem. And when the Jews had slain Saint | James,  
col. 2. his disciples who were in Jerusalem took Simon, and  
appointed him to be Bishop in Jerusalem; and he taught  
them the Word of God, and declared unto them that  
which was in the Gospel, and he brought salvation unto  
their souls. Now the Jews were exceedingly angry with  
him; but he continued in Jerusalem, glorifying God our  
Lord Jesus Christ at all seasons and every day. Amen,  
Amen, and Amen.

---

## THE MARTYRDOM OF SIMON, THE SON OF CLEOPAS.

IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE SON, AND  
OF THE HOLY SPIRIT [ONE GOD]. IN THE NAME OF  
THE HOLY AND GLORIOUS TRINITY, THE SUSTAINER OF  
ALL, THE MERCIFUL AND GRACIOUS!

B. fol.  
113a.  
col. 1.

Here beginneth the Martyrdom of Simon, the son of Cleopas,  
the Apostle of our Lord Jesus Christ. Now he finished his contend-  
ing on the tenth day of the month Hamle<sup>1</sup>; may his prayer and bless-  
ing be with his handmaiden Walatta Madhan! In the peace of God.  
Amen.

And it came to pass after the death of Saint James  
the Just, Simon, the son of | Cleopas (now his name was A. fol. 28a.  
Judas), was appointed Bishop in Jerusalem after him, and col. 1.  
his days were one hundred and twenty years; [Page 71]  
and at the end of his days he said, "I wish that my  
"blood may be shed in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ."  
And he built churches in Jerusalem, and he appointed  
priests and deacons to them, that they might redeem the  
children of men from the dominion of Satan, and make  
them ready for God's kingdom. The first church which  
he built he called by the name of MARY, the holy Virgin,

---

<sup>1</sup> L. e., July 4.

B. fol. the bearer of our | Lord; [the second church which he  
 113a. built he called by the name of . . . . .];<sup>1</sup> the third church  
 col. 2. he called by the name of Michael, the Archangel, who  
 intercedeth for the whole race of the sons of men, that  
 [God] may put away punishment from them and that  
 His blessing and mercy may descend upon them; and  
 A. fol. 28a. the fourth church he called by | the name of the  
 col. 2. Apostles.

And it came to pass that Simon wished to destroy  
 the faith of the Jews, and their polluted worship, and  
 their evil rule; therefore he continued to teach all the  
 people the Word of God, [and admonished them] to fill  
 the church[es] which he had built, [and instructed them]  
 in the knowledge of God, and it was plain unto all alike,  
 from the greatest even unto the least. Then all their  
 men believed in the preaching of the Apostle, and at  
 length all the people of the city forsook the assembly of  
 the people of the Jews and followed after the righteous-  
 ness which the Apostle taught them from God Almighty.  
 And when the Jews heard the fair words of the story

B. fol. of the blessed | Apostle, and how he desired to put an  
 113b. end to their Law (*or* religion) and their gods, they gather-  
 col. 1. ed themselves together, both great and small, and they  
 A. fol. 28b. all | came together against the Apostle that they might  
 col. 1. kill him. Now the Jews were a people who wrought  
 evil, and therefore they all gathered themselves together  
 against Simon in anger and indignation; and they bound  
 him and brought him before Daryânôs (i. e. Trajan) the  
 governor. And they were all testifying [Page 72] against

<sup>1</sup> The text is here corrupt.

him before the governor, and they said unto him, "Hearken unto us, and we will tell thee what this sorcerer hath been doing." Then the governor believed all the words which they spake unto him, and he was angry with the Apostle, and said unto him, "Unto thee I speak, 'O worker of iniquity. Tell me, art thou not a magician, and dost thou not work sorceries upon all the people of the city?'" And the Apostle said unto him, "Hearken thou unto what I shall say unto thee, O governor; thou hast a heart, but it is without understanding. I am not a magician, and I have no knowledge of the art of sorcery, but I am a servant of Jesus Christ, the God of all creation, the King of kings, the mighty | God, Who A. fol. 28b. hath power over all the gods of the nations to destroy col. 2. them." And it came to pass that when the governor heard | these words from the Apostle he was angry with B. fol. 113b. him with a great anger, and he delivered him over unto col. 2. evil men that they might crucify him. Then the Jews gathered themselves together against him, and they took out the blessed Apostle Simon, the son of Cleopas, that they might crucify him, even as the wicked governor had commanded; and they hung him upon a cross, and scourged him with scourgings until he died. Now he finished his testimony [on the tenth day of] the month Hamlè, by the good pleasure of God Almighty, the Sustainer of all, to Whom be glory and honour for ever and ever! Amen, Amen, and Amen.

## THE PREACHING OF SAINT JAMES THE JUST.

A. fol. 29a. [Page 73] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE  
col. 1. SON, AND OF THE HOLY SPIRIT [ONE GOD].  
B. fol.

114a.  
col. 1.

Here beginneth the Preaching of James the Just, the Apostle of our Lord Jesus Christ, who was surnamed the brother of our Lord in the flesh. Now the lot which went out to him was that he should preach in Jerusalem, and after he had preached unto the people thereof, he became Bishop in Jerusalem, and he died therein in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ. In the peace of God, Amen. May his prayer and his blessing be with his handmaiden Walatta Madhan!

And it came to pass that, when the Apostles were gathered together that the countries of the world might be divided among them, our Lord Jesus Christ sat in their midst and said unto them, "My peace be upon you, "O My holy Apostles! As My Father sent Me to the "world, even so do I send you that ye may preach

A. fol. 29a. "throughout the whole world the knowledge of | My hea-  
col. 2. "venly Father." And for this reason they cast lots, and

the lot came to James to preach the Holy Gospel in Jerusalem and in all the | districts thereof. Therefore did

B. fol.

114a.

col. 2.

he bow down before God and say, "O God, Thou know-  
"est that the Jews will seek to kill us when we preach

"Thy resurrection and the Holy Gospel. And are not  
 "the command and the lot which have gone forth to me  
 "great? Yet I am only one, and I know that the Jews  
 "will not listen unto the words which I shall speak unto  
 "them. I beseech Thee then, O Lord, send me to the  
 "Gentiles, together with my brethren, and I will do every-  
 "thing which Thou shalt command me to do, and I will  
 "bear patiently all the sufferings which shall come upon  
 "me for Thy Name's sake." And our Lord answered  
 [Page 74] and | said unto James, "Hearken, and I will A. fol. 29b.  
 "tell thee; but thou must needs preach [the Gospel] in col. 1.  
 "the place which hath gone forth to thee by lot. Behold,  
 "I have left Peter, [My] chosen one, to toil for your sakes.  
 "Thou shalt, however, be Bishop in Jerusalem, and [the  
 "Jews] shall hearken unto thy words, and thou shalt end  
 "thy contending nobly, and thy grave shall be therein. | B. fol.  
 "Rise up and finish that for which I have prepared thee." 114b.  
 col. 1.

And James said unto Him, "O Lord, let but my  
 "father Peter help me; and I will bear everything which  
 "shall befall me for Thy honourable Name's sake;" and  
 our Lord gave them the salutation of peace, and went  
 up into heaven with great glory. Now the Apostles were  
 filled with the power of the Spirit, and they prayed in  
 the Mount of Olives. And Peter answered and said unto  
 the Apostles, "Let us go with our brother James, so that  
 "we may establish him in his bishopric." Then Peter  
 rose up and all | those who were with him, and they A. fol. 29b.  
 stretched out their hands and prayed, saying, "O God, col. 2.  
 "Who dost sustain all creation, hearken unto us. We  
 "know that Thou wilt not be far from us in whatsoever  
 "we require of Thee. Grant Thou unto our brother

"James the power to give consolation unto Thy people  
 "whom Thou hast brought back to him, and may he  
 "console them, even as Thou hast consoled him." And  
 it came to pass that when they had prayed their prayer,  
 and each of them had given him the salutation of peace,  
 they brought James into Jerusalem, and he preached in  
 the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ; and many men be-  
 lieved in his story.

B. fol.  
 114b.  
 col. 2.

Now, when the Jews saw James preaching in the  
 Name of Christ, certain of them wished to slay him, and  
 they were not able to find an opportunity to do this,  
 because of those who had believed in God through him;  
 and when he knew that they were conspiring together  
 against him, he went forth to the regions round about  
 the city, and he preached | unto them in the Name of  
 our Lord Jesus Christ. And it came to pass that when  
 he had come [Page 75] into those regions he found a  
 certain aged man [there], and he said unto him, "I desire  
 "that thou wilt let me abide with thee;" and the aged  
 man said unto him, "Take thy rest until to-morrow." And  
 the Apostle departed to come unto him in his house,  
 and on the way [thither] he found a man who had a  
 devil in him. Now when Satan saw James the Apostle,  
 he cried out and said, "What hast thou to do with me,  
 "O Apostle of Christ? Hast thou come hither to destroy |  
 "me?" And the Apostle said unto him, "O unclean  
 "spirit, make an end of thy speech, and go forth from  
 "this man;" therefore Satan went forth from the man in  
 the form of fire. And it came to pass that when the  
 aged man saw this miracle he fell at the feet of the  
 Apostle and said, "I am not worthy that thou shouldst

A. fol. 30a.  
 col. 1.  
  
 B. fol.  
 115a.  
 col. 1.

"come into my house: but tell me what I shall do that  
 "I and all the people of my house may be saved." | A. fol. 30a.  
col. 2.  
 Therefore the Apostle glorified the name of Jesus Christ,  
 and said, "Master, I give thanks unto thee that thou hast  
 "made fair my way;" and he returned to the man and  
 spake unto him the word which would save him, and he  
 taught him that our Lord Jesus Christ [is God]. So the  
 aged man brought him into his house; and all the people  
 thereof were gathered together unto him, and he taught  
 them and made them to know the faith, and he baptized  
 them in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and  
 of the Holy Spirit, and he made them to be heirs in the  
 Holy Mysteries, that is to say, the Body of our Lord  
 and His precious Blood.

And it came to pass that, when the people of the  
 country heard [of James], they brought | unto him all B. fol.  
115a.  
col. 2.  
 their folk who were sick with sicknesses of every kind,  
 and he healed them; and he appointed priests and dea-  
 cons for them, and he made the old man bishop, and  
 he gave him the Gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ. Then  
 James went forth into all the districts which were round  
 about | Jerusalem, and preached therein; and then he A. fol. 30b.  
col. 1.  
 returned to Jerusalem. And the faithful heard [Page 76]  
 of the coming of James (now he was [surnamed] the  
 Just) into Jerusalem, and they all came to him, praising  
 God our Lord Jesus Christ, with His Father, and the  
 Holy Spirit, for ever and ever. Amen and Amen.

## THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT JAMES THE JUST.

B. fol. | IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE SON, AND  
115b. | OF THE HOLY SPIRIT [ONE GOD].  
col. 1.

Here beginneth the Martyrdom of Saint James the Just, the blessed Apostle, which took place on the eighteenth day of the month of Hamle.<sup>1</sup> In the peace of our Lord, Amen. May his prayer and his blessing be with his handmaiden Walatta Madhan!

And it came to pass that when James returned to Jerusalem he preached unto the people in that city in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ; and many believed on him by reason of the signs and wonders which God made to go forth by the hand of His holy Apostle, and  
A. fol. 30b. God our Lord made him worthy of the | episcopal throne  
col. 2. in Jerusalem. And when he had become Bishop God made manifest the healing of many folk who were sick of every kind of disease. Now the governor of the city was a lover of money, and he hated Saint James because Satan stirred him up against him; and he had no children because God Almighty, Whose Name is great, was rebuking him for the multitude of his | sins. And meanwhile

B. fol.  
115b.  
col. 2.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., July 12.

his wife was entreating God to give her children, and she was wont to do deeds of kindness unto all those who were in affliction, and to send gifts and offerings to the sanctuary of the church daily without her husband having knowledge thereof, because of his great greed, and every day of her life she sorrowed exceedingly, and made entreaty [to God] for children. And it came to pass that although her entreaty waxed great the glorious and holy God did not grant her desire, because | He knew A. fol. 31a.  
col. 1. that [Page 77] good was about to come upon her. And when the glorious fame of Saint James and of his faith had come<sup>1</sup> [to the city], now God was with him in all his work, she rose up with joy and gladness, and came to Saint James in true belief that at the request of the saint God would give her that which she desired. And it came to pass that when the saint knew that Têryô-bastâ (*or* Piobsata), the wife of 'Ammân'yôs (Aumanius *or* Ananus) the governor, wished to come to him to be blessed | by him his wonder increased, and he said, "This B. fol.  
116a.  
col. 1. "is a great matter;" now he well knew her husband's wickedness, and that he had commanded her[not] to come to him. And when she had come into his presence she bowed her head, and prostrated herself at his feet, and said unto him, "O holy father, I beseech thee to grant the "request of thy handmaiden, and to hearken unto her "words: | I have dwelt with my husband for twenty years A. fol. 31a.  
col. 2. "and I have not gotten a child, and by reason of this "matter I am exceedingly sorrowful."

And Saint James said unto her, "Dost thou believe

<sup>1</sup> The text is corrupt here and in many other places in this section of the work.

"in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, and that He is  
 "able to give thee children?" And she answered with  
 her whole heart, and said unto him, "I do believe." And  
 he said unto her, "If thou believest it shall be unto thee  
 "according to thy belief;" and she gave unto him the  
 "blessing" (i. e., alms), which was with her, that he might  
 give it unto those who were in sorrow and affliction; and  
 she came unto her house glorifying God. Now what the  
 holy man had said came to pass, for after this thing  
 God hearkened unto her petition and | gave unto her  
 that which she desired, and she conceived and gave birth  
 unto a son whom she called James, according to the name  
 of Saint James; then she took her son and much possess-  
 ions, and came to the saint, and he blessed her. | And  
 she said unto him, "O servant of the Good God, behold,  
 "God hath hearkened unto thy petition, and He hath given  
 "unto me that [Page 78] I asked for; and this child, this  
 "fruit which thou seest in my arms [hath come] through  
 "thy prayer; and I beseech thee, O my father, to bless  
 "him with all thy heart." And the saint took him from  
 her hands, and he blessed him with all his heart, and he  
 gave him back to his mother and sent them away to  
 their house in peace.

And it came to pass that when Aumanus (*or* Ananus)  
 heard [of it], he was angry with an exceedingly great  
 anger because his wife had done [this thing]. And he  
 gathered together unto him all the nobles of the city,  
 and said unto them, "Are ye going to do nothing in this  
 "matter? Behold, the Bishop is destroying the city and  
 "leading astray all the people, and he wisheth that all  
 "those who are in our territories shall be of his opinion,

B. fol.  
 116a.  
 col. 2.

A. fol. 31b.  
 col. 1.

"and [under] his teaching." | And they all rose up and  
 came together, and said, "What then can | we do unto  
 "him?" And certain men of them said, "Behold, he will  
 "come to the feast, and if ye desire to lay hold upon  
 "him we will lie in wait [for him] in the synagogue."  
 Now many men were called James, but James the Just  
 was not of them. And besides this God Almighty had  
 chosen him and had sanctified him from his mother's  
 womb, like Jeremiah the prophet,<sup>1</sup> and he neither drank  
 wine all the days of his life nor ate meat wherefrom the  
 blood had gone not forth; and a razor had never gone  
 up upon his head, and he never took a bath,<sup>2</sup> and he  
 put on no clothing except one loose garment all the days  
 of his life. And he continued in the sanctuary always,  
 and he stood up, and watched, and prayed humbly unto  
 God that He would forgive the sins of the people, until  
 at length his foot swelled by reason of his prolonged  
 standing and prostrations; and it was for this reason he  
 was called "James the | Just." Now the Jews knew that  
 he was both | just and sincere towards them, and that he  
 was of the type of the Prophets. And this [Page 79]  
 James was the youngest of the sons of Joseph the car-  
 penter, who had four male children and two daughters;  
 and all Joseph's children married except James, and he  
 became an orphan. And it came to pass that, when  
 our Lady MARY became the bride of Joseph, she found  
 James as a little boy in [his house], and she tended him

B. fol.

116b.

col. 1.

A. fol. 31b.

col. 2.

A. fol. 32a.

col. 1.

B. fol.

116b.

col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> Jeremiah i. 5.

<sup>2</sup> Or, "he never washed in the house of washing." See LIRSIIUS,  
op. cit., vol. ii. p. 240.

and taught him the fear of God, and for this reason they used to call our Lady MARY the "mother of James."

And it came to pass that, when James had been appointed Bishop in Jerusalem, multitudes believed on our Lord through him, because they became convinced of his sincerity. Then a great uproar took place among the Jews, and among the Scribes, and among the Pharisees, because all the people | said that Jesus was the Christ; and they came to James that they might take counsel with him concerning Him. And they said unto him, | "We beseech thee to set thyself at the head of all the multitude, for they will not believe that Jesus is the Christ Who shall come. Now behold, all the people will come unto Jerusalem at the Passover, do thou then speak unto them and make their hearts to rejoice, for we know that thou dost not speak any false thing whatsoever; and besides, thou art unto them as a prophet. And we will make them to hear concerning thy graciousness, and that there is no unchastity in thee; accept now our petition, and let them all hear thy voice; and thou shalt go up unto the upper portion of the synagogue, and we will stand there until all the people shall hear thy voice."

And, behold, of the children of Israel multitudes of the people, of the tribes and of the Scribes and Pharisees, went up [to the synagogue] wishing that James would tell them that | Jesus was the son of Joseph, and that He was his brother; and they commanded the deputy of the congregation to order the multitudes to keep silence and to hearken unto the voice of [James] the Just [Page 80]. And they all | cried out, and said, "We have upon us the desire to hear, and we will not be denied, for the people

"are made to err by the evilness of the teaching of the Jews, and they have a love for the belief in Jesus Who was crucified; tell us now, O just one, Who is Jesus the King?" And James answered and said unto them in a loud voice, "Why do ye enquire of me concerning Jesus the Lover of men? Behold, He sitteth on the right hand [of God in] the majesty of the Father, and He shall come upon a cloud of heaven and shall judge both the living and the dead." And many people believed by reason of what they had heard from James, and they glorified Christ, saying, "Hosanna to the Son of David."

And it came to pass that when the priests and the Pharisees heard these words, | although they pretended to A. fol. 32b. col. 2. be afraid in the presence of the people, yet were they filled with wrath in their hearts against James the Just; and they went back and cried out to him, and said unto him, "Tell us now, of whom is Jesus the Son?" Then he said unto them, "He is in truth the Son of | God the B. fol. 117b. col. 1. Father, Who begot Him before the world, and the Virgin MARY gave birth to Him after [the appointed number of] days.<sup>1</sup> I believe in Him, and in His Father, Who is of old,<sup>2</sup> and [in] the Holy Spirit, the glorious Trinity which shall have its being unto the end of the world, and for ever."

And it came to pass that when the chief priests, and the Scribes, and the Pharisees heard these words from him, they gnashed their teeth at him, and they stopped their ears, so that they might not hear the voice of God

<sup>1</sup> Or, "in the last days."

<sup>2</sup> Literally, "His Father, the first One."

from the mouth of Saint James. Then they took counsel together each with the other, and said, "We have done  
 A.fol.33a. "evil, for we have made him to be a witness unto the |  
 col. 1. "people that Jesus is the Son of God Almighty; but let  
 "us go up against him, and slay him, so that the multitude  
 "may not believe in Christ." Then was fulfilled the  
 prophecy of Isaiah [Page 81] the prophet who said, "The  
 "righteous man shall be rewarded, for he that is a harsh  
 "man shall not be the anointed one over us; and they  
 "shall eat the fruit of their evil work."<sup>1</sup> And the Jews went  
 up against James in wrath, and they thrust him off from  
 the pinnacle of the temple and threw him down there-  
 from, and he fell upon his face, and he knelt down upon  
 his knees like Stephen Protomartyr, and he made suppli-  
 cation unto God, saying, "O God, Thou merciful One, be  
 "merciful unto them, and shew compassion unto them, for  
 "they know not what they do;" and they cast him down  
 as he was making this petition.

Now there was a certain priest of the children of  
 Ahaz<sup>2</sup> who bore witness on his behalf. And Jeremiah the  
 A.fol.33a. prophet cried out unto them, | saying, "Wait ye a little,  
 col. 2. "What then is this which ye will do unto the man of  
 "God the Good? Behold, he prayeth unto God that He  
 "will forgive you your sins." And there was among the  
 Jews a certain beater of clothes (i. e., fuller) who with-  
 drew not at the voice of James, and he seized the piece  
 of wood wherewith he was wont to beat clothes, and  
 smote James the Just upon his head with it; and James

<sup>1</sup> Compare Isaiah iii. 10, 11.

<sup>2</sup> Or Ahab; see LIPSIVS, *op. cit.*, vol. ii, part 2, p. 252.

yielded up his spirit on the eighteenth day of the month Hamlê, and he ended his contending, and they buried him in the synagogue.

And it came to pass after the death of James the Just, the Apostle, and Martyr, and Bishop, who died in the Name of Jesus Christ, there came great wrath upon all the Jews and upon those who dwelt in Jerusalem, but it was the greater upon those who had sought to slay James the Just, the Apostle. And 'Esbâsyânôs (Vespasian) the Emperor besieged them and spoiled their city and country, and carried them away | captives, and every day<sup>A. fol. 33b.</sup> their disgrace was increased, and they were brought <sup>col. 1.</sup> lower by reason of the evil which they had wrought against our Lord Jesus Christ and against His saints. And may it be that we and all Christians who call themselves by His new Name may find mercy and forgiveness [Page 82] at the awful place, when our Lord Jesus Christ cometh to judge the living and the dead; to Him be glory and honour for ever and ever! Amen, Amen, and Amen.

Here endeth the Martyrdom of Saint James the Just. May his prayer protect us all the children of this place for ever! Amen.

## THE PREACHING OF SAINT BARTHOLOMEW IN THE OASIS.

A. fol. 33b. [Page 83] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE  
col. 2. SON, AND OF THE HOLY SPIRIT [ONE GOD].  
B. fol.

132a.  
col. 1.

Here beginneth the preaching of the blessed Bartholomew, the  
Apostle, and the history [of his life] in the country of 'Elwâh.<sup>1</sup> In the  
peace of God. May his prayer and blessing be with his handmaiden  
Walatta Madhan! Amen.

And it came to pass that, when the Apostles were  
gathered together to divide the countries of the world  
[among them], the lot went forth to Bartholomew to  
depart into the country of the Oasis and to preach therein  
in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ. Then he said  
unto Peter, the chief of the Apostles, "O my father Peter,  
"I have neither entered into this country, nor do I know  
"the speech of those who dwell therein; I beseech thee

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., the Oasis. 'Elwâh = الواح (plural, واحلت). Coptic  
Ⲡⲓⲁⲩⲉ. The Oasis here referred to is probably the Oasis of Al-  
Bahnasâ, واح البهنسا, Coptic Ⲡⲓⲁⲩ ⲡⲉⲩⲓⲕⲉ, i. e., Oasis Parva,  
where there was a church named after Bartholomew. Abû Şalih (ed.  
Evetts, p. 215) says that this saint was martyred there, and that his  
body is in the church of Karbil. The Oases are described by Yâkût,  
tom iv. p. 873. See LIPSÍUS, *Apostelgeschichten*, vol. i., part 2, p. 86.

"to go forth with me, and to bring me thereunto; then  
 "shall the will of God Almighty be done." And Peter  
 answered and said unto him, "I may not go forth with | A. fol. 34a.  
 "thee alone, for I am commanded by God Almighty to col. 1.  
 "bring each and every one of you into the country  
 "[wherein he shall preach]."

Then Peter and Bartholomew arose and went forth  
 to seek out the country of the Oasis. | And it came to pass B. fol.  
 that, as they were journeying through the desert country, 132a.  
 they found a certain man who was the possessor of [merch- col. 2.  
 andize]; now he had servants with him, and ten camels.  
 And when Peter and Bartholomew saw him, they went  
 to him, and said unto him, "Peace be unto thee, O master  
 "of camels;" and he said unto them, "Peace be unto you."  
 And Peter said unto him, "Whither goest thou, O man,  
 "with these camels?" Then the man said unto them, "To  
 "the country of the Oasis." And Peter said unto him, "Per-  
 "form unto us an act of kindness, and take us, [Page 84]  
 "and set us down in [that] country." And the master of  
 the camels said unto them, "What thing seek ye [to do]  
 "by entering into this | country? for ye have no merchan- A. fol. 34a.  
 "dize wherewith to traffic therein." And Peter said unto col. 2.  
 him, "It is not with us as thou thinkest, for we have no  
 "merchandize to sell, and we do not wish to buy [any].  
 "We are the servants of God the Good, Whose Name is  
 "Jesus Christ, and we are His chosen ones. We are twelve  
 "men, and we teach His commandments; and He hath  
 "placed in our hands [the power] to heal those who are  
 "sick of every kind of disease, and He hath commanded  
 "us to journey through all countries, and to tell the story  
 "[of the Gospel] in His Name, and we command men not

B. fol. "to abide in their sins | and error, but to repent through  
 132b. "Him so that He may forgive them their transgressions,  
 col. 1. "and may make them fit for His kingdom. And it is by  
 "reason of this command that we have entered into [this]  
 "country, to bring unto those who are therein this  
 "command which our Master (*or* Teacher) hath taught us,  
 "so that they may hear, and may forsake their works of  
 "time past, and may repent, and may receive the life  
 "which is for ever."

And it came to pass that when the man had heard  
 these words he said unto them, "Then ye belong to the  
 A. fol. 34b. "people of | Jesus! We cannot allow you to come into  
 col. 1. "our country. For we have heard concerning you that  
 "ye lead astray the people, and that ye separate wives  
 "from their husbands, and that ye say that a man cannot  
 "have life except he have purity and that without it he  
 "is not able to see God Almighty . . .<sup>1</sup> Formerly when I  
 "went forth from my friend and returned unto him, as  
 B. fol. "soon as he saw me | he was wont to rejoice in me; but  
 132b. "this time he hath not lifted up his head even to say  
 col. 2. "unto me, 'Peace be unto thee,' by reason of the greatness  
 "of his sorrow. And I asked him for what reason he  
 "was in sorrow, and he said unto me, 'I have been thus  
 "'sorrowful in mind for the last ten days by reason of my  
 "'wife.' Now certain men of your company came into  
 "his country, and commanded all the [Page 85] people  
 "thereof according to the words which ye speak; and  
 "his wife received their words and forsook her husband.  
 "And I am afraid for myself lest, when ye have arrived

<sup>1</sup> A number of words have been dropped by the scribe here.

"in | my country and ye teach the people [thereof] A. fol. 34b.  
 "according to your doctrine, my wife will hearken unto col. 2.  
 "you, and will believe in you, and will separate herself  
 "from me."

And it came to pass that when the Apostles heard  
 the words of this man they wished to go back [to Jeru-  
 salem], being exceedingly sorrowful. And Bartholomew  
 said unto Peter, "How can we by going back arrive in the  
 "country [of the Oasis]?" And Peter said, "I would give  
 "thee counsel on one thing. I am afraid that when  
 "suffering shall come upon thee thou | wilt say, 'It was B. fol.  
 "Peter who counselled me [to come hither].' This country, 133a.  
 "however, is thy portion, and by the will of God col. 1.  
 "Jesus Christ, Who desireth to bring salvation unto all  
 "mankind, I will not separate myself from thee until I have  
 "brought thee into the country." And Bartholomew said  
 unto him, "Rise up, O beloved father, let us change our  
 "apparel and disguise ourselves, and let us gird up our | A. fol. 35a.  
 "loins, and journey quickly along the road, so that we col. 1.  
 "may get in front of the master of the camels without  
 "his knowing who we are. And it shall come to pass that  
 "when he findeth us (now we will at the same time look  
 "for him), we will ask him to carry us upon his camels  
 "and to bring us into the city. And if he make enquiries  
 "of us, and say unto us, 'What is your business in the  
 "'country?' thou shalt say unto him, 'I have a desire to  
 "'sell this slave therein.' And if he shall say unto thee,  
 "'What is his trade?' thou shalt say unto him, 'He is a  
 "'vineyard keeper.' And when I have entered into the  
 "country which God hath given unto me I will perform  
 "the work which He hath commanded me to do therein."

And Peter said unto Bartholomew, "The counsel  
 "which thou hast spoken is good;" and [they performed  
 B. fol. all] concerning which they | had taken counsel, and they  
 133a. went on their way in front of the man [with the camels  
 col. 2. and waited] until he came up to them. And it came to  
 pass that when they met together Peter said unto him,  
 "O good man, wilt thou let us ride with thee on these  
 "camels to the country of the Oasis?" And the man  
 A. fol. 35a. said unto them, [Page 86] "What | is thy business in  
 col. 2. "the city?" And Peter said unto him, "I desire to enter  
 "therein and to sell this my slave." Now when the man  
 heard these words he rejoiced with great joy, and he  
 made his camels to kneel down and said, "This day is a  
 "happy (*or* lucky) one for me. For I, and those who  
 "are with me, and my camels, have been far away from  
 "my habitation for many days looking for a slave whom  
 "I could buy, but I have not found one, and now God  
 "hath brought thee unto me." And the man said unto  
 Peter, "Tell me what his trade is, and I will buy him  
 "from thee, and will give thee his price." And Peter  
 said unto him, "He is a vineyard keeper, and he hath  
 B. fol. "the knowledge and skill | how to renew those which  
 133b. "have fallen under a blight." And the man said unto  
 col. 1. him, "Since it is thus I wish to make him chief of the  
 "keepers of the vineyards, for I have many vines;" and  
 as they agreed with each other for thirty staters, the  
 A. fol. 35b. man | gave the money unto Peter, and Peter gave Bartho-  
 col. 1. lomew over unto the man.

Then the man said unto Peter, "Come with me into  
 "my house, for, behold, thou hast taken from me the  
 "price of thy slave, and thou hast handed him over unto

"me; there remaineth one other thing which I wish to do unto thee, and that is to shew thee kindness and hospital-ity in my habitation." And Peter said unto him, "May God Almighty reward thee with an abundant reward because of the gracious manner in which thou hast acted towards me; deal [well] now with this thy slave, and sell him not, and vex him not with labour overmuch, so that thanks may be thine at his end." Then Peter gave unto Bartholomew secretly the whole of the price which he had received for him, so that the master of the camels might not see him do it, and he said unto him, "If thou findest any poor man, take [him] with thee, and give unto him thereof." And he commanded him with all the | commandments of God, and gave him the salutation of peace, and sent him away; and Peter returned [unto his own country].

B. fol.  
133b.  
col. 2.

And Bartholomew departed | with the master of the camels, who was wishing [Page 87] [to go] to the city, and as he was journeying along through the desert with the master of the camels they wandered out of the path, and the water came to an end; and the men [of the caravan] were aweary, and the camels strayed hither and thither, and died upon the road. Then the master of the camels and those who were with him wept, and said, "Woe unto us! What is this which hath come upon us by reason of this slave? Either he did not do that which was good in his own country, and therefore his god thrust him out therefrom unto this country, which is afar off, or else he was altogether useless [there]. And my sorrow is not for [my] camels [only], but I grieve for myself and for those who are with me,

A. fol. 35b.  
col. 2.

“lest we perish from thirst in this desert.” Now Bartholomew was weeping openly, and was praying in his heart, and he was wishing that they might not know that he was an Apostle of our Lord, lest they should keep him out of that | city. And he laid hold upon the camels, and said, “In the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, Who | is God indeed, let these | camels be raised up, so that these men may not know who I am, and that they may not think about me except what they please.” And in that hour the camels rose up alive, and they were as they had been aforetime; and [the men] marvelled, but they answered not a word, and they mounted them and went on their journey to the city.

And it came to pass that, when they drew nigh thereunto, Bartholomew descended [from his camel] and girded up his loins, and ran in front of his master on his way. Now when they had come outside the city there was sitting in the gate a blind man, and the Spirit of God came down upon him, and he cried out with a loud voice, saying, “Have mercy upon me, O servant of our Lord, Bartholomew, thou Apostle of our Lord Jesus Christ, and give light unto | mine eyes, for thou hast the power [so to do];” and when Bartholomew heard the words of the blind man [Page 88] he held his peace. Then the blind man said unto him, “Art thou an Apostle of the Apostles of Christ? [If thou art] I will bring thee into the city, and no man shall know thee.” And Bartholomew said unto him, “I will not tell thee that I am an Apostle of Christ | until thou hast seen the marvellous things which shall be made manifest in this city by my hands.” Then the blind man cried out with a loud voice,

and said, "Have mercy upon me, O Apostle of Christ, "and give light unto mine eyes." And Bartholomew said unto him, "May He who hath commanded thee to "speak [thus] give light unto thine eyes!" And in that hour his eyes were opened, and the man marvelled greatly, and told [the story] unto those who were with him.

And it came to pass that when the nobleman (i. e., the master of the camels) had come into his house, he invited his friends the elders of the city and said unto them, "Come and look at the slave whom I have bought, "for [his master] declared that he was a | vineyard keeper, A. fol. 36b.  
"and that he was able to make wine, but many mar- col. 1.  
"vellous things have been revealed unto us by him. On "the road, as we were travelling through the desert, "we lost our way, and the camels died; but he raised "them up, and made them to live and to become even "as they were formerly. When we arrived at the gate | B. fol.  
"of the city there was a blind man sitting by the road 134b.  
"through the gate, and ye must know that this slave col. 1.  
"opened his eyes; now what would ye counsel me to do "with this man? His master declared that he was greatly "skilled in the treatment of vineyards which had fallen "into decay, and that he knew how to renew the vines." And his friends said unto him, "If he be indeed skilled, "and knoweth how to treat vineyards in this manner, put "him to the work and make trial of his skill; and if he "be not able to do [as he saith], then sell him, and get "back his price."

Now by reason of this [advice the nobleman] called unto him all the vine-dressers who tended his vines, and

he sent for Bartholomew, [Page 89] and he set him  
 A. fol. 36b. in the midst of them | and said unto them, "Behold,  
 col. 2. "I have set this man among (i. e., over) you, and unto  
 "everything which he shall say unto you ye shall hearken;"  
 and Bartholomew went forth to his lord's vineyard and  
 worked therein. And he worked in the vineyard every  
 day, and when the evening came he used to come into  
 the city and continue to teach for the rest of the night,  
 according as he was able; and he dwelt [there] forty  
 days, and was teaching in this wise, but there was no  
 B. fol. man | who listened unto him. And after forty days Bar-  
 134b. tholomew wept, and [spake] unto God, saying, "O Jesus  
 col. 2. "Christ, how long shall I abide here in this [city]?" Then  
 he stood up and prayed with great fervour that strength  
 might be given unto him, and that marvellous things  
 might be made manifest through him. And it came to  
 pass that, when he had finished his prayer, he spake  
 unto the blind man, whose eyes he had opened, who was  
 with Bartholomew, and who had never separated from  
 him during the whole time in which he had dwelt in the  
 A. fol. 37a. city, even from the time when | he first came therein,  
 col. 1. [saying, "go into the city]."<sup>1</sup>

And the nobleman (i. e., the master of the camels)  
 said unto Bartholomew, "When shall I invite my friends  
 "to come to the vineyard and see the new method by  
 "which thou art treating the grapes this day?" Now the [blind]  
 man departed into the city even as he had commanded  
 him. And it came to pass that when he had departed,  
 the Apostle took three branches of a [withered] vine and

---

<sup>1</sup> Some lines have dropped out of the text here.

suspended them upon props of wood forthwith, and immediately he had suspended them they bore fine fruit. Now when the nobleman came with his friends, | he saw that all the branches of the vine had begun to sprout as soon as they were suspended upon the wooden props by the slave Bartholomew, and that the vine was bearing clusters of grapes. Then they fell upon their hands before the slave Bartholomew, and they prostrated themselves before him, and said unto him, "Thou art our Lord. "Art thou a god who hast revealed thyself upon the "earth? Who art thou among the gods? [Page 90] "Peradventure thou art Kûrônôs (Kronos)? Declare unto "us what sacrifice thou desirest, and we will offer it up "unto thee." And the Apostle answered and said | unto them, "I am not one of these beings [as] ye imagine, "but I am a servant of Jesus."

B. fol.  
135a.  
col. 1.

A. fol. 37a.  
col. 2.

And Bartholomew commanded that they should bring canes (*or* reeds) unto him so that he might suspend the rest of the [branches of the] vines upon them, and the nobleman went to fetch canes for him; and a great snake which was among the canes coiled itself round his hands and bit him, and he fell down upon the ground in great pain, and his servants wept. | And Bartholomew said unto them, "Why do ye weep? Is there not a physician [here] "who can heal him?" And one of the servants of the nobleman went quickly to his wife and told her, and a physician came to heal him,<sup>1</sup> but he found him to be dead. Then Bartholomew commanded that all the people should be gathered together unto him, and he baptized

B. fol.  
135a.  
col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> The words in brackets are added from B.

them, saying, "In the Name of the Father, and of the  
 "Son, and of the Holy Ghost." And he took a bunch  
 of grapes from the vine which had sprouted, and had  
 borne fruit through him, and he squeezed out the juice  
 thereof into a cup; and he brought forth pure bread, and  
 he made a prayer and gave thanks, and he brake [the bread],  
 and gave unto the multitudes the Body of our Lord and  
 His precious Blood.

And all the friends of the nobleman rent their gar-  
 A. fol. 37b. ments and wept for | him. Now meanwhile the Apostle  
 col. 1. was working with the canes, and was singing, and those  
 who were seated [there] said, "Look at this wicked slave,  
 "for instead of weeping for his master he rejoiceth greatly  
 "[at his death]; and as for the speech which he uttereth  
 "we have no knowledge of its meaning." Then other  
 men who were among them answered and said, "He is  
 "not a wicked slave, for we have seen marvellous things  
 "[wrought] by him, the like of which our fathers neither  
 "heard nor saw." And Bartholomew made haste to finish  
 his work, and when he had done so, he washed his hands, and  
 said unto them that wept, "Ye have wept tears enough; get  
 "ye away to a distance from the man that ye may see the  
 "glory of my [Page 91] God, and His might;" and they  
 B. fol. did as he had | commanded them, and went away some  
 135b. distance from the body of the nobleman. Then Bar-  
 col. 1. tholomew stretched out his hand, saying, "O my God,  
 "Thou Sustainer of all things, Who dwellest in the habit-  
 "ation of Thy glory, Who hast created the heavens, and  
 "the earth, and the sea, and all that therein is, Who  
 A. fol. 37b. "through Thy beloved Son Jesus Christ hast not left us  
 col. 2. "in bondage to our enemy Satan, | and hast redeemed

"us by the precious Blood of Jesus Christ, the holy Seed  
 "which beareth fruit in the bodies of the pure, Who did  
 "go forth into the desert to seek the sheep that was  
 "cast away until He did bring him back into the beautiful  
 "fold; unto Thee I pray, O my Lord Jesus Christ, and  
 "I make supplication unto Thee on behalf of this man  
 "whom the snake hath bitten, and I beseech Thee that  
 "the snake may come back and remove her poison  
 "which she hath cast into the body of this man, and  
 "that the man may come to life | [again], and may glorify  
 "Thy Name in this city."

B. fol.  
 135b.  
 col. 2.

And it came to pass that whilst Bartholomew was  
 praying, the serpent came forth from the place wherein  
 she dwelt, and stood up before Bartholomew, and said  
 unto him, "Why dost thou command me to withdraw  
 "the poison from the man? [For if I do] I shall die, and  
 "he will live." Then Bartholomew answered and said | A. fol. 38a.  
 unto her, "Why dost thou multiply speech? since thou col. 1.  
 "knowest who thou art and who is thy father. But in  
 "order that [these people] may know the Father, [do thou  
 "even as thou art bidden." Therefore did the snake come  
 forth to the place where the dead man was, and she  
 withdrew the poison from him]; and thereupon he came  
 to life again, and rose up, [and became] as he was  
 formerly. And it came to pass that when they saw this  
 marvellous thing, the people fell down at the feet of the  
 saint, and said unto him, "Verily, thy God is a great  
 "God and a mighty God, since He can raise the dead."  
 Then the nobleman who had returned to life rose up,  
 and said, "Observe ye these marvellous things which  
 "have been made manifest. The man whom I

"bought, thinking that he was a man, is a god; and he  
 "whom I bought and declared to be a slave is a noble-  
 "man!" [Page 92] |

B. fol.  
 136a.  
 col. 1.

Then the nobleman went to the Apostle, and said  
 unto him, "O master, I adjure thee by our Lord Jesus  
 "Christ, our God Whom I saw standing by thee at the  
 "moment when thou didst raise me up from the dead: I

A. fol. 38a.  
 col. 2.

"adjure thee in His Name not to refuse me | the request  
 "which I make unto thee, and to give me an answer  
 "thereto." And the Apostle said unto him, "If that  
 "which thou shalt ask of me be a fair request, I will  
 "deal with thee in a fair manner; but tell me now, what  
 "is thy request?" And the nobleman said unto him, "I  
 "would that thou didst command me to do away with  
 "the vineyard, and to build a fair church in the place  
 "thereof, for in that place I learned to know God, and in  
 "that place I died, and in that place I came to life  
 "[again]." And the Apostle said unto him, "It shall be  
 "even as thou sayest." Then straightway the nobleman  
 commanded them to dig up the vineyard; and they  
 brought dry reeds (*or* stubble), and he made a trench

B. fol.  
 136a.  
 col. 2.

in the surface of the ground for the foundations | of  
 the church, and he commanded them to bring masons  
 and workmen of every kind who are employed in build-  
 ing, and a beautiful church was built from the beginning  
 even unto the completion thereof. And Bartholomew  
 appointed as priest the nobleman whom he had raised

A. fol. 38b.  
 col. 1.

from the dead, and he appointed | deacons [for the con-  
 gregation]. And he dwelt in the city for [three] months  
 teaching the people, and he healed all those who were  
 sick therein, and he brought them unto God Almighty;

and [when] he went forth [from] them they sent him away in peace, saying unto him, "There is no God but "Jesus Christ Who hath sent thee unto us to | cleanse "us from our sins." So Bartholomew departed from Elwâh, and journeyed to the country of N'indôs (Naidas) to preach therein in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, to Whom be glory and honour for ever and ever! Amen, and Amen.

---

B. fol.  
136b.  
col. 1.

## THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT BARTHOLOMEW IN NAIDAS.

B. fol. 136b. fol. 2. | [Page 93] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE SON, AND OF THE HOLY GHOST, ONE GOD.

Here beginneth the Martyrdom of Saint Bartholomew, the Apostle of our Lord Jesus Christ; now his death took place on the first day of the month Maskarram.<sup>1</sup> In the peace of God, Amen. May his prayer and blessing be with His handmaiden Malattia Madhan!

A. fol. 38b. col. 2. And it came to pass that when Bartholomew had journeyed to Nasmêfin and Niëndôs (Naidas), [which were two] great cities built upon the sea shore, [he found] that the people thereof had no knowledge of God Almighty, and that they were like unto sheep which had lost themselves through the greatness of their foolish simplicity. And when Bartholomew, the blessed Apostle, had come to them he preached unto them the Gospel of God, and when he had entered into the city he preached unto those who were therein, saying, "Hearken, O ye who dwell in this city.

"Blessed are the poor in spirit, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., August 29.

"Blessed are the merciful, for unto them shall [men]  
"shew mercy.

"Blessed are the makers of peace, for they shall be  
"called the children of God.

"Blessed are those who hunger and thirst | for B. fol.  
"righteousness, for they shall be satisfied. 137a.  
col. 1.

"Blessed are those who give unto the poor, for theirs  
"is the kingdom of heaven. These are they who give a  
"pledge unto God |. A. fol. 39a.  
col. 1.

"Blessed are those who have wives, but are as those  
"who have them not, for they shall inherit the earth."

Now as the people were listening unto this doctrine  
from Saint Bartholomew, God Almighty, the Father and  
the Sustainer of all things, opened their hearts, [Page 94]  
and they accepted the commandments of God Almighty  
the Sustainer of all things, Who desireth that the sinner  
shall receive life, and shall return unto Him that He may  
forgive him. In this wise He gave unto the people of  
[that] city the power of the knowledge of Him, and a  
right mind, from the greatest of them even unto the least,  
and they hearkened and believed in God Almighty and  
in His Gospel, and in the word of Bartholomew, which  
became sweet in the hearts, even as is honey in the  
belly, of all those | who listened [thereto]. And the people  
of the cities and of all the countries round about them  
forsook the service of idols, and believed in God Almighty  
Who hath the desire to save the seed of Adam; and  
He turned their hearts to receive the faith which is in  
Him, that He might save | their souls and grant forgive- A. fol. 39a.  
ness unto them, and every man among them remitted col. 2.  
his neighbour's debt to him. Then the people of the city

and of the regions round about it called upon Bartholomew to bless them, and all the inhabitants thereof, both male and female, and they loved God, and they submitted unto His command, and they forsook all the works of Satan in this transitory world, and they loved purity.

And it came to pass that the story of Saint Bartholomew and of his preaching went forth into every place, and all those who heard the preaching of the Gospel believed in God Almighty with all their hearts. [Page 97,

A. fol. 40b.

col. 1.

B. fol.

137b.

col. 1.

line 3] And the renown of Bartholomew | came unto 'Akrëpâs (Acarpus) the king, and when | the wife of the king heard thereof she departed from his bed and from pollution by the king. And it came to pass that, when the king knew that his wife had left him because of the words of Bartholomew, who commanded every one in the knowledge of righteousness in the faith of Jesus Christ [so to do], he sent [orders] that they should bring him unto him quickly. And when he had come the king said unto him, "Art thou Bartholomew the sorcerer and the "man (i. e., follower) of Jesus Christ?" Then Bartholomew made answer unto him with great boldness and readiness, and said unto him, "I am not, O king, a sorcerer as "thou sayest, for sorcery cannot be wrought in the Name "of Jesus; but all sorcery, and the evil works of every "kind which are wrought perish when the Name of Jesus "is mentioned." Then the king commanded them to take him out of his presence, and he ordered those who were with him to bring his wife | unto him.

A. fol. 40b.

col. 2.

Then Saint Bartholomew stood up at a little distance from the king, and he stretched out his hands, and prayed the prayer of the Gospel, and said "Amen." And a

certain man, | who was blind in his right eye, (now he could see nothing whatever therewith) and whose hand and arm had been dried up from the day of his birth, came towards the Apostle, and drew nigh unto him, and besought him to heal him; and immediately the Apostle had looked upon the man his eye was opened and it became like unto its fellow. And the Apostle said unto him, "I say unto thee, Give me thy hand and arm, that "the might of Christ may be revealed, and that all men "may see and may believe in His holy Name;" and as the man was putting them forth from his apparel, he found that the [withered] hand and arm were living and were like unto the other hand and arm [Page 98]. Thereupon the man went forth among the people glorifying God, and giving thanks unto Him, and he preached in the blessed name of the Apostle; and he went about throughout the whole country preaching | and making known unto the people the fair deed which God had done for him, and the power which God had made to appear at the hands of Saint Bartholomew.

B. fol.  
137b.  
col. 2.

A. fol. 41a.  
col. 1.

Then 'Akrípôs (Acarpus) the king said unto the nobles of his kingdom and unto all his servants, | "If [we "allow] this disciple to dwell and to live in these districts, "he will lead us all into his fair path [of life]; it is for us "to kill him, and we must do away his body so that it "may not be found;" and they answered and said unto him, "Let it be as the king hath commanded." Now their hearts were sad, and they were unwilling to slay him, for they were rejoicing because they had seen the multitudes of marvellous things which God Almighty had revealed at his hands. And they said unto the king,

B. fol.  
138a.  
col. 1.

"If it please thee, O king, let us drive him from our  
 "district;" now the people of the city wished to save the  
 Apostle from the hands of the king. Then was the king  
 A. fol. 41a. angry with a great | anger, and he swore with a mighty  
 col. 2. oath that he would not hearken unto their words, and  
 that, on the contrary, he wished to kill him by means  
 of an evil death; and they were unable to answer him  
 a word.

And Bartholomew went round about through the  
 country and preached unto them the preaching of the  
 Gospel, and he taught the multitudes, and commanded  
 B. fol. them to learn the faith of our Lord Jesus | Christ. And  
 138a. by reason of this thing a certain evil man came unto  
 col. 2. the king and said unto him, "Knowest thou not that  
 "Bartholomew is going round about the whole country  
 "disobeying thy commandment and blaspheming thy gods?"  
 And it came to pass that when the king heard thereof,  
 he was wroth with a great wrath because of this thing,  
 and he sent certain captains of his host, [Page 99] to-  
 gether with a large number of men, to seek out Bar-  
 tholomew. And he commanded them that wheresoever  
 they found him they were to bind his hands and his  
 feet, and to cast him into the sea, so that he might not  
 again be found [on the earth].

A. fol. 41b. | And it came to pass that, when the messengers  
 col. 1. had set out on their way, they found Bartholomew cast-  
 ing out a devil from a man who had been subject unto  
 him for a very long time past, and he was teaching the  
 multitude and commanding them to believe in God, our  
 Lord Jesus Christ. And when the messengers had come  
 up to the blessed Apostle, he met them with the salutation

of peace, and said unto them, "Peace! May God be  
 "with you, O my brethren!" And they stood before him  
 talking together and marvelling at his simplicity, and at  
 the beauty of his | appearance. Then they said unto B. fol.  
 him, "Wilt thou be pleased to come with us unto the 138b.  
 "king? Now he calleth for thee. If thou be not pleased col. 1.  
 "so to do we will not command thee to come with us;  
 "against thy will we do not wish thee to come, for we  
 "believe that God is with thee in all thy work." Then  
 the Apostle said within himself (*or* in the spirit), "It is  
 "not meet for me to transgress the command of God  
 "Almighty, Who | saith, 'Ye shall enter into the presence A. fol. 41b.  
 "'of kings and governors for My Name's sake.'" Therefore col. 2.  
 they desired this thing and he went with them into the pre-  
 sence of 'Akrēpōs the king [who] looked at him, and said unto  
 him, "Art thou he that troubleth the city and all the districts  
 "thereof, and that separateth wives from their husbands?"  
 And Saint Bartholomew answered and said, "It is not I  
 "who trouble the city, and it is not I who tempt wives  
 "from their husbands; but those who believe in God with  
 "all their hearts and with all their souls doth He endow  
 " | with purity. And moreover, 'Akrēpōs, if thou wilt B. fol.  
 "hearken unto me, thou shalt deliver thyself, and shalt 138b.  
 "inherit the kingdom of heaven [Page 100] in the place col. 2.  
 "of this fleeting kingdom."

And it came to pass that when 'Akrēpōs heard these  
 words from him, he was angry with a great anger, for  
 he had kept in his mind how | his wife had separated A. fol. 42a.  
 herself from him. Then he commanded the officers of col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> See St. Matt. x. 18; St. Mark. xiii. 9; St. Luke xxi. 12.

his guards to fill a sack with sand, and to put Saint Bartholomew therein and to cast him into the sea; and they did as the king had commanded them. Now he died on the first day of the month Maskarram, and afterwards the waves of the sea cast him up, and on the day following certain believing men, who had confessed the faith in God through him, swathed him in swathings, and laid him in a fair place.

B. fol.      Glory | be to the Father and to the Son and to the  
139a.  
col. 1.      Holy Spirit, now, henceforth, and for ever and ever.  
Amen, and Amen. So be it!

---

## THE ACTS OF SAINT ANDREW [MATTHEW] IN THE CITY OF KAHĒNÂT.

[Page 101] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE SON, AND OF THE HOLY SPIRIT, ONE GOD. A. fol. 42a.  
col. 2.  
B. fol.  
148b.  
col. 2.

Here begin the Acts which Matthew, the Apostle and Evangelist, wrought in the city of Kahĕnât.<sup>1</sup> In the peace of our Lord Jesus Christ. May his prayer and his blessing be with his handmaiden Walatta Madhan! Amen.

And it came to pass that Peter and Andrew returned from the country of Greece [where] they had strengthened [the people] in the faith, and taught them the Law of belief; now as they were journeying along the road Matthew met them and they embraced each other in a spiritual embrace. Then Matthew said unto them, "[Whence have ye come?" And they said unto him, "From Greece]."<sup>2</sup> And Matthew said unto them, "And I have come from "the country of Pĕrâkômnôs,"<sup>3</sup> which is, being interpreted,

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., "the city of the priests," or perhaps "magicians." See LIPSIVS, op. cit., vol. ii, part 1, p. 115 ff.

<sup>2</sup> The words within brackets have been supplied from B.

<sup>3</sup> I. e., Prokumenos.

“Those who rejoice;” and they each described unto the others all the sufferings which had befallen them. Then Matthew said unto them, “In the city where I have been our Lord Jesus Christ doth dwell always, and He doth  
 B. fol. “keep the feast | with them, and He hath stablished His  
 149a. “seat in their church, | in the east thereof, and He  
 col. 1. “teacheth them His commandment. And it came to pass  
 A. fol. 42b. “that when I entered into their city, I preached unto them,  
 col. 1. “and I told them the story of the Gospel in His Name. And  
 “they said unto me, ‘We know this Name.’ And I said  
 “unto them, ‘Who hath told it unto you?’ and they said  
 “unto me, ‘Have patience until to-morrow, and thou shalt  
 “see Him of Whom thou hast told us.’ And it came to  
 “pass that, when the morrow had come, our Lord Jesus  
 “Christ arrived, and He was seated upon a shining cloud,  
 “and all the powers of heaven were blessing Him. Now  
 “when I had seen Him, by reason of the greatness of  
 “[my] gladness—for I rejoiced in the Holy Spirit—I cried  
 “out, saying, ‘Ascribe praise and glory unto the [Page 102]  
 “king, and exalt ye His Sublimity unto all eternity.’ For  
 “three days we blessed [Him] in the church, and when  
 “the three days were ended He blessed us, and then  
 “ascended into heaven with great glory.

“And I said unto them, ‘How did ye make yourselves  
 B. fol. “worthy | of the great honour of our Lord Jesus Christ  
 149a. “keeping the festival with you?’ And they said unto me,  
 col. 2. “Hast thou not heard the story concerning the nine tribes  
 A. fol. 42b. “and the half tribe whom God Almighty brought into  
 col. 2. “the land of inheritance? We are they! And it came  
 “to pass that when it was mid-day Gabriel, the Angel  
 “of God, came unto us, and there came with him the

“four hundred and forty thousand and four hundred”  
 “children whom Herod had slain, and who had not defiled  
 “their hearts in the world; and when they were ascribing  
 “praises [unto Him], we also ascribed praises [unto  
 “Him] with them, and when they said, ‘Hallelujah,’ we  
 “also said, ‘Hallelujah,’ with them. As for gold and silver  
 “we desire it not in our country; we eat not flesh and  
 “we drink not wine in our country, for our food is honey  
 “and our drink is the dew. And we do not look upon  
 “the face of women with sinful desire, | and our firstborn A. fol. 34a.  
 “children do we offer as a gift unto God that they may col. 1.  
 “minister in the church and in the sanctuary all the days  
 “of their life until they be | thirty years [of age]. The B. fol.  
 “water which we drink [floweth] not from cisterns which 149b.  
 “have been hewn by the hand of man, but [we drink] col. 1.  
 “of the water which floweth from Paradise. We do not  
 “array ourselves in apparel which hath been made by the  
 “hand of man, but our raiment is made of the leaves of  
 “trees. No word of lying hear we in our land, and no  
 “man knoweth another who speaketh that which is false.  
 “No man taketh to wife two women in our country, and  
 “the son dieth not before his father, and the young man  
 “speaketh not in the [Page 103] presence of the aged,  
 “the lions dwell with us, but they do no harm unto us,  
 “and we do no harm unto them. When the winds are  
 “lifted up we smell the scent of Paradise, and in our  
 “country there is neither spring, nor cold, nor | ice; but A. fol. 43a.  
 “there are winds and they are [always] pleasant.’ And col. 2.

1 The number should, of course, be 144,000. See LIPSIVS, op.  
 cit., vol. ii. part I, p. 116.

"it came to pass that when I heard [these words] I wished  
 "that my dwelling-place had been with them, until mine  
 "eyes were weary [with the sight of them, and mine ears]  
 "with listening unto the sweet sound of their voice."

B. fol. 149b. col. 2. And after these things Peter and Andrew | blessed  
 God Almighty, and they entreated Him to reveal unto

them the place whither they should go. Then [Page 94,  
 line 20] our Lord Jesus Christ appeared unto them stand-  
 ing in their midst, and He said unto them, "Peace be  
 "unto you, O My holy disciples, whom My Father hath  
 "chosen out of all creation; be strong and believe that I  
 "will be with you always, and I will never be remote from  
 "you whatever may be the place to which ye have  
 "journeyed." And the Apostles bowed low before Him

A. fol. 39b. col. 1. even to the [Page 95] ground, and they | said [unto  
 Him], "We bless Thy Name, O Lord, and we give thanks  
 "unto Thee always. Command us and declare unto us  
 "the way wherein we should go." Then our Lord spake  
 unto Peter, and commanded him to go to the city of  
 Rome, and He commanded Andrew to go to the city of  
 Mesyâ, and Matthew unto the City of Kâhenât. And  
 Matthew said unto our Lord, "Nay, but I know not  
 "Kâhenât, and I have never entered into the city of its  
 "people." And our Lord said unto him, "Hitherto thou  
 "hast been of little faith. But set thou out on the road,  
 "and it shall bring thee unto two roads; of these journey  
 "thou upon that which is on thy right hand, and it shall  
 "bring thee unto their city." And as they were talking  
 together in this wise a cloud made its appearance, and it  
 bore Peter and Andrew away and brought them unto their  
 places wherein our Lord had commanded them to preach.

And Matthew journeyed along a little way, and he lifted up his eyes unto heaven, and he prayed and said, "O Thou Father of our Lord | Jesus Christ, Who didst A. fol. 39b. col. 2. converse with Abraham; and didst make perfect his progeny in Isaac; and didst stablish a testimony in Jacob, and Thy gift of grace in Joseph, and Thy Law in Moses; and didst keep Thy people in the desert for forty years, and didst overshadow them by day with a cloud, and didst give them light by night by a pillar of fire; and didst blot out for them their enemies under their feet; and didst bring them forth from the Red Sea, and didst lead them out into a land prepared for them, which Thou didst promise [to give] unto their fathers Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; be Thou unto me a guide on this road." And straightway a cloud came and bore away Matthew and brought him unto the City of Kâhenât; and it came to pass that when he had seen the city he rejoiced and desired to enter [therein].

And Matthew saw before him a young man who was a keeper of sheep, and when he had come up with him he said unto him, "[Page 96] I say unto thee, O thou young man, thou keeper of sheep, Which is the road which | will bring me into this city?" And the A. fol. 40a. col. 1. young man said unto him, "This road [will take thee into the city], but thou wilt not be able to enter therein dressed in this apparel, for it is not like unto the apparel of [the men of] our city; now thy raiment is dirty, and if thou hast the desire to come into the city take off the apparel which is upon thee, and array thyself in the garb of the priests. And next shave off the hair of thy head and beard, and gird up thy loins, and take in thy

"right hand a palm branch of Hosanna, and make unto thyself sandals of palm leaves and shoe thy feet therewith; then shall thy apparel be like unto that of the men of the city, and thou mayest enter therein."

And it came to pass that when Matthew heard these words from him (*or* them) his heart was sad, and he went back along the road whereon he had travelled, and he did not desire to enter into the city. Now the young man who had spoken to him was our Lord Jesus Christ, and when Matthew was going back along the road He followed him for a little way, and stretched out His hand, and made him to turn round. | And Matthew said unto Him, "How knowest Thou me? Who told Thee my name?" Then the young man said unto him, "I know thee, O Matthew. Turn back, and travel on to the city, and enter into it. I am Jesus thy God, do therefore that which I have commanded thee, and let not thine heart be sad; if, however, thou dost not do as I have said unto thee, thou wilt not be able to enter into the city." Then Matthew did as our Lord Jesus Christ commanded him, and our Lord Jesus walked with him, and brought him to the gate of the city, and said unto him, "Be strong, O Matthew, My Apostle, and hold fast, and endure patiently, for the king of this city shall scourge thee with many scourgings, and they shall cast thee into prison; and afterwards they shall burn thy body with fire. Keep thyself firm, and fear not; be not terrified, neither be dismayed. For the king [Page 97] shall be converted, and shall believe in Me, together with all those who dwell in the city [Page 103, line 10]. Now for this reason the people shall wish to burn thee with

A. fol. 40a.  
col. 2.

"fire, [but the flames of fire] wherewith [they would do "so] shall leap up and shall consume their god Apollo. "And as for thee, endure thou patiently and cry out upon "My Name, for I will hearken unto thee, and I [will be] "with thee at all times, and I will be remote neither from "thee nor from thy brother Apostles in any place whither- "soever thou goest." And as our Lord was saying these words unto Matthew, He went up from him into heaven in great glory.

Then Matthew rose up and came into the | city, and he asked the people of the city, saying, "Where is the "temple?" And they said unto him, "Where is thine own "city?" and he said unto them, "I am a handicraftsman "from the country of Egypt." And they said unto him, "For what purpose hast thou come [hither]? And what "seekest thou?" And he said unto them, "I have come "to learn (*literally*, see) the doctrine of your god, and "what he | teacheth you." And they said unto the Apostle, "It is not our god who teacheth us anything, "and we never hear a word from him, and as [Page 104] "for the offerings which we offer unto him we know not "who eateth them, for it is the men who minister unto "him who receive [our] gifts from us." Then the Apostle said unto them, "Do ye yourselves not belong to the body "of the priests?" And they said unto him, "Yea, we are "of the great ones among the priests who minister unto "the gods." And Matthew said unto them, "Are | all your "gods of one rank and equality?" And they said unto him, "Apollo is the greatest." Then the Apostle said unto them, "Apollo loveth the rich and hateth the poor, this god Apollo is a balance which doth not act justly.

A. fol. 43b.  
col. 1.

B. fol.  
151a.  
col. 1.

A. fol. 43b.  
col. 2.

"Now I should like to see the face of your god, and to  
 "hold converse with him, and I would ask him, 'Where-  
 "fore lovest thou the rich and hatest the poor? For they  
 "all are thy servants, and it is meet that thou shouldst pay  
 "[equal] honour unto them | all."

B. fol.  
 151a.  
 col. 2.

And it came to pass that when the people of the  
 city heard the words of the Apostle, they divided them-  
 selves into two companies; and they spake the one unto  
 the other, saying, "Let us go with him into the temple  
 "that we may hear his words." So they went with Matthew,  
 and they came into the temple, and brought him unto  
 the priest, and said unto him, "Behold, this man hath  
 "arrived from the country of Egypt; come forth and hold

A. fol. 44a. "converse with him." And when Matthew came | unto  
 col. 1.

him, he embraced him with a spiritual embrace, for he  
 desired to save him. Now when Matthew had embraced  
 'Armîs the priest, the hand (*or* might) of God Almighty  
 came down upon him, and he said unto the Apostle,  
 "Whence art thou? Whence comest thou? And who  
 "art thou? For when I had been embraced by thee there  
 "came down upon me great grace; tell me who thou art,  
 "O my Lord." And the Apostle said unto him, "I belong  
 "to a noble tribe, and I am a priest of God;" and Matthew  
 rejoiced because of the grace [Page 105] which had  
 descended upon 'Armîs the priest. And 'Armîs the priest  
 said unto him, "I wish to | know how thou didst find the  
 "way, and didst come into this city;" and Matthew said  
 unto him, "My God brought me herein." [And 'Armîs the  
 priest] said unto him, "How did it happen?" [And the  
 Apostle said unto him], "He took hold of my hand, and  
 "set me down at the gate of the city." And 'Armîs said

B. fol.  
 151b.  
 col. 1.

unto him, "I desire to see thy God." And the Apostle said unto him, "If thou believest in | Him, and dost keep <sup>A. fol. 44a.</sup> His commandment, and dost believe in everything which <sup>col. 2.</sup> I say unto thee, and art certain that He [is], then will I cause my God to hold converse with thee; for my Lord is a righteous God, and He revealeth not Himself unto the man of folly, on the contrary, from the man who is impure He is hidden, and [not] manifest." And 'Arms the priest said unto him, "Where dwelleth thy God?"; and the Apostle said unto him, "In my country." Then 'Arms said unto him, "Where is thy country?" And Matthew said unto him, "My country is in the holy country, and all the ways [of the people] are in righteousness. And the country is the country of light; and those who dwell therein die not; in my country there is no darkness, for the whole of it is light, and my God | <sup>B. fol. 151b.</sup> illumineth all those who are therein; and death [cometh] <sup>col. 2.</sup> not upon the people of my country. The whole of my country is furnished with seats (*or* habitations), and it is full of sweet scents, and in it are very many gardens into which the righteous may | enter. In my country <sup>A. fol. 44b.</sup> there is no one who hath the desire of sin, but all the <sup>col. 1.</sup> dwellers therein are righteous. In my country no man is a slave, but all men are free; my God is both merciful and compassionate, and He giveth unto the poor and maketh them to have possessions in abundance. In my country there is no man who hateth another, but all are friends; in my country there is neither backbiting nor calumny, but all are well-pleasing, each to the other; in my country there is neither evil [Page 106] nor transgression, but every man is at peace; in my country

"there is no oppressor, but all men are lowly; in my  
 "country there is no sound of sorrow, but every man  
 "rejoiceth and is glad."

And it came to pass that when 'Armîs the priest  
 heard [these words] from Matthew he said unto him,  
 "How can it be that there is no unclean person in thy  
 "country?" And Matthew answered and said unto him,  
 "Because my God Himself is pure." Then 'Armîs the  
 A. fol. 44b. priest said unto | him, "I wish to come with thee into thy  
 col. 2. "country." And Matthew said unto him, "Thou shalt  
 B. fol. "both come into my country, and see my God, if thou  
 152a. "wilt become a partner with me in the faith [of Christ]  
 col. 1. "and in the Holy Mysteries."

And when the evening was come Matthew said unto  
 'Armîs the priest, "Hasten thy work;" and 'Armîs said  
 unto him, "Tarry for me whilst I go and light the lamp  
 "of Apollo before I go to my evening meal;" and Matthew  
 said unto him, "Dost thou light a lamp for thy god?"  
 And 'Armîs said unto him, "I not only light a lamp for  
 "him, but I wash him, and I decorate him until he is  
 "beautiful [to look upon], and I carry him about from  
 "place to place." And Matthew said unto him, "My  
 "God giveth light unto me, and all those who minister  
 "unto Him do shine with His light at all times, and all  
 A. fol. 45a. "those who minister unto Him doth He | surround with  
 col. 1. "light; and all those who glorify Him array themselves  
 "in apparel of light." And 'Armîs said unto him, "I will  
 B. fol. "go with thee into thy city;" and Matthew | said unto  
 152a. him, "Seek not to go forth with me into my city, for I  
 col. 2. "call upon the Name of my God, and when I have called  
 "He cometh unto me; and when He hath come unto me

"He maketh the temple, (*or* synagogue) to be bright with  
 "light." And 'Armīs said unto him, "I desire to see this  
 "wonderful thing." Then Matthew lifted up his eyes to  
 heaven and spake, saying, "I beseech Thee, O my Lord,  
 "Thou Sustainer of all things; [Page 107] Who dwellest  
 "in the habitation of the glory of Thy Father; my Lord  
 "and God, Jesus Christ, the King of glory; Who clothest  
 "the naked with raiment; thou King of the righteous,  
 "Thou Light of the blind, Thou Light of the World, Thou  
 "Lamp that canst not be extinguished, Thou Light nigh  
 "unto which no | darkness can come; Thou Axe that <sup>A. fol. 45a.</sup>  
 "cuttest down every tree that bringeth not forth good <sup>col. 2.</sup>  
 "fruit; Thou Fire that consumest every god which is the  
 "work of the hand of man; Thou Tree of Life that givest  
 "life unto all the world, my Lord and my God Jesus  
 "Christ; let Thy mercy come unto me; and hearken  
 "unto my prayer, and send Thy light and Thy righte-  
 "ousness upon me; and drive away sorrow from my soul;  
 "and make Thy light, and Thy righteousness, and Thy  
 "mercy to rise like the Sun upon me."

And it came to pass that, when Matthew had finished  
 | his prayer, there rose upon them a mighty light, and <sup>B. fol.</sup>  
 when 'Armīs saw it he fell on his face upon the ground. <sup>152b.</sup>  
 Then a mighty commotion took place in the city by <sup>col. 1.</sup>  
 reason of the exceedingly great light, and the earth  
 trembled and was moved; and Apollo fell down, and he  
 and all the images [of the gods] which were in the temple  
 were broken in pieces, and none of them was left whole,  
 and they were all dashed into | small pieces. Then Matthew <sup>A. fol. 45b.</sup>  
 lifted up 'Armīs from the ground, and said unto him, <sup>col. 1.</sup>  
 "Look now at your god! How can he who is not able

"to save himself save others?" And Armîs rose up, and came unto the place where Apollo was, and he found him overthrown and broken in pieces; and he spurned him with his foot, and said unto him, "O Apollo, thou canst not save thyself, how then canst thou save others? Good is the name which [this man] hath called thee."

Then Matthew said unto him, "Come forth now, and leave this contemptible thing which hath fallen upon his face;" and 'Armîs went forth and took hold of the hand of Matthew, and said unto him, "Come with me into my habitation, that thou mayest eat bread." And Matthew said unto him, "Yes, let us eat [but what shall we eat?]

B. fol. "Let us | tell Apollo [Page 108] to make ready for us

152b. "something that we may eat." Then 'Armîs said unto

col. 2. him, "Whilst he was in his glory and majesty he never

A. fol. 45b. "at any time | did the like of this; how, then, after he hath

col. 2. "been broken and dashed into pieces, and hath come into

"the hand of a man that he may spurn him with his foot,

"can he do this thing?" And Matthew said, "My God

"hath the power to send unto us that which we may eat;"

and 'Armîs said unto him, "I entreat thee [to ask Him to

"do so], for I believe that which thou sayest unto me

"concerning the Light which came down unto us, and I

"wish that He would send [food] unto us." And Matthew

said unto him, "I will bring unto thee that which thou

"hast asked of me," and he stretched out his hands, and

he made supplication, saying, "O God of the sinners who

"repent and turn away [from their sin]; Who convertest

"the souls which have been cast away unto the knowledge

"of Himself; Who sanctifiest soul and body together;

"Thou Word that camest down from heaven; Thou manna

"that wast made to come down in the desert; Thou Word  
 "who art exalted above all things; Thou Guide of the  
 "souls which have been lost; Who didst bring the celestial  
 "food | into the desert which the children of Israel did A. fol. 46a  
 "eat when fasting with gladness; Thou Food of the famish- col. 1.  
 "ing; | Thou Vivifier of the soul and of the body; Thou, B. fol.  
 "my Lord Jesus Christ, Who hast held me to be worthy 153a.  
 "of this spiritual service, do Thou send upon me Thy col. 1.  
 "glory, and Thy blessing, and Thy honour, for ever and  
 "ever! Amen."

And it came to pass that by reason of this prayer  
 there came unto them a table of light, whereupon was  
 bread as white as snow, and a leather bottle of wine.  
 And Matthew said unto 'Armîs, "Thou art not worthy to  
 "eat of this bread until thou hast become a partaker with  
 "me in the belief (*or* faith), and in the Holy Mysteries;"  
 and 'Armîs said unto him, "Haste thee, and make me  
 "worthy to receive them." Thereupon Matthew taught  
 him the word of life, and revealed unto him the know-  
 ledge of the faith; and he baptized him in the Name of  
 the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy [Page 109]  
 | Spirit, and he gave unto him of the holy bread and A. fol. 46a.  
 wine. And Matthew prayed a second time, and made col. 2.  
 the table to ascend unto its own place. B. fol.

Then Matthew and 'Armîs went out and covered  
 over [with earth] the place where Apollo was, and they  
 closed the doors of the temple and they came to the  
 house of 'Armîs together; and Matthew taught the people  
 therein the knowledge [of Christ], and he baptized them  
 in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the  
 Holy Spirit, and there was great joy in the house of 'Armîs. 153a.  
col. 2.

And it came to pass that when the morrow had come the king came forth to go into the temple, but he found the gates shut; and he commanded them to bring 'Armís the priest there. And when he stood before him, the king said unto him, "Why hast thou dared to close the gates of the temple? And why hast thou covered over [with earth] the place of Apollo, the great god?" And 'Armís said unto him, "He was not able to save himself: | how then hath he the power to save others?"

A. fol. 46b. col. 1. And the king said unto him, "Who is able to save himself?" And 'Armís said unto the king, "Apollo hath not the power to save himself. Only Jesus, the Son of God, the Living One, the Saviour of souls, the Raiser of the dead, the Glory of the righteous, Who hath brought to nought all the counsel of the Enemy, Who hath | seized Satan and hath set him under His feet, can do this."

B. fol. 153b. col. 1. Then the king said unto 'Armís, "Where hast thou learned the Name of Jesus?" And 'Armís said unto him, "I heard it from His disciple Matthew, who found me out and made me worthy to know it; and He hath made His light to shine upon me, and upon all those who are in my habitation." Now when the king heard these words from him he was angry with a great anger, and he commanded them to bind the feet of 'Armís and of Matthew with cords, and to drag them round about through the city until their limbs | were cut to pieces, and their blood flowed, and pieces of their flesh clung to the road [Page 110], and to beat them with sticks; and when the people had done this the king commanded them to cast 'Armís and Matthew into prison.

A. fol. 46b. col. 2.

And the king went into the temple, wherein Apollo

was, and he found that all the images which were in the temple had been broken to pieces, and that Apollo himself had been dashed into small pieces. Then by reason of this thing was the king dismayed, and he and <sup>B. fol. 153b.</sup> all those who were with him rent their garments; and he commanded them to bring 'Armís and Matthew thither that they might burn them in fire. And there was a great tumult in the city, for an earthquake took place, and all the images fell down upon their faces and were dashed in pieces; and they (i. e., the people) cried out with a loud voice, saying, "There is no god but Jesus 'Christ, the Son of the Living God, the First and the <sup>A. fol. 47a.</sup> 'Last.'" Now the people of the city were divided into two companies, the one believing on Jesus, and the other on Apollo. And the people who were the followers of Apollo were saying, "Let them bring these sorcerers forth and burn them in fire;" and those who believed in Christ said, "We will not give these men up [to you]." Then the king commanded them to bring out much wood, and to kindle a fire that they might burn 'Armís and Matthew alive therein; but those who believed in our Lord Jesus Christ armed themselves with weapons, and they made themselves helpers of 'Armís and Matthew, and | delivered <sup>B. fol. 154a.</sup> them. And they said unto the followers of Apollo, "We <sup>col. 1.</sup> will not let the servants of God be burnt in the fire, for "it is not just [so to do]." And the king said unto them, "Why do ye act thus | hostilely against Apollo and all <sup>A. fol. 47a.</sup> "the gods?" And they said unto him, "Because Apollo <sup>col. 2.</sup> "had not the power to save himself from the destruction "which came upon him, and behold, all the idols that "were in our houses have been broken in pieces; how then

can he save others?" [Page **III**]. Then the king commanded them to burn the bodies of the disciples 'Armīs and Matthew, and [not] to let them remain [alive] for a single hour. And there was great dissension in the city between the men of Christ and the men of Apollo, and through the same Matthew cried out with a loud voice, saying, "O

A. fol. 47b. dead; and he hastened | back into his habitation, he and  
col. 1. all those who dwelt | therein. And those who believed in  
B. fol. Apollo, and those who believed in Christ stood up with the  
154a. Apostle, (now they were in number about four thousand  
col. 2. souls) and Matthew taught them and spake unto them, and  
commanded them, saying, "Your belief shall be [made]  
perfect, and ye shall see new wonders."

Then Matthew went unto the king and said unto him, "I see that thy heart is sorrow-stricken because thy son  
"hath died; call now upon Apollo that he may raise him  
"up [again] for thee." And the king said unto Matthew,  
"Which of the gods can make the dead to live again?"  
And the Apostle said unto him, "My Lord Jesus Christ,  
"the Son of the Living God, [can do this]; and if thou  
"wilt believe in Him He will raise up thy son alive from

A. fol. 47b. "the dead for thee." Then the | king swore a mighty oath  
col. 2. unto the Apostle and said unto him, "If I see this mar-  
"vellous thing [wrought] by thy God Jesus Christ, and He  
"raise up my son from the dead, I will never again worship  
B. fol. "Apollo, nor any other idol whatsoever."  
154b.

col. 1. And when Matthew had | heard [these] words from

the king, he became strong in the strength of the Holy Spirit, and he lifted up his eyes to heaven, and stretching out his hands he prayed, saying, "I bless Thee, O my "Lord Jesus Christ, at all times, O Thou Whose habitation, "which is exalted above the heights, groweth not old "[Page 112]. And I give praise unto Thee because Thou "didst not conceal Thyself [but didst give Thyself] for "sinners, and didst make us to be participators [in] the "faith; and I give thanks unto Thee because Thou Thyself "alone canst raise up the dead [to life]. And I beseech "Thee, O Sustainer of all, Thou Father of our Lord Jesus "Christ, | to send Thy exalted and sublime power to break A. fol. 48a. col. 1.  
 "the thorn of death, and to destroy all its power; and may "the keepers of the gates of Sheol fall down; and may the "guardians [thereof] be destroyed and put to shame; and "may all the deceits of devils be brought to nought, and "may the head of the Serpent be broken! Send Thou "Thy hand from above, O my Lord Jesus Christ, and raise "up the young man so that | the king and all those who B. fol. 154b. col. 2.  
 "dwell in this city may believe." And it came to pass that when Saint Matthew had made an end of his prayer, he rose up and went to the place wherein was the dead man, and taking him by his hand, he said unto him, "O "thou young man, in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, "rise up and live!" And by reason of this the young man made haste [to rise up], and he took hold of Matthew's | A. fol. 48a. col. 2.  
 hand at that moment, and said unto him, "I beseech thee, "O servant of God Almighty, to baptize me, and I entreat "thee, O good one, to make me a participator in the "Holy Mysteries, and not to send me back again into "Sheol."

And it came to pass that, when the king saw this wonderful thing which God had brought forth in the days of the Apostle Saint Matthew, he rose up without delay, and in that same hour he commanded all those who were in the city to be baptized, together with all the people who were in his house, by the hands of Matthew, in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. And there was | great rejoicing in the city, and the king burnt Apollo in the fire which he had made in order to burn Matthew; and the fire did not separate itself from Apollo | until it had turned him into ashes. Now by reason of this thing [Page 113] the people of the city believed in our Lord Jesus Christ through Matthew, the blessed Apostle.

And after these things our Lord Jesus Christ appeared unto Matthew the blessed Apostle [and said unto him], "Strengthen and fortify thy faith, and keep thou in remembrance the words which I have spoken unto thee; and be not dismayed, and fear not, but abide patiently, for I have in this city certain elect souls who believe on Me through thy words." And Matthew said unto Him, "Yea, my Lord!" And He said unto Matthew and unto 'Armîs, "Baptize ye the people, and strengthen them against their sins;" and then having finished conversing with them | our Lord went up into heaven | with great glory, whilst all the people of the city were looking at Him. Then the king and the people of the city overthrew the temple of Apollo, and they built a church [which] Matthew consecrated; and he appointed 'Armîs to be their Bishop, and he established priests and deacons over them, and gave them the Gospel, and he dwelt

with them until their faith grew strong, when he went forth from them in peace. And when he had gone outside the city, he turned his face to them, and said unto them, "The grace and the peace of God be with you for ever and ever." Amen, and Amen.

---

## THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT MATTHEW IN PARTHIA.

A. fol. 49a. [Page 114] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE  
col. 1. SON, AND OF THE HOLY SPIRIT [ONE GOD].  
B. fol.

155b.  
col. 1.

Here beginneth the Martyrdom of Saint Matthew the good Evangelist; now the end of his testimony took place on the twelfth day of the month Tekemt.<sup>1</sup> In the peace of God. May his prayer and his blessing be with his handmaiden Walatta Madhan! Amen.

And it came to pass that, when Matthew the Evangelist had come unto Jerusalem and the country of Judah, he wrote a Gospel in the Hebrew language. And he went forth unto 'Apâyangê<sup>2</sup>, and told the people thereof concerning Christ, and he confirmed them in the true faith, and when he knew that the faith of all those who were in the city and in the districts thereof was sure, he went forth from them in gladness and rejoicing, because God had graciously granted unto him that they should believe. And he declared and preached unto them the vivifying Word of God, and how He was born of the holy Virgin MARY, the God-bearer; and he told them concerning His death which, indeed, maketh [men] to | live, and concern-

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., October 9.

<sup>2</sup> A district or country in Parthia (?).

ing His resurrection; but first of all he taught all men that God Almighty | took up an abode in a Body which He received from the Virgin without carnal union, and that He became One, without mingling, without mixture, and without division. And Saint Matthew was wont to go about in the prison house and to heal all those who were therein, without either payment or recompense. [And he used to heal all those who were sick], for he gave healing unto every one by his word in the Name of our Lord Jesus. [And he said], "May ye have salvation;" and in that same hour wherein he ended his words he made to be delivered (*or* saved) all those who [Page 115] believed in God Almighty.

Now in that hour Matthew came into the prison house, and he found there a man from whom certain people demanded much money, and the keeper of the gaol had condemned him to suffer much. And when Matthew looked at him, and saw that he was suffering great tribulation, the Saint had compassion upon him, and said unto | him, "O man, why do I see thee in such  
"great sorrow, and in such trouble and tears?" And he  
said unto Matthew, " | Hearken unto me, O my lord, and  
"I will tell thee everything which hath befallen me. I  
"was a servant of one Kēsōs,<sup>1</sup> and I was a trusted man  
"before him. And he hearkened unto my voice, and he  
"gave me much goods and commanded me to depart by  
"sea, and to traffic with the merchandize; and I did even  
"as he commanded me. And I went forth and went up  
"into a ship, and as it was sailing on its way, the sea

B. fol.  
155b.  
col. 2.

A. fol. 49b.  
col. 1.

B. fol.  
156a.  
col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> Augustus, *or* Festus(?).

"was violently moved by reason of a mighty wind which  
 "blew upon it, and great waves rose up upon it, and the  
 "ship went to the bottom of the sea. Then was I in  
 "great tribulation, and I lost all hope of saving my life,  
 "until at length God Almighty shewed compassion upon  
 "me, and He sent a little ship, and He brought me up  
 "on the sea-shore, and I returned to my master 'Âkôstôs,'

A. fol. 49b. "and I told | him everything which had taken place. And  
 col. 2.

"he said unto me in anger, 'Whence comest thou?' and  
 "I told him everything which had happened, and [all]  
 "that had befallen me at sea. And he was exceedingly  
 "wroth with me, for he loved [his] possessions dearly,

B. fol. "and it is on this pretext that he hath | cast me into  
 156a.  
 col. 2. "prison, and he now asketh me to give back to him some  
 "of his goods."

And it came to pass that, when Matthew heard  
 [these words], he was sorrowful, and he said unto him,  
 "Weep not, and be not sad, but believe in God Almighty,  
 "Who will put strength into the hearts of all those who  
 "believe in Him." Then the man said unto him, "What  
 "dost thou wish me to do for thee? I have been, in-  
 "deed, in great trouble, and, [Page 116] O servant of God;  
 "for years past I have wanted many times to kill myself

A. fol. 50a. "by reason of the frequent scourgings | wherewith they  
 col. 1.

"have scourged me." And the Apostle said unto him,  
 "Hearken unto me, and I will tell thee a great mystery;  
 "only thou must swear unto me that when that which I  
 "have to say unto thee is ended thou wilt believe in God  
 "all the days of thy life." And the man bowed low to

---

1 Augustus, or Festus(?).

the ground, and said unto the Apostle, "[I] hear [and  
 "obey]; and may God be upon me! If good come unto  
 "me through thee by reason of that which thou hast  
 "commanded me, I will believe in Christ Who was  
 "crucified." Then the Apostle said unto him, "On the  
 "morrow thy master 'Aḱûstôs<sup>1</sup> will enquire for thee, and  
 "he will have thee brought out | according to his wont, B. fol.  
 "that he may scourge thee. When he hath seen thee, 156b.  
 "and hath given orders to the men to scourge thee, speak col. 1.  
 "thou unto him, saying, 'I entreat thee, O my lord, to  
 "wait and to stay thy hand from me this day; for, if  
 "God should be pleased to shew His mercy upon me  
 "and upon the heart[s] of the men of this city, they  
 "will help me and deliver me.' Now, | if when thy A. fol. 50a.  
 "master cometh into his habitation, he release thee from col. 2.  
 "prison for two days, go thou to the place where the  
 "ship went down, and thou shalt find all the goods which  
 "were swallowed up in the sea: take them, and pay that  
 "which thou owest, and free thyself and all those who  
 "are in thy house."

And it came to pass that, when the morrow had  
 come, 'Aḱûstôs sent for the man, and had him brought  
 out of prison; and when he had seen him he looked  
 upon him with wrath and gave orders that he should be  
 made to stand up for scourging. Then the man answered  
 and spake unto him everything which the Apostle had  
 commanded him, and all that the Apostle had told  
 him came to pass, as he said; and 'Aḱûstôs granted  
 his request. Then the man went out unto the place where  
 the ship had sunk, believing that everything which the

<sup>1</sup> Augustus, or Festus(?).

B. fol. 156b. col. 2. Apostle | had told him would be fulfilled; and he looked on his right hand, on the sea-shore, [Page 117] and he found there | a bag filled with gold, and he took [it] and came back into the city blessing God Almighty, and giving thanks unto the blessed Apostle.

And when he came to 'Aḡûstôs, he gave him the [bag] which was full of gold, and he opened it and counted [therein] two thousand dînârs. Then 'Aḡûstôs said unto him, "What is this?" And the man said unto him, "It is the price of the ship which sank, together with all that was in it, in the sea." Then 'Aḡûstôs said unto him, "Where didst thou find this money?" And the man said unto him, "When they had cast me into prison I found there a man full of compassion [for me], and he saw that I was in trouble, and he said unto me, 'Why do I see thee in this trouble?' Then I told him everything which had befallen me. And all the words which he spake unto me have come to pass, for he commanded me to go to the | place where the ship went down, and I went, and I found this money; and I testify unto thee, O my lord, that no man like unto him can be found on all the earth." | And 'Aḡûstôs said unto him, "How canst thou expect me to listen unto such mad words from thee? How am I to know that thou didst not go to a certain place [where treasure is hidden], and dig [it] up, and steal the money, and bring it hither to me?" And the man said unto him, "It is not as thou sayest. I swear unto thee in the Name of my Lord Jesus Christ, the God of Matthew, that I did not find any place [of hidden treasure]; nay, everything which I have told thee is true. And if thou wishest to

"see Matthew, behold, he is in the prison house healing  
 "all those who are sick, and casting out devils from all  
 "who are possessed of them."

Now whilst the man was saying these words, there  
 came a certain wicked | man who was a hater of good A. fol. 51a  
col. 1.  
 works, and who cried out, saying, "Hear, O ye people  
 "of Rome, and I will describe unto you [the cause of] the  
 "tumult which hath arisen in this city. It is a certain  
 "man who is a wandering stranger, who preacheth on his  
 "journey a God Whose Name is Jesus the Nazarene  
 "[Page 118]; [and if] 'Aḱôstôs, the governor of this city,  
 "alloweth him [to continue to do this] he will destroy  
 "the city and all | those who dwell therein." Then B. fol.  
157a.  
col. 2.  
 'Aḱsetôs, the governor of the city, brought this matter  
 before the king, and when the king heard thereof he  
 was angry with a great anger against the Apostle, and  
 he said unto the captains of his guard, "Go ye forth  
 "quickly to where he is, and when and wheresoever ye  
 "find him cut off his head, and cast his body out upon  
 "the ground, so that it may become food for the birds  
 "of heaven."<sup>1</sup> | Then the captains of the guard went out A. fol. 51a.  
col. 2.  
 and did as the king had commanded them, and they cut  
 off his head, and left his body lying on the ground, so  
 that the birds of heaven might eat it. But God, Who  
 loveth mankind, sent unto him two of the elect, and they  
 took the head of the saint and buried it with his body;  
 and they swathed it in clean grave-clothes, and laid it  
 in the grave of his fathers. And it came to pass that  
 when the man whom the Apostle had delivered from

<sup>1</sup> See Lipsius, *op. cit.*, vol. ii, part 2, p. 129.

B. fol. 157b. col. I. 'Akôstôs heard how he had slain the Apostle, [he sat down] for three days sorrowing for him; and | fifteen days after the death of Saint Matthew, the man died also.

A. fol. 51b. col. I. Here endeth the contending of Saint Matthew, the good Evangelist, the Apostle of our Lord Jesus Christ. Now the | consummation of his martyrdom took place on the twelfth day of the month Têkêmt;<sup>1</sup> glory, and honour, and majesty, and dominion, as are meet, be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Spirit the Vivifier, now and always, and for ever and ever. Amen, Amen. So be it.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., October 9.

## THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT LUKE.

[Page 119] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE  
SON, AND OF THE HOLY SPIRIT, ONE GOD.

B. fol.  
157b.  
col. 2.

Here beginneth the Martyrdom of Saint Luke the Evangelist,  
which took place on the twenty-second day of the month Tēkēmt.<sup>1</sup> In  
the peace of our Lord Jesus Christ, Amen. May his prayer and  
blessing be with his handmaiden Walatta Madhan!

A. fol. 52a.  
col. 1.

And it came to pass that, when the Apostles divid-  
ed the countries of the world amongst them, the city of  
Rome became the portion of Peter; and certain of the  
Apostles dwelt with him; their names were Titus of the  
country of Galilā (Gallia), and Luke of the country of  
Dalmātyā (Dalmatia). Now when the blessed Peter  
died in the city of Rome, in the days of Nero the Em-  
peror, the Apostles were scattered abroad, and they  
preached the Gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ in all  
countries. And Nero, the Emperor, who was surnamed  
Caesar, laid hold upon Paul and cut off his head in the  
city of | Rome; but Saint Luke fled from before the face  
of the Emperor and escaped, and he was preaching in  
all the countries and in all the cities which were in | those

A. fol. 52a.  
col. 2.  
B. fol.  
158a.  
col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> I. e., October 19. See LIPSIVS, op. cit., vol ii. part 2, p. 356.

regions. Now he was the scribe of the blessed Peter, and he wrote [the history of] all the beautiful acts which he did [in the countries] wherein he preached in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ; [and he wrought] many marvellous things, and God cast out devils through him, and he healed the sick, and he opened the eyes of the blind, and the lame walked, and he cleansed the lepers, and he made the deaf to hear, and he healed those who were sick, in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ.

And it came to pass that, when the story of him went forth into all lands, believers were multiplied [Page 120] therein. And he built with his own hands many churches and places [for prayer] | in all the lands wherein the people believed in our Lord Jesus Christ; and the believers increased daily, and they observed the rule and the teaching of Saint Luke. And it came to pass that, when the priests of the temple of the gods of the heathen saw the beauty of the faith of the multitude, Satan entered into their hearts |, and they took counsel with the Jews who dwelt in those regions; and they gathered themselves together in the temple which was in the great city that was in that region. Now this gathering took place on the twentieth day of the month Maskarram.<sup>1</sup> And it came to pass that, when they were gathered together with the Jews in the temple, the priests and their gods were adorned with rich apparel, and in the temple were draperies (*or* curtains), and lamps, and sweet scents of every kind; and all the nobles of the kingdom came and took their seats upon their thrones.

A. fol. 52b.  
col. 1.

B. fol.  
158a.  
col. 2.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., September 17.

Then the high priest came unto them, and said,  
 "A certain man, a sorcerer, one of the Twelve | men of A. fol. 52b.  
 "Galilee, and [some of] the Seventy-two [disciples] whom col. 2.  
 "Jesus, Who is called Christ, appointed to be Apostles  
 "unto Himself, have come into our city, and they have  
 "multiplied marvellous acts, and all [the people] of Rome  
 "have turned unto their doctrine because of their manifold  
 "errors and sorceries. Now behold, the Emperor Nero  
 "slew many of them, but this man Luke fled and escaped  
 "from the Emperor, and he hath led astray many of the  
 "people of this region." Thereupon rose up a certain  
 Jew, whose name was | Isaac (now he was the chief B. fol.  
 among the Jewish folk who were in that district), and he 158b.  
 said, "Before I came unto this country I lived in Jerusalem col. 1.  
 "with a good man whose name was Gamaliel; and Annas,  
 "and Caiaphas, and Alexander, and Rayôlëyôs (Aurelius),  
 "were the elders of the people. And they laid hold  
 "upon a certain man [Page 121] Whose Name was Jesus,  
 "and they passed upon Him sentence of death, and they  
 "crucified Him upon a tree, and they killed Him, and they  
 "laid Him in the grave; | but He rose from the dead A. fol. 53a.  
 "on the third day, and it is this Man in Whose Name Luke col. 1.  
 "preacheth." Then all the people answered with one  
 voice, and said unto him, "How could this [Man], Whose  
 "Name was Jesus Christ, rise from the dead?" And it  
 came to pass that when all the gods that were in the  
 temple heard the Name of Jesus they fell down and were  
 dashed to pieces. And when the priests saw the de-  
 struction of their gods, they rent their garments, and  
 plucked out the hair of their heads, and went forth into  
 the city of Rome. And they cried out unto the Emperor,

saying, "Behold, these men whom they call after Jesus  
 B. fol. "work | many sorceries." And the Emperor said unto  
 158b. them, "I have killed all those who believe in this Name,  
 col. 2. "except one man who is called Luke, and he hath escap-  
 A. fol. 53a. "ed out of my hands." Then the people | answered and  
 col. 2. said unto him, "Behold, he hath led astray all the people  
 "who live in our country by his teaching, and by making  
 "them to believe on Jesus; in our city he healeth those  
 "that are sick, whatsoever be their disease, and he healeth  
 "multitudes." And it came to pass that, when the Em-  
 peror heard these words, he was exceedingly angry, and  
 he gnashed his teeth, and he commanded one of his  
 captains to go with two hundred soldiers to the place  
 where Saint Luke was, and to bring him before him.

Now Saint Luke was sitting and teaching the multi-  
 tude the commandments of the Gospel, and when he had  
 finished his discourse the people dispersed unto their  
 handicrafts. Then the holy man rose up and went forth  
 to the sea, and he found upon the sea-shore an aged  
 B. fol. man seated catching fish. And he said unto him, | "I  
 159a. "say unto thee, O man who dost catch fish, come unto  
 col. 1. "me, [Page 122] and I will tell thee what it is necessary  
 "for thee to do;" and when the old man had drawn  
 nigh unto him, he saw the grace of God in his face, and  
 A. fol. 53b. he fell | down and bowed himself before him. Then the  
 col. 1. holy man lifted him up, and said unto him, "Behold, the  
 "Emperor hath sent unto me a captain with soldiers to  
 "bring me unto him, and behold, I know that he hath  
 "commanded them to slay me; and I must fulfil the will  
 "of God. Take now this book, and lay it up in thy  
 "habitation in a pure place, and it shall teach thee the

"way of life." And the old man took the book from him in faith, and the power of God came down upon him; now his name was Silas, and he was a bold man, and was chosen of God, and he preached in God's Name throughout all the land.

Now whilst Saint Luke was holding converse [with the old man] the soldiers of the Emperor came, and they laid hold upon him, | and he went with them to Rome, B. fol. 159a. col. 2. and [came] into the presence of the Emperor; now he had been put in bonds, but he was blessing the Name of God Almighty in his heart. Then the Emperor | A. fol. 53b. col. 2. commanded them to cast him into prison until the morrow. And it came to pass that when the morrow had come he ordered them to bring him into his presence, and to make him to stand bound before him; but Saint Luke ceased not to ascribe praise unto God the whole time, saying, "I give thanks unto Thee, O my Lord Jesus Christ, "because Thou hast made me worthy of this honourable "position." Now when Saint Luke had come into the presence of the Emperor, he said unto him, "Art thou "Luke who hast destroyed all the cities of Rome, and "who wouldst restrain the worship of the gods by thy "sorcery?" Then Saint Luke answered and said unto him, "Our Lord and Redeemer Jesus Christ saith in the "Gospel, If they drive you out from [one] city go ye "unto another. Blessed are ye [Page 123] when they "shall speak against you all manner [of evil] falsely, for "My sake. Rejoice and be glad: for great shall be your reward in heaven.' The work of my father | Peter is a B. fol. 159b. col. 1.

1 Matthew x. 23; v. 11, 12.

“good work, and this have I learned from him; as for  
 A. fol. 54a. “sorcery | I have no knowledge thereof, but I do know  
 col. 1. “the Name of my Lord Jesus Christ.” And the Emperor  
 said unto the men of his kingdom who were gathered  
 together round about him, “Make ye no mention of the  
 “Name of Jesus before my throne;” whereupon straight-  
 way all the graven images and idols, which the Emperor  
 used to think were gods and which were about the throne,  
 fell down quickly. And it came to pass that, when the  
 Emperor and all those who were with him saw the  
 mighty deed which Saint Luke had wrought, they cried  
 out, and said, “Drive out this man from our country.”

And in that same hour the Emperor commanded  
 that they should make Saint Luke to stand up to be  
 scourged, and they beat him with whips of untanned  
 leather until his blood flowed upon the ground like water.  
 Then the Emperor commanded them to cut off his right  
 hand and arm; and straightway the swordsman came  
 and smote at his right hand and arm and cut them off.  
 And the Emperor said unto Saint Luke, “Is this the  
 B. fol. “hand and arm wherewith thou didst write | books and  
 159b. “lead into error Rome and the people of my kingdom?”  
 col. 2. And Saint | Luke said unto him, “Do not imagine that  
 A. fol. 54b. “my God is One Who hath no strength, for I will shew  
 col. 2. “thee His power.” And he prayed and said, “O my  
 “Lord Jesus Christ, Whom the world hath rejected and  
 “Whom we have followed, Thou art the Saviour of souls;  
 “Thou dost not desire that error should go forth from  
 “me knowingly or unknowingly; now, I am of the children  
 “of men, do not Thou therefore perform this mighty act  
 “which I beseech Thee to do [for my sake], for I am a

"sinner, but for the sake of Thy holy Name, and for the  
 "sake of Thine exalted power, so that the multitudes  
 "may not say, 'Where is their God?' Grant now this act  
 "of grace unto Thy servant, and let his arm be healed,  
 "[Page 124] and let it become even as it was formerly,  
 "for Thine is the glory, and the power for ever. Amen."  
 Then, having made an end of his prayer, he stretched  
 out his left hand and laid hold of his right hand, which  
 had been cut off, and made it to adhere to its [proper]  
 place; and by the power of our Lord Jesus Christ it be-  
 came alive again (*or* healed).

And it came to pass that, when the Emperor and  
 all those who were sitting | with him saw this wonderful  
 thing, they marvelled and said, "Observe | ye the might  
 of the work of this sorcerer;" and Saint Luke said unto  
 him, "(O my lord, I am not a sorcerer; may my God  
 "keep me from becoming one! But I would that thou  
 "mightest know the power of my Lord Jesus Christ, and  
 "that I am not unwilling [to suffer] the death of this  
 "world;" then Saint Luke took hold of his right hand  
 with his left and cut it off again. Now when Înâtôlê,  
 (Anatolius) a prefect of the Emperor, saw this marvel,  
 he, and his wife, and the men of his house, and all his  
 servants (now they were in number two hundred and  
 eighty-seven souls), believed in our Lord Jesus Christ.  
 And the Emperor commanded [his servants] to write  
 down their names, and he passed an order for them  
 [all] to be executed in one day; and this order was carried  
 out on the twenty-second day of the month Têḫēmt.<sup>1</sup>

B. fol.  
 160a.  
 col. 1.  
 A. fol. 54b.  
 col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> I. e., October 19.

B. fol. 160a. col. 2. Then the Emperor commanded them to cut off the | head of Saint Luke, and to put it in a sack made of dark [wool *or* hair], and to fill the sack with sand and to cast it into the sea.

Now when the blessed man had heard this command the Emperor's servants took him out to the sea, so that  
 A. fol. 54b. col. 2. they might cut off | his head, and he said unto the captain of the soldiers, "I entreat you by him that is "the greatest, and by him that is the least among you, "to bear patiently with me for a little while, until I have "prayed unto my God." Then he prayed, saying, "O my "Lord Jesus Christ, Who didst create everything by Thy "wisdom and according to Thy will; that is to say, the "heavens, and the earth, and the sea, and everything "which moveth therein, grant [Page 125] unto Thy servant "power, and grace, and forgiveness of sins and offences, "and make him to inherit a portion together with my "father Peter." And it came to pass that when the saint had ended his prayer, one of the captains of the soldiers, who was blind in one of his eyes, drew nigh unto him, and came to the saint to cut off his head before he had finished his prayer; and because of this thing he saw  
 B. fol. 160b. col. 1. with his [blind] eye, and he fell down upon the | ground, and said unto the saint, "Forgive me, O thou servant of "the good God, for I have blasphemed thee." And the other swordsman drew his sword, and smote Saint Luke  
 A. fol. 55a. col. 1. on the head and cut it off from his | body; and he cut off the head of his fellow captain who had believed also, thus the captain and Saint Luke finished their testimony together. And they placed the body of the saint in a sack made of hair, and cast it into the sea, but by the

commandment of God the waves washed it up upon an island; and a certain man who believed in God found it, and took it up out of the water, and buried it, [having swathed it] in fine linen. Now Saint Luke finished his testimony on the twenty-second day of the month Těķēmt, in the days of the Emperor Nero. Glory be unto God, and unto our Lord and God Jesus Christ, and sovereignty, and power, and honour, and holiness be unto His kingdom, which shall never, never, change; and unto the Holy Trinity, Father, Son, and Holy Spirit, be praise for ever and ever! Amen, Amen, and Amen. So be it. So be it. Hallelujah.

## THE PREACHING OF SAINT PHILIP AND SAINT PETER.

B. fol. 160b. col. 2. [Page 126] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE  
SON, AND OF THE HOLY SPIRIT, ONE GOD.

A. fol. 55a. col. 2. Here beginneth the Book of the Preaching of Philip, the Apostle  
of our Lord Jesus Christ, which he preached in the country of Africa  
(Phrygia?). In the peace of God. May his prayer and his blessing  
be with his handmaiden Walatta Madhan! Amen.

And it came to pass that, when the Apostles were gathered together on the Mount of Olives, and as they were declaring among themselves the praise of God, our Lord and Redeemer Jesus Christ appeared unto them, and said unto them, "Peace be unto you, O My beloved ones; why dwell ye here? And why have ye not gone forth into the world to preach unto the people thereof the Gospel of the Kingdom? And now, cast lots among yourselves, and divide the world into twelve parts, so that ye may go forth and preach unto the people thereof, and give them peace." And He ascended into heaven

A. fol. 55b. col. 1. with great glory. Then the | Apostles cast lots, and the  
lot fell upon Philip to go forth unto the country of Africa  
B. fol. 161a. (Phrygia?); now he was not loath [to depart]. And he  
col. 1. said unto Peter, "Behold, | God hath commanded that thou

"shalt go forth with each one of us unto the country  
 "where he is to go; now I wish thee to go forth with me  
 "unto my country." And Peter said unto him, "I consent."

So Peter and Philip set out on their journey together, and our Lord appeared unto them, and said unto them, "Peace be unto you, O ye chosen Apostles, go ye and "tell the story of the Gospel unto all creation, that ye "may deliver them from the hand of Satan. Verily I say "unto you that ye shall toil in this world until ye shall "have brought the people thereof out from darkness into "[Page 127] the knowledge of righteousness. Verily I say "unto you that your reward shall be great, that ye shall "enter into [your] rest, and that ye shall forget your suffer- "ings." And speaking unto them in this wise He gave them the salutation of peace, and went up from them into heaven with glory and splendour.

Then Peter and Philip, in the strength of their | A. fol. 55b.  
 hearts, journeyed together on their way, and it came to col. 2.  
 pass that when the two Apostles had drawn nigh unto  
 the city there came in their path a certain man who was  
 possessed of an unclean | spirit, and he cried out, saying, B. fol.  
 "O Apostles of Christ, I will not let you enter into the 161a.  
 "city." And Peter knew that the spirit was a devil, and col. 2.  
 in that same hour he adjured him, and Satan went forth  
 from him, and the man was made whole, and followed  
 the Apostles unto the city. Now there [stood] upon the  
 top of the gate [of the city] a certain very high pillar,<sup>1</sup>  
 and when Peter and Philip came to the gate, Peter made  
 supplication unto God, saying, "I entreat thee, O my Lord

<sup>1</sup> See LIPSIVS, op. cit., vol. ii. part 2, p. 47.

"Jesus Christ, that this gate and this high pillar, and the  
 "things which are upon it, may be hurled down to the  
 "earth as soon as my hand cometh upon it and layeth  
 "hold upon it." Then in that same hour the gate, and  
 the pillar, and the things that were thereon came down  
 upon the ground, and they lay upon it as flat as (*or* level

A. fol. 56a. with) the | surface thereof.

col. 1.

And Peter spake unto the man out of whom the  
 unclean spirit had gone, and commanded him to go up  
 on the pillar and to declare and to utter with his mouth  
 certain words whereby awful things might come upon the  
 people of the city; | and the man went up on the pillar which  
 was over the gate, and on the things that were [there].

B. fol.

161b.

col. 1.

Then Peter said, "In the Name of my Lord Jesus Christ,  
 "let [this pillar] be raised up even as it was before;" and  
 in that same hour the gate, and the pillar, and the things  
 which were upon it, were raised up until they became of  
 the same height as they were formerly [Page 128]. And  
 the man cried out with a loud voice, and said, "O ye  
 "men who are in this city, return ye to the place wherein  
 "are the Apostles of our Lord Jesus Christ, that they may  
 "bless you, and may make supplication for you, that  
 "He may forgive you your sins." And it came to pass  
 that, when the man who was standing on the top of the  
 pillar had said these words, there were thunders and

A. fol. 56a. lightnings; and the people of the city were terrified and |

col. 2.

afraid exceedingly, and they went into caverns, and into  
 holes in the earth, and to the islands, but the lightnings  
 followed hard upon them wherever they went. And many  
 men, and many women likewise, died through the sound  
 [of the thunders], and the earthquake, and the lightnings.

Now by reason of this multitudes of the people came unto the Apostles, and they looked | upon them, and their hands were stretched out, and they were praying unto God; and the people fell down upon the ground and prostrated themselves before the Apostles, weeping and saying unto them, "O servants of God, we beseech you to shew compassion upon us, and may the new gods whom we know not have mercy upon us. And tell us what ye desire, and what offerings ye would have, so that we may offer them unto you, and we entreat you to remove from us these fearful and terrible things."

B. fol.  
161b.  
col. 2.

Then the Apostles besought God Almighty on their behalf, and the earthquake ceased, and the lightning departed, and the man held his peace, and the gate came down with the pillar, [and was] even | as it had been; and the man came down from the top of the pillar. And it came to pass that, when those who were assembled there saw that the man was holding his peace, and that the fearful things had passed away, they said, "This man is God." Then they cried out with one voice, saying, "Art thou God Almighty or not? Let us know | who thou art." And the man said unto them [Page 129], "I am not God. I should be a man like unto yourselves were it not for this word which the Spirit of God hath spoken from my mouth, and for the commandments of the holy Apostles. But come unto the holy disciples, Peter and Philip, O all ye who dwell [here], and hearken [unto them], and gain knowledge, and ye shall be saved." Then the people rose up and came unto the Apostles, and embraced their feet, and said unto them, "Who are ye?" And Philip said unto them, "Which of the gods do ye worship?" And they said unto him,

A. fol. 56b.  
col. 1.

B. fol.  
162a.  
col. 1.

"We worship the image of an eagle of gold." And Philip  
 A. fol. 56b. said unto them, "Go ye | and bring him unto me;" and  
 col. 2. they did even as he had commanded them. Then the  
 priests cried out, saying, "Do not destroy the gods of  
 "the city who bring you salvation at all times, so that  
 B. fol. "when war riseth up against you ye may cry out | unto  
 162a. "them, and they shall help you." And the men of the  
 col. 2. city said unto them, "It is better for us to accept the  
 "words of the disciples than your words. These gods are  
 "the work of the hand of man, and they see not, and  
 "they hear not, and they smell not, and they walk not."

And it came to pass that, when they had brought  
 the gods unto the Apostles, the priests cried out and said  
 unto the Apostles, "Ye are leading astray men by your  
 "enchantments, and ye say concerning a man the Man to  
 "Whom MARY gave birth, and Whom Pilate slew that  
 "He is God. Hath there ever been a god whom a man  
 "could scourge? Hath there ever been a god who could  
 "die? And as for these figures of gold and silver which  
 "we fashion and call gods, they cannot suffer pain, and  
 A. fol. 57a. "they cannot feel." | Then the power of the Holy Spirit  
 col. 1. descended upon Philip, and our Lord Jesus Christ strength-  
 ened him with His own power, and he made supplication,  
 and said, "O my Lord Jesus Christ, [Page 130] by Thy  
 "will let fire descend from heaven and consume these evil  
 "and unjust priests, so that [the people] may know that  
 B. fol. "they are deceivers even unto this day." | And in that same  
 162b. hour a cloud of fire came down from heaven, and encircled  
 col. 1. those wicked and unjust priests, that [the people] might  
 know [them to be deceivers]; and it smote them without  
 doing any harm to the people. Now the priests within

the fire were weeping by reason of their tribulation and fear. Then Philip said unto them, "Why weep ye?" And they cried out and said, "[Because] when war riseth up against you, and ye cry out unto your gods to save you "and your cities (*or* countries) [they will not do so.]"

Then Peter took up the image of gold and cast it into the fire to the place wherein were | the priests. And <sup>A. fol. 57a.</sup> the image of gold answered and said, "O disciples of <sup>col. 2.</sup> "Jesus Christ, punish ye me not, but have compassion upon "me, and judge ye between me and these sinful men. "I am of the matter of the earth, but these men have "fashioned me, and purified me, and they have made me "by their skill into the form in which ye now see me; "and they set me in a temple, and they used to sacrifice "beasts unto me, and to mix their blood with wine, and "they led men astray by | telling them that I ate up these <sup>B. fol.</sup> "sacrifices. Now I neither eat, nor drink, nor hold converse <sup>162b.</sup> "with anyone, and verily I am not a being who should <sup>col. 2.</sup> "hold converse with you; but it is the power which dwell- "eth in you that maketh me worthy to speak with this "people, and to chide them concerning the wickedness of "their works." And when the figure had spoken these words it held its peace.

Then the priests made fervent supplication unto the Apostles that they would cause them to come forth | from <sup>A. fol. 57b.</sup> the fire so that it might not consume them utterly, and <sup>col. 1.</sup> [they promised] to do all that they commanded them. And Philip said unto them, "If ye forsake your evil "[Page 131] gods, and will say, 'We believe in our Lord "Jesus Christ,' we will, in this same hour, speak the word "in His Name whereby this cloud of fire shall go up from

"you." Then they all cried out with a loud voice, and said, "We believe in God Almighty thy God, and in Jesus "His Word, and in the Holy Spirit;" and in that same hour the flame of fire was lifted up from them, and [the place] became like a lake of water, sweet and white like

B. fol.  
163a.  
col. 1.

| milk, so that they all marvelled.  
And those who were assembled there fervently entreated the Apostles to command them what it was necessary for them to do that they might make right their belief; and Philip said unto them, "We command you to build a "church in this place wherein we may teach men, for it is "in this place that ye have [first] believed;" and they

A. fol. 57b.  
col. 2.

consented [to do] even | as he had said unto them. Then Philip commanded them to bring unto him dried grass (*or* reeds), and he marked out the foundations of the church, and he ordered them to dig out the foundations; thus Philip founded the church. And it came to pass that when they had performed his behests and they had finished their work, Philip came unto the gate of the city whereon stood the pillar. And he said, "In the Name of our Lord "Jesus Christ the Nazarene, I command thee to depart "from this place unto the church which hath been called "after the Name of God;" and in that same hour the gate fell down, and the pillar which stood upon it formerly came down from it, and they moved onwards in front of the multitudes unto the place where they had built | the church, and no sound was heard to proceed from them, and no dust rose up. Then the multitudes said, "There is no god "except the God of Peter and Philip, the servants of Jesus "Christ."

B. fol.  
163a.  
col. 2.

Then Philip turned towards those who were gathered

together there, and said unto them, "Behold, we have  
 "already built a church and a house of | God, [Page 132] A. fol. 58a.  
col. 1.  
 "I now desire ye to gather together young women who  
 "are virgins to carry water, and men, both old and young,  
 "and all the people of the city, that each one, according  
 "to his power, may work in the house of God;" and there  
 was no man among the multitudes who refused [to do]  
 that which Philip commanded him. And the Apostles  
 were dwelling in the house of Kêrôn, a nobleman (*or* go-  
 vernor) of the city, and they were rejoicing because the  
 multitudes had so speedily accepted the faith.

And our Lord Jesus Christ took the form of a man of  
 shining appearance, and He appeared unto the Apostles,  
 and said unto them, "My peace be with you, O My chosen  
 "Apostles! Behold, I have seen that the faith of the men  
 "of this city is good, why then do ye remain | in the house? B. fol.  
163b.  
col. 1.  
 "Get ye forth to them that ye may teach them the word  
 "of life and the command of righteousness, and be not  
 "unmindful of them [i. e., of the other peoples of the world].  
 "Whatsoever ye shall ask of Me, that will I give unto  
 "you." And when our Lord Jesus | Christ had spoken A. fol. 58a.  
col. 2.  
 [these words] unto them (now He was in the form of a  
 man radiant with light), He went up into heaven with  
 great glory. Then the faces of Peter and Philip were  
 bright with the glory of the Lord Jesus Christ, Who had  
 appeared unto them in the house. And when they had  
 gone forth unto the multitude and the people saw the light  
 of their faces, they fell down prostrate before them upon  
 the ground; and the Apostles blessed them, and lifted them  
 up, and they taught them and confirmed them in the true  
 faith of our Lord Jesus Christ, and commanded them not

to return unto their sins. And as the people received the blessing from the Apostles the number of the multitudes increased; and they marvelled at the glory of God which rested upon their faces.

B. fol. 163b. col. 2. Now there was a certain man | among them upon whom a devil had laid hold, and he cried out with a loud [Page 133] voice, saying, "I beseech you, O ye "servants of Christ, not to inflict punishment upon me, "and I will go forth from him." And that unclean spirit

A. fol. 58b. col. 1. cast the man down upon the ground, | and then went forth from him; and Peter and Philip commanded the devil to depart from him and never again to return into him; and the man who had been made whole bowed down at the feet of the Apostles, and embraced Peter and Philip. Then the people gathered themselves together unto the lake which had formed in the place, where had been the cloud of fire that had surrounded the priests, which had now become water, and they were baptized therein in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. And the Apostles said unto the multitudes, "God hath "remitted unto you your sins which ye committed without "knowledge; now therefore press onward towards good "works, so that ye may be worthy of the beautiful kingdom "of heaven which abideth [for ever]."

Then the people cried out with a loud voice, saying,  
B. fol. 164a. col. 1. "We give thanks unto | Thee, O Lord God of Peter and "Philip, because Thou hast had compassion upon us, and "hast taught us, and because the Apostles have con-  
A. fol. 58b. col. 2. "secrated a church [for us], whereto the people | gather "themselves together in joy and in gladness." Then Philip read unto them the Books of the Law and the Prophets,

and Peter interpreted them unto them in the Spirit of our Lord Jesus Christ. Then straightway did the people of the multitudes rejoice in the knowledge of the faith, and they were prepared to receive the Mysteries, and the Apostles having first of all prayed the prayer of consecration and brought it to an end, gave unto the people of the Body of our Lord, and of His precious Blood. And the multitudes came forward and received the Body and the precious Blood in faith, and he gave them the salutation of peace; [Page 134] and he dwelt with them for six days, teaching them the commandments of God until they had learned [them]. Then the Apostles appointed them Bishops, and priests, and deacons, and they departed from them, glorifying God, and marvelling at the mighty acts which they had wrought in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, to Whom be the glory and honour | which are meet for Him, and for His Father, and for the Holy Spirit, for ever and ever. Amen.

B. fol.

164a.

col. 2.

## THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT PHILIP IN PHRYGIA.

A. fol. 59a. [Page 135] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE  
col. 1. SON, AND OF THE HOLY SPIRIT, ONE GOD.

B. fol.

164b.

col. 1.

Here beginneth the Martyrdom of the blessed Apostle Philip who nobly ended his contending on the eighteenth day of the month Hadâr<sup>1</sup>. In the peace of God. Amen. May his prayer and his blessing be with [his] handmaiden, Walatta Madhan.

And it came to pass that as Philip was entering into the country of Africa (Phrygia?), and was going to the inhabitants of that country, he preached unto them a new God, Whose Name was not known unto them, that is to say, Jesus; and they made haste to come unto him so that they might hear his words. Now when they heard him preaching in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of the Living God, the God of heaven and of earth, the multitudes answered and said unto him, "Who is Jesus Christ? We have never heard of Him except from thee;" and they were wont to worship the gods [of the heathen] and devils. Then Philip answered and said unto them, "Hearken unto me, O ye men who are gathered together

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., November 14.

"here, for | I see that the grace of God will be with | you. B. fol.  
 "The God Whom I preach unto you is God Almighty, 164b.  
 "and besides Him there is no other god; He is the Living A. fol. 59a.  
 "God, and He giveth life unto all those who believe in col. 2.  
 "Him. And there is a Son with the Father, and a Holy  
 "Spirit, Who proceeded from the Father, but the Spirit  
 "and the Father and the Son are One, that is to say,  
 "One God. [He existed] before all days, and He shall  
 "endure for ever; He is the First, and He is the Last, and  
 "He is invisible. It is He Who created all things by His  
 "wisdom; it is He Who created [Page 136] the sea, and  
 "the rivers of water, and all that therein is, and they are  
 "in subjection unto Him. It is He Who is the Maker of  
 "all things which are visible, as well as of those which  
 "are invisible. And aforetime He took dust from the  
 "ground and made from it a man in His own form and  
 "appearance, and called him 'Adâm', and He blessed him,  
 "and made him the father of all | created things which B. fol.  
 "talk.<sup>1</sup> And He said unto him, 'Increase and multiply, and 165a.  
 "fill the face of the earth with thy seed, and rule | over A. fol. 59b.  
 "all those who dwell therein." col. 1.

Then the multitudes said unto Philip, "Where is the  
 "God Who hath created all things concerning Whom thou  
 "speakest?" And Philip said unto them, "He dwelleth in  
 "the heavens, and in the earth, and in all the men who  
 "do His will." And it came to pass that, when Satan saw  
 how [valiantly] Philip was contending, and how he was  
 turning the people to the knowledge of the Lord Jesus  
 Christ, he made haste and sowed the thought of evil in

<sup>1</sup> I. e., "all rational beings".

their hearts and multiplied wickedness within them; and he made them to attack the Apostle Philip, and they shut him up in the prison house and wished to kill him. Now the eyes of all those who lifted up their hands against Philip became blind. And when the people saw this wonderful thing they cried out with a loud voice, saying,

B. fol. | "The God of Philip is One God. Why will ye slay this  
165a. "blessed disciple through whom God hath brought us out  
col. 2. "from the darkness into the light of | the [true] faith?" In  
A. fol. 59b. this wise did the multitude deliver Philip out of the hands  
col. 2. of those who wished to slay him.

And Philip went forth and preached the Name of Christ in all that country through which he travelled round about; and he was preaching the word of God the whole day long. And he healed all those who were sick, [Page 137] and at length all the people of the city, and of the regions round about gathered themselves together unto him, and he taught them, and made them to believe, and he preached unto them the kingdom of heaven. For when the blind drew nigh unto him he made their eyes to see;<sup>1</sup> and he made straight the legs of the lame by his word; and when he went round about those who were deaf they heard; and the dumb spake by the might of our Lord Jesus Christ which dwelt in him; and the | lepers

B. fol. were cleansed when he stretched out his hands and made  
165b. supplication unto God on their behalf; and those who were  
col. 1. possessed of devils drew nigh unto him, and he drove  
A. fol. 60a. them out from them by the | sign of the most honourable  
col. 1. Cross; and he gave thanks unto God for the gift of grace

---

<sup>1</sup> Literally, "he illumined their eyes."

which He had given him; and he healed all those who were sick through any disease whatsoever.

And it came to pass that when the nobles of the city saw Philip working all these miracles which God Almighty had made manifest through him, and how [the people] were relieved from suffering of every kind, and how their beloved ones, and their sons, and their daughters, and their acquaintances were rejecting their gods and entering into the faith of our Lord Jesus Christ, because Philip had commanded them [so to do], because of these things, I say, those who did not believe in the preaching of Philip gathered themselves together, and they held meetings secretly, and certain men among those who came to those meetings decided to lay hold upon Philip, and to shut him up in prison, and to kill him | secretly, so that the whole country might not be destroyed. And they were making a boast to the king that they would not allow an alien to enter into their city, and to destroy their Law | (*or* religion), and they tarried in his presence until this thing was accomplished;<sup>1</sup> and he sent [men] to slay [the Apostles] who were destroying (*or* corrupting) their city. Then the king said unto them, "Why are ye doing "nothing whilst this man [Page 138] is leading astray the "people, and paying no heed unto my command?" Then those men made an agreement together concerning this matter, and they laid hold upon Saint Philip and shut him

B. fol.  
165b.  
col. 2.

A. fol. 60a.  
col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> The meaning seems to be that the men who were hostile to Philip made representations to the king that their custom always had been never to allow an alien to live in their city, and they waited in his presence until the king admitted their statements to be true and was ready to give orders for the destruction of Philip.

up in prison. And they spake words of cursing and blasphemy against him, but the Apostle laughed in their faces and rejoiced. Then said they unto each other, "See how he laugheth and jesteth at us, and [how] he wisheth to lead us astray, and to make us to depart from the right way, even as he did the people whom he made to forsake the imperial gods, and to separate themselves from their wives!"

And it came to pass that when Philip heard their words, he said unto them, "Indeed, [I speak] my words that I may perfect [my work] upon you, and not that I  
 B. fol. "should offend you, but that ye may turn unto | God, Who  
 166a. "will give you remission of your sins, and will make you  
 col. 1. "worthy of His kingdom which never passeth away." Then  
 A. fol. 60b. one of them | answered and said unto them, "Kill him, for  
 col. 1. "if we let him go he will lead us astray." Therefore was their wrath kindled, and they laid hold upon him and raised him up on a cross (now they placed his head downwards and his feet upwards), and they tied him [to it], so that he could not move his body. Then they scourged him sorely and inflicted severe tortures upon him, and they ceased not to beat him with cruel blows until he yielded up his spirit on the cross. Then they took his body down from the cross, and they gathered together in crowds and spake among themselves, saying, "Let us kindle a great fire and cast his body into it, so that we may consume him utterly and he may no more be found."

Now when they had lit the fire wherein they were going to cast the body of the saint, our Lord Jesus Christ sent His angel, and he took the holy body out of their

hands at noontide from the city; | and all those who dwelt therein saw his body as it ascended with joy, and with great glory, and honour, until it went up from their | sight into heaven, and the angel brought the body of Philip to Jerusalem, [Page 139] and hid it in a tree (*or* wood). And it came to pass that, when all the people saw this wonderful thing, and they remembered the multitude of wonderful deeds and miracles which God had wrought through him, and all the sick folk whom he had healed, they lifted up their voices, both men and women, and said, "The God of "Philip, the servant of the Lord Jesus Christ, is One God; "He is God, the God of heaven and of earth, He is the "Mighty One, and He is the exalted God, Who is honoured "both by the denizens of heaven, and by the beings of "of earth." And the men of the city and of the regions round about it believed in our Lord Jesus Christ, from the least of them even unto the greatest; and the God-fearing men of the city sent messengers into the heights of the mountains, and they continued to go round about in the desert for many days seeking the | body of Saint Philip; and the men of the city fasted and prayed, and made supplication unto God that He would restore it unto them. Now when God saw their faith and their | repentance, and that the evilness of their works had passed away, He sent unto them the angel that he might tell them where [the body of] Philip the Apostle was, and that they might take it and deposit it in the city. And it came to pass that when they saw it they rejoiced with great joy, and they brought it into the city with glory, and thanksgiving, and honour; and they swathed it in fine linen and laid it in a new and beautiful sarcophagus. Now the consummation of the

B. fol.  
166a.  
col. 2.  
A. fol. 60b.  
col. 2.

B. fol.  
166b.  
col. 1.

A. fol. 61a.  
col. 1.

martyrdom of Saint Philip took place on the eighteenth day of the month Ḥadâr.<sup>1</sup> In the peace of God the Father. Amen. Glory and honour be unto our Lord Jesus Christ, and unto His Father, and unto the Holy Spirit, for ever and ever. Amen.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., November 14.

---

## THE PREACHING OF SAINT ANDREW AND SAINT PHILEMON AMONG THE KURDS.<sup>1</sup>

[Page 140] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE A. fol. 61a.  
SON, AND OF THE HOLY SPIRIT, ONE GOD. col. 2.  
B. fol.

Here beginneth the Preaching of the blessed disciple Andrew, the Apostle of our Lord Jesus Christ, and the story of what happened unto him in the cities of 'Aknadyà ('Akradyà, i. e., the Kurds), and in the city of Ledyà (Lydia). In the peace of God the Father. Amen. 166b. col. 2.

Now when the disciples were about to go forth into the world and to preach the story of the kingdom of heaven, our Lord appeared unto them, and held converse with them, and spake unto them, saying, "Peace be unto you, O My beloved brethren, ye heirs of the kingdom! "Know ye that I will never separate Myself from you, "and that I will give you strength." Then He turned unto Matthias, and said unto him, "Go thou unto the "City of the Cannibals; and Andrew thy brother shall go "unto the country of Ledyà (Lydia), and shall preach "therein; and Philemon, the son of Philip, shall go down "there also, for I have in that city | many people whom A. fol. 61b. col. 1.  
"I have chosen." And the Apostles answered and said

<sup>1</sup> See LIPSJUS, *Apostelgeschichten*, vol. 1, p. 617.

B. fol. 167a. col. 1. unto our Lord, | "O Lord, be Thou with us in whatsoever  
"place we go to preach;" and our Lord gave them the  
salutation of peace, and went up into heaven whilst they  
were looking at Him.

Then straightway Peter went unto the place whereto  
our Lord had commanded him [to go]. And Matthias  
asked Andrew to allow the two men Rufus and Alex-  
ander to go with him unto the city of Tîtârân, and  
Andrew and Philemon went unto the country of Lydia.  
Now Philemon had a beautiful voice, and his speech was  
soft, and [in respect of these] there was no man like unto  
him; and he taught unto all [men] the wisdom and the  
power [Page 141] of the Holy Spirit which had come  
down upon him, and among the disciples there was none  
like unto him, with the exceptions of Peter and John.

A. fol. 61b. col. 2. And it came to pass that when the Apostles were  
gathered together they chose [these] two [men] to stand  
up and declare the praise of God | Almighty, so that  
[when the people] heard the sweetness of their words  
[they might believe]. So Andrew went with Philemon  
unto Lydia |, where one half of [the people of] the city  
had believed through Peter, and the other half had not.  
B. fol. 167a. col. 2. And Andrew came into the church of the Christians  
which was in the city of Lydia, and two [men] came  
and received him, and they carried branches of trees in  
their hands for joy. Now when Andrew had come into  
the church and had taken his seat upon the bishop's  
throne, he commanded Philemon to go up into the pulpit,  
and to sing praises, and to cry out Hallelujah, so that  
the people might receive the word from him. And  
when the priests of the heathen heard the sound of the

[singing of the] Christians, they said unto each other, "What is happening in the city this day?" And the people said, "A disciple of Jesus Christ is in the church of the Christians, and he is teaching them, and commanding | them to reject the gods [of the heathen], and A. fol. 62a. col. 1. "not to enter into their temples." Then the priests took | their swords and came unto the church where they B. fol. 167b. col. 1. heard the sound of the singing, so that if they (i. e., the disciples of Christ) cursed their gods they (i. e., the heathen priests) might go in and cut off [their heads]. And it came to pass that they heard the sweet voice of Philemon declaiming and saying thus, "The gods of the "heathen are [made] of gold and silver, [and are] the "work of the hand of man. They have mouths, but "speak not; eyes have they, but they see not; ears have "they, but they hear not; noses have they, but they "[Page 142] smell not; hands have they, but they feel "not; feet have they, but they walk not; they speak not "with their throats, and there is no breath in their nostrils. "Like unto them are all those who made them, and even "so are those who put their trust in them."<sup>1</sup>

And it came to pass that, when the priests heard these words from the voice of Philemon, and the sweetness of his preaching, they wept and came into the church, and | embraced his feet. And when he saw the A. fol. 62a. col. 2. multitude he said unto Andrew, "O father, these men are B. fol. 167b. col. 2. "of the priests of the temple." Then Andrew | made a sign to the people to keep silence until the song of praise was ended; now when [the Christians] saw men having swords they were exceedingly afraid of them, and they

<sup>1</sup> Psalm cxv. 4—8.

held their peace until he had made an end of his song of praise. And Andrew stood up, and first of all prayed a prayer on their behalf, and when he had finished his prayer he said unto the priests of the temple, "Sit down." Then Andrew said unto them, "O my children, whom I would take to my breast, tell me now, I pray, how is that ye have entered into this church in this wise this day? For on every other day whenever Christians pass you [in the streets] ye take good heed that ye do not touch them even with your garments. I desire you to tell me that which is in your heart." And all the priests answered and said unto him, "O father Andrew, we will

A. fol. 62b. "declare it unto thee | truthfully. When we heard of thy  
col. 1. "coming into this city to teach, and heard also the sound  
B. fol. "of many people gathered together, | we enquired what  
168a. "was happening in this city this day, and they told us  
col. 1. "of thy arrival in the city. Then fifty men of our number  
"made an agreement together to come and see and hear  
"whether ye were heaping abuse upon our gods [or not],  
"and, if ye were so doing, to slay every one who was  
"[Page 143] in the church; and behold, we have arrived  
"according to what we have said. But when we heard  
"the sweetness of the voice of this youth our hearts were  
"carried away [from our purpose] and we have come to  
"thee. And now we beseech thee, O disciple, to give  
"unto us this day [instruction], even as thou hast given  
"it unto this multitude, so that those who have drawn  
"nigh unto thy God may become worthy of Him, and we  
"hope that we may never be absent from this youth."

And it came to pass that when Andrew heard these words from them, he rose up and kissed the head of

Philemon, saying, "Verily thou art he concerning whom  
 "the Holy Spirit spake aforetime, | saying, 'The people  
 "shall be gathered together unto him that hath a sweet  
 "'voice.'<sup>1</sup> | Verily it is meet that thou shouldst be called  
 "the 'Saviour of souls;' and as our Lord changed our  
 "names and made others for us, even so shall it be with  
 "thee." Now when the people saw Andrew kissing the  
 head of Philemon, they all came unto him, and embraced  
 him; and when Andrew saw the people thronging about  
 him and pressing him, he commanded them to go forth  
 unto an open place, and they went to the sea-shore.  
 Then Andrew answered and said unto those who believ-  
 ed, "Whosoever among you is wishful to please God, let  
 "him come unto me that he may be washed by my hand;"  
 so all the people came unto him, and he baptized them  
 all in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of  
 the Holy Spirit. Now the number of those who were  
 baptized was four thousand, four hundred souls; and  
 besides these the fifty priests also were baptized.

Now after these things Satan came into the city  
 and found two young men who were fighting together  
 and struggling | each to overcome the other, and the son  
 of John, the priest, smote the other young man, and he  
 fell down, [Page 144] and died immediately. Then the  
 father of the dead man laid hold upon John the priest,  
 and said unto him, "Deliver to me thy son that I may  
 "kill him in the stead of my son whom he hath killed;  
 "and if thou dost not, I will deliver thee unto Râwêkâs,  
 "the governor, that he may kill thee in the stead of thy

<sup>1</sup> Compare Ezekiel xxxiii. 31, 32.

"son who hath killed mine." Then John wept with a great weeping before the multitude. And the people answered and said unto him, "What dost thou wish, O "father, that we should do for thee? If they seek money "from thee then will we give it for thy sake. Or, "do they wish thee to give thyself up for the murder?" Then John answered and said unto them, "I want neither "gold nor silver from you, but I want the elders of the "people to give a pledge for me<sup>1</sup>, whilst I go unto Andrew "[to ask him] to raise the man from the dead."

A. fol. 63a. Then the people went with | John the priest unto  
col. 2. the father of the young man | who was dead, and they  
B. fol. said unto him, "We will keep John secure for thee whilst  
168b. "he goeth to the city of Lydia unto Andrew, the Apostle  
col. 2. "of our Lord Jesus Christ, [to entreat him] to come and  
"raise up alive for thee thy son who is dead"; and the  
father of the dead man did for them even as they  
wished,<sup>2</sup> and he sat down and mourned for his son. And  
John went unto Andrew the Apostle, and he found him  
baptizing the people, and he fell down and did homage  
to him. Then he said unto him, "Have compassion on  
"my old age, and let me not die this evil death." And  
Andrew answered and said unto him, "Believe in God,  
"and be not afraid, and tell me all that hath befallen  
"thee," and John told him all that had happened unto  
him, and how it had come upon him. And Andrew  
answered and said unto him, "It is not possible for me  
A. fol. 63b. "to go with thee at this season because of these people  
col. 1. "whom I am baptizing, but take Philemon with thee,

<sup>1</sup> Literally, "to redeem me."

<sup>2</sup> I. e., he accepted the pledge of the elders of the city.

"and he shall raise up | for thee him who hath died." And Andrew sent [Page 145] Philemon with him to raise up the young man from the dead, and they went forth from Andrew into the city.

B. fol.  
169a.  
col. 1.

Now as they were journeying along, Satan, having taken upon himself the form of an old man, came unto the governor of the city, and cried out unto him, saying, "O Rûkôs (Raukas), dost thou sit here [and do nothing] whilst a man is murdered and cast forth? Rise up, now, and enquire in this city who it is that hath slain [him]. If thou art unwilling [to do this], behold, I myself will go unto the king and tell him concerning the matter." And it came to pass that when Rôkôs (Raukas) heard these words he rose up in great anger, and he told those who were round about him to bring him an animal whereon he could ride outside the city; and he departed, being angry with a great anger. Now when the men of the city heard that the governor had come, no man remained therein except him who had died. Then John and Philemon came from Andrew, | and they found the multitude | outside the city; and the people said unto John the priest, "Thou hast tarried long in thy coming, | and we are afraid, for behold, the governor will make [the men of] the city prisoners." Now when John heard these words, he wept bitterly, and said, "Woe is me. What shall I do? For I sorrow very greatly because of the dead man who lieth unburied." And Philemon answered and said unto him, "Weep not, for I will go and raise him up;" but the people said unto him, "Come thou not into the city, that the governor may not slay thee." And Philemon said unto them, "It is not possible

B. fol.  
169a.  
col. 2.  
A. fol. 63b.  
col. 2.

"for me to disobey my master, therefore I will go and  
 "raise up the dead man, even as my master hath com-  
 "manded me; and do ye sit down here, and when ye  
 "hear that the governor hath slain me send ye [word]  
 "to my master that he may come and raise me up, and  
 "the young man who is dead with me."

And Philemon went into the city and came unto  
 the place where the governor was, and he cried out,  
 B fol. saying, [Page 146], "O Rôkôs (Raukas), thou governor, |  
 169b. "thou hast been appointed unto this city to destroy | it;  
 col. 1. "where are the men of the city who did not [come forth  
 A. fol. 64a. "to] receive thee when thou didst come thereunto?" And  
 col. 1. it came to pass that when the governor heard his voice,  
 he commanded the captain of his guard to seize him,  
 and to crucify him in the place where punishments were  
 inflicted; and the governor said unto them, "It may be  
 "that this man slew him that hath died, and that, in  
 "consequence thereof, his blood will not let him hold his  
 "peace." Then Philemon answered and said unto Rôkôs  
 the governor, "Why dost thou inflict punishment upon  
 "me? I am little (i. e., young, *or* of no account), and I  
 "have not transgressed, and nothing [worthy of] punish-  
 "ment hath been found in me. Now, I was with my  
 "father Adam when he was in Paradise, before Eve went  
 "forth from his side. Where is my teacher Andrew that  
 "he may see the things which they are going to do unto  
 "his disciple? Is there no compassion in thy heart, O  
 B fol. "governor, when thou seest how little (*or* young) I am?  
 169b. "Hast thou no son, so that [in thinking of him] thou canst  
 col. 2. "shew | compassion | upon me? Know thou that however  
 A. fol. 64a. "much thou lovest thy son my father loveth me more."  
 col. 2.

Then Philemon turned his face towards the captain and his soldiers, and said unto them, "Is there not one merciful man among you who will have compassion upon me, and will go unto the city of Lydia to my master Andrew, and will speak unto him, saying, 'They have crucified thy disciple and are torturing him?'" And it came to pass that when the captain and the soldiers heard these words they wept bitterly at the sound of Philemon's [sweet] voice. Then Philemon spake again unto them, and said, "Is there not even a bird in this city which I can send unto the city of Lydia, to my master Andrew, [to ask] him to come to me that I may see him before I die?" Now when he had said these words many birds gathered themselves together, and they spake unto Philemon, even as [Page 147] they used to speak with Noah in days of old, and said unto him, "Behold, here we are, send whichever one of us thou pleasest." Then a little bird | drew nigh unto him, and said unto him, "I am smaller in body than all the other birds |; let me go unto thy teacher that I may bring him unto thee." And Philemon said unto her, "As for thee, thou art a whore. Haste not to come back to me, but if thou canst find one of thy kith and kin abide with him, and haste not to return unto me." Then a raven drew nigh unto him, and said unto him, "I will go unto him;" and Philemon said unto the raven, "In days of old when thou wast sent forth by Noah thou didst not return unto him who sent thee forth; therefore I shall not send thee." And Philemon called unto the dove, and said unto her, "O beautiful wanderer, who by reason of thy sweet gentleness wast named by God

B. fol.  
170a.  
col. 1.  
A. fol. 64b.  
col. 1.

"above all [other] birds; who didst bring tidings unto  
 "Noah when he was living in the ark in the days of the  
 "Flood; and who wast blessed by our father Noah, the  
 "righteous man; go thou unto the city of Lydia to my  
 B. fol. "master Andrew, and tell him to come and see his son |  
 170a. "Philemon, for they have crucified him, and are torturing  
 col. 2. "him." And the dove answered and said unto him, "Be  
 A. fol. 64b. "of good courage, and fear not; | behold, Andrew shall  
 col. 2. "come and shall himself hear thy words."

And it came to pass that when Rôkôs (Raukas)  
 heard [these words] he rose up quickly, and with his  
 own hands he released Philemon from his punishment, and  
 he said unto him, "Verily, if there were ten dead men  
 "in this city I would leave off making enquiries con-  
 "cerning [who killed] them, for thy sake." Now when  
 Satan heard that Rôkôs had believed, he cried out unto  
 his devils and evil spirits, and said unto them, "Behold,  
 "our beloved Rôkôs and all the men of the city have  
 "rejected (*or* denied) us. Now I command one of you  
 "to go into the house of Rôkôs and to lay hold upon  
 "his wife, and to make [Page 148] her to act like a mad  
 "woman, and cause her to become like one who hath  
 "no understanding, and he shall give her orders to rise  
 "up against her own son and to slay him." And in that  
 same hour Satan did even as Diabolus, the accursed  
 one, had commanded him; and he went into the house  
 of the governor, and made the woman to become like  
 one who was mad and who had no understanding, and  
 he ordered her | to slay her child.

B. fol. And it came to pass that when her servants knew  
 170b. what she had done they gathered themselves together,  
 col. 1.

and seized her, and placed | her in a strong place, and they sent messengers unto their lord and told him what his wife had done, and how she had slain her child. Then Rôkôs the governor said unto those who were round about him, "Even if the house had fallen upon them, and all those who were in my abode were dead, I "would not separate myself from this young man." And Rôkôs the governor went back to Philemon, and said unto him, "O my lord, hast thou not heard what this "messenger hath said? I entreat thee to go with me to "my dwelling-place, but if thou wilt not, then I will not "go." Then Philemon answered and said unto him, "Let "us finish the matter whereon we are now occupied, and "after this we will go to thy house." And Philemon cried unto the dove and said unto her, "Go thou into the "house of Rôkôs, and say unto those who are therein, "Do nothing of any kind whatsoever in my dwelling-  
 "place | until I come;" and the dove went as he had commanded her, and brought her message [to the house]. | And it came to pass that when the people heard the dove speaking they were struck with exceedingly great astonishment.

A. fol. 65a.  
col. 1.B. fol.  
170b.  
col. 2.  
A. fol. 65a.  
col. 2.

And Philemon asked the governor to send for the men of the city to come, so that he might raise him that was dead; and the governor sent the captain and his soldiers, and they brought the people, and when they had come they all went together unto the place where the dead man was. And Philemon found Andrew in the city, and he said unto him, "Come, O my [Page 149] "master, that thou mayest raise the dead man;" and Andrew said unto him, "Verily I say unto thee that thou

"shalt raise him." Then Philemon came into the place wherein was the man that was dead, and he bowed his knees even upon the ground, and made supplication unto God Almighty, saying, "Hear Thou me, O Lord my God, "Thou Good Shepherd, Who hast not left us to be possess-

B. fol. 171a. col. 1. "ions in the hands of the Adversary, but | hast delivered  
A. fol. 65b. col. 1. "us by Thy precious Blood; hear Thou me, Thy servant;  
"I entreat Thee, according to the multitude of Thy |  
"mercy, to let this young man be raised from the dead."

And saying these words he lifted himself up, and cried out with a loud voice, "In the Name of our Lord "Jesus Christ the Nazarene, rise up, O young man;" and the young man rose up quickly from the dead. And when the people saw that the young man had risen up and was alive, their faith was increased, and they became strong [in their belief] in our Lord Jesus Christ.

Then Philemon made known unto Andrew concerning the wife of the governor and concerning the murder of her son; and Andrew, and Philemon, and all those who were gathered together there went unto the abode of Rôkôs, and the widows and orphans followed after them asking them to give them gifts. And it came to pass that when Andrew came into the house of

B. fol. 171a. col. 2. the | governor, he found the child of the governor [lying dead,] and many people were standing round about him and weeping for him, and the dove was standing by the  
A. fol. 65b. col. 2. side of his head. Then Andrew | said unto the dove,  
"How many are thy days?" And she said unto him,  
"Sixty years [are] the days [of my life]." Then Andrew  
said unto her, "Since thou hast obeyed the voice of  
"Philemon my disciple, depart thou into the desert, and

"thou shalt be free of the work of the men of this world, "and no man shall have power over thee;" so the dove went forth into the desert, even as Andrew had commanded her [Page 150].

Then Andrew cried unto him that was dead, saying, "In the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ Who hath sent "us into the world to preach His holy Name, rise up and "live in this same hour;" and he that was dead rose up, and he bowed himself down between (i. e., beneath) the hands of Andrew. And Andrew lifted him up, and said | unto him, "Believe in our Lord, O my son," and he who had been made to live [again] answered and said unto him, "Behold, I have believed. But I entreat thee, O my "father Andrew, to give me permission to declare every- "thing which I have seen". Then Andrew said unto him, "Speak." And the young man answered | and said unto A. fol. 66a. his father, "O father, give thou a portion of thy riches .col. 1. "unto the poor, and to the orphans, and to the widows, "and to those who are in want. Wilt thou not pay back "a little of that which it is meet for thee to pay back "for the gracious gift of God which hath come down "upon thee? And wilt thou not give unto those who are "in affliction for thy soul's sake? I declare unto thee, "O my father, that in that same hour wherein my mother "rose up and killed me, many most pleasant things happen- "ed unto me. There came unto me many men who had "wings which were like unto the wings of eagles, and "they took my soul and cast it into a place called 'Ge- "henna'. And I saw a great house which was a building of "sulphur and bitumen, | and the number of those who B. fol. 171b. "were building it was forty; and there were with them .col. 2.

“[men with] lighted (*or* brilliant) lamps. And these builders  
 “were surrounded by those who were giving them orders  
 A. fol. 66a. “concerning the building, and who said, | ‘When will this  
 col. 2. “house be finished? for we have been ordered to burn it  
 “‘with these lamps.’ And the builders said unto them,  
 “‘What is this? Ye would not surely burn down the  
 “‘house before it is finished?’ And they said unto them,  
 “‘By what time will the building thereof be finished?’  
 “And they said, ‘By the time the master of the house  
 “‘shall die, and then they will burn him therein.’”

“Then the angel, [Page 151] who had my soul in  
 “his keeping, said unto me, ‘Hast thou seen these [beings]?’  
 “And I said unto him, ‘Yea.’ And I asked him, saying,  
 “‘For whom hath this house of sulphur and bitumen been  
 “‘built?’ And he answered and said unto me, ‘Dost thou  
 “‘see this great house?’ And I said unto him, ‘Yea, my  
 “‘lord.’ And he said unto me, ‘This is the sin which  
 “‘thy father hath committed, and this house will continue  
 “‘to be built for him until the time when he shall die,  
 B. fol. “‘and then they will cast him into it, | and consume him.’  
 172a. “And when I heard these things concerning thee, I wept  
 col. 1. “| exceedingly, and I said, ‘Woe is me! Woe is me! How  
 A. fol. 66b. “‘can I inform my father of these things?’ Now as I  
 col. 1. “was weeping, he who was with me said unto me, ‘Weep  
 “‘not.’ And as he was conversing with me there came  
 “‘an aged man, and one hundred men were following  
 “‘after him; and there was with him a young man, the  
 “‘days of whose life were twelve years, and his aspect  
 “‘was most beautiful, and he conversed with those who  
 “‘were building in a language which I knew not. And  
 “‘after this he ordered them to pull down the house, and

"he also commanded the angel who was going with me  
 "to take me forth into an exceedingly wide and open  
 "place. Then two men came, each of whom had in his  
 "hands a threefold rod of gold which he laid upon the  
 "great house in thy name; now the breadth and the  
 "height of the house were equal, and the length of each  
 "side (*literally* face) was twelve rods. And the angel  
 "said, | 'Fill [the house]'. And a builder answered and B. fol.  
 "said, '| I cannot fill it now, for the grain hath not yet 172a.  
 "'come into the granary; when the grain hath come into A. fol. 66b.  
 "'the granary I shall be able to fill it a hundred times col. 2.  
 "'over."

And Andrew said unto Rôkôs, "Hearken unto  
 "that which thy son saith. Had any other man spoken  
 "these words unto thee thou wouldst not have believed  
 "him; but he is thy son." Then Rôkôs answered and  
 said unto Andrew, "I beseech thee, O man of God, to  
 "take all my possessions and to give them [Page 152]  
 "unto those who are in want, and to those who are poor  
 "and in misery." And Andrew answered and said unto  
 him, "Rise up, and take my disciple into thy house, so  
 "that he may heal thy wife;" so Philemon did even as  
 Andrew had commanded him. And he went unto the  
 habitation of Rôkôs, and found his wife standing like a  
 pillar and holding in her hands a black hairy [devil] who  
 wished to escape from her, but she was unwilling to let  
 him | go. Then Philemon took hold of her right hand, | A. fol. 67a.  
 and brought her unto the place where Andrew was, and col. 1.  
 she was holding the black hairy devil with her left hand. B. fol.  
 And it came to pass that when the multitude saw the 172b.  
 black [devil] they were greatly moved, and they cried col. 1.

out, and became like a flock of sheep among which a wolf hath entered.

Then Andrew said unto the multitude, "Fear ye not, "but come nigh unto me and make strong your hearts, "so that we learn who he is." And Andrew commanded the woman to let him go, and he made over her face the sign of the Cross, and laid his hands upon her head, and said, "In the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, the "Nazarene, in Whose Name we preach, let everything "which moveth in thy body hold its peace, and let thy "understanding return unto thee;" then the woman became quiet, and she sat down close by (*literally*, between the hands of) the disciple. Then the disciple turned his face to the black [devil], and said unto him, "With what

A. fol. 67a. "work hast thou laid hold upon | this woman?" And the  
col. 2.  
B. fol. black [devil] said unto him, "I will tell thee truly. | When  
172b. "a strong young man who dwelleth with a feeble king  
col. 2. "cometh against him into battle, because the young man  
"is strong he gaineth the victory over the feeble king in  
"the fight; and it is not to be wished that the king should  
"vanquish the young man, on the contrary, it is to be  
"wished that the young man should conquer the king.  
"But although I [,like the king] have great power among  
"the fiends and devils, behold, I have [Page 153] come  
"into thy hand (*or* power)." And Andrew said unto him,  
"What shall I say concerning thee, O thou foul author  
"of evil works? The time for thee to go forth hath  
"come; but thou shalt be crucified, and thou shalt  
"[not] go forth unto the outside of this city until to-  
"morrow." And Andrew, having first of all prayed and  
made an end of his prayer, administered unto the be-

lieving people the Holy Mysteries, and sent them away in peace.

And it came to pass that when the morning had come, the people gathered themselves together, and Andrew came and cried out unto that black [devil], saying, "O thou foul and evil being, thou | spirit of darkness, A. fol. 67b.  
 "I say unto thee, 'Make manifest thy acts in the presence col. 1.  
 "of this multitude of people, so that they may | see thee.'" B. fol.  
 And the black [devil] answered and said unto Andrew, 173a.  
 "It is not thou who shalt judge me and shalt do unto col. 1.  
 "me this thing. Nevertheless my deeds are evil, for I  
 "have destroyed my glory and have blotted out mine  
 "honour." Then Andrew said unto him, "O thou foul  
 "being of darkness, how was it that thou didst possess  
 "honour?" And the black [devil] said unto him, "Thou  
 "callest me 'black [devil]', and black indeed I am, but  
 "thou knowest well that my nature was not thus at the  
 "time when I was created; but thou wishest to shew this  
 "multitude who I am. Woe is me, for who will deliver  
 "me from this plight in which I am?" And he began to  
 call upon the names of the powers which are in the  
 height. Then Andrew said unto him, "Thou shalt keep  
 "silence and thou shalt not speak, except to declare unto  
 "this multitude who thou art." And the black [devil]  
 answered and said unto him, "I am | one of the two A. fol. 67b.  
 "hundred angels whom God | Almighty sent to inspect col. 2.  
 "the earth, and when we had seen it, we loved it, and B. fol.  
 "we did not return unto Him that sent us; now I am 173a.  
 "their chief, and my name is Makâr." And Andrew said col. 2.  
 unto him, "Hold thy peace, lest the abundant trouble  
 "[which thou hast caused], and thine error, and the loss

"[which thou hast inflicted] come back upon thee, [Page "154] and thy pride shall be unto thee the cause of thy "destruction. What sayest thou, O unclean spirit? In "the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, depart thou into "Gehenna, and never again shalt thou make thy appear- "ance [upon this earth];" and in that same moment he was no more seen.

And Rôkôs the governor said unto Andrew, "Dost "thou command me to give my possessions unto the poor "and unto those who are in want and in misery?" Then he caused all his possessions to be brought unto Andrew, and he gave them away according to his word. Then a rumour came unto the king, saying, "Rôkôs the governor "hath distributed his riches among the poor, and he hath  
 B. fol. 173b. "left the office which he held, and he neither overseeth |  
 col. 1. "the people of the | city nor judgeth among them, but  
 A. fol. 68a. "saith, As far as I am able I will judge [my own self,  
 col. 1. "for in times past I have erred]." Now when the noble-  
 man Selkiyôs saw that the king was wishing to remove Rôkôs, and to kill him, he spake unto the king and entreated him to desist from his desire. And [the king] said unto him, "If it be that he hath turned into a good "man, and hath become one of the servants of the God, "Who worketh miracles and marvellous things in the "country of the Hebrews, perhaps thou mayest have power "over him. But write unto him [and ask him] if he "desireth [this] faith, [and if he doth] he must give up "unto thee all his possessions, and they must come into "the king's treasury."

Then straightway Selkiyôs wrote a letter and sent unto Rôkôs by messengers, but when the messengers

arrived with the letter at his house they could not find him in his dwelling; then they sought for him, and a certain man guided them and told them where he was, saying, "He is with a certain man whose name is Andrew, and he teacheth a new doctrine, and it is not the doctrine of Rome." Then they came on to the road of the city, and they found Rôkôs and Andrew casting devils out of a man who had been possessed of them for [seventy] years; now when the messengers of the king saw this miracle [Page 155] they also believed in God, and they gave the letters unto Rôkôs, and he read them. And it came to pass that when he heard that they were going to take all his possessions and place them among the treasures of the king, Andrew laughed and said unto Rôkôs, "O Rôkôs, is thine heart grieved because the king desireth to take all thy possessions?" And Rôkôs answered and said unto him, "Thou thyself knowest whether I [am grieved or not]. But I will not separate myself from thee, and I will not leave any place whatsoever into which thou goest. What need have I of the things which perish, and which turn unto corruption, and which cause him that gathereth them together to be destroyed?" Then Andrew said unto him, "All the waters are gathered together again in the sea, and yet the sea is not filled;<sup>1</sup> and everything which a man putteth into the belly goeth out into the desert place."<sup>2</sup>

B. fol.

173b.

col. 2.

A. fol. 68a.

col. 2.

B. fol.

174a.

col. 1.

A. fol. 68b.

col. 1.

And as Andrew was holding converse with Rôkôs,

<sup>1</sup> Ecclesiastes i. 7.

<sup>2</sup> St. Matthew xv. 17; St. Mark vii. 19.

he heard a voice near him which commanded him to send away the people, and it commanded him to go forth and to depart unto the city which was before him; and he knew that [it was the voice of] a great and honourable message. Then after these things [he returned unto the city], and they (i. e., the people) revealed unto him that there was great fear therein on account of the king, [who was wroth] because of the messengers who had believed, [for he feared] lest the believers would be strengthened . . . . . in my name, and that they shall know that I am with them, and that I will be in them.<sup>1</sup> And Andrew blessed the people, saying, "May the Lord "God make you to be strong in the right faith, and may "He make you to be strong in His perfection!" Then

B. fol. the people made answer unto him, | saying, "| Depart in  
174a. "peace, but let not thy habitation be far from us. And  
col. 2. "we have heard the voice which cried unto thee, and  
A. fol. 68b. "[seen] how great fear hath come upon this city through  
col. 2. "the king, [who is wroth] by reason of the messengers  
"who have believed." Then Andrew made strong [Page  
156] their hearts, and said unto them, "Fear ye not, for  
"God Almighty in Whom ye have believed is mighty,  
"and He hath the power to protect you;" and thus say-  
ing he went forth from them in peace, giving praise unto  
God. May his prayer and his blessing be with us, and  
may it protect us for ever and ever! Amen.

---

<sup>1</sup> Either some words have been omitted in the above sentence, or the text is corrupt.

# THE ACTS OF SAINTS ANDREW AND BARTHOLOMEW AMONG THE PARTHIANS.

IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE SON, AND  
OF THE HOLY SPIRIT, ONE GOD.

B. fol.


174b.

col. 1.

Here begin the Acts of the two blessed disciples Andrew and  
Bartholomew the Apostles of our Lord Jesus Christ, which they  
wrought in the city of Gârtdâ<sup>1</sup> after their return from the city (or  
country) of Sêrvâ<sup>2</sup>, which is called 'Alvâh. In the peace | of our Lord A. fol. 69a.  
Jesus Christ. Amen. col. 1.

And it came to pass after the Resurrection of our  
Lord Jesus Christ from the dead, that He became King  
over (*literally* between) the heavens and the earth, and  
He appeared unto Bartholomew in the country of the  
Gentiles, in the district of Makâtrân, that is to say, the  
city (or country) of 'Azrëyânôs. And He spake unto him  
thus, "Peace be unto thee, O good Bartholomew, fear

<sup>1</sup> I. e., the country of the Parthians; see LIPSIVS, *Apostelgeschichten*,  
vol. ii, part 2, p. 77ff.

<sup>2</sup> I. e., the Oasis of Siwah, or the Oasis of Jupiter Ammon, the  
*Sekhet Amt*  of the hieroglyphic inscriptions; it lies in the  
Libyan desert about fourteen days' journey from Asyût.

- "thou not, thou shalt be conqueror in every place where-  
 "unto thou shalt go; for he who laboureth for Me is worthy  
 "of his hire, and he shall acquire the life which is ever-  
 B. fol. "lasting. | Ye are faithful labourers who have toiled hard  
 174b. "in the fields of your Lord, and when ye go forth from  
 col. 2. "this world ye shall receive your reward. Rise up, O good  
 "Bartholomew, and go unto the countries of the Greeks,  
 "and preach thou unto them the story of the Gospel, and  
 "teach them the place of salvation, so that they may for-  
 A. fol. 69a. "sake the evil of their | works, and the service of their  
 col. 2. "gods, and may repent in such wise that they may in-  
 "herit the life which is everlasting. Behold, I will tell thee  
 "[Page 157] beforehand what shall come upon thee in this  
 "city, yea, even before thou shalt enter therein. They shall  
 "burn thy body with fire, until such time as they hang it  
 "upon a cross; and they shall saw it in pieces with a saw  
 "for a long time; and they shall cast thee forth unto the  
 "beasts of prey, that they may feed upon thee; and they  
 "shall tie a stone to thy feet and shall cast thee into the sea.  
 "But take heed to thyself, and fear thou not, and be strong,  
 "for thou shalt be victorious, and no evil or corrupt person  
 "shall get dominion over thee. O good one, endure  
 B. fol. "patiently, | and bear thou in mind what things the people  
 175a. "of the Jews did unto Me, and the wicked things which  
 col. 1. "they wrought upon Me, and how I was suspended upon  
 "a wooden cross. Yet I did not reward them according  
 "to their works, for I am a compassionate God, and I will  
 "forgive the sins of all those who turn unto Me, and I  
 A. fol. 69b. "will accept their repentance. And behold, I will send |  
 col. 1. "Andrew unto thee, and he shall bring thee into this city,  
 "and mighty deeds and wonderful things shall be made

"manifest through thee, and many shall believe through thee." And having made an end of His words unto Bartholomew, our Lord gave him the salutation of peace, and He went up into heaven with great glory; and Bartholomew departed unto the place whither God had commanded him to go.

And our Lord appeared unto Andrew in the night in the city wherein he was, and He commanded him to go unto the city of 'Azrëyânôs, to Bartholomew, and He commanded that the two of them should go unto the city of Bârtôs and should preach therein the story of the Gospel which He had given unto them, | that is to say, that the people should forsake the evil of their deeds, and the service of their [false] gods, and repent in such wise that at length they might inherit the life which is for ever. [And He said] "Hurry them not, but multiply thy patience, and "be thou longsuffering, and remember Me, thy Master and "thy God. Thou | knowest all the pain and suffering which "came upon Me through the Jews, and that I rewarded "them not [Page 158] according to what they did unto "Me, on the contrary, I shewed longsuffering unto them "that they might be saved from their sins. And now, O "thou good one, fear not, and let not thy spirit be cast "down, but bear patiently with them until thou hast led "them away from their exceedingly great error by thy quiet "longsuffering. And behold, I will send unto you a man "of terrible appearance, whose face shall be like unto the "face of a dog, and many shall believe in your words "through fear of him, and he shall follow you and shall be "a helper [unto you] all the days of your [preaching] the "story [of the Gospel]. And when the men of Bârtôs have

B. fol.  
175a.  
col. 2.

A. fol. 69b.  
col. 2.

"believed, take him forth with you unto the city of 'Al-Mêkôs, and the people thereof shall believe also by reason  
 "of the multitude of the miracles and wonderful things  
 B. fol. "which shall | take place through you." And the Lord  
 175b. having thus encouraged Andrew went up into heaven |  
 col. 1. A. fol. 70a. with great glory.

col. 1. And on the morrow Andrew and his two disciples Rôkôs (i. e., Rufus) and Alexander rose up, and they went forth from the city wherein they dwelt, and they wished to go to Bartholomew in the city of 'Azrëyânôs, so that they all might depart unto the cities of Bârtôs and Mêkôs, to preach therein the story of the Holy Gospel, even as God had commanded them. And it came to pass that, when they had arrived at the sea, they found no ship wherein they could embark, and Andrew was very sad and greatly disturbed by reason of this thing, and he sat down upon the sea-shore until the third hour. And at this [time] Andrew said unto his two disciples, "Rise up, O my brethren, "and let us stretch out our hands unto God, and let us ask "Him to prosper our way, for I know that He will not  
 B. fol. "forsake us." So they rose up together, | and they prayed  
 175b. a prayer in the Hebrew language; | and when they had ended  
 col. 2. their prayer they sat down upon the sea-shore under a tree,  
 A. fol. 70a. col. 2. [Page 159] and slumber came upon them and they slept. And God commanded a whale to go forth out of the sea, and he did so, and opened his mouth and swallowed up Andrew and his two disciples, who knew nothing whatsoever about it, for they were asleep, and they remained in the belly of the whale three days and three nights. Then, by the good pleasure of God Almighty, the whale cast them forth on the sea-shore of the country of Azrëyânôs, on the

road which leadeth unto the city, at the break of day, on the fourth day of the week; and they tarried there. Now the distance of the city of 'Azrëyânôs from where they had been was forty days' journey.

And it came to pass that, when Andrew and his two disciples awoke, they were on the sea-shore of the country of 'Azrëyânôs, and they knew nothing whatsoever of what had come upon them. Then Andrew | said unto his two disciples, "O my brethren, how long are we going to remain "in this country | without finding a ship to bring us unto "the country of 'Azrëyânôs? for my spirit is shut in." And he said, "Was it not Thou, O God, Who didst appear "unto me and command me to go unto the city of 'Azrë- "yânôs?" Then Andrew said unto his disciples, "Let us "now return unto the city until it please God that we should "set out on our journey, and until He bring us a ship;" and his disciples said unto him, "Let it be according to thy will."

Now whilst Andrew was conversing in this wise with his disciples, one of the two called Rufus saw a ship coming to the sea-[shore], and he told Andrew his master; and by reason of this thing they rejoiced exceedingly, and they rose up together and [went to] meet the ship. And it came to pass that when the ship came into the harbour, they sought out the captain thereof, and they said unto him, "Whither art thou wishing [to go], O good man?" Now our Lord [Page 160] Jesus Christ | had made for them a spiritual ship, wherein also were a [spiritual] crew and captain, before it came unto them. And Andrew rose up and met the ship, and he cried out unto the captain, saying, "The peace of God be with thee, O thou good "captain." And our Lord Jesus Christ, Who had taken

A. fol. 70b.

col. 1.

B. fol.

176a.

col. 1.

A. fol. 70b.

col. 2.

B. fol.

176a.

col. 2.

the form of the captain of the ship, answered and said unto him, "The peace of God be with thee also, O beloved "brother!" Then Andrew said unto Him, "Unto what country goest Thou?" And our Lord Jesus, that is to say the captain of the ship, answered and said unto him, "By "the good pleasure of God, I am going unto the city of  
A. fol. 71a. "Bârtôs." And Andrew said unto Him, "O good Man, |  
col. 1. peradventure Thou hast lost Thy way at sea, for this city in which I am is Bârtôs." Then the captain of the ship, that is to say, our Lord, said unto him, "This city is not "Bârtôs, but Azrëyânôs, and to-day is the third day since  
B. fol. "I was at Bârtôs, whither I went seeking to sell | the goods  
176b. "which [God] had given unto Me. Now if ye are seeking  
col. 1. "the city of Bârtôs it is a journey of forty days and forty "nights, for I have been there many times." [Then Andrew said unto him, "O good Man, from what country comest "thou?"] And our Lord answered and said unto Him, "I am "from Bethlehem of Judaea." And Andrew spake with Him, saying, "Dost Thou not think that we might preach "for this day in the city? We would rise up at the earliest "dawn and come to the shore, and would seek a ship "which would bring us across to 'Azrëyânôs."

Now whilst they were talking the matter over again  
A. fol. 71a. among themselves they saw, coming | from the country of  
col. 2. Macedonia and seeking for the city of 'Azrëyânôs, the men whom the governor of the country of Macedonia had sent unto Bartholomew to bring him with them [Page 161] to  
B. fol. their city, | that he might cast out the devil who had seized  
176b. the wife of the governor of the country of Macedonia.  
col. 2. And they looked at our Lord Jesus Christ [Who was] on the shore, and He said unto them when they had arrived,

"Tell us what is the city which is opposite to us." And the men answered and said unto Him, "This is the city 'of 'Azrĕyânôs." And Jesus said unto them, "For what purpose have ye come hither?" And they said unto Him, "The governor of the country [of Macedonia] hath sent us unto Bartholomew, that he may come thither with us and cast out the devil who hath laid hold upon the wife of the governor of Macedonia." Then Andrew was greatly astonished and said in his heart, "I marvel whether these men are speaking the truth?"

Then the men from Macedonia came | into the city, A. fol. 71b. col. 1.  
 [and when they had dwelt therein] but a few [days] they brought Bartholomew [out] with them. And when Bartholomew and the men who were with him came to the ship they saw Jesus sitting | therein, and they thought that it was He who was to bring them over into Macedonia. And Bartholomew said unto Him, "The peace of God be with Thee, good Master! We desire and entreat Thee to take us over to the coast of Macedonia." And Jesus, Who was in the form of the captain of the ship, answered and said unto them, "We [are going] unto the country of Bârtôs. But go ye unto those men who are sitting under the tree there, and since they belong to the ship they will take you across." So Bartholomew went, even as our Lord had commanded him, to the tree, and he saw Andrew and his two disciples sitting [there]. And when Andrew saw him, | he made haste to receive Bartholomew, B. fol. 177a. col. 1.  
 and he embraced him, and said unto him, "Whence comest thou? And what city is this?" And [Page 162] Bartholomew said unto him, "This city is 'Azrĕyânôs, and it hath fallen to my lot to preach therein." And Andrew mar- A. fol. 71b. col. 2.

B. fol. velled greatly, | and said, "With what words can my tongue  
 177a. "speak and give thanks unto God, the Merciful One, Who  
 col. 2. "hath wrought these gracious things for me? For He hath  
 "brought me unto this city in one night, and we have been  
 "made to meet with thee so that we may go [together]  
 "unto the cities of Bârtôs and Mêlkôs, and may preach in  
 "them the story of the Holy Gospel."

Now whilst Andrew was conversing with Bartholomew,  
 the pilot of the ship went up from the crew and came  
 unto them. And he said unto Andrew, "O good man,  
 "knowest thou of a certainty that this city is 'Azrëyânôs?"

A. fol. 72a. And Andrew said unto | him, "O master, forgive me, for  
 col. 1. "I spoke against thy words in ignorance." Then the captain

of the ship answered and [said unto him], "How many  
 "days is it since thou didst come from the country of the  
 "Greeks?" And Andrew said unto Him, "As my Lord  
 "and Redeemer liveth, (for we are thy servants!) did we  
 "not live in that country? And behold, as Thou seest,

B. fol. "we [only] arrived in this city | this day." Then the captain  
 177b. of the ship answered and said unto him, "What god dost  
 col. 1. "thou worship? And in whom dost thou believe, O man?

"Now I see a manifestation of thy God in the majesty  
 "which dwelleth upon thee." Then Andrew said unto  
 him, "We are the servants of the Good God, Whose  
 "Name is Jesus." Then the Saviour, that is to say, the  
 captain of the ship, said unto him, "True, thy God is God  
 "Almighty in very truth. But what is thy purpose in coming

A. fol. 72a. "into this city, and what | seekest thou to do?" And

col. 2. Andrew answered and said unto Him, "Behold I have  
 "found him whom I sought; I found him before I sought  
 "him, and when as yet I had not come into the city." And

our Lord Jesus answered [Page 163] and said unto him, "He who hath delivered thee, and hath brought thee unto "the city of 'Azrëyânôs, will also bring thee unto the cities "of Bârtôs and Mâtyâs" (i. e., Mêkôs).

And it came to pass that when the two disciples heard these words, they rejoiced | and said unto Him, "We desire to go unto the cities of Bârtôs and Mâtyâs." Then the master of the ship answered and said unto them, "Verily a great gift of grace hath descended upon Me, "[seeing] that I have become worthy for disciples of Christ "to embark with Me in My ship; and if your God bringeth "you unto these great cities in safety [I shall thank Him]. "Now, if ye have any thing to do in this city which must "be done, hasten ye to do it, and meanwhile I will make "the ship ready for you | by the time ye return unto Me." A. fol. 72b. col. 1.

And Bartholomew answered and said unto Him, "We desire "that Thou wilt set out with us forthwith on the journey "and bring us unto the coast of Macedonia; but there is a "matter which we must first finish before we go unto these "cities." And the master of the ship said unto them, "For "what purpose do ye go thereto?" Then those men who had been sent from Macedonia answered and said unto him, "The wife of the governor of the city hath gathered "together unto her | the poor folk of the city, among B. fol. 178a. col. 1.

"whom were those who were needy and in misery, that "she might give alms unto them; and as she was [standing] "among them, and was giving alms unto them, behold, a foul "spirit laid hold upon her, and she became mad, and began "to stone all those who were in her house with stones. Then "the governor seized her and placed her in a strong place, "and he sent us unto this city to Bartholomew, the Apostle

- A. fol. 72b. "of our Lord Jesus | Christ, that he might come and cast  
col. 2. "out Satan from his wife." And the master of the ship  
answered, and said unto Andrew, "Whosoever shall forsake  
"this world, and everything which is [Page 164] therein,  
"and shall follow our Lord Jesus Christ, Christ shall become  
"his helper, and He shall make him to cast out devils  
"even as ye do." Then Andrew said unto him, "True, for  
"whosoever shall forsake this world and all that is therein,  
"and shall take up his cross, and follow Him, he shall  
B. fol. "say to this mountain, 'Rise up,' | and the mountain shall  
178a. "be lifted up." And the master of the ship said unto him,  
col. 2. "Now if I forsake this world and all that therein is, and  
"take up my cross and follow this Good God, is it possible  
"that I shall be able, like you, to cast out Satan from the  
"wife of this governor of Macedonia?" Then Andrew  
A. fol. 73a. said unto him, "This would | not be fitting for thee. But  
col. 1. "bring us [first] unto the city of Bârtôs, and then sell this  
"ship and give the price thereof unto the poor and needy  
"and the widows and the orphans, and then come and be  
"with us in every place whithersoever we go, and Thou  
"shalt do the things which we ourselves do. At this  
"present Thou hast not the power to do anything, [and  
"Thou wilt not have] until the help of the Holy Spirit  
"shall descend upon Thee." Then the man, who was  
Jesus, made answer, "If it be thus as ye tell Me, may the  
"Spirit of Jesus descend upon Me also! Rise up now, and  
"let us ask in the Name of Jesus that He will work with  
"His power in each one of us, and that God Almighty  
B. fol. "will receive | [our] petition, and make the help of the  
178b. "Holy Spirit to descend upon him. For I perceive that  
col. 1. "the grace of God may descend upon Me, and that Jesus

"Christ will be with every man who loveth Him, and that  
 "He will | perform for him everything which he wisheth." A. fol. 73a.

And Andrew arose and stood up, and he stretched out his hands, and prayed, saying, "I command thee,  
 "[Page 165] O thou sea, which God created before all  
 "other things, and I desire thee to carry me and to bear  
 "me, and all those who are with me in this place, and to  
 "bring us over unto the coast of Macedonia." And in  
 that same hour the sea became full of water, and it came  
 unto the place wherein the Apostles were, and it surrounded  
 them, and they sat down in it as if it had been a ship,  
 and it brought them over unto the shore of Macedonia,  
 that is to say, Andrew, and Bartholomew, and the people  
 who had come [with them], and the master of the ship,  
 that is to say, Jesus. And they said [unto] Andrew, | B. fol  
 "Verily thou art a servant of the good God!" And the 178b.  
 "messengers who had been sent from the country of Mace- col. 2.  
 donia bowed down before Andrew, and said unto him,  
 "There is no god | but thy God." A. fol. 73b.

And after these things Bartholomew rose up and col. 1.  
 prayed, saying, "O my Lord and God Jesus Christ, send  
 "Thy good messenger unto the house of the governor of  
 "Macedonia, that he may cast out Satan from the wife of  
 "the governor of that country, and let him heal her before  
 "we come into the country." And in that same hour  
 Michael the Archangel descended from heaven and came  
 into the house of the governor, and he took hold of the  
 hands of the wife, and of her husband, and of the men  
 of the house, and brought them to the sea whereon were  
 the Apostles. Then when Satan saw the Man, the Master  
 of the ship, that is to say, our Lord Jesus Christ, he

wanted to cry out and to make known unto the people concerning Jesus; | but our Lord was angry with him, and He commanded him not to say any thing whatsoever, but to go forth from the woman. Then Bartholomew | answered and said unto Andrew, "O my father Andrew, behold the woman who is possessed of a devil, rise up and heal her;" and Andrew said unto him, [Page 166] "Do thou thyself heal her." And Bartholomew said unto him, "Rise up and lay thine hand upon me, and I will do whatsoever thou commandest me." And Andrew said unto him, "May God, Whose Name is sweet, and in Whom all blessing shall be made perfect, bless us together!"

Then Bartholomew rose up, and drew nigh unto the woman, and said unto the foul spirit which dwelt in her, "I say unto thee, O thou foul spirit, in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Sustainer of all things, Whose Apostle I am, Go out from this woman, and go down into the depths of the sea until the day wherein | God shall pass judgment upon thee, and upon thy father Satan, and thou shalt never again return unto her." And whilst Bartholomew | was saying these words Satan went forth from the woman and went down into the depths of the sea. And in that same hour the woman recovered, and she rose up and bowed down before the Apostles, she and her people, and the people of her house, and they said, "There is no God besides Thee, O Jesus Christ, the Son of the Living God, the God of heaven and of earth;" and the Apostles blessed her. Then the woman answered and said, "O my lords, if I have found grace with you, come ye with me into the city and rest yourselves in the house of thy servants" (*literally*, masters); and Andrew

said unto her, "If we stay this day in the city we will  
 "come unto thy habitation." And Lydia, the wife of the  
 governor, answered and said unto him, "By the life of that  
 "God in Whose Name ye did | this deed, and Who hath B. fol.  
 "performed unto me this act of grace, | and hath redeemed 179b.  
 "me by your hands, I will not separate myself from you A. fol. 74a.  
 "until ye come into the city with me;" and Lydia sent col. 2.  
 her servants on before her [Page 167] to her abode that  
 they might make ready and beautify it for them.

And after these things the Man, Who was Jesus, rose  
 up, and He said unto Andrew and Bartholomew, "Since  
 "your God is God indeed, and there is no other god  
 "besides Him, I entreat you to give Me instruction also  
 "that I may become like unto you, and that I may do  
 "mighty thing[s] in the Name of your God, and may be-  
 "come a disciple unto Him." And the Man, Who was  
 Jesus, said, "Bear Thou Me by Thy Name, O Christ, and  
 "Andrew, and Bartholomew, and their disciples, and bring  
 "us unto the place whither they wish to go." And in  
 that same hour the Apostles [obtained] wings of light, and  
 they arrived at the city of Bârtôs; now Jesus was going  
 in front | of them, but they did not | know that He was A. fol. 74b.  
 Jesus. And they stood on the great tower(?) of the city col. 1.  
 wherein a multitude of people were gathered together, for B. fol.  
 that day was the day in which they were celebrating the 179b.  
 festival of their gods; and the people were gathered to- col. 2.  
 gether there, and they ate, and they drank, and they  
 rejoiced on the day of their festival. And it came to pass  
 that when the people saw the Apostles standing at the top  
 of the theatre they marvelled greatly, for 'Aḡlabîyôn the  
 governor had not arrived, and the people were waiting

for him. Then Andrew answered and said unto the Man, Who was Jesus, "Tell me, O Man, whence comest thou? "Whom and what dost Thou worship? And what is Thy "faith which hath brought Thee [to do] these wonderful "things?" And our Lord Jesus smiled at Andrew, and said unto him, "Why are your hearts thus covered over? "Lift up your eyes, and know Me;" and thereupon our Lord appeared unto them in the form in which | they used to know | Him. And He said unto them, "Gird up [your loins] and be strong, O My holy Apostles, for I will "be with you wheresoever ye | go [Page 168]. I commanded "the whale and it swallowed you up whilst ye were sleep- "ing, and ye knew nothing whatsoever about it, until I "brought you unto the coast of 'Azrëyânôs, and then I "brought you unto the city of Bârtôs. Be ye patient and "longsuffering, O My holy Apostles, for I have in this city "many people, but they will not believe quickly; they will "only do so by the mighty power of the miracles and "wonderful things which shall take place through you." And when our Lord had said these words He gave them the salutation of peace, and He went up into heaven with great glory.

Now the Apostles were standing at the top of the theatre, and all the people were looking at them, and saying, "Who made these [men] to go up into that great "place?" And some of the people said, "These | are the "gods of this city, and they wish to perform marvellous "things. | And if the priests do not approve<sup>1</sup> of their work,

<sup>1</sup> *Literally*, "If the priests do not make fair," or "if the priests do not hold to be good."

"behold, they will become angry and wish to go forth from  
 "the city; but let us hasten and give the king word con-  
 "cerning them." Now whilst the people were saying these  
 things among themselves, and were lifting up their eyes  
 and looking at the Apostles, Aklēbīyôs, the governor of  
 the city, came with all the soldiers of his guard, and took  
 his seat upon his throne. Then the people cried out unto  
 him, but he was angry with them, for he thought within  
 himself that they were crying out unto him because a  
 revolt was going to take place in the temple. And they  
 said unto the governor, "Lift up thine eyes, and look at  
 "the gods who are wishing to depart from the city. It is  
 "meet that thou make enquiries into this matter, for perad-  
 "venture the priests have diminished somewhat their  
 "ministrations unto them. If they depart from our city,  
 "[Page 169] our enemies will conquer us | and will make B. fol.  
 "war upon us, and we shall find no one to help us." 18ob.  
 Then the governor commanded | them to bring the gods. A. fol. 75a. col. 1.  
 And in that hour the priests arrayed themselves in their col. 2.  
 finest apparel, and they bore in their hands [images of]  
 four gods, and brought them into the theatre, whilst men  
 blew the trumpet before them, and at length they set  
 them down upon thrones. And it came to pass that  
 when the people saw their gods, they lifted up their voices  
 and gave praise unto them; for this day was the day of  
 their festival. Now when the Apostles saw that all the  
 men who were in the city had entered into the theatre,  
 they came down from the top of the theatre, and when  
 the people saw them, they laid hold of them and brought  
 them into the governor's presence. And when the gover-  
 nor saw them he asked them questions, and said unto

them, "Whence are ye?" And Andrew answered and said unto him, "We are Apostles of the Good God Whose Name is Jesus." Then certain<sup>1</sup> of the people said, "These  
 B. fol. "[men] are of the | twelve sorcerers who go round about  
 18ob. "throughout all countries and make separation | between  
 col. 2. "husband and wife; send them away from us, that they  
 A. fol. 75b. "may not lead us astray and separate us from our wives  
 col. 1. "and children." And the governor said unto them, "Wait  
 "ye a little, and disturb not yourselves until I obtain in-  
 "formation from them by asking them questions." Then  
 he turned his face towards the Apostles, and said unto  
 them, "Since your God is indeed God, and He is al-  
 "mighty and doeth that which He willeth, I desire you to  
 "perform some miracle or marvellous thing here before  
 "me, so that I may know the truth of your words."

Then Andrew came unto the place where the gods  
 were, and he commanded the people to hold their peace  
 [and they held their peace], even as he had ordered them.  
 [And when the people had become quiet Andrew cried  
 out with a loud voice unto the gods, and said unto them,  
 "How can ye be gods as these people imagine concern-  
 B. fol. "ing you?"<sup>2</sup>] And the gods made answer unto [his] words, |  
 181a. saying [Page 170], "We are not gods, but only the work  
 col. 1. "of the hands of the children of men, and the people  
 "are in error concerning us." And Andrew answered  
 with wrath, and said unto them, "By the might of our  
 "Lord Jesus, the Son of the Living God, the King of  
 A. fol. 75b. "kings, get ye up on the top | of this theatre until I  
 col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> Literally, "part," or "portion," or "section."

<sup>2</sup> The words in brackets are supplied from B.

"command you to go down into Gehenna;" and in that same hour the gods went up on the top of the building (*literally* temple), and all the people were looking at them. Then Andrew said unto the people, "If the gods can "hear (i. e., if they are obedient to) what their priests say "they will come back and take their seats upon their "thrones;" and when the people saw this act on the part of the Apostles they marvelled exceedingly. And the governor said unto [the priests], "Cry ye out unto our "gods that they return and take up their seats upon their "thrones;" and the priests multiplied their entreaties unto their gods to come down from the top of the temple, | B. fol. 181a. col. 2. but they were unable to make them do so, and they could not be moved by their priests. Then the Satans who dwelt in the images of the gods spake through their mouths, saying, "O men of the city, if ye do not "lay hold upon these men and burn their bodies | with A. fol. 76a. col. 1. "fire, and if ye refuse to do [what we command] we will "depart from this city. Why do ye hearken unto these "wicked and evil-doing men who lead the world into error? "If we depart from you the city will be destroyed; O "accept ye not then their words." And it came to pass that when the people heard these words from the devils they were exceedingly angry, and they took up stones and cast them at the Apostles; and the governor ordered them to shut the Apostles up in prison and to bind them with iron fetters, and to suspend them upon crosses<sup>1</sup> of wood that they might burn them with fire [Page 171] in the presence of their gods. And in that same hour

<sup>1</sup> Or, wheels each having four spokes.

the angel of God came down and delivered them out of  
 B. fol. the hands of the people, and released them from | [their]  
 181b. chains.  
 col. 1.

Then the gods spake a second time and said unto  
 [the people], "Ye should not burn them in this wise, but  
 "should cast them into a burning fiery furnace until ye  
 A. fol. 76a. "have consumed them;" and | they did as the devils had  
 col. 2. commanded them, but the angel of God came down into  
 the furnace and delivered them from the flaming fire.  
 Then the people cried out with loud cries, for they were  
 perturbed, and were exceedingly afraid. Now the angel  
 of God had brought out the Apostles [from the furnace],  
 and had set them among the people, but they saw them  
 not, for they were talking against the gods, and were  
 making a mock of them, and deriding both them and the  
 devils who were dwelling in them. Then the governor  
 said unto the people, "What shall we do unto these men?  
 "Behold, three times have we cast them into the fire, but  
 "it hath not consumed them and they are uninjured. And  
 "behold, they have now passed away from our sight, and  
 B. fol. "we are unable to find them in order to work our | will  
 181b. "[upon them]."  
 col. 2.

And Andrew answered and said unto them, "We are  
 "standing in your midst, and either ye must conquer us  
 A. fol. 76b. "[by the might of your gods], or | we must overcome  
 col. 1. "you by the power of our God." Then the governor  
 answered and said unto them, "It is not meet for us to  
 "destroy the law (*or* religion) of our gods;" and the  
 captain of the guard and the soldiers of the governor  
 laid hold upon the Apostles and brought them unto the  
 company of the judges, and all the people were casting

stones in great numbers at them. Then Andrew was wroth in his spirit, and he wished to curse the city and all those who were therein, and to send them down into Gehenna by reason of their little faith, but he had patience [with them], and he remembered the commandment of [Page 172] God Who said unto him, "Reward them "not according to their little faith." And the governor commanded the people to hold their peace, and said unto the Apostles, "What now is this abominable work whereby "ye lead men astray? I will strip your skins from your "limbs, | and I will cast your bodies unto fierce lions that "they may swallow you up alive." Then Andrew answered and said unto him, "With what excuse (*or* reason) "wilt thou | do this thing unto us?" And the governor said unto them, "Because when ye entered into our city "it happened that our gods saw you, and they departed "from us." And Andrew answered and said unto them, "Your gods are not gods as ye imagine, but they are the "work of the hands of the children of men; and there is "no god except the Father, and the Son, Who is the Living "God." And it came to pass that when the people heard these words they spake to the governor, and said unto him, "We desire thee to slay these men; and if thou "refusest [to do so] we will burn thee and all the men "of thy house." Now when the governor saw that the nobles of the city and the people were greatly moved, and that their voices were words increased [in violence], he said unto them, "What wish | ye that I should do "unto them?" And they said unto him, "Saw them in "pieces with a saw, and then lay them in a brass cauldron "[over a fire], until their bodies are melted away, and

B. fol.  
182a.  
col. 1.

A. fol. 76b.  
col. 2.

B. fol.  
182a.  
col. 2.

A. fol. 77a. "then we | will cast them into the sea." Then the governor  
col. 1. commanded them to bind the holy Apostles with chains, and to fasten them firmly unto a wooden wheel in that same hour; and men came to them and brought them a large saw wherewith they might saw the Apostles in pieces. And it came to pass that when they took hold of the saw their hands withered, and they were unable to move it; and those whose hands had withered cried out, saying, [Page 173] "Woe unto us, woe unto us; for the condition "of being unable to do anything hath come upon us."

And the governor said unto the people, "What do "ye wish me to do unto them? I have no power over "them at all." Nevertheless the governor commanded once again that they should bring wheels nigh unto the holy men, and that they should place them upon them, and should tie ropes to them and drag them along the high road of the city, and that after these things they should cast them into the sea, being still bound to the wheels. And it came to pass | that when the messengers  
B. fol. 182b. of the governor | wished to lay hold upon the cords, their  
col. 1. flesh melted, and their hands were cut off from their arms  
A. fol. 77a. and fell upon the ground; and there was great sorrow  
col. 2. and very much weeping in the city on that day. Then again the governor said unto the people, "What do ye "wish me to do with these men? Behold, ye see how we "have treated them, and that we are not able to do unto "them anything whatsoever which will cause them suffering." Then the multitudes of people who were gathered together said unto him, "Rise up, and we also will rise up; and "let us ask them to accept our entreaty and to depart "from our city." And the governor went with all the

people unto the Apostles, and said unto them, "O blessed brethren, consider what possessions ye wish for, and we will give [them] unto you, so that ye depart from our city; [if ye will do this,] peradventure our gods will return unto us, and if ye will do it not, | then we and all the city shall perish." And the Apostles answered and said, "We have no | desire whatsoever either for gold or for silver;" and the people were exceedingly wroth with them, and they drove the Apostles out of the city, and stoned them with stones, and they were cast out and lay upon the ground like dead men. Then because of this thing did our Lord Jesus Christ appear unto them, and say, "Rise up, O My holy Apostles, and endure ye in patience, "[Page 174] and fear not; a great tumult because of you hath indeed taken place in this city to-day, but now depart into the desert, and I will be with you; and be not afraid, for I will send unto you the man whose face is like unto that of a dog, and whose appearance is exceedingly terrible, and ye shall take him with you unto the city." And after our Lord had given this command unto His disciples He went up from them into heaven with great glory.

B. fol.  
182b.  
col. 2.  
A. fol. 77b.  
col. 1.

And the Apostles went forth | into the desert, being exceedingly sorrowful because the men of the city had not believed; and they had only | sat down for a little space to rest themselves when they slumbered and fell asleep, and the angel of God lifted up the Apostles and brought them unto the City of Cannibals, and having set them down under a rock he departed from them. Now when they rose up out of their slumber, they marvelled exceedingly, and gave glory unto God. And whilst they

B. fol.  
183a.  
col. 1.  
A. fol. 77b.  
col. 2.

were talking among themselves beneath a rock, behold, there came from the City of Cannibals a certain man who was looking for a man to eat, and he had [wandered about all] that day until the evening, but had found nothing to eat. And the angel of God appeared and said unto him, "O thou man, whose face is like unto that of a dog,

B. fol. "I say unto thee, Behold, thou shalt find two men sitting |

183a. "under a rock, and with them are their disciples; and when

col. 2. "thou hast arrived at the place where they are let no

A. fol. 78a. "evil thing | befall them through thee (for they are the

col. 1. "servants of God), lest their God be wroth with thee and

"He smite thee in twain." And it came to pass that,

when the man whose face was like unto that of a dog heard these things, he trembled exceedingly, and he answered and said unto the angel, "Who art [Page 175] thou?

"I know neither thee nor thy God; but tell me who is "the God concerning Whom thou speakest unto me."

And the angel answered and said unto him, "He

"Who hath created the heavens and the earth is God in

"very truth. These heavens which are spread abroad

"like a tabernacle over thy head, and this earth which

"thou treadest upon with thy feet did He create, as well

"as the Sun, and the Moon and the stars, and all created

"things; He created the sea, and the rivers, and all that

B. fol. "is therein, and He created | the beasts of the field, and

183b. "the feathered fowl | of the heavens, and all the things

col. 1. "which creep, and all green herbs and plants. He created

A. fol. 78a. "everything which hath been created, and He hath the

col. 2. "power to take away their breath from them." Then the

man with the face of a dog said unto him, "I wish to

"see [some sign], so that I may believe in all His mira-

"culous powers concerning which I have heard from thee." Then in that same hour fire came down from heaven and surrounded the man with a face like unto that of a dog, and he was unable to withdraw himself therefrom, for he was standing in the midst of the fire, not being able to go forth therefrom. And he was exceedingly afraid, and he cried out with a loud voice, saying, "O Thou God, Whom I know not, have compassion upon me, and save me from this tribulation, and I will believe on Thee." And the angel answered and said unto him, "If God saveth thee from the affliction of this fire, wilt thou follow the Apostles into every place whithersoever they may go, and wilt thou hearken unto everything which they shall | command thee?" | And the man with A. fol. 78b, a face like unto that of a dog answered and said unto col. 1. the angel, "O my Lord, I am not like all other men, for B. fol. 183b. "my face is not like that of a man, and I have no col. 2. "knowledge of their speech. Now, if I go with them, "where shall I find food? And if I be hungry, where "[Page 176] shall I find men to eat? I should certainly "then fall upon them and devour them. Behold, I have "told thee my habit (*literally* work), and I would not "entreat them evilly, lest their God should be angry "with me."

And the angel said unto him, "God will give unto thee the nature of the children of men, and He will "restrain in thee the nature of the beasts;" and in that same hour the angel stretched out his hands and brought out the man with a face like unto that of a dog from the fire, and he made over him the sign of the cross, and cried out unto him in the Name of the Father, and

- B. fol. of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Then straightway |  
 184a. did the nature of the beast go forth out of him, and he  
 col. 1. became as gentle as a lamb. And the angel said unto  
 him, "Rise up and go unto the rock, and thou shalt  
 A. fol. 78b. "find | [four] men sitting under the shadow thereof; follow  
 col. 2. "them, and bring thou no evil upon them, for God hath  
 "sent thee to do mighty work[s] in every place whither-  
 "soever [they] shall go;" and the angel of God was no  
 more seen of him. Then the man with a face like unto  
 that of a dog rose up and went unto the place wherein  
 the Apostles were, and he was rejoicing and was glad  
 because he had learned to know the right faith. Now  
 his appearance was exceedingly terrible. He was four  
 cubits in height, and his face was like unto the face of  
 a great dog, and his eyes were like unto lamps of fire  
 which burnt brightly, and his teeth were like unto the  
 tusks of a wild boar, or the teeth of a lion, and the nails  
 of his hands were like unto curved reaping hooks, and  
 B. fol. the nails of his toes were like unto the claws of a lion, |  
 184a. and the hair of his head came down over his arms like  
 col. 2. unto the mane of a lion, and his whole appearance was  
 awful and terrifying.

And it came to pass that the Apostles woke up out  
 of their sleep, being sad at heart on account of the city  
 A. fol. 79a. and the little | knowledge [of the faith] which was possessed  
 col. 1. by the men that were therein; and as they were sitting  
 down there came unto them [Page 177] the man with a  
 face like unto that of a dog, and when Alexander, the  
 disciple of Andrew, saw him coming towards them he  
 became like a dead man by reason of his fear of him.  
 Now the Apostles thought that he was an unclean spirit

which had appeared unto them, and they made the sign of the cross over him in the Name of God, and they also made the sign of the cross before his face; and after this Andrew looked at the man who had a face like unto that of a dog, and he trembled at his appearance, and made a sign unto Bartholomew with his hands. Now when Bartholomew saw him, both he and Andrew fled together, and they left behind them their disciples Rufus and Alexander under the rock.

And it came to pass that when the man who had a face like unto that of a dog had come to where they had been, he found there their disciples | who had become as it were dead men through fear of him. Then he laid hold upon them with his hands, and said unto them, "Be not afraid, O my spiritual fathers," and thereupon God removed | fear from their hearts, and sent upon them the power of the Holy Spirit, and they were not afraid of him. And he did homage unto them, and entreated them to cry unto their fathers Andrew and Bartholomew, and to tell them what our Lord Jesus Christ had commanded him [to do]; so they went to seek them. And it came to pass that when Rufus and Alexander found them they said unto them, "A man whom God hath sent seeketh you." Then the Apostles came unto the place where was the man with a face like unto that of a dog, and they were not able to look upon him because he was exceedingly terrible to look upon. And when he had looked upon them he bowed down before them on the ground, and said unto them, "Be not afraid | of my appearance, O ye servants of God the Most High, for your God hath sent me unto you that I may go with

B. fol.  
184b.  
col. 1.

A. fol. 79a.  
col. 2.

B fol.  
184b.  
col. 2.

“you [Page 178] whithersoever ye wish to go, and to hear  
 “(or obey) every command which ye shall give me;” and  
 A. fol. 79b. the Apostles marvelled | at the words of the man whose  
 col. 1. face was like unto that of a dog. Then Andrew said  
 unto him, “May God bless thee, O my son! I know that  
 “through thee we shall have great respite from grief; but  
 “tell me what is thy name.” And the man with a face like  
 unto that of a dog said unto him, “My name is ‘Ḥasûm,’  
 “i. e., the ‘Abominable’.” And Andrew said unto him, “Right-  
 “ly [thou speakest], for thy name is even as thyself; but  
 “[here] there is a hidden mystery which is both honour-  
 “able and pleasant, for from this day onwards thy name  
 “shall be ‘Christian’.” And as he was saying these words  
 they rose up and prayed, and then departed from that  
 country; and God sent His angel, [who went] with them  
 and guided [them] on their way.

And on the third day they arrived at the city of  
 B. fol. Bârtôs, and they sat down outside the city to | rest them-  
 165a. selves. Now Satan had gone before them unto the men  
 col. 1. of the city, and having made himself to take the form  
 of one of the rich and honourable nobles of the city, he  
 came to the governor, unto whom were gathered together  
 A. fol. 79b. the elders of the people, and said unto him, | “Behold, the  
 col. 2. “men on whom thou didst pass sentence of death, and  
 “whom thou didst cast outside the city have come [here]  
 “again, and wish to enter into the city. Now as soon as  
 “the gods have knowledge of this, they will immediately  
 “depart from our city, and when all the people hear of  
 “it they will rise up against us, and make prisoners of us  
 “and of our children.” And it came to pass that when  
 the governor heard these words he commanded them

to shut all the gates of the city, and he set guards over each of them.

And when the Apostles were wishing to enter into the city, the man whose face was like unto that of a dog said unto them, "Cover over my face before ye enter into the city, that the people may not see me, and may not flee from me;" so they covered over his face. And Andrew rose up [Page 179] and prayed, | saying, "Hearken, B. fol. 185a. col. 2.  
"O Lord, unto my prayer." Then he drew nigh unto the gate of the city, and said, "In the Name of our Lord  
"Jesus Christ, Who hath broken the gates of brass,  
"and hath dashed in pieces the bolts of | iron, let all A. fol. 80a. col. 1.  
"the gates of this city be opened quickly." And as Andrew spake these words the gates of the city fell down, and the Apostles and the man who had a face like unto that of a dog entered in, and the men who were on guard at the gates made haste, and told the governor what had taken place. And it came to pass that when the men of the city heard [these things], they were greatly perturbed, and they all came rushing forward carrying their swords, and their spears, and their shields, and their bows, each man [carrying whatever weapon] he could [find], and they went out to seek the Apostles to slay them. Then the governor commanded them to bring the Apostles before the people; and he commanded them to bring [hungry and] savage | beasts to attack them, that B. fol. 185b. col. 1.  
is to say, seven lions, and three young lions, and a lioness which had just brought forth young, and two tigers, and they wished them to throw themselves upon the Apostles. And the servants of the king laid hold of Andrew to | A. fol. 80a. col. 2.  
throw him [and the other men] to the savage animals,

and when he that had a face like unto that of a dog saw all that they were doing, he said unto Andrew, "O thou "good servant of God, wilt thou command me to uncover "my face?" And Andrew said unto him, "Whatsoever "God commandeth thee that do." Then he whose face was like unto that of a dog prayed, saying, "I beseech "Thee, O my Lord Jesus Christ, Who didst take me "from my vile nature into the knowledge of Thyself, and "hast given me understanding like unto other men, and "hast made me worthy to follow Thy Apostles, I beseech "Thee, O my Lord, to turn me back again into [Page 180] "my former nature, so that all the people may see me; "and strengthen Thou me with Thy power, so that they "may know that there is no other | god besides Thee." And in that same hour his former nature returned unto him, and he became exceedingly wroth, and anger filled his heart, and he uncovered his face and looked at the people with great fury, and he leaped upon all the wild beasts that were among the multitudes of people who were gathered together, and he slew them forthwith, and tore out their bowels and devoured their flesh.

B. fol.  
185b.  
col. 2.

A. fol. 8ob.  
col. 1.

And it came to pass that when the men of the city saw this act they feared exceedingly, and they were greatly moved, and they fled, and every man among them sought to escape from the city, and from the tribulation and outcry which had come upon them; and seven [hundred] men and three of the nobles of the city died, and those who were left and who had saved themselves sought out a place where they could hide themselves, and they departed from the city. And God sent from heaven a great fire which surrounded the city, and

not one of the people was able to flee from it. Then the people, and the governor, and the elders | of the city gathered themselves together, and came unto the Apostles, and they were in fear and in trembling, and they wept with great weeping, and said, "We believe and we know "that there is no god but your God, our Lord Jesus "Christ, above the heavens and above the earth. And "we entreat you to have | compassion upon us, and to A. fol. 80b. "save us from this death, and from the double affliction col. 2. "of the fire and of him whose face is like unto that of a "dog." Then the Apostles had compassion upon them, and they asked our Lord Jesus Christ to take up the fire from them. And Bartholomew said unto the governor, "Gather together unto us all the people of the city, both "men and women, and let them bring [Page 181] unto "us all the gods which are in their habitations, that they "may know that they are not gods at all, but the work "of the hands of the children of men, and that they are "only stones in which there is no soul." |

B. fol.  
186a.  
col. 1.

B. fol.  
186a.  
col. 2.

Then the governor commanded that the people should gather together all the gods and bring them [unto him]. And the Apostles rose up and prayed, and they smote the earth with their feet, saying, "O God Almighty, Thou "Who hast existed throughout all days, and Who didst "command the earth, and it opened [its mouth] and "swallowed up Dathan, and buried the tabernacles of "Abiram, and all the people who behaved insolently "towards Thy Name; as in that day so let the earth in "this same hour open | its mouth, and swallow up these A. fol. 81a. "gods and take them down into Gehenna;" and even col. 1. whilst the people were looking on this thing came to

pass quickly. Then the governor and all the people, both male and female, lifted up their voices and said, "The "Lord God of the Christians, Jesus Christ, the Son of the "Living God, is One, and there is no other god besides "Him;" and they entreated the Apostles to give them the sign of our Lord Jesus Christ. And the Apostles said  
 B. fol. 186b. col. 1. unto them, "Let us come | together unto the theatre, for "in that place ye shall receive the consummation of the "faith." Then the people and the governor made supplication unto the Apostles, saying, "Masters, have compassion upon us, for we cannot come unto that place "through fear of the man whose face is like unto that of "a dog, lest he eat us up, even as he devoured the wild "beasts."

A. fol. 81a. col. 2. And Bartholomew | said unto them, "Fear ye not, "but follow us, so that ye may see a mighty miracle in "the city this day;" so the multitude followed them unto the theatre. And the Apostles drew nigh unto [Page 182] the man whose face was like unto that of a dog, and they laid their hands upon him, and said unto him, "In "the Name of the Lord Jesus Christ, let the nature of "the wild beast remove itself from thee, and let the nature "of the children of men return unto thee; what thou hast "done is sufficient for thee, O my son, for behold, thou "hast completed the purpose wherefor thou wast sent." And in that same hour the nature of the children of men  
 B. fol. 186b. col. 2. returned unto him, and he became as gentle | as a lamb, and he came and bowed down before the Apostles. And it came to pass that when the people and the governor saw this wonderful thing, they took olive branches in their hands, and bowed down before the Apostles, and said

unto them, "Have compassion upon us, [and bless us] "with your blessing, and baptize us." And the Apostles said unto them, "Preserve ye your souls in patience; "behold, the grace of God hath descended upon you."

Now there was in the city a theatre wherein was [a statue of] loadstone, and it came to pass that when Andrew | came [there] he lifted up his foot and smote the A. fol. 81b. col. 1. ground therewith, and at that moment a cleft appeared in the statue; and sweet water flowed forth therefrom. Then the Apostles stood up in the midst of the water, and baptized the people in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. And when all the people had been baptized, the man whose face was like unto that of a dog asked Andrew, and said unto him, "O good father, let thy mercy descend upon those who "have died, so that they may come to life again, and may "be baptized, | and may rejoice with their brethren, that B. fol. 187a. col. 1. "they may know that God Almighty hath the power to "do this thing and to give the gracious gift of life unto "the dead." Then Andrew rose up and made supplication unto God. And a voice cried from heaven unto the man whose face was like unto that of a dog, and said unto him, "O beloved Christian, thou hast received the gracious "gift of power to raise up those who are [dead]. Through "fear of thee they died, and their coming to life must be "through thee." And in that same hour God Almighty gave the command, and the spirit of life returned | unto A. fol. 81b. col. 2. them, and they received baptism, together with the [other] men of the city [Page 183].

Now the Apostles wrought many mighty deeds and miracles [in that city]. The blind opened their eyes, the

lame walked, the deaf heard with their ears, the dumb spake, the devils went forth [from men], and there was no sick person left in the city, for the Apostles healed them all in the Name of our Lord Jesus | Christ. And after this they built a church for them, and appointed for them a Bishop, and priests, and deacons, and servants for the church; and they taught them the Holy Gospel and all Christian ordinances. And they offered up the Holy Mysteries, and completed over them the prayer of sanctification, and [then] they gave to the people of the Offerings and Holy Mysteries. And there was great rejoicing in that city because the people had been made worthy of baptism and of the Holy Mysteries, that is to say the Body of our | Lord and His precious Blood, and they became strong in the faith of our Lord Jesus Christ. Then the Apostles departed from them, blessing and glorifying God, to Whom are meet praise, and thanksgiving, to the Father, and to the Son, and to the life-giving, Holy Spirit, now, henceforth, always, and for ever and ever! Amen, Amen, and Amen. So be it.

---

B. fol.

187a.

col. 2.

A. fol. 82a.

col. 1.

## THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT ANDREW IN SCYTHIA.

[Page 184] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE SON, AND OF THE HOLY SPIRIT [ONE GOD].

B. fol.  
188a.  
col. 1.

Here beginneth the Martyrdom of Andrew, the blessed and holy disciple, the Apostle of our Lord and God Jesus Christ. Now he finished his contending and received his crown of victory from the Lord Jesus Christ on the fourth day of the month Tâşşâş.<sup>1</sup> In the peace of God the Father. Amen.

And the blessed Andrew continued to travel about in the country of 'Askâtyâ (Scythia)<sup>2</sup>, and in the country of 'Argyânôs (Garanius), and in the country of Sûşes (Axis). Now these cities were the abodes of iniquitous and evil men who had made a covenant and a league with each | other, and they were situated in that portion [of the world] wherein it had fallen unto him by lot to preach the story of the Gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ. And these cities were the last of those unto which he

A. fol. 82a.  
col. 2.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., November 30.

<sup>2</sup> See LIPSIUS, *Apostelgeschichten*, vol. 1. p. 605f.

went [to preach], and his departure from this world was drawing nigh.

And it came to pass that, when he had entered into these countries, he cried out with a loud voice, saying, "Whosoever hath not left his father, and his mother, and "his son, and his daughter, and his brother, and his sister, B. fol. "and his gold, and his silver, and his raiment, and his | 188a. "lands, and his estates, and all the gain of this world, col. 2. "whosoever [I say] hath not left [them] and will not "follow after me is not able to be yoked unto me." And he commanded them to believe in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ with the right faith; and they enquired of him much concerning what they remembered of their past life; and [he told them that those] who did not do these things would be unfit for the kingdom of heaven, and that they would not have life everlasting. Now the men of these cities were exceedingly wicked, and they were puffed up with pride, and possessed but little under- A. fol. 82b. standing. | And it came to pass that, when they heard col. 1. the blessed Andrew speaking after this manner [Page 185], they were angry with him with a great anger; [but some believed] by reason of the multitudes of miracles and wonderful things which our Lord Jesus Christ wrought [by his hands], for Andrew went with all those who asked him, and healed them by his gift of grace. And B. fol. his name went forth into all countries, and | many believ- 188b. ed in him, and he brought nigh unto God all those who col. 1. turned unto Him with their whole heart.

Now by reason of these things Satan entered into the heart of the people of that city wherein Andrew was preaching the knowledge of God, and they gathered

themselves together, and sent wicked messengers to attack him, and they said each to the others, "Come, let us join ourselves together in one counsel because of the commandment of this perverted man, who hath destroyed our Law, and who hath brought unto us the name of a new god whom we know not, for neither ourselves nor our fathers have known his name, and they never spake unto us concerning him." And one of them answered and said, | "Let us send a message unto him and tell him A. fol. 82b. col. 2. to depart from our city, that there may not be any tumult in it, for many men of this country have believed his words. And if we do not make haste and do according to that which we desire, we shall be destroyed by these people who dwell in this city." And having thus spoken of the matter in their assemblies, they sent certain trusty men of high and noble rank to Andrew, and they went unto him | joyfully; now this took place by the will of God, that the messengers whom the people had sent unto Andrew might also believe. B. fol. 188b. col. 2.

And it came to pass that, when the messengers had come unto the blessed Apostle, Andrew met them, and said unto them, "The peace of God be with you, O brethren;" and those men who were there said, "May thy peace be with us," and they conversed with him with words of peace [Page 186]. Then Andrew said unto them, "Sit ye down, O good men, whom God hath called unto His holy city." And they answered and said unto him, "| Forgive thou us, O good man, thou servant of A. fol. 83a. col. 1. God, in whom we have found the knowledge of God; thou righteous man against whom, through the wickedness which Satan sowed in our hearts, we took counsel;

"thou man who art like unto a lamb without blemish, who  
 "dost wish to heal those who wish to slay thee. Now  
 "that we see thee do thou put away from us every evil  
 "thought, and make our hearts to rejoice in the fear of  
 "God, though we took counsel against thee wickedly, and  
 "have | come unto thee to entreat thee to depart from  
 "our city. We said in the madness of our hearts that it  
 "was thou who didst lead into error the people of our  
 "city, but behold, we believe that it is thou who shalt  
 "deliver us from our enemies, and shalt intercede on our  
 "behalf with God, so that He may pardon us our sins.  
 "And now, O holy father, we will not separate ourselves  
 "from thee, and we ask thee to place us among thy dis-  
 "ciples." And Andrew blessed them and sent them  
 away in peace unto their habitations, and he commanded

B. fol.  
 189a.  
 col. 1.

each one of | them to be faithful unto our Lord Jesus  
 Christ; and they departed from him praising God,  
 and they went about in all the cities and proclaim-  
 ed the glory of God. Thus they left the blessed  
 Apostle.

A. fol. 83a.  
 col. 2.

And it came to pass that, when the wicked men  
 who had sent the messengers unto Andrew heard these  
 things, they were exceedingly dismayed, and they con-  
 versed together concerning the matter [and said], | "Rise  
 "up, and let us go together unto the place where Andrew  
 "is, and let us burn him with fire, so that he may not  
 "come back into our city; then shall every man of the  
 "people who have believed in him be afraid of us when  
 "they hear about it." So they went forth unto the place  
 wherein Andrew was, [Page 187] and they surrounded  
 it, and they said unto him, "We are going to burn thee

B. fol.  
 189a.  
 col. 2.

“alive.” And when Andrew saw that they were making haste to do evil, he looked at them and spake unto them with words of peace, and said unto them, “O perverted men, do not perform the evil deed which ye wish to do, and which Satan hath counselled you [to do], but turn ye | unto God. And if ye will not hearken unto A. fol. 83b. me, and ye refuse [to do as I say], then I will entreat col. 1. “God Almighty to send, instead of the fire with which ye wish to burn me, fire from heaven which shall burn up both you and your city, so that ye may know that there is no God either in the heavens or in the earth, except our Lord Jesus Christ, our God.” Then those men began to utter | blasphemies against our Lord Jesus, and to curse and revile His holy Apostle. And it came to pass that when Andrew heard them blaspheming, he was angry with a great anger, and he lifted up his eyes to heaven and made supplication unto God, saying, “O Jesus, my Lord and God, hearken Thou unto my petition, and send fire from heaven to burn up these wicked men who have blasphemed Thy holy Name;” and as Andrew was finishing his prayer, fire came down from heaven and burnt up those wicked people.

And Andrew preached | the story of the holy Gospel A. fol. 83b. in all cities and countries, but those of the wicked who col. 2. remained unbelievers again took counsel to work evil against him, and they said, “If this man dwell in our city he will lead us astray by his sorcery, and he will work strenuously against us in separating wives from their husbands, and we fear that he will separate us from our wives.” Then they sent | cunning [letters] unto him with sweet words, and at length he came into their

B. fol.  
189b.  
col. 1.

B. fol.  
189b.  
col. 2.

midst [Page 188], and they gathered themselves together against him. And they beat him with many stripes and dragged him round about on the highway of the city naked, and then they cast him into prison, until they could take counsel by what means they were to kill him. Now it was a custom in that city for the people thereof to crucify upon a tree any man whom they wished to kill, and then to stone him with stones. And it came to pass that, when they had put Andrew in prison, he rose up and prayed in anger, and made

A. fol. 84a. entreaty unto God | that He would make fire to descend  
col. 1. from heaven and burn up these three cities, even as He had done in times of old, because the people thereof had beaten him and reviled him. Thereupon our Lord appeared <sup>unto</sup> ~~into~~ him in the prison-house, and said unto him, "Peace be unto thee, O Andrew, My beloved Apostle, "be not wroth. Behold, thou hast finished thy contending, and thou hast brought thy service [to a close], "and in this place thou shalt end thy contending and "thy martyrdom, and thou shalt inherit the kingdom "of heaven, together with the righteous who have pleased  
B. fol. "| Me." And it came to pass that when Andrew heard  
190a. these words of our Lord Jesus Christ he rejoiced  
col. 1. and was glad, and he continued to pray the whole night through unto our Lord, the Maker of all, God Almighty.

And it came to pass that when the morrow had come they brought Andrew out from the prison-house, and they crucified him upon a cross, and stoned him until [his contending] was accomplished, and he gave back his soul unto his Creator, and after these things

certain believing men took him down] and laid his body A. fol. 84a.  
in a grave. col. 2.

Here endeth his martyrdom which took place on the fourth day  
of the month Tāhshash. Glory be to the Father, and to the Son,  
and to the Holy Spirit, now, henceforward, and for ever and ever.  
Amen.

---

## THE PREACHING OF SAINT JOHN THE EVANGELIST.

B. fol. 190a. col. 2. [Page 189] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE  
SON, AND OF THE HOLY SPIRIT, ONE GOD.

Here beginneth the Book of the Preaching and Travels (*literally*, road) of Saint John, the son of Zebedee, the good Evangelist, and of his departure from this world unto God Almighty. It was written by Saint Prochorus,<sup>1</sup> who was of the family of Stephen, the Archdeacon and Protomartyr, and who was [one] of the seven messengers<sup>2</sup> whom the Apostles appointed for service among the newcomers. In the peace of God the Father. Amen.

A. fol. 84b. col. 1. And it came to pass that after the Ascension of our Lord Jesus Christ unto heaven the Apostles were gathered together unto the grave of Mary. And Peter said unto them, "Ye know, [O brethren, everything which  
"our Lord Jesus Christ commanded us [to do], and that  
"He ordered us to teach the Faith unto the Gentiles, and  
"to baptize them in the Name of the Father, and of the  
"Holy Ghost, and since He hath sent upon us the Holy  
"Spirit there is none [among us] who can dispute con-

<sup>1</sup> See LARSJUS, *Apostelgeschichten*, vol. 1. p. 366ff.

<sup>2</sup> I. e., Stephen, Philip, Prochorus, Nicanor, Timon, Parmenas, and Nicolas. Acts. vi. 5.

"cerning that which our Master hath commanded us. | B. fol.  
 "Now great sorrow [hath come upon us] by reason of 190b.  
 "the departure of His Mother from the world, for she col. 1.  
 "was the mother of us all, and the mother of all believers.  
 "But now, O beloved brethren, come, and let us, by the  
 "grace of the Trinity, bring unto all peoples the command-  
 "ments with which our Teacher commanded us. And  
 "remember ye His words which He said, 'I am sending  
 "'you [forth] like lambs among wolves;<sup>1</sup> be ye then as  
 "'wise as the serpent, and as gentle as the dove.'<sup>2</sup> Now, ye  
 "know that when a man wisheth to kill a serpent the  
 "serpent maketh all its body to wriggle and that it hideth  
 "its head; in like manner let us, O brethren, give our-  
 "selves unto death and preserve our soul which is the  
 "true faith; and let us also be like unto the dove which,  
 "when her masters take away | her young, doth not make<sup>A. fol. 84b.</sup>  
 "any resistance against them. Behold, ye know that our col. 2.  
 "Lord [Page 190] said, "Since they persecuted Me, you  
 "also will they persecute."<sup>3</sup> And again He said, "In the  
 "world ye shall have much tribulation,<sup>4</sup> but He for Whose  
 "sake they persecute you will be with you."

And James, the brother of our Lord, answered and  
 said, "Beautiful is thy striving in this work, | O my father B. fol.  
 "Peter." And Peter answered and said unto him, "Inas- 190b.  
 "much as thy lot hath gone forth to dwell in this city col. 2.  
 "thou shalt not pass a night away therefrom." And  
 they cast lots, and the lot fell upon John to depart and

<sup>1</sup> St. Luke x. 3.

<sup>2</sup> St. Matthew x. 16.

<sup>3</sup> St. John xv. 20.

<sup>4</sup> St. John xvi. 33.

preach in the country of Asia, but the lot was exceedingly bitter unto him, and he sighed deeply three times, and his tears fell upon the ground, and he threw himself down before the Apostles. Then Peter laid hold upon him, and raised him up, and said unto him, "We have watched thee continually and have seen that thou art like unto a father, and because of thy patient enduring." A. fol. 85a. "ance we have likened thee [thereto]. Why | then hast col. 1. "thou acted in this manner and put us all to shame?" And John answered with tears and said unto him, "O my father Peter, I have greatly sinned in this hour. Many tribulations shall befall me in this country, but pray ye for me, O beloved brethren, that God may give me forgiveness." Then the assembly of the Apostles made haste and prayed, and in that hour they asked B. fol. the brother of our Lord | to pray over them. And when 191a. he had done this they embraced each other in a spiritual col. 1. embrace, and they embraced each and every one of the Seventy-two lesser disciples, among whom fell the lot upon me to follow my teacher.

And it came to pass that when we had departed from Jerusalem we arrived at Joppa, and we sat down on the shore(?) for a day, and then we embarked in a ship which had arrived from Egypt, and which was laden with merchandize; and [when] we had embarked in the ship we sat down [**Page 191**] therein. Then John began A. fol. 85a. to weep, | and he said unto me, "O my son Prochorus, on col. 2. "[this] sea great tribulation shall come upon me, and my soul shall come into judgment, but whether it shall be for death or for life hath not been revealed unto me by God. Now if I be saved, O my son, from the

"tribulation of the sea, do thou go to Asia, and make  
 "thy way unto the city of the Ephesians, and dwell  
 "therein for [two] months, until I return unto thee; and  
 "after two months we will complete our mission. But if  
 "two months pass by, and [I come not unto thee], go  
 "back to | Jerusalem, O my son, to James, the brother  
 "of our Lord, and do according to what he shall say  
 "unto thee."

B. fol.  
 191a.  
 col. 2.

And it came to pass that when John spake these  
 words in conversing with Prochorus it was the time of  
 the tenth hour of the day, but immediately afterwards a  
 mighty wind rose up on the sea, and the ship was tossed  
 about with great violence. And we continued in this  
 tribulation from the tenth hour of that day until the  
 third hour of the night, and the ship was broken in  
 pieces, and all the crew clung to the planks thereof, and  
 Prochorus clung with them, and all the merchandize, and  
 everything which was in the ship | were scattered about  
 [on the waves]. But God, Who watcheth everything,  
 and Who comforteth His creatures, like the good shepherd  
 that goeth about [seeking] after his lambs, saved each  
 and every one of us who was clinging to the planks  
 (now the waves of the sea had made them to spring  
 from their places), and at the [seventh] hour of the day  
 the waves of the sea cast us up at Salâwëgya (Seleucia),  
 which is situated about seventeen stadia from the pro-  
 vince of Antioch. Now the number of the men who  
 were saved was forty-seven (*or*, forty-six). And when  
 we arrived at the sea-shore we were unable to converse  
 with each | other by reason of hunger, and fright, and  
 fatigue; and we cast ourselves down upon the face of

A. fol. 85b.  
 col. 1.

B. fol.  
 191b.  
 col. 1.

the ground, and lay prostrate there from the seventh until the ninth hour.

And it came to pass that when our spirit [Page 192] returned unto us, those men who had been cast into the sea with me rose up and spake unto me with every kind of foul and abominable words, saying, "This man who "was with thee is a sorcerer, and inasmuch as he hath "done evil deeds the ship hath been wrecked; and now "he hath seized all the possessions<sup>1</sup> which were therein "and hath taken to flight. If thou dost not restore unto

A. fol. 85b, "us our possessions | we will take thee to the governor  
col. 2.

"of the city, and he will slay thee; for all those who "were in the ship have come hither, thy companion alone "excepted." Then the people of the country sided with them against me, and believed their words, and they placed me in the prison-house. And on the morrow they took me out unto a large, open place where the elders of the city were sitting, and they [all] spake unto me with words of abuse, and they said unto me, "Whence "comest thou? Of what tribe art thou? What is thy "handicraft? And by what name art thou called? Tell "us before we inflict punishment upon thee." And I said unto them, "I am a Christian, and am [one] of those  
B. fol. "who live in Judah, and Prochorus is | my name. I was  
191b. "wrecked at sea, together with those who are gathered  
col. 2. "together here, and behold, I dwelt<sup>2</sup> with them." Then the elders said unto me, "How is that all in the ship "except thy companion were saved? Is it true, even

<sup>1</sup> "Possessions" must here mean money, for a shipwrecked man could not carry away bales of merchandize.

<sup>2</sup> I. e., "I embarked with them."

“as they say, that ye are sorcerers and that ye have  
 “made the ship to be no more seen by means of your  
 “enchantments, and that ye will not let any man know  
 “[where it is]? As for thee, thou hast been found, | but A. fol. 86a.  
 “now thy companion hath taken away all the merchan- col. 1.  
 “dize (i. e., money) which was in the ship, even as ye  
 “made the agreement between you. Indeed ye are  
 “workers of evil, and there is much blood which hath  
 “been shed by murder upon your necks. And, behold, the  
 “sea hath swallowed up thy companion, and the evilness  
 “of thy works is the greater upon thee; but since thou  
 “hast been saved from the sea thou shalt perish in this city.”

And those men terrified me, [Page 193] and they  
 made me to be afraid, and they said unto me, “Where  
 “is thy companion?” Thereupon I wept bitter tears, and  
 I said unto them, “I have already told you that I am  
 “the disciple and Apostle of our Lord Jesus Christ. The  
 “lot went forth for my master | to go out into the regions B. fol.  
 “of the country of Asia, and it came to pass that when 192a.  
 “we had embarked in the ship he told me of everything col. 1.  
 “which hath happened unto me before it took place. And  
 “he commanded me to come unto the city of the  
 “Ephesians, and to wait therein a certain number of  
 “days, and if, when these days were ended, he did not  
 “come unto me I was to return unto my own | country. A. fol. 86a.  
 “My teacher is not a sorcerer, neither am I, but we are col. 2.  
 “Christians openly and in truth.” And there arrived from  
 Antioch a certain officer, who was one of the king's  
 guards, (now his name was Salawēgyōs [Seleukos<sup>1</sup>]), to

<sup>1</sup> In the Latin text this man is called “Selemnīs”; see LIPSIVS,  
 op. cit., vol. 1. p. 368, note 2.

strengthen the works [of the government], and when he heard from me these words he commanded the elders to drive me away, and they did even as he had commanded them. Then I travelled on for forty days, and at length I arrived in the country of Asia, and I came into a broad tract of land upon the sea-coast; now the name of that land is Marmarâ'ân (Mareon). And I sat down upon a lofty piece of land which jutted out over the sea to rest myself from [my] tribulation and sorrow, and I laid

B. fol. 192a, col. 2. myself down and I slept a little; and when I opened my eyes [again] I saw a mighty wave in the sea, and it cast John up from out of itself. Now when I saw this I rose

A. fol. 86b, col. 1. up quickly that I might lay hold of his hands, and help to rescue him, but I was not then certain that the man was John. And when I drew nigh unto him, I stretched out my hands that he might grasp | them, but he quickly escaped from me. And it came to pass that, when I saw [that the man was John], I rejoiced with an exceedingly great joy, and I embraced him, and we shed tears together, and we gave thanks unto God for His grace which had brought us together after we had lost all hope [of meeting again]. And when he had rested a little, his heart [Page 194] returned unto him, and we conversed together concerning all that had happened unto us. Then he informed me that he had remained for forty days and forty nights in the depths of the sea; and I told him everything which had happened unto me. And we continued together and came unto the border of this land which is called Marmarâ'ân (Mareon), even unto the city thereof; and we begged food, and [the people] gave us bread and water, and we ate, and our hearts were

made strong. Then we journeyed along on the road until [we arrived at the city of the] | Ephesians, and we entered into the city and dwelt in a place the name of which is the "Fort of 'Ardâmîs (Artemis)," and it is situated in the front of the city. Now there was in that place a house of washing (i. e., bath), which belonged to the governor of the city, whose name was Dioscorides. And John said unto me, "O my son, inform not | any A. fol. 86b. col. 2. "[man] in this city who we are, and why we are here, "until God wisheth us to find an opportunity for making "ourselves known, and we can preach herein."

Now whilst John was saying these words unto me there came unto us a woman of most terrible appearance, and she was the keeper of the bath; and she was a barren woman and had never given birth unto a child, and her body was large and round like unto that of a she-mule. And she had great confidence in her strength, and she used to beat severely with her hands those who were her servants in the bath-house, and she never let them rest even for a moment. And they used to say concerning this woman that she used to go out to fight, and that she picked quarrels with folk and then beat them to death, and that she could throw stones with great force with her hands; and she was wont to boast and glory in her deeds, and imagine that she was a woman of understanding, and she used to deck herself out in fine apparel so as to lead astray those who stayed with her in the bath. | And it came to pass that when she looked, and saw us sitting down in our dirty garments, she meditated within herself and knew | that we were wander- A. fol. 87a. col. 1. ing strangers, and she did her utmost to drive us into

B. fol.  
192b.  
col. 1.

B. fol.  
192b.  
col. 2.

the [Page 195] bath. And she said unto John, "O fellow, "whence art thou?" And he said unto her, "I am from "a far country." And she said unto him, "To what race "dost thou belong?" And he said unto her, "I am a "Christian." And she said unto him, "Wilt thou come "and be a fireman, and heat the bath? I will give thee "both hire and food." And John said unto her, "I con- "sent." Then the woman turned and said unto me, "And "thou, what sayest thou?" And John said unto her, "He "is my brother;" and she said unto him, "I wish him to "be a washer in the bath." Then she brought us to- gether to the bath, and she appointed John fireman of the bath, and me she made a washer; and she gave us three loaves of bread, and we tarried there four days.

Now John did not heat the bath well, and the woman laid hold of him and threw him on the ground, and beat him most unmercifully with many stripes, and said  
 A. fol. 87a. unto him, "O thou wicked man, | thou fugitive who hast  
 col. 2. "fled from thine own country, thou art not fit to live!  
 "If thou didst know that thou wast not able to do the  
 "work, why hadst thou the impudence to undertake it?  
 B. fol. "My | opinion of thy doings is that thou hast come hither  
 193a. "that thou mayest overcome Rômnâ<sup>1</sup>, whose fame hath  
 col. 1. "reached even unto the city of Rome; but thou shalt  
 "not be able to escape from my hands. Thou art my  
 "slave as long as thou eatest and drinkest [at my ex-  
 "pense]; thou art strong, and yet when it is time for  
 "work thou art lazy. Put away from thee this evil habit,

<sup>1</sup> Rômnâ is the name given to the woman in our text. The Latin text has, "mulier quaedam Romana, Romeca nomine;" see LIPSIVS, op. cit., vol. I. p. 368.

"and perform the work of Rômnâ, which is good work." And when I heard these abominable words which she spake unto John, and saw the beating which she gave him I was sorry with a great sorrow. And John said unto me, "When thou seest me thus sorrowful, O my "son Prochorus, why dost thou meditate in this wise? "Knowest thou not that I was swallowed up in the sea, "and that I remained in the depths thereof for forty days "[and forty nights], and that by the mercy [Page 196] of "God I was saved? Wilt thou then be grieved | because A. fol. 87b. "of one beating by a foolish woman whose anger is but col. 1. "a small thing? Go back to thy work, and labour quickly. "Our Lord Jesus Christ, our Creator, was beaten, | and B. fol. "they spat in His face, and they scourged Him, and 193a. "crucified Him, and He redeemed us, His creatures, with col. 2. "His precious blood, and He was like unto us in every- "thing, sin alone excepted, and He foretold unto us how "all these things should happen unto us; but let us possess "our souls in our patience." And when I heard these things from him I returned unto my work which Rômnâ had commanded me to do.

And on the following day Rômnâ came unto John, and said unto him, "If thou wouldst have some apparel "to put on I will give it unto thee; only do thy work "better." And John answered and said unto her, "What "thou hast given me is sufficient for me, and as for my "work I will do it better." And Rômnâ said unto him, "Why do the people, who are gathered together here, "chide thee because thou dost not perform thy work "better?" And John answered and said unto her, "This A. fol. 87b. "work is the first | of the kind which I have done, there- col. 2.

"fore my knowledge thereof is little. When I have continued at the work for some time thou wilt learn that there is good work in me, but at the beginning every kind of work is difficult;" and when she heard these words from him she returned unto her abode. Then

B. fol.  
193b.  
col. 1.

Satan, | the enemy of all good, forthwith took upon himself the form of Rômnă, and he appeared unto John, and said unto him, "Why dost thou not improve in thy work, O thou foolish and lazy man? Behold, thou art doing thy work badly, and I am not able to endure thee. Improve thy manner of feeding the furnace, lest I cast thee therein and thou never again see the light of this world; thou art not worthy to live, and I do not wish to see thee [again]. Get thee forth, O corrupt one, and take thy man [with thee], [Page 197] and depart unto thy city, wherefrom they cast thee out by reason of thine evil deeds."

And Satan took hold of a rod of iron, wherewith the men stirred up the fire, to smite John, | and he said

A. fol. 88a.  
col. 1.

unto him, "I will kill thee. Get out of this place, for I do not wish thee to perform service of any kind here." Now when John heard these words he knew within himself that it was Satan, and he cried out, "In the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost!"

B. fol.  
193b.  
col. 2.

and in that same hour Satan fled out of his hands, | and ran away. And on the morrow Rômnă met John and said unto him, "A certain man hath spoken unto me concerning thee, and hath told me many things about thee, that thou art not skilful at thy work, and that thou art always devising excuses for me to let thee off [thy work]; dost thou wish me not to leave in thy body

"one bone which I have not broken?" And whilst she was saying all these things [to him] he answered her never a word. Now when she saw his patient endurance and his meekness, she thought that he was a simpleton and a man without sense, and all the time that she was uttering words of abominable abuse and insults she was throwing dust in his face. Then she said unto him, "Thou art my slave; dost thou not believe it |"? And A. fol. 88a. col. 2. John said unto her, "Yea, we are thy servants; I am the "fireman of the bath, and Prochorus is the washer."

Now this cursed Rômnâ had a lover (*or* friend) among the officers of the governor, and to him she went and said unto him, "There were two slaves who ran "away from me and my parents a long time ago, and "they escaped, but to-day they have come back to me, "and they acknowledge that they are truly my servants. "Now I wish thee to write for me a deed<sup>1</sup> declaring that "they are my slaves." Then the officer said unto her, "If these men acknowledge | that they are indeed the B. fol. 194a. col. 1. "slaves of thy father, make thou three faithful witnesses "to bear testimony concerning them, and then let them "write for thee a deed [**Page 198**] declaring that they "are thy slaves." And John knew through the Holy Ghost all that the woman did, and he said unto me, "O "my son, although this woman wisheth that we should be "in actual servitude unto her, let not thine heart be "grieved, O my son, by reason of this thing. Nay, rejoice "greatly, and do for her whatsoever she pleaseth. For A. fol. 88b. col. 1. "behold, our Lord Jesus Christ is | almighty, and behold,

<sup>1</sup> Literally, "a writing of servitude."

"He knoweth who and what we are." And before John had finished that which he had been commanded to do, Rômnâ came with great violence, and laying hold of John she said unto him, "O thou wicked slave, when thy mistress cometh why dost thou not hasten to come to meet her, and to bow down before her even unto the ground? Art thou not my slave, O thou wicked fugitive?" Then she beat him and said unto him, "Tell me [is it not so?]" And John said unto her, "Did I not tell thee that we were thy slaves? I am the fireman of the bath, and Prochorus is the washer." And she spoke | unto him a second time and said, "Tell me, of whom are ye the slaves?" And John said unto her, "Behold, three times already have I acknowledged unto thee that we both are thy slaves;" and the woman brought us unto the temple of the city unto three witnesses, and they wrote a deed of servitude concerning us.

B. fol.  
194a.  
col. 2.

Now there was in that bath-house a company of devils,<sup>1</sup> and they had remained there from the beginning, even from the time when it had been built. For when the builders were making the foundations thereof they placed a girl beneath them, and they built up the walls over her whilst she was | alive; and because of this deed the company of devils dwelt in the bath-house, and three times each year Satan strangled a living soul therein, and Dioscorides, the master of the bath-house, knew those days whereon these things took place in it. Now Dioscorides had [Page 199] a son who was exceedingly

A. fol. 88b.  
col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> Or perhaps, "prince of devils."

handsome in stature and appearance, and his father used to prevent him from entering into the bath-house on the day whereon the work of Satan was performed therein. And after we had dwelt in the | bath-house three months, the son of Dioscorides came to the bath-house by himself to bathe there; and I went in with him according to my custom to minister unto him. Now he went into the bath before me, and Satan forthwith laid hold upon him, and strangled him, and killed him. And when his servants knew this they came forth, saying, "Woe unto us! "Woe unto us!" (and thus also said all the enemies of our father | Gabra Mar'awi) "Woe unto us! Woe unto us, for our master is dead."

B. fol.  
194b.  
col. 1.

A. fol. 89a.  
col. 1.

And it came to pass that when Rômnâ heard this, she rent her garments and plucked out the hair of her head, and she said, "Woe is me! Woe is me, O miserable woman that I am!" (and thus also said those who were the enemies of the soul of our father Gabra Mar'awi) "What shall I do? And what manner of face shall I lift up unto that of Dioscorides? And what shall I say unto him concerning the death of his son? For he himself, when he heareth that his son whom he loveth is dead, will die of grief." And Rômnâ was crying out unto the idols who were in the temple, and | saying, "(O Artemis, help me, and hearken thou unto my petition, and bring back to life for me my master Dômôs, for all we who are Ephesians know that thou art the consoler of the whole world." And thus saying she plucked out the hair of her head from the third even unto the ninth hour,

B. fol.  
194b.  
col. 2.

\* In the Latin text he is called "Domnos."

and she wept; and many people gathered themselves together, and some of them sorrowed for the boy, | and  
 A. fol. 89a. col. 2. some for the great grief of Rômnâ.

Then John went forth from the place where he  
 [Page 200] heated the bath, and he said unto me, "O  
 "my son Prochorus, what now is the cause of sorrow, and  
 "of the outcry which this woman is making in the city?"  
 And it came to pass that when Rômnâ saw John con-  
 versing with me, she made haste and laid hold upon  
 him, and said unto him, "O thou sorcerer, my gods have  
 "gone afar off from me, and there is none who will  
 "hearken unto my supplication." And she buffeted John  
 and said unto him, "O wicked slave, hast thou come  
 "hither to make signs of joy with thine eyes at me, and  
 "to rejoice because of what hath overtaken my master?"  
 B. fol. 195a. col. 1. "What hast thou to say, O wicked | slave?" And when  
 John heard these words from Rômnâ he entered into the  
 bath-house, and stood at the head of the boy who was  
 dead, and he laid his hands upon the unclean spirit, for  
 he had found him, and he rebuked him and cast him  
 out from the boy. Then he made the sign of the cross  
 over his face, and he took him by the hand and lifted  
 him up, and brought him forth alive out of the bath-  
 A. fol. 89b. col. 1. house, and [gave him] into the | hands of those who were  
 gathered together there. Then he said unto Rômnâ,  
 "Take thy master, for he is whole and alive, and there  
 "is no injury whatever upon him. Behold, he hath  
 "come to life through the might of my God Jesus Christ."

And when Rômnâ saw what had happened, she was  
 utterly dismayed, and her senses departed from her, and  
 fear and trembling laid hold upon her, and upon all the

men of the city who were there, and who had seen the marvellous things which John had wrought; and Rômnâ was not able to lift up her face to that of John by reason of shame and fear. And she remained in this state, saying, "Woe is me by reason of what I have done unto this man, whom I treated as a slave, although he was not my slave, and by reason of all the abuse which I heaped upon him | continually. I have acted very wrongly concerning him, and I am suffering great tribulation because of the buffetings and blows which I inflicted upon him;" and she was so exceedingly sorrowful [Page 201] that she wished to die rather than live. And when John looked into the face of the woman and saw that sorrow, and shame, and penitence had come upon her, he took hold of her hands, and made the sign | of the glorious cross over her face in the Name of A. fol. 89b. the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. col. 2. Then straightway her limbs became quiet, and she threw herself into the hands of Saint John, and said unto him, "I entreat thee to make me to know who thou art. Art thou God, or art thou the Son of God, that thou art able to do this thing?" And John said unto her, I am neither God, nor the Son of God, as thou sayest, but I am the servant of the Son of God; and if thou wilt believe upon Him thou shalt become His handmaiden."

And Rômnâ answered and said unto him with fear and trembling, "O servant of the Good God, forgive me all the evil which | I have done unto thee, and the abuse, B. fol. 195b. and the revilings, and the lies." And John said unto her, "Believe in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, col. 1. and of the Holy Ghost, that all these things, of which

"thou hast spoken, may be forgiven thee." Then the woman answered and said unto him, "O servant of the  
 A. fol. 90a. "Good God, I believe | everything which I have heard from  
 col. 1. "thee." Now one of the servants of Dioscorides had made haste and told him that his son was dead, for John had not brought him to life until the time that the people who had gathered together were with him. And when Dioscorides heard that he was dead, he fell down on the ground and became like a dead person. Then that same servant went back to the bath-house where John and Dômôs were teaching Rômnâ, and he said unto Dômôs, "O my lord, thy father Dioscorides is dead;" and when he heard that his father was dead he went forth from [Page 202] John unto the place where his father was, and he found him lying there dead.

And Dômôs went back to John and said unto him, "O thou servant of the Good God who didst bring me  
 B. fol. "to life after I had died, | behold, when my father heard  
 195b. "that I was dead he also died; I entreat thee to have  
 col. 2. "compassion upon him." Then John answered and said unto him, "Fear not, for thy father hath not died the  
 A. fol. 90a. "death, but is alive." And John went | with him unto  
 col. 2. the place where his father was, and Rômnâ and great multitudes of people were following after them. And when he had drawn nigh unto him, he took him by the hand, and said unto him, "Dioscorides, Dioscorides, in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit, rise up and stand upon thy feet;" and in that same hour he rose up, being whole and without any injury whatsoever. And they all marvelled at the mighty deeds and wonderful things which John wrought. Now

among the people who were gathered together were some who said, "He is a god;" and others said, "He is a sorcerer;" and others said, "A sorcerer cannot raise the dead." And the limbs of Dioscorides became still, and he cast himself down at the feet of John, and said unto him, "Thou art God who didst bring to life my son, | and myself also." And John said unto him, "I am not what thou thinkest I am, for "I am only His servant and disciple, and I had no power "to bring thee to life except by that of my Lord | Jesus A. fol. 90b. "Christ the Son of the Living God." Then Dioscorides col. 1. turned and bowed down before the Apostle, and said unto him, "Command me what to do that I may live;" and John said unto him, "Believe in the Name of the "Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit, and be "baptized; and thou shalt find everlasting life." [Page 203] Then Dioscorides said unto him, "Behold, I am in thy "hand; command thou the men of my house according "to thy will." And he brought Saint John into his house and shewed him all his possessions, and said unto him, "Take all these things and make me and all the men of "my house Christians." And John answered and said unto him, "Neither my God nor myself desire thy possess- "ions, for we have already forsaken everything which we "had | and followed our God;" and he declared unto him B. fol. many words out of the Holy Scriptures. Then Dioscorides 196a. bowed down before Saint John, and said unto him, "O col. 2. "servant of the Good God, have compassion upon us, and "baptize us in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, "and of the Holy | Spirit." And John said unto him, A. fol. 90b. "Bring hither unto me all those who are in thy house, col. 2.

"and I will admonish them and teach them the True  
 "Law (i. e., Religion), and then I will baptize them in the  
 "Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy  
 "Spirit; and they shall receive the Law of Life."

And after these things Rômnâ came bearing in  
 her hands the deed of servitude of John, wherein she  
 had caused it to be written that John was her slave, and  
 she fell down at his feet with weeping, and she repented  
 with bitter tears, and said unto him, "O servant of the  
 "Good God, I entreat thee to give me the sign of the  
 "faith of Christ, and to receive from me the writing of  
 "sin." Then John took from her the writing, and tore it  
 in pieces, and baptized her in the Name of the Father,  
 and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. And after  
 these things John departed | from the house of Dioscorides  
 and went into the bath-house, and he drove out there-  
 from the unclean spirit which strangled the people, and  
 then went back into the house of Dioscorides; now very

B. fol.  
 196b.  
 col. 1.

A. fol. 91a. many men had | gathered together unto us, but when  
 col. 1. we had entered into the house the multitudes dispersed.  
 And Dioscorides made ready for us a table [of food],  
 and we gave [Page 204] thanks unto God and took our  
 food, and we dwelt in that place until the second day.  
 And the men of that city were celebrating a great fes-  
 tival [in honour of] their goddess whom they call 'Ardâ-  
 mîs (Artemis). Now John was sitting by that place, and  
 he stood up opposite the idol which they call Artemis,  
 and all the men of the Ephesians were sitting [there],  
 and they were arrayed in fine apparel because it was  
 the day of the festival, and John also was sitting there.  
 Now the apparel which he had on him was that which

he wore when he used to feed the furnace fire in the bath-house. And it came to pass that when the followers of the heathen goddess saw him, they threw stones at him, but not a stone touched him; and the stones fell upon the idol | until it was broken in pieces. Then John answered and said unto them, "O men of the Ephesians, "why do ye commit such folly as to celebrate a festival "[in honour] of unclean devils? Why do ye forsake A. fol. 91a. col. 2. "God, the Maker of all created things, the great and "honourable God?" And wrath laid hold upon the people by reason of [the words of] John. Then John said unto them, "Behold, your goddess hath been broken in pieces "by the great number of the stones which ye have thrown "at me; but if ye wish to see the power of my God, get "understanding, and awake, and hasten to receive Him "Whom ye shall see."

Then John stood up, and prayed and made supplication, and said, "O my Lord Jesus Christ, set Thou Thy "fear in the hearts of these men, that they may know "there is no other god besides Thee." And in that same hour the people heard a voice which went round about over the ground, and the voice struck terror into the people, and two hundred of them fell upon the ground and became like dead men. And those who were left came back | and bowed down before John, and said unto him, "We entreat thee [Page 205] to raise up those "who are dead, for we believe in God." Then John answered and said unto them, "O men of the Ephesians, "that ye | are stubborn (*literally* thick) of heart I know, A. fol. 91b. col. 1. "but if the dead be raised up will ye not believe in the "Living God? For ye are stubborn of heart, and your

"hearts are like unto that of Pharaoh." Then John lifted up his eyes to heaven and said, "I entreat Thee, O my "Lord Jesus Christ, thou Son of the Living God, that "these dead men may be raised up by Thy power, and "may believe in Thy Name." And in that same hour a mighty earthquake took place, and fear and trembling were in the land; and the two hundred men who were dead rose up, and fell upon the ground, and bowed down before John, and said unto him, "What dost thou command us [to do], O good man?" Then John admonished them, and taught them the Law of Faith, and he baptized them in the Name of the Father, | and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.

B. fol.  
197a.  
col. 2.

And after these things we dwelt in an open place in the midst of the city, and a multitude of people were gathered together unto John. And a certain woman came and bowed down before him, and said unto him, "(O ser-

A. fol. 91b. "vant of the Good God, | I have a son, upon whom an  
col. 2.

"unclean Satan laid hold eight days ago, and he hath "fallen into tribulation by reason of this Satan, and he "suffereth exceedingly; I beseech and entreat thee to have "compassion upon my son, and to deliver him, for I and "his father believe in thy God." Then John and Dioscorides rose up together, and they came unto the house of that woman, and they saw the youth lying upon his couch, and he was speechless; and the mother of the youth bowed down before John, and said unto him, "I "adjure thee by the Name of God, Whom thou servest, "to have mercy [Page 206] on my son." Then John took hold of his right hand, and said unto him, "In | the "Name of my Lord Jesus Christ I command thee, O young

B. fol.  
197b.  
col. 1.

"man, to rise up from this place;" [and straightway] he rose up, and bowing low he gave praise unto God. And John admonished them, and baptized them in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.

Then the Jews | rose up against John like savage A. fol. 92a.  
col. 1.  
dogs, wishing to kill him, but Dioscorides delivered him out of their hands. So we went forth from that place, and we arrived at another which was called the "Luck" of the city,<sup>1</sup> and there was there a certain man who had been bedridden for twelve years, and he was not able to stand upon his feet. And when he saw John he cried out with a loud voice, saying, "O Apostle of our "Lord, have mercy upon me;" and when John saw the steadfast faith of this man he said unto him, "In the "Name of our | Lord Jesus Christ, rise up," and immediately the man rose up quickly and gave praise unto God. B. fol.  
197b.  
col. 2.

Now when Satan, together with those who dwelt in the temple of Artemis, saw the wonderful works which God had wrought, he transformed himself and became like unto one of the officers of the king, and he had a written paper with him. Then he sat down in a certain public place and wept, and as he was weeping two men | A. fol. 92a.  
col. 2.  
who belonged to those who were in the king's service passed by, and when they saw him in that place they drew nigh unto him, and said unto him, "Peace be upon "thee." And they said unto him, "Friend, what is it that "maketh thee weep?" and then he shewed them the written paper, that is to say, that which they imagined

<sup>1</sup> The Greek text has, ἐν τόπῳ καλουμένῳ Τύχη πόλεως: see Lapsius, op. cit., I. p. 371.

to be such, for it was not a written paper at all, but it was some written thing of Satan's own handiwork. And the men said unto him, "What is this? What is in it? Wherefore [Page 207] dost thou weep? Who is it that hath wronged thee?" Then Satan wept with much groaning and moaning, and said unto them, "I have

B. fol. 198a. col. 1. "fallen | into great tribulation, and no one hath the power "to relieve me; but if ye have the power when I have "made known unto you what my business is, then help "me." And they said unto him, "We will help thee." Then Satan said unto them, "Swear ye unto me by the "great [goddess] Artemis, that whether it be for life or "whether it be for death, ye will devote yourselves to "service on my behalf, and then I will tell you my busi-

A. fol. 92b. col. 1. "ness;" and they swore unto him | that they would be with him in all his business. Then Satan, even as he had at first made them [to see] a written paper, now also made them [to see] something which was like unto a large purse filled with gold, and he said unto them, "I will give unto you this gold as a reward for that "which ye are going to do for me." And they said unto him, "Reveal unto us thy business, and we will make "thee to be satisfied [with us]." And Satan said unto them, "I am a poor man from the city of Caesarea which "is in the country of Palestine, and I am one of the "children (*or* servants) of the king's palace. Now the "king gave into my keeping two sorcerers from Jeru-

B. fol. 198a. col. 2. "salem, the name of the one being | John and that of the "other Prochorus, and I took them and put them in the "prison-house. And on the fourth day the judges of "the city made enquiries concerning them, and I brought

"them before them, and [when] they had made certain  
 "of the wickedness of their deeds, which was very great,  
 "they commanded me to take them back to the prison-  
 "house | until the time when the judges of the city should A. fol. 92b.  
 "assemble to pass upon them their sentence of death. col. 2.  
 "And it came to pass that when I was taking them back  
 "to the prison-house, according as the judges had com-  
 "manded me, they slipped through my hands by means  
 "of their enchantments, and escaped. Now when I told  
 "the judges what they had done, they had compassion  
 "upon me, and said unto me, Go, [Page 208] O wretched  
 "man, and seek for them, and know that if thou find  
 "them not thou shalt die a terrible death; and if thou  
 "canst not find them here, come not back to us until  
 "thou hast gone round about through the whole country."  
 Then Satan brought out the gold before them, and he  
 said unto them, "Behold, the king hath set [people] to  
 "lie in wait for them on the roads, and several men have  
 "told me | that they are in this city, and therefore have B. fol.  
 "I sought for them [here]." And he continued to weep, 198b.  
 and said, "I myself have left my children and my house col. 1.  
 "for their sake, and behold, I am a stranger in a foreign  
 "land; I entreat you, O my beloved ones, to have com-  
 "passion upon my condition as a | stranger." A. fol. 93a.

col. 1.  
 Then the servants of the king said unto him, "Grieve  
 "not, O man; are [these] sorcerers in this city?" And  
 Satan said unto him, "Yea, and I am afraid that they  
 "will escape from the place by means of their sorcery.  
 "But I entreat you that when ye find them ye will put  
 "them in some hidden place of which no man knoweth  
 "anything, and will slay them there; and ye shall accept

"this gold." And the men said unto Satan, "If we kill  
 "them now, how will ye be able to return unto the city?  
 "It would be better for thee if we were to lay hold upon  
 "them and for thee to take them with thee to thy house."  
 And Satan said unto them, "Kill them, for I am sor-  
 rowing to | return to my city and to go back to my  
 "family;" so they covenanted with him to slay them  
 secretly, and they took the gold.

B. fol.  
 198b.  
 col. 2.

Now Saint John knew through the Spirit the things  
 which Satan wished to do, and he said unto me, "O my  
 "son Prochorus, strengthen thy soul and endure patiently,  
 "for | Satan is in the temple of Artemis. And behold,  
 "he hath raised up a great [Page 209] tumult against us,  
 "and two men who are of the principal officers in the  
 "army have risen up, and are uttering calumnies and lies  
 "against us. And behold, my Lord Jesus Christ hath  
 "revealed unto me everything which Satan is saying unto  
 "them; but make strong thy heart, and fear not." Now  
 whilst John was saying these things unto me, the two  
 men came and gave us orders [to go with them] at the  
 moment when Dioscorides was not sitting with us; and  
 John said unto them, "Why do ye lay hold upon us?"  
 And they said unto him, "Because of thy sorcery." And  
 John said unto them, "Who | hath borne testimony against  
 "us to this effect?" And they said unto him, "We are  
 "going to put thee in the prison-house until those who  
 "are seeking thee shall arrive." Then John said unto them,  
 "Ye have no power to treat me thus wrongfully unless a  
 "trustworthy witness come with you." And they beat  
 John, and they seized us, and put us into the | prison-  
 house, and they brought us into a waste and desolate

A. fol. 93a.  
 col. 2.

B. fol.  
 199a.  
 col. 1.

A. fol. 93b.  
 col. 1.

place wherein no man lived, that they might kill us, even as they had covenanted with Satan to do.

Then Rômnâ made haste to go unto Dioscorides, and she told him what had befallen us, and when he heard these words he rose up quickly, and sought for us until he found us, and he delivered us out of their hands; and he spake harsh words unto the two men, and said unto them, "Why do ye proceed against innocent men "with cunning plots [like these], when as yet no accusers "have appeared to make | accusations against them? And "why have ye brought them into a desert place instead "of into the governor's prison? that ye might kill them in "secret? Behold, these two men [shall remain] in my "house until their accusers come and accuse them, and "then let them argue the matter, even as the law ordereth "us [to do]." And the two men said [Page 210] each within himself, and each unto the other, "It will be better "for us to bring their accusers, so that we may be | strong "against each of them, and then we can seize them as "may be necessary, for they may run away from us." And they came to the place where Satan had been sitting, but they found him not, [and although] they went round about the whole city they could hear (*literally* find) no rumour of him; and they were afraid to return unto Dioscorides because he was the lord of the city, and they sat down in great sorrow. And after these things Satan appeared unto them, and said unto them, "O beloved, why are ye disturbed? Tell ye me every- "thing which hath happened unto you." And they said unto him, "Dioscorides hath delivered them out of our "hands, but if | thou wilt dwell with us we shall be able

B. fol.  
199a.  
col. 2.

A. fol. 93b.  
col. 2.

B. fol.  
199b.  
col. 1.

"[to prevail over] each of them." Then Satan went about with them weeping, and he was exceedingly sorrowful, and many people gathered themselves together [unto him], and he told them the same story which he had already told the two men.

And the people were exceedingly wroth with John, and many of them, that is to say the Jews, who came unto the house of Dioscorides, broke down the gates and came into [the courtyard] in anger, and they said unto A. fol. 94a. Dioscorides, "Thou art the governor of the city, | and it  
col. 1. "is unseemly for thee to allow sorcerers to dwell in thy  
"house. If thou wilt not send them back to us, we will  
"burn down thy house, and will plunder all thy possessions,  
"and will slay thyself and thy children, and will take  
"them prisoners against thy will, and the people shall  
"declare the story thereof in the city." And many people  
were gathered together in the house of Dioscorides, seeking for John and his disciple. And when John saw the multitudes of people who had gathered themselves together and come there, he said unto Dioscorides, "We neither  
B. fol. "wish for | possessions, nor are we afraid of punishment  
199b. "in our bodies, but thou art sorrowful for the destruction  
col. 2. "of thy goods. As for us, our Teacher taught us to bear  
"[Page 211] the cross of our death and to follow Him."  
Then Dioscorides said unto John, "Behold, they will burn  
"my house and plunder my possessions, and they will  
"slay both me and my children for thy sake." And John  
said unto him, "Neither thou, nor thy children [shall be  
"slain], nor anything which is thine [shall be plundered],  
"nor one hair of thy head shall fall [to the ground], and  
A. fol. 94a. "as for us, take us back | to these men who are seeking

"us, for these people who are gathered together are well disposed towards us; and do thou and thy children take refuge in your habitations until ye see the power of God." Then Dioscorides took us unto the [two] men, and they placed us in the temple of Artemis.

And it came to pass that when John had drawn nigh unto the temple, he said unto those who were holding him, "O men of the Ephesians, what is this temple?" And they said unto him, "This is the temple of Artemis." And John said unto them, "Let us stand here for a little space;" so they stood [there] as John had said unto them. | Then John lifted up his eyes to heaven and said, "O my Lord Jesus Christ, through Thy power let this temple fall down, but let not one of these people die;" and according as he said even so did it come to pass, for the temple fell down straightway. Then John said unto Satan, who was in the temple, "O thou unclean Satan!" And Satan answered and said unto him, "What dost thou desire?" And John said unto him, "How many | years hast thou been in this temple?" And Satan said unto him, "Nine and forty years." And John said unto him, "Art thou he who did raise up the servants of the king against us?" and Satan said unto him, "Yea, I am." And John said unto him, "I command thee in the Name of Jesus Christ the Nazarene to depart from this city, and never to return unto it again;" and Satan [Page 212] went forth quickly. And because of this thing which they had seen the multitudes were dismayed, and they all gathered themselves together in a certain place, | and said among themselves each to each, "We have never seen things like unto those which these men

B. fol.  
200a.  
col. 1.

A. fol. 94b.  
col. 1.

B. fol.  
200a.  
col. 2.

“have done. Come, let us seize them, and let us hand  
 “them over to the governor of the city, and let us punish  
 “them according to the Law of the Books of Moses.”  
 Now there was with them a certain Jew whose name  
 was Marâwan,<sup>1</sup> and he said unto the people, “Both of  
 “these men are sorcerers, and they know all manner of  
 “evil arts; it is better that we should kill them and that  
 “we should not make enquiries concerning them.” And  
 the people said unto him, “Thou sayest well;” but [al-  
 A. fol. 94b. though] Marâwan stirred up all the multitudes | [to do  
 col. 2. this] they did not accept his words, but took us to the  
 governor of the city, and they delivered us over into  
 his hands.

And the judges (*or* magistrates) said unto the people,  
 “Under what pretext have ye brought these two men  
 “unto us?” and the people said unto them, “They are  
 “sorcerers.” And the judges said unto them, “What work  
 “of sorcery have they done?” and the people said unto  
 them, “The man Marâwan [said that one] of the officers  
 “of the king hath come from their city seeking for them,  
 “and he hath given us information concerning the wicked-  
 B. fol. “ness of their | deeds.” And the judges said unto Marâ-  
 200b. wan, “Let the man who hath spoken concerning these  
 col. 1. “men come hither to us, and let him declare the words  
 “of truth; and, as for these men, let them put them in  
 “the prison-house until their accusers come.” So they  
 brought us into the prison-house, and they shut us up  
 there and bound us in fetters. And the multitudes went

---

<sup>1</sup> Or, Mareon; for the various forms of the name see LIPSIVS,  
 op. cit., vol. 1, p. 373.

forth into every road of the city and made enquiries for the servants of the king, but they found them not in the city; and then a herald went through | the city and in A. fol. 95a. the districts round about for three days, but they found col. 1. not the man whom they sought. Then they returned unto the judges and said unto them, "We have not found "the man." And the elders [Page 213] of the city answered and said unto them, "It is not necessary for us "that these men who are strangers should dwell in the "prison-house, for we have not found any true witness or "any accusers who can put them to the test." Then the judges sent messengers unto us and brought us [unto them] secretly, and they threatened us, and commanded us neither to dwell in the city, nor to teach therein anything whatsoever | of our doctrine. And they made us to depart from the city, and they sent with us soldiers of the guard to make us to depart from all the districts thereof, and we arrived at a place which is called Marmar'ân (Marmareon), whither John went up when he came forth from the sea, and we dwelt there three days.

B. fol.  
200b.  
col. 2.

And our Lord Jesus Christ spake unto John in a dream, and said unto him, "Behold, John, I am thy | Lord." A. fol. 95a. And our Lord said unto him, "Rise up, and go unto the col. 2. "city of the Ephesians, and after three days [the sailors "shall bring thee] unto an island which hath need of thee; "and behold, much tribulation shall come upon thee, "and thou shalt dwell [there] many days." And for this reason we rose up quickly, and we went back to the Ephesians; and as soon as we had come there, all the temples in that place fell down, and not one of them

remained [standing].<sup>1</sup> | Now all these things did John do in the city of the Ephesians before they carried him [to the island]. And the false accusations which came upon him from the Jews, and the written paper concerning him | which Satan made people to be certain [they had seen], and all the wonderful things which were made manifest by him, and the beatings which fell upon him in the Island of Patmos, are written in an exceedingly large book, the name of which is "Ḳāmâdagî".<sup>1</sup> Therefore praise be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Spirit now, henceforth, and for ever. Amen, Amen, and Amen.

B. fol.  
201a.  
col. I.

<sup>1</sup> There is no equivalent here for what follows in LIPSIVS (op. cit., vol. I. p. 373) after "Johannes und Prochorus kehren also nach Ephesos zurück."

<sup>1</sup> B has **Ḳalâmdan**: "Ḳalâmdan."

## THE HISTORY OF THE DEATH OF SAINT JOHN THE EVANGELIST.

[Page 214] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE SON, AND OF THE HOLY SPIRIT [ONE GOD].

B. fol.

201a.

col. 2.

Here beginneth the Book of the Death of John, the son of Zebedee, the disciple and friend of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Virgin and Evangelist, wherein are described his divinity and his departure from this world, which took place in the Island of Patmos on the fourth day of the month Ter,<sup>1</sup> May his peace protect his handmaiden Walatta Madhan for ever and ever. Amen.

A. fol. 95b.

col. 1.

Now the going forth of each of the holy Apostles unto the country which had come unto him as his portion from God took place after the [giving of] the commandments by God, the Redeemer of the whole world, and after His Ascension into heaven with great glory. And the portion which came unto John, the son of Zebedee, was Asia. And when he had come unto Êphêsôn (Ephesus), which is the mother-city of the Ephesians, he preached unto them, and told them the story [of the Gospel] in the Name of our Lord Jesus | Christ, the Son of the Living God, amid great striving, and | privation,

B. fol.

201b.

col. 1.

A. fol. 95b.

col. 2.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., December 30.

and fatigue, and [did] wonderful things without number. And even after his patient endurance, and the tribulations, and the trials (*or* plots) which came upon him from the men of this city, they multiplied their worship of false gods, more than the men of every [other] country, even as saith the scribe who is one of us. And the city of Ephesus, the story of which is told in the "Acts of the Apostles," [continued thus to do] until at length the people thereof would take oaths by things which were lies, and [until] there was nothing true [in it], even as [the book] saith, "The men of the Ephesians<sup>1</sup> perform "worship unto the goddess of the temple, [Page 215] "Artemis the great." And afterwards John overthrew that unclean temple and destroyed it by his preaching, and he wrought miracles and wonderful things innumerable in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ. And he cleansed the country from the uncleanness of idols, and he delivered the people from a bitter worship wherein there was no profit, and he brought them to the | knowledge of God our Lord | Jesus Christ, and of His glorious Father, and of the Holy and Life-giving Spirit. And he built churches everywhere in the country in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, and appointed unto them bishops, and priests, and deacons; and the faith in and the knowledge of the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ increased among them, and righteousness multiplied in the land.

And after all the Apostles had finished their work, and had gone forth from this world—now Peter had been crucified in the city of Rome, and they had cut off the

B. fol.  
201b.  
col. 2.  
A. fol. 96a.  
col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> Compare Acts of the Apostles xix. 27.

head of Paul in the same city, and Mark they had flayed alive in the city of Alexandria and it was two days before he died, and in this wise each of the Apostles [suffered] in the country which he had gone to convert, and they all had contended with tribulations and with abundant punishments, each according to his own way—the blessed John still continued to live in the world for many years, | and he lived until the reign of Dômât'anôs (Domitian), and he lived seventy years after the | Re-A. fol. 96a.  
surrection of our Lord. And he became an exceedingly col. 2.  
old man, and he tasted death neither by the sword nor B. fol.  
by any violence whatsoever, for God loved him exceedingly 202a.  
ly because of his purity, even as it is written in his Gospel col. 1.  
that he was the friend of the Lord who was worthy to rest upon the [Page 216] breast of the Son, the One Who sitteth in the bosom of His Father in the heavens, by reason of the purity of his soul and body. And after he had written [his] divine Gospel which exalteth all hearts, and the Apocalypse which he saw in Patmos, and which is full of the mysteries of God, God Almighty—may His Name be blessed!—wished to deliver him from the fatigue of this world which he had endured patiently | for His Name's sake, for the blessed John was rejoicing A. fol. 96b.  
exceedingly in God. | Now there were multitudes of the col. 1.  
brethren who were dwelling with him in Ephesus, and B. fol.  
they were glad and rejoiced in the sight of him 202a.  
even as if they had seen God, our Lord Jesus Christ. col. 2.  
And on each Sabbath day all [these] people would come together, and would rejoice in the Spirit, and would sing psalms and spiritual hymns, even as they were sung in the churches by the children of the Jerusalem which is

- in the heavens. Then would John the Evangelist begin to address the people with words of the spirit, and to say unto them, "Behold, O my beloved brethren in the spirit, ye heirs unto me in the service of the Kingdom of God our Lord Jesus Christ, behold, ye have seen
- A. fol. 96b. "how many mighty deeds our Lord | Jesus Christ hath  
col. 2. "wrought by my hand among you, and what great gifts  
"of spiritual grace, and how many miracles, and what  
"exalted doctrine, and what great knowledge, and what  
"abundant admonitions, and comfort, and honour, and  
"greatness, [have come] from Him, and how great is the  
"multitude of His mercies towards you, even as your eyes
- B. fol. "have seen, | and your ears have heard. And be not open  
202b. "in respect of your eyes [only], through fear, but be ye also  
col. 1. "open in respect of your [Page 217] hearts. And be ye  
"watchful to complete [your] work so that ye may be  
"meet to be called 'blessed', concerning whom the Book  
"saith, 'Blessed are ye when ye labour, and when ye  
"become strong in God, and ye shall become workers  
"unto Him at all times without trepidation.' And ye  
"know the consolation which is the foundation of the  
"Great Mystery which our Lord Jesus Christ wrought to  
"effect your salvation. And He entreateth you, O brethren,
- A. fol. 97a. "by my tongue, | to become learned in His judgment,  
col. 1. "holding Him in fear, and neither to grieve His spirit, nor  
"to sin against Him, nor to provoke Him to anger, nor  
"to reject Him with contumely. For He knoweth the  
"mysteries (*or* hidden things) of your hearts, and the  
"things which proceed from you, and all your works, and  
"all your transgressions of His commandments. And  
"grieve ye not God the Merciful, the Compassionate, the

"Patient, the Most Holy | of those who are holy, Who B. fol.  
 "maketh holy, in Whom there is neither blemish, nor 202b.  
 "impurity, nor malice, nor wrath. He alone is, and He col. 2.  
 "loveth and regardeth with pleasure him that rejecteth  
 "Him not. God is His Name, a Name which is to be  
 "named above all names, and He doth not exist for time  
 "only but for eternity.<sup>1</sup> This is the Name upon which it  
 "is necessary for you to lay hold, so that He may rejoice  
 "in your acceptance thereof, and in the integrity of your  
 "paths; He is well pleased with your lives, for He loveth  
 "gentleness and | patience, and He accepteth these; HeA. fol. 97a.  
 "rejoiceth in your good works and in your patient endur- col. 2.  
 "ance of many tribulations; He taketh pleasure in your  
 "purity, and in your love for Him; He putteth your com-  
 "passion to the test, and He accepteth your repentance;  
 "be ye not then moved from following His commandments.  
 "And although ye commit tens of thousands [Page 218]  
 "of wickednesses, if ye turn unto Him with a pure (or  
 "sincere) mind, He will accept your petition, for He  
 "grieveth for the wickedness of the children of men. | If B. fol.  
 "a fornicator turn to Him in truth He will receive him 203a.  
 "as if he were a virgin. And although the man shall col. 1.  
 "turn again to his evil deeds, and go back unto wicked-  
 "ness, yet if once again he be converted, and repent, and  
 "make straight his ways, God through His abundant  
 "mercy will have compassion upon him, and will receive  
 "him. But if a man continue in the wickedness of his  
 "works, and nevertheless put his trust in the mercy of  
 "God [to save him], God will know thereof, for He | will A. fol. 97b.  
 col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> Literally, "And He is not for this time but for every time."

"lay hold upon the man in whom He findeth iniquity, and He will never, never, shew mercy upon him. These things I speak unto you, O brethren, but I myself endeavour to fulfil the commandments wherewith God hath commanded me."

And as Saint John was giving commandments unto the brethren, he rose up and stood [on his feet], and stretched out his hand[s] to heaven, and he gave thanks and made supplication, saying, "O my Lord Jesus Christ, Who hast mingled the crown which is fleeting with that which is abiding, Who art the one sweet-smelling Flower wherein are mingled all [other] | flowers, Who hast sown  
 B. fol. 203a. "in our hearts Thy life-giving Word which alone maketh  
 col. 2. "beautiful with sweet odour the souls and the bodies of those who are gentle and lowly of heart, Who art compassionate, and Who shewest love unto man, Who art alone the righteous Judge, Who hast existed always, Whom no place can contain; O my Lord Jesus Christ, do Thou in the multitude of Thy mercy preserve  
 A. fol. 97b. "all those who put their hope in Thy Name, | for Thou  
 col. 2. "knowest the cunning and the crafty devices of him that leadeth [men] into error which are spread abroad in every place, and we beseech Thee by Thy power to put an end to them."

And it came to pass that when he had ended his prayer [Page 219] he took bread, and gave thanks, saying thus:—"What blessing, and what speech [which] ascribeth praise, and what word, and what speech of gratitude, and what thanksgiving, and what Name shall be pronounced  
 B. fol. 203b. "over this bread which is now broken except Thy Name, |  
 col. 1. "O Jesus Christ, Whose Name giveth life and salvation?"

"This is the bread of life which came down from heaven  
 "for the salvation of the world. We bless Thee, O Thou  
 "Who hast become for us a way unto the place of life.  
 "We give thanks unto Thee, O Thou Who by Thy word  
 "hast created all things, Thou art the Guide, Thou art  
 "the Gate of grace, Thou art the Salt, Thou art the  
 "Treasury of the Pearl, Thou art the Net of the life of  
 "righteousness, Thou art the Power of wisdom, Thou art  
 "the Refuge of Rest, Thou art the Prop of life; and Thou  
 "permitted Thyself to be called by these names for the  
 "sake of men, so that they may be saved and become | A. fol. 98a.  
 "new [men] from out of the wickedness of their former col. 1.  
 "works into the sin of which they had fallen; and to  
 "Thee be glory for ever and ever. Amen."

And it came to pass that when Saint John had  
 finished breaking the blessed bread, he first partook  
 thereof himself, and [then] gave it to those who were  
 gathered together there, and he entreated them to become  
 | worthy thereof, and he gave them the salutation of B. fol.  
 peace, and sent them to their habitations. And after 203b.  
 these things he told Prochorus his disciple to take with col. 2.  
 him two of the brethren, and picks and spades, and  
 Prochorus did as he had commanded him. Then John  
 went out with them from the city in secret and walked  
 outside it, and he said unto us, "Dig here"; and we received  
 his commands, and dug a hole even as he had commanded  
 us. And he put off his apparel and laid [it] in the grave,  
 and he stood above it; and he put on a linen garment,  
 and stretched out his hands upwards, | and he looked A. fol. 98a.  
 towards the east, and prayed, saying, [Page 220] "O my col. 2.  
 "Lord Jesus Christ, Who hast chosen my poor person to

- "be Thy disciple and to preach in Thy holy Name those  
 "things which Thou didst [declare] aforetime by the tongue[s]  
 "of Thy holy Prophets, whom Thou didst deliver at all  
 "times; Who desirest the salvation of all those [who believe  
 B. fol. "on Thee] with all their hearts; Who first gavest | unto all  
 204a. "created beings their souls that they might know that  
 col. 1. "Thou art the Comforter of all Thy people, and that Thou  
 "dost not reject either great or small; Who didst give unto  
 "[my] soul understanding and meekness; Who didst appear  
 "thereunto when it was dead; Who didst receive it when it  
 "was besmirched with the pollution of sin; Who didst  
 "make it Thy pure bride, after it had been defiled with  
 "the wickedness of sin, and brought low by Satan; Who  
 "didst take it into Thy hand, and didst raise it up from  
 "the fallen estate [into which] the Enemy [had cast it];  
 "and didst deliver it from [the hands of] its Enemy, and didst  
 "make him to be a feeble thing beneath its feet; Who alone  
 A. fol. 98b. "art holy among the | saints, O Jesus Christ my Lord,  
 col. 1. "Whose Name is sweet; Who rejectest not from His  
 "memory the joy of heaven[ly beings]; Who art the  
 "Protector of those who fear Him upon the earth, and of  
 "those who are beneath it; Who art the Joy of those  
 "who are good; Who art the Protector of those whose  
 "hearts are true; Who receivest those who are worthy  
 "and who praise [Thy Name] together according to Thy  
 B. fol. "word and commandment; O Lord, it is necessary that |  
 204a. "Thou shouldst deliver me from the fatigue of this fleet-  
 col. 2. "ing world. I give thanks unto Thee, O my Lord, that  
 "Thou hast preserved me in purity from all the con-  
 "taminations of the world, and that Thou hast set the  
 "fear of Thee deep down in my heart. Thou hast made

"to be remote from me all the lusts of sin, and I have  
 "had dominion over them; I have destroyed the motions  
 "of the flesh, and Thou hast driven out the temptations  
 "of sin from my body. Thou hast made my soul to  
 "refuse [Page 221] to perform outwardly the evil which is  
 "in my flesh, and the sin which encompasseth the members  
 "of my body. Thou hast made my path straight, and  
 "free from | turning aside; and Thou hast given me of A. fol. 98b.  
 "old a faith which is straight and is free from error; and col. 2.  
 "Thou hast written Thy Law within me; and Thou hast  
 "not permitted me to desire any other [god] save Thyself.  
 "And what is there greater, or more honourable, or  
 "sweeter, or more to be desired than Thyself? And who  
 "is [there that can be compared] with Thee? Turn, O  
 "Lord, unto that which is Thine, and accept the soul of  
 "John, Thy servant, who putteth his hope in Thee.  
 "Behold, I have | ended the service which Thou didst B. fol.  
 "give unto me to perform. And behold, I have come 204b.  
 "unto Thee, having put away grief, and unto the rest col. 1.  
 "which is nigh unto Thee, for I know, O my Lord, that  
 "Thou wilt order in peace my way into the habitation  
 "of Thy glory." And when the blessed John had spoken  
 all these words he fell upon his face on the ground, and  
 he worshipped and said, "I bow down before Thee, O  
 "Thou unto Whom every knee boweth, and unto Whom  
 "all glory belongeth, Thou the Father, and the Son, and  
 "the Holy | Spirit, for ever and ever. Amen." A. fol. 99a.

Then John said unto us, "My children, may the  
 "peace of God be with you! Go ye into the city, and  
 "tell the brethren [therein] to keep all the words which  
 "I have commanded them, for concerning these we shall

col. 1.

B. fol. "be obliged to justify ourselves; and of the will of God  
 204b. "I have hidden nothing whatsoever from you. Ye shall  
 col. 2. "be rewarded [according to your works], and I am innocent  
 "of your blood. I have concealed naught of doctrine [of  
 "Christ] from you, and there is naught of the know-  
 "ledge of Him which I have not declared | unto you; ye  
 "have hearkened thereunto from me, and I have informed  
 "you concerning Him. Take good care that ye be not  
 "cast away, and that ye suffer not condemnation in the  
 "judgment, and that ye be not obliged to endure a two-  
 "fold penalty, for from those unto whom He hath given  
 "much [He will require much], even as our Lord [Page 222]  
 "said.<sup>1</sup> And may our Lord Jesus Christ be with your  
 "spirits for ever, and may He strengthen you, and may  
 "He fulfil all your desires in His sinless judgment."

A. fol. 99a. Now from this time forward | John dwelt not with  
 col. 2. them in the flesh. And when we had heard these words  
 from him, we embraced his hands, and feet, and wept  
 bitterly; and we left him in the grave and departed to  
 the city, and we told the brethren everything that had  
 happened. Then they went forth quickly with us unto  
 the place [where we left] Saint John, and we could not  
 find him, but we did find in the earth his apparel, and  
 also his sandals filled with dust. Now the grave which  
 we had dug was not visible, and we were unable to make  
 B. fol. certain where its | place had been, because of the dust  
 205a. which had filled it up and which lay about over it in  
 col. 1 abundance. And we came back to the city and were  
 giving thanks unto God Who had bestowed the gifts of

<sup>1</sup> St. Luke xii. 48.

grace upon those who were worthy thereof, and especially because He had shewn honour unto His beloved John, the Evangelist, and had delivered him by his wonderful death. Therefore let us ascribe the praise which is meet to the Lord, and to His Father, and to the Holy Spirit A. fol. 99b.  
for ever and | ever. Amen, Amen, and Amen. col. 1.

## THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT JAMES.

A. fol. 99b. [Page 223] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE  
col. 1. SON, AND OF THE HOLY SPIRIT [ONE GOD].  
B. fol.

209b. Here beginneth the Martyrdom of Saint James, the son of  
col. 1. Alphaeus, the Apostle of our Lord Jesus Christ, who finished his  
contending on the tenth day of the month Yakâtî.<sup>1</sup> In the peace of  
our Lord. Amen.

And it came to pass that, when James the Apostle  
was coming into Jerusalem to preach therein the Holy  
Gospel, and all the wonderful things of the Divinity [of  
Christ], so that all those who heard thereof from him  
might believe in God with a pure heart, and obtain sal-  
vation, he meditated within himself, and said, "How shall  
"these people hearken unto [these words] from me and  
"believe?" Then he came into the synagogue wherein  
the multitudes were gathered together, and there were  
very many Jews sitting there, and he began to tell the  
A. fol. 99b. story [of the Gospel] among | them all, with great joy  
col. 2. and gladness, and he | multiplied his words and revealed  
B. fol. the faith without fear. And he testified concerning the  
209b. Only Son of God, the Word of Life, the Lord of all the  
col. 2.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., February 4.

world, Jesus Christ, Who is the Son of God in very truth, for He existed with the Father before all the world, and He was with the Father and the Father was in Him, and He was the Word, even as it saith, "Let US make "man in Our own image and likeness."<sup>1</sup> It is He Who dwelleth in heaven, and it is He Who existeth with His Father, and He sitteth upon the chariots [Page 224] of the Cherubim and of the Seraphim who praise Him. It is He Who [sitteth] at the right hand of the Majesty in the heights of heaven. It is He Who was carried in the womb of the Virgin MARY. It is He Who is the God Jesus Christ, to Whom the Virgin MARY gave birth. It is He Who is the Lord, Who rose from the | dead.

A. fol.  
100a.  
col. 1.

These are the words which the Apostle spake in the midst of the multitudes who were gathered together, and he was afraid of no man. And he was testifying concerning the | birth of the only Son of God, and His Death, and His Resurrection, and His Ascension to His Father in heaven, and he taught all the people who were together there the faith [which] is in Christ. And it came to pass that, when the multitudes heard the words of the Apostle, they became exceedingly angry with the anger which is of Satan, who was with them against the Apostle of God Jesus Christ, and all the people were seeking after his blood. Then those who had heard his speech laid hold upon the blessed Apostle, and they brought him before Claudius the king, and they set up against him lying witnesses who said unto the king, "This is the "man who corrupteth [men], and who goeth round about

B. fol.  
210a.  
col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> Genesis i. 26.

“in the provinces and in the cities and saith unto the  
 “people [thereof], ‘I am a servant of Jesus Christ,’ and he  
 “preventeth them from being subject unto the king.” And  
 A. fol. when the king | heard these things concerning | the blessed  
 100a. Apostle he commanded them to stone him with stones  
 col. 2. until he died, and the Jews (may God curse them!) stoned  
 B. fol. him with stones, even as the king had commanded them.  
 210a. In this wise did the martyrdom of the blessed Apostle,  
 col. 2. James the son of Alphaeus, take place, on the tenth day  
 of the month Yakâtî;¹ and he was buried by the sanct-  
 uary in Jerusalem.

Glorv and honour be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the  
 Holy Spirit for ever and ever. Amen, Amen, and Amen.

¹ I. c., February 4. See LIPSIVS, op. cit., vol. ii. part 2, p. 234 ff.

## THE PREACHING OF SAINT MATTHIAS IN THE CITY OF THE CANNIBALS.

[Page 225] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE SON, AND OF THE HOLY GHOST, ONE GOD.

B. fol.  
210b.  
col. 1.

Here beginneth the Preaching of Saint Matthias, the Apostle of our Lord Jesus Christ, which he preached in the City of the Cannibals; who finished his contending on the eighth day of the month Magâbit.<sup>1</sup> In the peace of God the Father. Amen.

| And it came to pass that, when the Apostles were dividing the countries of the world [among them], and they were casting lots concerning them, the lot of Matthias went forth that he should go unto the City of the Cannibals<sup>2</sup>. Now in that city they neither eat bread nor drink water, nor any other kind of food, but they feed upon the flesh and blood of men. And every traveller who cometh into that city they seize and put out his eyes, and then they bind him in fetters until he hath lost his senses, and then they put him in a dark place and feed

A. fol.  
100b.  
col. 1.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., March 4.

<sup>2</sup> Literally, "the city, the eater of men." See LIPSIUS, op. cit., vol. 1. p. 546ff.

him upon grass like an animal for forty<sup>1</sup> days, and after this period they bring him out and devour him.

B. fol.  
210b.  
col. 2.

And when the blessed Matthias had | come unto this city, they seized him and blinded his eyes by means of a certain drug<sup>2</sup> with which they were acquainted, and they gave him grass to eat, (now he would not eat thereof because the power of God was in him), and they cast him into prison. Then he prayed and made supplication unto the Lord Jesus Christ, and said, "O my Lord,

A. fol.  
100b.  
col. 2.

"| for Whose sake we have rejected the world and followed Thee so that we might know Thee, besides "Whom we have no helper, look and see what they have "done to Thy servant, and how they have treated him "like the beast of the field. Thou, O Lord, knowest "what hath been, and what shall be; if it be Thy will "that I shall die in this city, let Thy [Page 226] good "pleasure be done. But if this be not Thy will, then "grant graciously light unto my eyes, and let not [these "men] gain the victory over me in such wise that they "may be able to eat my flesh like that of the beast of "the field." And when he had ended his prayer his eyes were opened, and he could look about everywhere, and he could see even as he did before. Then a voice came unto him, and said unto him, "Be strong, O Matthias, "and fear thou not, for I will not forsake thee; nay, I "will | be with thee in every place whithersoever thou "goest. Bear patiently until ten days be ended, and then "I will send unto thee Andrew, and he shall bring thee "out from this prison."

B. fol.  
211a.  
col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> Read "thirty."

<sup>2</sup> Probably the juice of a plant or shrub.

¶ Then Matthias gave thanks unto God | and ascribed  
 praise unto Him, and his soul rejoiced and was glad;  
 and he remained in the prison even as our Lord had  
 commanded Him. And it came to pass that, when the  
 men of the city came into the prison-house to take out  
 a man to kill, Matthias shut (*or* covered up) his eyes  
 so that they might not see [that they had been opened].  
 Now the people had the custom, when they placed a  
 man in the prison-house, of writing on the first day when  
 they brought him there a tablet which they hung round  
 his neck; and when thirty (*sic*) days were ended they  
 brought him out according to their habit [and ate him].  
 In this wise did they treat Matthias also. And when  
 Matthias had been in the prison-house for seven and  
 twenty days, our Lord revealed Himself unto Andrew  
 when he was in the country of the Greeks, | and said  
 unto him, "Rise up and go unto Matthias in the City of  
 "the Cannibals that thou mayest bring him out from the  
 "prison-house, | for the people of that city will in three  
 "days' time lead him out therefrom and eat him." And  
 Andrew said unto Him, "If it be only three days [before  
 "they eat him] I cannot come unto him; but send Thine  
 "angel and let him bring him out quickly from the prison-  
 "house, for how can I get there [Page 227] in the next  
 "three days?" And our Lord answered and said unto  
 Andrew, "Hearken, O thou who art one of those whom  
 "I have chosen.<sup>1</sup> If I were to say unto this city, 'Come  
 "'unto Me forthwith', it would come, together with all  
 "those who dwell therein. When the morrow hath come,

A. fol.  
 101a.  
 col. 1.

B. fol.  
 211a.  
 col. 2.

A. fol.  
 101a.  
 col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> The text is here corrupt.

"do thou and thy two disciples rise up, and thou shalt  
 "find a ship ready to sail; embark therein, and it shall  
 "bring thee [unto the place where Matthias is]." Then  
 He gave Andrew the salutation of peace, and ascended  
 into heaven with great glory.

And Andrew rose up even as our Lord had com-  
 B. fol. manded him, and came unto | the sea-coast; and our  
 211b. Lord had made for him a beautiful ship, and He Him-  
 col. 1. self was sitting there as the captain of it, and two angels  
 A. fol. were with Him in the forms of | sailors. And Andrew  
 101b. went to the ship and found our Lord sitting therein, and  
 col. 1. although he looked at Him he did not know Him to be  
 our Lord. And he said unto Him, "Peace be unto Thee,  
 "O captain of the ship;" and our Lord said unto him,  
 "Peace! Our Lord be with thee." Then Andrew said  
 unto Him, "Whither goest thou in this ship?" And our  
 Lord said unto him, "To the City of the Cannibals."  
 And Andrew said unto Him, "Everyone fleeth from this  
 "city, and will ye go thither?" And the captain of the  
 ship said unto him, "We have business in that city, and  
 "we must needs go thither." Then Andrew said unto  
 Him, "I entreat thee, O beloved brother, to carry us to  
 "that city;" and He said, "Come [up into the ship]."  
 And Andrew said unto Him, "[Know Thou] before Thou  
 "dost take us that we have no money wherewith to pay  
 B. fol. "Thee Thy fare; nay, we must eat of Thy food | with Thee."  
 211b. And our Lord, Who was in the form of the captain of the  
 col. 2. ship, said unto him, "Since ye must eat of our bread |  
 A. fol. "and ye cannot give us the hire of the ship, tell us how it  
 101b. "happeneth that ye have no bread with you, and why ye  
 col. 2. "have no money wherewith to pay your fare." And Andrew

said unto Him, "We are not men of high estate, neither  
 "are we [Page 228] drunkards or gluttons, but we are the  
 "servants of the Good God Whose Name is Jesus: He  
 "hath chosen us Twelve Apostles, and He hath given us  
 "commandments, and hath sent us to preach in His Name  
 "in the world. He hath commanded us to possess neither  
 "gold, nor silver, nor any of the goods of this world, nor  
 "food, and he hath commanded us not to labour therefor;  
 "it is for this reason that we are even as Thou seest us.  
 "Now if Thou art pleased to allow us to embark Thou  
 "wilt do good (*or* a kindness) unto us, but if Thou wilt  
 "not do this thing then tell us, so that we may seek out  
 "another ship." And He said unto them, "Had ye been  
 "able to pay your fare I should have wished you to  
 "embark in | another ship, [but as ye cannot] ye are B. fol.  
 "better with Me, for it is a great joy for Me [to 212a.  
 "know] that I am worthy that the Apostles | of Jesus col. 1.  
 "Christ should embark with Me." Then Andrew said A. fol.  
 unto Him, "May God bless Thee with a spiritual bless- 102a.  
 "ing;" and Andrew and his two disciples embarked in col. 1.  
 the ship.

And our Lord said unto one of the angels who were  
 in the form of sailors, "Bring bread and let these brethren  
 "eat, for they have come from a place which is afar  
 "off;" and he did as our Lord had commanded him.  
 Then our Lord said unto Andrew, "Stand up, O My  
 "brethren, ye disciples of Christ, and eat bread before we  
 "put out to sea in the ship;" so Andrew said unto his  
 disciples, "Rise up, and let us eat," but they were not  
 able to speak unto him through fear of the sea. Then  
 Andrew returned to the captain | and said unto Him, B. fol.  
 212a.  
 col. 2.

A. fol. "May Jesus Christ give Thee a good reward in the king-  
 102a. "dom of heaven! Bear with me a little in that | I do  
 col. 2. "not eat, and in that my disciples do not eat with me,  
 "for they are afraid of the sea, and they have never  
 "before embarked in a ship." And our Lord said unto  
 Andrew, "Rise up and journey [Page 229] unto the place  
 "to which thou hast been sent, and make thy way thither  
 "by thyself." And Andrew said unto his two disciples,  
 "Get ye up to the sea-shore, and abide there, until I go  
 "to the place whither I have been sent and come back  
 "to you;" and they said unto him, "We will not separate  
 "ourselves from thee, that we transgress not the command-  
 "ment of God." And our Lord said unto Andrew, "If  
 "thou art a disciple of Christ, command them not to be  
 "afraid of the sea, for we wish to set out." Whereupon  
 B. fol. our Lord said | unto one of the angels who were in  
 212b. the form of sailors, "Unfurl (*literally*, let down) the  
 col. 1. "sails of the ship," and our Lord Himself went and took  
 hold of the rudder of the ship as if He had been the  
 A. fol. captain thereof, and the two angels | stood one on each  
 102b. side of Him. Now Andrew and his disciples were sitting  
 col. 1. in the ship, and he was trying to still their grief, and he  
 said unto them, "O my children, fear ye not, for our  
 "Lord will not forsake us. He hath stablished the  
 "heavens, and hath gathered together the waters of the  
 "sea, and He is the Creator of them all. Fear ye not,  
 "for He will abide with us in every place whithersoever  
 "we may go, even as He hath commanded us."

And it came to pass that when Andrew had spoken  
 in this wise he prayed unto God, and asked that his  
 disciples might sleep, and that they might not be afraid

of the sea; and they fell asleep quickly; and while they were sleeping He made their souls to ascend into Paradise, and they ate of the fruit thereof. Then when Andrew knew that his disciples were asleep, he said unto our | Lord—now he knew not that the Captain was our Lord—"I beseech thee, O good Man, to tell me what "manner of ship Thine is, | for I have never seen the like "thereof. I have embarked in a ship many times, but "never before [Page 230] have I embarked in a ship like "unto this. Verily, I am sitting in it as if I were on land, "for the ship rolleth not, even though we have come out "on the open sea; there can be no sailors who are better "than Thine in working the ship out on its course and "in bringing it back." And our Lord Jesus Christ said unto him, "We have sailed often and often in this ship on "the sea, but we never before saw it behave in this "manner; since it knoweth that an Apostle of Christ is "in it it doth not roll as formerly." And Andrew said, "May the Name of Jesus Christ be blessed, Whose abundant mercy hath made it possible for me to sail<sup>1</sup> with "a man who knoweth His Name." Then our Lord said unto him, "If thou art an Apostle of Christ, tell me | why "the children of Israel did not believe in Him, and why "they did not call him Lord? I have heard concerning "Him that | He made manifest marvellous things unto "His disciples in the Mount of Olives." And Andrew said unto Him, "Hearken unto me and I will tell you of "His work. He opened the eyes of the blind, the dumb "spake, He made the deaf to hear, He cast out devils,

B. fol.  
212b.  
col. 2.  
A. fol.  
102b.  
col. 2.

B. fol.  
213a.  
col. 1.  
A. fol.  
103a.  
col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> Literally, "dwell."

"He raised the dead, He placed a few loaves of bread  
 "upon the grass, and the grass became bread, and He  
 "satisfied five thousand [men with food], besides women  
 "and children, and He filled twelve baskets with what  
 "remained of the bread; all these things did the children  
 "of Israel see, and yet they did not believe upon Him."  
 And our Lord said unto him, "Perhaps He did not do  
 "all these wonderful things before the chief priests, and  
 "on that account they would not believe on Him, but  
 "rose up against Him, and slew Him?" Then Andrew  
 said unto Him, "It was in their own assemblies that He

B. fol. "worked [these miracles for them], and not only | openly  
 213a. "did He work miracles, but also in secret." | And our  
 col. 2. Lord Jesus said unto him, "What now is it that [He did]  
 A. fol. "in secret?" And Andrew said unto Him, "Tell me, O  
 103a. "Thou that [Page 231] askest: wishest Thou to know for  
 col. 2. "truth's sake, or that Thou mayest scoff?" And our Lord  
 Jesus said unto him, "If thou didst know the joy which  
 "was in My heart [thou wouldst not speak thus]; but if  
 "thou dost not tell Me I shall laugh at thee, for I am  
 "glad and I rejoice with all those who remember the Name  
 "of Jesus." And Andrew said, "May God bless Thee!  
 "hearken unto me, and I will tell Thee;" and whilst Andrew  
 was conversing with our Lord they arrived at the city.  
 Then our Lord Jesus laid Himself down as if He were  
 about to sleep, and when Andrew looked at Him and  
 saw that He was asleep, he returned unto one of his  
 B. fol. disciples, and they slept. And in that same hour our  
 213b. Lord commanded His angels to lift up Andrew and his  
 col. 1. two disciples, and to lay them down upon the sea shore;  
 A. fol. and He went up to heaven in great | glory | with His angels.  
 103b.  
 col. 1.

And when Andrew woke up from his sleep and looked towards the sea shore, and found no ship [there] his heart beat fast, and he said, "I must have been sitting "with our Lord, but I knew it not, although I was looking at our Lord whilst He was talking unto me, His "servant; verily this is a blessed day for me. When I "embark on my ship, I will look at the place where He "humbled himself to His servant." And thus saying Andrew roused up [his] disciples from their sleep, and said unto them, "Rise up, O my servants. We have been "in the ship with our Lord, and we knew Him not." Then his disciples said unto him, "At the time when thou didst "pray we saw [two] shining eagles which overshadowed "us, and they took our souls up into Paradise, and we "saw our Lord sitting (*literally* speaking) upon His throne, "and the angels surrounding it. And we saw the Twelve "Apostles and the Seventy-two Disciples, and angels "round about you, | and from that time until this moment "when we rose up [Page 232] from our slumber | we "have seen many wonderful things.

B. fol.  
213b.  
col. 2.  
A. fol.  
103b.  
col. 2.

And Andrew rejoiced when [he knew] that his disciples had seen this spiritual vision, and he rose up and bowed low on the ground and said, "O my Lord "Jesus Christ, I will not move from this place until Thou "comest unto me, for I know that Thou art not far from "me; forgive Thou that which I have spoken in my folly, "and I beseech Thee, O my Lord, to reveal Thyself "unto Thy servant." And when he had said these words our Lord Jesus Christ appeared unto him in the form of a young Man of beautiful appearance Who was coming out of the city, and He said unto Andrew, "O My

“beloved one.” And Andrew fell upon his face on the ground, and said unto Him, “I give thanks unto Thee, “O my Lord Jesus Christ, for what have I done that  
 B. fol. “Thou shouldst appear unto me on the sea?” | And our  
 214a. Lord said unto him, “Fear not. This hast thou done. |  
 col. 1. “Thou didst say, ‘We cannot come unto the city in three  
 A. fol. “days’; therefore did I wish thee to know that I am  
 104a. “mighty [to do] all things, and that there is nothing  
 col. 1. “which is too hard for Me. Rise up, and come into the  
 “city, and bring Matthias and all those who are with him  
 “out of the prison-house. In [this city] there shall come  
 “upon you much suffering, but bear it patiently, for I  
 “will be with you. Remember ye the mercy [which] My  
 “Father [sheweth] unto His creatures, and make your-  
 “selves like unto Him, and remember how they said of  
 “Me, ‘He casteth out devils by Beelzebub’.<sup>1</sup> I had the  
 “power to command the earth to rend itself asunder and  
 “to carry them down into its depths quickly, as it were  
 “in the twinkling of an eye, but I bore with them, for I  
 “knew that evil should be with you upon the earth, and  
 B. fol. “I knew that by means of your patient endurance | of  
 214a. “suffering in this city, many should believe [Page 233]  
 col. 2. “therein.” And Andrew | said unto Him, “Only be Thou  
 A. fol. “with me, my Lord, and I will do even as Thou shalt  
 104a. “command me”; and our Lord gave him the salutation of  
 col. 2. peace, and went up into heaven with great glory.

Then Andrew and his two disciples entered into the city, and there was none who saw them, and they came unto the gate of the prison-house wherein was Matthias.

<sup>1</sup> St. Matthew xii. 24; St. Mark iii. 22; St. Luke xi. 15.

And when they had laid hold upon the gate it opened unto them, and they went inside and found Matthias sitting down and singing psalms, and they embraced him. And Andrew said unto him, "Dost thou say, O Matthias, "that, 'After the second day (i. e., on the third day) they "will take me out, and slay me, and devour my flesh "like [that of] a beast?' Hast thou forgotten the mystery "which we saw from our Lord wherein I spake [unto "Him], and wherein the heavens quaked?" Then Matthias said unto him, "Behold, I know thereof, O my brother; "but I say that if it be the will of God that I come to | "an end in this city [it shall come to pass]. Hast thou "not heard His voice in the Holy | Gospel, saying, 'I send "you forth like lambs among wolves?'"<sup>1</sup> As for me, when "they threw me into the prison-house I cried out unto "our Lord, and revealed my heart unto Him, and He "said unto me, 'Fear not. At the end of [certain] days "I will send Andrew unto thee, and he shall bring thee, "and all those who are with Thee, out of the prison-house;' "and behold thou hast come to do this."

B. fol.  
214b.  
col. 1.  
A. fol.  
104b.  
col. 1.

Then Andrew looked at the men who were in the prison-house, and saw that they were bound like animals; and he straightway anathematized Satan, and all his host; and he and Matthias began to make supplication unto God, Who hearkened unto their petition. And they laid their hands upon the men who were in the prison-house, and their eyes were opened, and their minds returned [Page 234] unto them. And Andrew commanded them to go out from the city, | and he told them that they

B. fol.  
214b.  
col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> St. Matthew x. 16.

would find on their road a certain fig-tree, and that they were to sit down under it until the Apostles came to them; now the fruit which was on the tree | could not be counted. And the men who were in the prison-house said unto them, "Come ye also out with us, lest the people of the city find us, and bring us back again here." Then the Apostles said unto them, "Go ye forth in peace, for ye shall not be evilly entreated." So they departed from the city, and they found the fig-tree even as the Apostles had told them; now the number of the men who went forth from the prison-house was one hundred and twenty and three. And Andrew and Matthias told the two disciples Rufus and Alexander to go forth from the city. Then the two Apostles Andrew and Matthias, and their two disciples with them rose up, and prayed and entreated God to send a cloud to carry away Rufus and Alexander, and to bring them unto the place where Peter was; and God heard their | entreaty, and sent a cloud, and it bore them away. And Andrew and Matthias went out into the highway of the city, [and waited there] until they knew what would take place | .

Now meanwhile the soldiers of the guard had been sent to take men into the prison-house to slay [those who were therein], according to their rule daily, and they found the doors of the prison-house wide open, and the keepers, who were seven in number, were dead, and there was no one left in the prison-house. And they went back and told the magistrates, and the magistrates said, "What shall we live upon? How can we live this day without food?" And they took counsel among themselves, and they said, "Shall we be obliged to eat the dead? Or

"shall we gather together the aged men in the city, and  
 "let lots be cast, and according as the lot shall fall upon  
 "each of them [Page 235] let him be killed on his day?  
 "We shall then have food to eat until the messengers  
 "return." Now they had certain men whom they used  
 to send away in a ship to gather together | men from  
 every region unto their city, that they might eat them;  
 but meanwhile they took the people who were dead to  
 eat for food. And they had in | their city a certain place  
 which was full of water, and whensoever they wished  
 they used to kill a man, or a woman, in the water and  
 pour their blood into a stone bowl in the water, and  
 when they had brought the bodies into that place they  
 took a knife to cut them in pieces. And Andrew saw  
 them [doing thus], and he made supplication, and said,  
 "O my Lord Jesus Christ, Thou Lover of men, let these  
 "knives be broken in their hands;" and in that same hour  
 their hands dried up and they were unable to move  
 [them]. And when the magistrates saw what had happened,  
 they wept and said, "The men who have come forth from  
 "the prison-house are sorcerers, and they have escaped by  
 "means of their sorceries, and we are unable to do them  
 "any harm." Then the old men of the city, who were  
 twelve in number, were gathered together, and they  
 cast lots, and the lot fell upon | seven of them to be  
 killed and eaten. And one of the seven upon whom the  
 lot had fallen said, "I have a son, | take him, and let me  
 "go free;" and the soldiers of the guard said unto him,  
 "We cannot take thy son until we have spoken to the  
 "magistrates." [And when they had spoken to the  
 magistrates] they said unto them, "Since he hath given

B. fol.

215b.

col. 2.

A. fol.

105a.

col. 2.

B. fol.

215b.

col. 1.

A. fol.

105b.

col. 1.

“you his son instead of himself, take him, and let the old  
 “man go;” so the old man delivered unto them his son.  
 And when they laid hold upon the boy to kill him, he  
 wept before the face of his father, and said unto him,  
 “I beseech thee, O my father, let them not slay me, for  
 “I am only a child; but let me live until I become as  
 “old as thou art, and [Page 236] when I have become an  
 “old man, let them eat me.” And the boy cried out  
 and said to the soldiers of the guard, “Why are ye so  
 “hard of heart? But, alas, it is my father who hath  
 “delivered me over unto death.” Now the custom of the  
 people of the city was to cut in pieces every one who  
 died, and to eat him, and they brought those upon whom  
 the lot had fallen | [to do thus unto them]. And Andrew  
 prayed unto our Lord, and said, “I praise Thee, and I  
 “beseech Thee, O my Lord Jesus Christ, that, inasmuch  
 “as Thou didst hearken unto me | in respect of the dead,  
 “Thou hear me also in respect of these living ones, and  
 “let them not be delivered over to be slain;” and through  
 these words the swords [of the soldiers] became like wax  
 before the fire. Now when the magistrates saw this they  
 wept bitterly, and said, “Woe unto us by reason of that  
 which hath come upon us.”

Then Satan appeared unto them in the form of a  
 wise and aged man, and he cried out, and said, “Woe  
 “be unto you! Ye shall die of hunger, for ye shall not  
 “be able to eat anything after to-day, and your dead  
 “shall be cast abroad in your streets, and shall remain  
 “there until they become rotten, and ye shall not be able  
 “to eat them. Rise up, and seek ye this man whose  
 “name is Matthias, and kill him, for if ye do not kill him

B. fol.  
 215b.  
 col. 2.  
 A. fol.  
 105b.  
 col. 2.

"ye will not be able to do as ye desire. It was he who  
 "brought the men who believe [in Christ] out of the  
 "prison-| house; he is in the | city, therefore seek ye him, B. fol.  
 "and slay him, so that your works may prosper." And when 216a.  
 Andrew saw Satan conversing with them in this wise he said col. 1.  
 unto him, "O thou Enemy of our Lord, O thou Enemy A. fol.  
 "of His creatures, God the Most High shall bring thee 106a.  
 "down under our feet." Now when Satan heard these col. 1.  
 words from him, he said, "I hear his voice, but I do not  
 "see his body." And Andrew appeared unto him and  
 said, "O blind one [Page 237], for indeed thou art blind  
 "if thou art not able to see the servants of Christ and  
 "the messengers of God!" And Satan cried out with a  
 loud voice, saying, "Behold, these [are] the men, seize  
 "them." Then the multitudes of the people scattered  
 themselves about the city, and they shut the gates  
 thereof, and began to make a search, saying, "Where are  
 "Matthias and Andrew? Seize them for us, so that we  
 "may work our will upon them." And our Lord com-  
 manded the Apostles, and said unto them, "Rise up and  
 "shew yourselves unto them, so that they may know the  
 "littleness of their power;" and they went forth | from B. fol.  
 under the roof [where they were], and | said unto the 216a.  
 people, "Behold, we are those whom ye seek." Then the col. 2.  
 people rose up against them, and seized them, and they A. fol.  
 said unto the Apostles, "We will deal with you as ye 106a.  
 "have dealt with us." And certain men among them said, col. 2.  
 "Let us cut off their heads and give them unto the elders  
 "of the city;" but others said, "Nay, do not do thus, but  
 "let us cut them up into very small pieces, and distribute  
 "their bodies among the people of the city." Thereupon

they dragged the Apostles along the highways of the city until their blood dropped from them in the streets, and after this they cast them into the prison-house and bound them in fetters, and they put them in a dark place, and set a large number of strong men to keep guard over them.

And it came to pass that when the Apostles had entered into the prison-house they prayed, and said, "(O "Lord Jesus Christ, be not Thou far from us. We are "Thy disciples, and Thou hast commanded us not to "make haste; do not Thou let the Enemy rejoice over "us." | Thereupon our Lord | appeared unto them, and said unto them, "I will be with you; fear not." And whilst they were in the prison-house Satan, having taken with him seven of his servants, appeared unto the Apostles and spake unto them words of violence, [Page 238] and heaped curses upon them, and said unto them, "Behold, I have brought you into my hand. Who can "deliver you from me? Where [now] is the power where- "with ye overcame me in all the cities and destroyed "[my] temples? I will let them kill you, even as they "killed your Master." And Satan said unto his servants, "Rise up, and slay these men who have fought against "you, that ye may have rest from them, and that the "whole neighbourhood may be your own." Then the devils rose up against the Apostles, and wished to slay them, but the Apostles waited patiently, and then made the sign of the honourable cross over them, | and blew in their faces, when they fell upon their backs. And their father Satan said unto them, "What hath happened to "you?" And they said unto him, "We saw in | their

A. fol.  
106b.  
col. 1.  
B. fol.  
216b.  
col. 1.

A. fol.  
106b.  
col. 2.  
B. fol.  
216b.  
col. 2.

"hands a sign, and we were afraid of them. Act thou, "if thou art able, against them, for we are afraid; act "thou, for we are afraid;" and they departed, having been put to shame.

And it came to pass that when the men of the city had arrived [at the prison-house] they took out the Apostles, and dragged them through the city, and Andrew and Matthias cried out to God, saying, "Have mercy "upon us, O Lord, for we are [only] flesh and blood, and "we know that Thou art not far from us." And when Andrew and Matthias had said these words they heard a voice near them speaking in the Hebrew tongue, and saying unto them, "O Andrew and Matthias, heaven and "earth shall pass away, but My word shall not pass "away."<sup>1</sup> Then the men of the city cast the Apostles into the | prison-house, saying, "They shall die immediately." And the Apostles said, whilst their blood was dripping upon the ground, "O Lord Jesus Christ, help us, [Page 239] "and deliver | this city and all those who are therein." And at that moment the Apostles looked upon a stone image (*or* statue) which was upon<sup>2</sup> a pillar in the prison-house, and they made the sign of the cross over it, and stretched out their hands and prayed, and when they had ended their prayer they drew nigh unto the pillar whereon was the image, and said unto it, "Be thou "afraid at the sign of the cross which we have made "over thee, and send out from thy lowermost part water "as abundant as the waters of the Flood upon this city

A. fol.

107a.

col. 1.

B. fol.

217a.

col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> St. Matthew xxiv. 35; St. Mark xiii. 31; St. Luke xxi. 33.

<sup>2</sup> *Literally*, "sitting upon," i. e., mounted upon.

“and upon all those who dwell therein.” Thereupon [the pillar] was rent asunder in its lowermost part, and water poured out in abundance, and it was exceedingly bitter, and like gall, and it at once flooded the city, and all those who were therein. And the men of the | city took their sons and their daughters, and wished to depart therefrom. And Matthias said, “O my Lord Jesus Christ, “accept the petition of Thy servants, and send Michael “the Archangel upon a cloud | of darkness wherewith [to “cover] over this city, so that no one may escape therefrom.”

A. fol. 107a. col. 2.  
B. fol. 217a. col. 2.

And it came to pass that, when Matthias knew God had received his petition, he smote the pillar, and said, “Fulfil now the command with which I commanded thee.” Then the pillar poured forth more water until it came up to the necks of the people, and it was about to drown them. And the people wept and said, “Woe unto us! “This wrath hath come upon us through the two men “who are chosen servants of God, whom we have thrown “into the prison-house, and because of our evil acts towards them. Behold, we shall die a terrible death in “this water; make haste then and let us cry out unto “their God, and say, ‘We believe in Thee, O Thou | Lord “God of these two strangers; deliver Thou us from this “water.’” [Page 240] Thereupon Andrew answered and said unto the pillar, “It shall suffice for thee, and behold, “the time for the flood hath passed, and the season for “sowing in the hearts of the men of this city | the right “[faith] hath arrived. I declare unto thee that, when I “have built a church in this city, I will place thee therein, “and they shall put a roof over thee;” and because of these

A. fol. 107b. col. 1.  
B. fol. 217b. col. 1.

words the water which was flowing out from under the pillar ceased to flow. And when the men of the city saw that the water had ceased to flow, some of the elders of the city, together with a number of the young men thereof, rose up and went unto the prison-house (now the water [reached] up to their necks), and they saw the Apostles with their hands stretched out, and they were making supplication unto God. And Andrew and Matthias went out to them, and the water was divided before them; and when the elders saw this they were afraid, and they cried out, saying, "Have compassion upon us, "O servants of God."

Now among the elders was the | old man upon whom the lot to be slain had fallen, who had given his son over [unto death] instead of himself and had saved himself thereby; and he came with them, saying, "Have compassion upon me, O servants of God." And Matthias said unto him, "I marvel that thou canst say "unto me, Have pity | upon me, seeing that thou hadst "no mercy on thy son. I say unto thee that, on that day "when the water shall return into the depths of the earth, "thou and the seven men who slay men shall go down "[therewith]; and ye shall be in the depths of the earth, "until thou hast seen what befalleth him that hateth his "own son, and the seven men also [shall be there], until "they have seen what befalleth those who slay men." And Andrew said unto the young men who were holding the old man, "Go ye unto the place where [they slay "men, until the water shall return unto its place;" and they went with the Apostles, and the water fled from before them. And when they had come unto the place

A. fol.  
107b.  
col. 2.

B. fol.  
217b.  
col. 2.

which was full of water, [Page 241] they stood up and prayed, and because of their prayer the earth was rent asunder, | and it swallowed up the men who slew men and the old man who had delivered over his son unto death.

A. fol.  
108a.  
col. 1.

And all the people were looking at the water which was in the city, | and they feared greatly, and said, "Let fire come down and consume us for the evil which we have done unto them" (i. e., the Apostles). Then the Apostles said unto them, "Fear ye not, but confess the true faith and ye shall see the glory of God, for we will not leave in the earth those whom it hath swallowed up, but will bring them forth therefrom." Then Matthias and Andrew commanded them to bring unto them all the people who were dead in the water, that they might pray over them and raise them up, but they were not able to gather them together there because of their great number; so the Apostles entreated our Lord to send a cloud and rain from Himself over the dead, and they all

A. fol.  
108a.  
col. 2.

rose up. And after this Andrew | placed the sick folk in the church which he had built, and he gave them the commandments of the Law and of the Gospel, and he baptized them in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy | Spirit; and he administered unto them the Holy Mysteries, and he healed all the sick folk. And he said unto them, "Keep ye all the commandments which we have given unto you until the end of your days, and teach [them] unto your children who shall come after you. And make supplication unto God that He will take away from you the custom which ye have had of eating human flesh;" and he made them to know how to eat the [common] food of man.

B. fol.  
218a.  
col. 2.

And after these things the Apostles departed from them, and as the people were sending them away they said unto them, "O servants of the Good God, abide ye "with us for a little space that we may rejoice in you, "for we are but new plants." Then the Apostles [Page 242] said unto them, "Fear ye not, and be not grieved, "for by the good pleasure of God we shall not be far "from you." And as the Apostles were going forth from

| the city our Lord appeared unto them in the form of a young man of beautiful appearance, and said unto them, "Have compassion upon | those who dwell in this [city], "and accept their petition, and tarry with them some days, "for I have heard their supplications unto you, and the "words which they have spoken, saying, 'We are new "plants.' Why have ye given unto the men the com- "mandments of the Law and sent them forth into the "deep?" Then the Apostles said unto Him, "O Master, "forgive us. We will return to the city, and will bring "them forth in Thy Name from the deep." And our Lord said unto them, "Go back into the city and dwell "therein for seven days, and then depart therefrom." And Andrew, together with his disciples, went to the country of the Greeks, and he said unto our Lord, "Bless me, O "Lord;" and our Lord blessed them, and then went up into heaven with great glory. Then the Apostles entered into the city, even as our Lord had commanded them, and they dwelt therein for seven days; and | the men whom the earth had swallowed up came up [therefrom], and they made their faith to prosper, and they strengthened their knowledge in the commandments of God. And the Apostles departed from them glorifying God, Who had

A. fol.  
108b.  
col. 1.  
B. fol.  
218b.  
col. 1.

A. fol.  
108b.  
col. 2.

B. fol. not left the people in error. | And a number of men went  
218b. forth with them to set them on their way, and they were  
col. 2. saying, "One is the Lord God of Andrew and Matthias,  
"[that is to say] Jesus Christ, to Whom, and to the  
"Father, the Sustainer of all things, and to the Holy and  
"Vivifying Spirit, be glory and honour for ever and ever.  
"Amen, Amen, and Amen. So be it! So be it."

---

## THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT MATTHIAS.

[Page 243] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE SON, AND OF THE HOLY SPIRIT, ONE GOD.

B. fol.  
219a.  
col. 1.

Here beginneth the Martyrdom of Matthias, the Apostle of our Lord Jesus Christ; now he finished his contending on the eighth day of the month Magâbî<sup>1</sup> in the peace of our Lord. Amen.

And it came to pass that when Judas Iscariot had betrayed our Lord | Jesus Christ [to the Jews] that they might crucify Him, Satan and his host were put to shame by reason of the sufferings of our Lord Jesus Christ, the King of the heavens and of the earth. And when Judas, the most miserable and shameful being in all creation, had betrayed his Lord to the wicked Jews, he went and killed himself and destroyed his own honour. And he was driven forth from the company of the Apostles, who elected (*literally*, placed) Matthias in his stead; and Matthias went forth and preached in the city of Damascus, for the lot had fallen to him to go and preach in that

A. fol.  
109a.  
col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> I. e., March 4.

city; and he preached to them the story of the Holy Gospel.

- And it came to pass that when Matthias had entered into the city, he preached unto the people and said, "O  
 "sinful men, who are cast away (*or*, lost) in your sins,  
 B. fol. "and who | know not God your Creator, why have ye  
 219a, "forsaken the Lord Who is God indeed, [and why do ye  
 col. 2. "worship] your gods of stone which are the work of the  
 "hand of man? And why do ye desire that all men  
 "should be even as ye are, that is to say, cast away in  
 A. fol. "sin? Hearken ye unto my words, O ye men | who dwell  
 109a, "in the city of Damascus, and forsake ye the worship of  
 col. 2. "[false] gods, and put away from you your error, and  
 "your evil deeds, and turn ye unto God your Creator.  
 "Receive ye from me my words, and I will bring you  
 "nigh unto the Lord your God, and He shall make you  
 "worthy of His kingdom. Turn ye unto me, and I will  
 "teach you the laws of the angels. Turn ye unto me,  
 "and I will give you the Bread of Life, that ye may live  
 "for ever. [Page 244] Refuse ye [to worship] the gods  
 "which are the work of the hand of man, and break  
 "through the wiles [of Satan], that ye may become the  
 "servants of God, Who is the Lord in truth, Jesus Christ,  
 "the Lord of heaven and of earth, the Word, Who was  
 B. fol. "in the beginning, the Word of God | Who came down  
 219b, "into the womb of MARY the Virgin, who was not united  
 col. 1. "unto man. He bore suffering until He had delivered the  
 A. fol. "race of Adam from the dominion of | Satan, and He  
 109b, "did not appear in His glory and majesty. He had no  
 col. 1. "father upon earth like the children of the flesh, for He  
 "existed with His Father in heaven, and He was insepa-

"rable from Him. He comforteth all by His wisdom, "and it was He Who took the dust from the earth and "created therefrom our father Adam, the first father. He "is the God in Whose hands are the spirits of all created "beings, and He it is Who loveth them, and Who maketh "them meet to turn unto Him, and He bringeth them "back into the true faith, and into the condition of mind "which is good; and He, and His Father, and the Holy "Spirit are one honourable Trinity, Whose Godhead is "One, and Whose Power is One. Now first of all I "command you to make yourselves to be remote from "all uncleanness, and not to multiply your intercourse with "women, so that | God may look upon your purity, and "may | bless you with a spiritual blessing, and may shew "compassion upon you in the day of judgment."

B. fol.  
219b.  
col. 2.  
A. fol.  
109b.  
col. 2.

And it came to pass that when the men of the city had heard these words from him Satan entered into their hearts with his wiles and evil deeds, and they said among themselves, "Verily this man is one of these Twelve men "who are sorcerers, and who go about throughout the "world and in all the countries [thereof], and separate "wives from their husbands; consider ye now how ye "shall treat him." Then the men of the city were gathered together [Page 245] [against him], and they seized the Apostle and put him in prison, and they fastened him firmly upon a bed of iron,<sup>1</sup> and kindled a fire beneath him, [and kept him there] until the smell of his [burnt] flesh issued therefrom. And all the people looked on and wondered when they saw the flames of fire rise to

<sup>1</sup> I. e., a large gridiron with legs.

the height of twelve cubits above the bed,<sup>1</sup> and those who were gathered together and were standing there said, "If this man be a sorcerer, behold, he will be |  
 B. fol. 220a. "destroyed;" but after three | days their evil acts became  
 col. 1. known and made manifest.  
 A. fol. 110a.

And it came to pass that when the three days had gone by, the people came to the place where was the bed of iron on which they had set the holy man and burnt him with fire, and they found him alive and with his eyes open, [and the fire had not] touched his body; and they found him safe and sound, and harm had not in any way touched him, and there was no smell of fire upon him, and his garments had not been burnt. And when the men of the city had seen this wonderful thing, and how God had shewn compassion upon His Apostle, many of them believed upon God, and they said, "This "man is a god." And the holy man continued to lie upon the bed until seven or eight days had passed, and all the men of the city who were of the true faith believed in the words of the Apostle Matthias, but there remained  
 A. fol. 110b. some who did not | believe in his words. | Now for  
 col. 2. twenty-four whole days the fire continued to blaze under the bed, both by day and by night, and our Lord Jesus  
 B. fol. 220a. Christ, upon Whose Name His Apostle called, did not  
 col. 2. permit any injury whatsoever to come to him, for he was suffering for His Name's sake. And after these things He brought him out of the fire, and the people saw that his body was unharmed, and that his face was like the face of a child. Then all those who looked upon

<sup>1</sup> See LAPIDUS, op. cit., vol ii. part 2, p. 260.

him said, "This [man] who was in the fire [is not a "sorcerer], for [Page 246] his whole body is unharmed, "from the hair of his head even unto the nails of his "feet." And in that same hour all the men of the city and of the districts round [about] believed, and they cried out and said, "There is no god in heaven or in "earth except the Lord God of Matthias, the Apostle "of our Lord Jesus Christ, Who delivereth all those "who trust in Him, | and those who believe in His holy "Name."

A. fol.  
110b.  
col. 1.

And [after] these things Matthias, the blessed Apostle, commanded [the people] to destroy all the | temples of the gods, and to throw [the gods] into the sea; and no remnant whatsoever of them could be found by reason of the evil which the people wrought upon them. Then Matthias built them a church in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit, and he baptized the people of the city, men, women, and children, in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit, the Holy Trinity, consubstantial, indivisible, and unchangeable. And after he had baptized them he consecrated a church for them, and he admonished them and gave them the commandments of life, and he taught them the Law and the Gospel; then he departed from them, and they all set him upon his way in peace. For he had taught them the knowledge of the truth, and he had taught them the path of righteousness, and he had brought them forth out of error into the knowledge of | the faith of Jesus Christ our Lord; and after he had preached and told the story of the Gospel, he slept the good sleep. And he died

B. fol.  
220b.  
col. 1.

A. fol.  
110b.  
col. 2.

B. fol. 220b. col. 2. in one of the cities of Judaea which was called Pelwôn,<sup>1</sup> on the eighth day of the | month Magâbit, in the grace of God and of the Lover of men, our Lord and God Jesus Christ, to Whom be praise and honour for ever and ever! Amen, Amen, and Amen.

<sup>1</sup> I. e., Phalaeon.

## THE ACTS OF SAINT JAMES IN INDIA.<sup>1</sup>

[Page 247] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE  
SON, AND OF THE HOLY SPIRIT, ONE GOD.

A. fol.  
111a.  
col. 1.  
B. fol.  
223b.  
col. 2.

Here beginneth the Book of the Acts of Saint James, the son of Zebedee, the brother of John the Evangelist, and of what took place through his preaching of the story of the Gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ in the country of Hendaké (India). In the peace of our Lord Jesus Christ. Amen.

And it came to pass that, when the Apostles divided [among them] the countries of the world, each one of them knew that the portion which had fallen unto him was from God (may His Name be blessed exceedingly!); and the lot fell upon James to go to the country of India, and John his brother was to go to the country of Dasyà (Dacia). And James said unto Peter, "O my father Peter, go forth with me until thou hast brought me into my country;" and Peter said unto him, "Not thyself only, | but each of you will I bring unto his country, even as God hath commanded me." So Peter

A. fol.  
111a.  
col. 2.

---

<sup>1</sup> See LAESIUS, *Apostelsgeschichten*, vol. ii. part 2, p. 212 ff. The country which is usually said to have fallen to the lot of James is Lydia; by Lydia, however, the city of Lydd near Joppa must be intended.

- and James set out for that country (i. e., India), and as they were going | on their way they were speaking of the glory of God, and their souls were rejoicing because our Lord had told them of the great reward which they should have in the kingdom of heaven. And they said, "It is meet for us not to be slothful, but to hasten to "continue our journey, and to declare Him and to preach "Him in the world, that we may be worthy to find "our hope and our deliverance from the tribulation of "fire;" and Peter and James spake thus [as they were going] on their way, and they were strengthening each other for [the] strife. And as they were conversing in this wise, our Lord appeared | unto them in the form of a young man of beautiful appearance, and He was rejoicing in their words, and He laughed before their faces, and said unto them, "Come unto Me, O ye devoted and "chosen ones, and I will teach you, and will give you "[Page 248] your reward. Know, O ye My disciples, that | "all the sufferings which ye endure in this world are not "to be compared with one hour of the rest which ye "shall enjoy in the kingdom of heaven;" and our Lord made bright the eyes of their understanding, and He made to appear unto them all the righteous who have gone to their rest, from Adam until John, and from John until the advent of our Lord Jesus Christ. And being radiant and brilliant with light [and arrayed] in the apparel of bright light, He drew nigh unto them, and embraced them with a spiritual embrace; and then He disappeared from them in peace.
- And when His two blessed disciples had seen this spiritual vision, their hearts | were strengthened, and they

rejoiced and were glad, and they cast themselves upon the ground, and worshipped, saying, "We give thanks unto Thee, O God, our Lord Jesus Christ, [because] "Thou hast dealt graciously with us." Then our Lord lifted them up and gave them the salutation of peace, and said unto James, "Be strong and fulfil thy ministration "with an upright heart, and preach thou in the world in "the Name of our Lord, [Who hath created men] in His "[ image and in His likeness, for thereby shalt thou gain "great reward." And the Apostles rose up, and their faces were shining like the sun, and our Lord departed from their presence, and went up into heaven with great glory. Then Peter said unto James, "It is meet for us "to contend in this glorious matter so that we may gather "together all the sheep of the race of Israel which are "scattered abroad, and also that this great reward may "be ours;" then they set out together. And it came to pass that when they had come into the city they found on the highway a blind man who was begging for bread, | and when he knew that the Apostles had arrived the grace of God came down upon him, and he cried out with a loud voice, and said, "O ye Apostles of Jesus "Christ, grant unto me [Page 249] light for mine eyes." And James said unto Peter, "O my father, have compassion upon him, for he crieth out after us;" and Peter said unto him, "Thou thyself shalt give healing unto him "in this [thy] city." And James said unto Peter, "If "the command be | according as thou sayest, bless me, "O my father;" and Peter said unto him, "May our Lord "Jesus Christ effect a healing by thy hands."

B. fol.  
224b.  
col. 1.

A. fol.  
112a.  
col. 1.

B. fol.  
224b.  
col. 2.

Then James cried out unto the blind man, and said unto

- him, "If thine eyes shall be opened, and thou shalt see [the  
 "light], wilt thou believe on our Lord Jesus Christ, Who  
 "was crucified?" And the blind man said unto him, "I  
 "will confess Him with a perfect faith." Then James said  
 unto him, "In the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, Who  
 "is God in truth, on Whom thou hast believed, let thine  
 A. fol. "eyes be opened, and thou shalt | see clearly and openly;"  
 112a. and this thing came to pass according to his word. And  
 col. 2. when the people who were gathered together came and  
 saw him, they glorified God. Now there were some of  
 them who believed, but some said, "[They are] sorcerers,"  
 and these went to the elders of the city and told them  
 what they had heard and seen. Then the magistrates  
 ordered them to bring the Apostles to them, and they  
 stood up in their midst. And one of the magistrates  
 B. fol. enquired of them, saying, "From | what country are ye?  
 225a. "Whence are ye come? And what do ye want?" And  
 col. 1. Peter answered and said, "We are the servants of the  
 "Good God Whose Name is Jesus." And it came to  
 pass that when the magistrates heard the Name of Jesus,  
 they rent their garments, and cried out with a loud voice,  
 saying, "O men who dwell in this city, guard ye these  
 A. fol. "men, for they are sorcerers of whom | we have heard  
 112b. "the report for many days past. For behold, there went  
 col. 1. "forth from Jerusalem twelve men who were the servants  
 "of the sorcerer whose name is Jesus, for thus they call  
 "His Name." [Page 250] Then the magistrates commanded  
 them to put cords round their necks and to drag them  
 through all the highways of the city; but when the guards  
 went to them and wished to place the ropes round their  
 necks, their hands dried up, and they remained [standing]

upon their feet. Then the magistrates were angry with | them, and they said unto them, "Why do ye not do "as we commanded you?" And the guards said unto them, "We have not the power to move, for behold, we "have become like unto stones." Then the magistrates said unto them, "Did we not tell you that they were "sorcerers?" And the Apostles said unto them, "We are "not sorcerers, but the servants of the Good God." Then the men | whose hands had dried up entreated the Apostles, saying, "O servants of God, have compassion "upon us." And the Apostles said unto them, "The Lord "our God hath commanded us not to reward evil for evil, "but good for evil;" then they drew nigh unto the men, and said unto them, "In the Name of our Lord Jesus "Christ, Whose servants we are and Whose Name we "preach, we command you to become sound and well, "even as ye were formerly." And in that same hour the guards rose up sound and well, and they bowed down before the Apostles, and were crying out and saying, "There is no god but Jesus Christ, the | God of these "chosen men."

B. fol.  
225a.  
col. 2.

A. fol.  
112b.  
col. 2.

B. fol.  
225b.  
col. 1.

And it came to pass that when the people saw what had happened, they were dismayed, and they repeated the words of the soldiers of the guard, saying, "One is "the God Whom these blessed men preach;" but the magistrates did not believe, for their hearts | were hard. Now there was among the magistrates a certain man [called Theophilus],<sup>1</sup> who had a son whose two feet were withered, and he was unable to walk. And the magistrate

A. fol.  
113a.  
col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> See LUSTIG, op. cit., vol. ii. part 2, p. 213.

- said in his heart, "I will bring my son [Page 251] unto  
 "them, and if they have the power to make my son  
 "whole I will believe in their God." So he commanded  
 one of his servants to bring his son unto them, and he  
 made haste, and brought him unto them, and set him down  
 in front of the Apostles. Then the Apostles rose up to-  
 gether, and stretched out their hands and prayed, saying,  
 "O Lord Jesus Christ, Who art the Resurrection of souls  
 B. fol. "and of bodies, | Thou Good Shepherd, Who bringest  
 225b. "back the souls which have been cast away wholly, I  
 col. 2. "beseech Thee, O Lord, Who art nigh unto him that  
 "callest upon Thee, to hear us Thy servants (inasmuch  
 "as Thou hast been graciously pleased not to separate  
 "Thyself from us), that Thy glory may be revealed this  
 A. fol. "day | in this city, and that [the people] may know that  
 113a. "Thou art God, and that there is no god besides Thee."  
 col. 2. And it came to pass that, when the Apostles had finished  
 their prayer, James said unto the young man who was help-  
 less, "In the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ the Nazarene,  
 "in Whose holy Name we preach, rise up [and become]  
 "like unto all [other] men." Thereupon the young man  
 hastened and rose up, having been made whole, and he  
 made haste and walked. And when the multitude saw  
 the wonderful things which the Apostles had wrought,  
 they cried out, saying, "One is the Lord God of these  
 "men." Then the magistrate, who was the father of the  
 young man, bowed down at the feet of the Apostles, and  
 B. fol. said unto them, "I entreat you to come unto my | habi-  
 226a. "tation that ye may eat food;" and he sent his son back  
 col. 1. to his wife sound and whole. Now when the mother of  
 the young man saw her son walking along the road she

cried out, saying, "One is the Lord God of these men  
 "Who hath made | whole my son;" and she wished the  
 Apostles [Page 252] to come into her habitation. And  
 she sent her son to his father and commanded him to  
 bring them with him, and the magistrate sent two of his  
 servants to make ready their abode, and thus it came to  
 pass even as he had desired.

A. fol.  
 113b.  
 col. 1.

And it came to pass that, when the Apostles had  
 entered into the abode of the magistrate, in that same  
 hour the gods which were in his house fell down and  
 were broken in pieces. Now when the judge and his  
 wife saw these wonderful things their faith was strength-  
 ened, and they brought many possessions unto the  
 Apostles, and said unto them, "Take ye these goods from  
 "us and give [them] unto the poor and needy;" and James  
 said, "Give [them] thyself with thine own hand;" and the  
 magistrate did as James had commanded him; and he  
 made ready a table for the Apostles, and they ate. | Now  
 the name of the magistrate was Theophilus, and he asked  
 the Apostles to baptize him, and his children, and his  
 wife, and when the Apostles saw the strength of his |  
 faith, they gave him the commandment of life, and they  
 baptized him, and his children and his wife, and all those  
 who were in his house, in the Name of the Father, and  
 of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. Now the number of  
 those who were baptized was thirty souls.

B. fol.  
 226a.  
 col. 2.

A. fol.  
 113b.  
 col. 2.

And after these things James said unto Peter, "Rise  
 "up, O my father Peter, and let us go forth from this  
 "city and journey round about in the other cities, and let  
 "us tell those who dwell therein the story of the Holy  
 "Gospel, and let us preach unto them, that peradventure

"they may hear and repent." Then the Apostles went out from that city unto an open space (*or* hall), where the magistrates were wont to gather together, and they began to teach the multitude the commandments of the Holy Spirit, and they taught the people concerning the Passion of our Lord, and His Resurrection and Ascension, and His second Coming to judge the living [Page 253] and the dead. | Then the people who heard their words, and also the remainder of the magistrates of the | city when they saw that their companions had believed, drew nigh and bowed down at the feet of the Apostles, and said unto them, "O ye chosen servants of God, we beseech "you to give unto us of that grace which ye have bestowed upon our companions." And when the story was proclaimed abroad that the magistrates of the city had believed through the preaching of the Apostles, all the people cried out with a loud voice, saying, "We beseech you, O disciples of Christ, to give us the grace of Christ, and to bestow upon us the signs of the belief which is in Him."

And it came to pass that when the Apostles saw the strength of their faith they said unto them, "Whosoever hath in him the true faith let him follow us." Then the Apostles walked on in front of the people until they came to a great stream (*or* watercourse) which was in the city, and they offered up a prayer; and after the prayer they gave them the gracious gift of faith, and baptized them in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. And when the people had | received baptism they rejoiced | with great joy and were exceedingly glad, and straightway the Apostles commanded them

B. fol.  
226b.  
col. 1.  
A. fol.  
114a.  
col. 1.

A. fol.  
114a.  
col. 2.  
B. fol.  
226b.  
col. 2.

to build a church. And the Apostles dwelt with them until their faith had become strong, and they appointed priests over them, and administered unto them the Holy Mysteries. Then James read unto them the Book of the Law and the Book of the Prophets, and Peter translated them for them into the language which they knew; and they dwelt with them many days, that is to say, until their faith had become strong, and they appointed a bishop over them [and priests and deacons], and they became ministers of the church. And James and Peter went forth from them ascribing praise unto the God Who is One, and Who is a Trinity of Three [Persons], to Whom praise, and thanksgiving, and honour are meet for ever and ever. Amen, Amen, and Amen.

## THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT JAMES.

A. fol. [Page 254] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE  
114b. SON, AND OF THE HOLY SPIRIT, ONE GOD.  
col. 1.

B. fol. Here beginneth the Martyrdom of James the son of Zebedee, the  
227a. Apostle of our Lord Jesus Christ. Now his martyrdom was finished  
col. 1. on the seventeenth day of the month Mipâzpa.<sup>1</sup> In the peace of God.  
Amen.

And it came to pass that when James, the son of Zebedee, had gone forth unto the Twelve Tribes which were scattered abroad, he preached unto them in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, Who is God in truth. Now all these tribes did not worship the One God, but belonging unto every tribe were idols which they had chosen for themselves as gods, and each tribe had graven images of false gods which led them into error. And these tribes were under the dominion of Herod, and they were wont to render service unto him such as he found [it needful to demand], and the possessions which they brought to him as tribute were so many, that at length his rank was magnified and his kingdom became exceedingly great. Now when James came unto them he

<sup>1</sup> I. e., April 12.

preached unto the people of each tribe | in the tongue of their native land, for | our Lord had given unto the Apostle the knowledge of every tongue, and by the help of the Holy Spirit the Apostle [James] understood the languages not only of men, but also those of the beasts, and of the animals of the wilderness, and of the birds of heaven when they conversed in their own speech. And James preached among them and admonished them to forsake their evil works, and to believe in the Living God, and in His Only Son Jesus Christ, and in the Holy and Vivifying Spirit, Who giveth life unto all created beings, and in Whose hands are the spirits of them all, and Who judgeth both the living and [Page 255] the dead. And he said unto them, "Give not all your possessions unto the kings of the earth, but give [some of them] unto the poor and needy for the salvation of your souls;" and in that same hour the gracious gift of the Holy Spirit dwelt in them, and the fear of God entered into their hearts.

A. fol.  
114b.  
col. 2.  
B. fol.  
227a.  
col. 2.

And the story of the Gospel was preached in all their countries, | and at the word of James the Apostle the people believed in God, and their faith was strengthened in our Lord | Jesus Christ, the King of heaven and of earth, Who rejecteth not those who seek Him and who turn unto Him with a right mind. Then they cast aside all those idols which they had worshipped, and their evil deeds which they were wont to do, and they turned unto God with a true mind, and received the words which James had declared unto them. And James loved them exceedingly because they had hastened to receive his preaching, and because they had forsaken the evil deeds

A. fol.  
115a.  
col. 1.  
B. fol.  
227b.  
col. 1.

which they had done in their error. Then James the Apostle made haste and built churches for them in all their countries; and when he saw the beauty of their faith he baptized them in the Name of the Holy Trinity, Father, Son, and Holy Spirit; and they rejoiced and were glad together. And he gave unto them the commandments of the Gospel and of the Law of | faith, and he said unto them, "Hearken, O ye my blessed children, "who have turned from error unto the knowledge of righteousness, who have chosen [as your God] God Almighty, "Who hath made you worthy to receive His Body and "Blood, | behold, I give unto you the righteousness of God "which God hath entrusted to me, and He hath commanded me to give it unto all the peoples who will receive it "with joy, so that at His second Coming they may be "prepared for the Garden (i. e., Paradise) of God, which "He hath made ready for you and for each tribe of the "Church [Page 256]. I beseech you, O each tribe, to give "of your income unto the church, of the firstfruits of your "crops, and of your vineyards, and of your fields, and of "your cattle, so that through God they may become the "food of the poor and needy among you." And the people answered and said unto him, "We wish to do "whatsoever thou commandest us to do, for we believe "on the Name of the Lord thy God | with all our hearts, "both those who are the greatest among us and those "who are the least;" and each tribe brought of the firstfruits of their riches unto the church.

And it came to pass that when Herod heard of everything which James had done he marvelled, both as concerning the faith of the people and their offerings unto

the church, and he knew that there had come unto them  
 a disciple of Jesus Christ who had commanded them not  
 | to pay tribute unto the kings of the earth, and to serve  
 neither Nero the Emperor nor the Imperial governor  
 Herod, but to give their gifts unto our Lord Jesus Christ  
 the King of heaven and of earth. And when the king  
 heard these things he commanded [his soldiers] to bring  
 James the Apostle unto him.

B. fol.  
 228a.  
 col. 1.

And when Herod saw him, he said unto him, "Of  
 "what race art thou? and in Whom dost thou believe,  
 "O man?" Then the blessed Apostle answered and said  
 unto him, "I believe in the Lord God of the Christians,  
 "Jesus Christ, the Son of | the Living God, Who is the  
 "God of all who are in the heavens and of all who are  
 "on the earth, and in Whose hands are their souls, and  
 "Who hath sovereign dominion over your kingdoms, O  
 "thou Herod and thou Emperor Nero." And when Herod  
 | heard these words he was exceedingly wroth with James  
 the Apostle, and he said unto him, "I will not wait for  
 "thee to utter a word against me a second time;" and the  
 Emperor Nero and Herod heard concerning James the  
 Apostle, and how [Page 257] he spake words of con-  
 tempt against their kingdom, and blasphemed their gods,  
 and a certain man rose up quickly and smote Saint James  
 with a sword and cut off his head;<sup>1</sup> and in that same  
 hour his spirit departed. Thus James the son of Zebedee  
 finished his martyrdom on the seventeenth day of the  
 month Miyâzyâ;<sup>2</sup> and they buried him in Kôt<sup>3</sup> of Mâm-

A. fol.  
 115b.  
 col. 2.

B. fol.  
 228a.  
 col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> Compare *Acts of the Apostles*, xii. 2.

<sup>2</sup> I. e., April 12.

<sup>3</sup> B reads **𐌲𐌹𐌲𐌰**: "in Baſkê."

řěkê.<sup>1</sup> May his prayer and blessing preserve all of us children of baptism for ever and ever! Amen, and Amen.

Glory be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost, now and for ever and ever. Amen, Amen, and Amen.

---

<sup>1</sup> There seems to be no doubt that James was beheaded and buried either in or near Jerusalem, but the various texts differ in the spelling of the name of his place of burial. Thus his grave is said to have been at "Caesarea, a town in Marmarica," or Ἀκὴ τῆς Μαρμαρικῆς, or Akar in Marmarika; according to LIPSIVS (op. cit., vol. 1. p. 211) the correct reading is *in arce Marmarica*.

## THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT MARK THE EVANGELIST<sup>1</sup> IN ALEXANDRIA.

IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE SON, AND  
OF THE HOLY SPIRIT, ONE GOD.

A. fol.  
116a.  
col. 1.  
B. fol.  
228b.  
col. 1.

Here beginneth the Martyrdom of Mark, the Evangelist of Alexandria. May his prayer preserve us all! Amen. Now the end of his martyrdom took place in the thirtieth year after the suffering of our Lord and Redeemer Jesus Christ. In the peace of God. Amen.

And it came to pass that, when the countries of the world were divided [among the Apostles], the lot came to Saint Mark to go unto the countries of Egypt, and the Evangelist, by the good pleasure of God, dwelt therein for the stablishing of the Church in peace. Now he was the first who preached in all the cities of the Land of Egypt, and in Lonyâ (Libya), and in Markiyâ (Marmarika),<sup>2</sup> and he preached the Gospel unto the people therein, | and declared unto them the faith of Jesus Christ, the Redeemer. And the people of all those

A. fol.  
116a.  
col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> See LAPSIUS, op. cit., vol. II. part 2, p. 332 ff.

<sup>2</sup> He is said to have preached also in the Oasis of Jupiter Ammon, and in Pentapolis; he was a native of Cyrene of Pentapolis, and there he first went.

B. fol. 228b. col. 2. countries were hard (*or* dense) of heart, and they used to worship with impurity the gods which could be felt with the hands in the dominion | of Satan, and in every place, and in every highway, they built [Page 258] temples, and houses of gods, and images of magicians and adulterers; and they used to slay children and work magic by means of their blood.

A. fol. 116b. col. 1. And it came to pass that when Mark left the Apostles he set out and came unto the Bâlķâ, for his kinsmen belonged unto that tribe; and he preached unto them the knowledge of God, and he wrought in their midst miracles and wonderful deeds in abundance, for | he healed the sick and he cleansed the lepers, and by means of the gracious gift which descended upon him he cast out multitudes of unclean spirits. Then many believed in our Lord Jesus Christ through him, and they broke their gods in pieces, and were baptized in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. Now [when he was] in that place the Holy Spirit revealed unto them that he should go forth unto the city of Alexandria, unto the Taķwâm<sup>1</sup>, and that the good seed, which is the word of God, should be sown therein.

B. fol. 229a. col. 1. Now the blessed Mark the Evangelist was like | unto a young man who was ready to be slain, and he embraced the brethren, and said unto them, "Our Lord hath commanded me, and Jesus Christ hath told me to go unto "the city of Alexandria, and to preach the Gospel in that "place." And the brethren sent him off on his journey,

<sup>1</sup> This word means a "support", "candlestick", &c.; the famous Pharos of Alexandria may be referred to.

and he embarked on a ship and went unto the city of Alexandria.

| And it came to pass that when he had arrived at Alexandria, and had entered into the gate of the city, the latchet of his sandal broke, and he said, "Truly it hath sped my way;" and he looked out for a leather dresser that he might sit down [in his shop], and he gave him his sandals to mend. And the leather dresser pierced his left hand with the awl, and he cast aside the tool and the sandals and grasped his hand and said, "In the Name of God, the One God." And it came to pass that when the blessed Mark heard the man say "One God" he smiled, and he looked towards the east [Page 259], and said, "O Master, Jesus Christ, prosper Thou my way." Then he turned his face unto the leather dresser, and said unto him, "If thou knowest that | God is One, "why dost thou serve these many gods?" And the leather dresser said unto him, "We say [In] the Name of God' "with our mouth, but we do not know who the One God "is." Then Saint Mark put a little spittle on his fingers, and took a little dust, | and anointed the [left hand of the] leather dresser therewith, and said, "In the Name of "Jesus Christ, the Son of the Living God, let thy hand "be healed;" and because of these words it became whole forthwith. Now when the leather dresser had seen the wonderful and mighty deed which the Apostle had wrought by his word, he said unto him, "I entreat thee, "O servant of the Good God, to come and rest this day "in the house of thy servant; and let us eat together, "for thou hast dealt graciously with thy servant." And the blessed Mark rejoiced, and said unto him, "May God

A. fol.  
116b.  
col. 2.

B. fol.  
229a.  
col. 2.

A. fol.  
117a.  
col. 1.

"give unto thee the heavenly bread of life;" then the leather dresser took the Apostle and brought him into his abode with rejoicing.

And it came to pass that when the Apostle had entered into the house he said unto the man, "May the blessing  
 B. fol. "of | God be in this house;" then the brethren prayed,  
 229b. and after the prayer they sat down, and ate, and rejoiced.  
 col. 1. And the leather dresser said unto the blessed Mark, "I  
 A. fol. "entreat thee [to tell me], O good father, Who<sup>1</sup> is this  
 117a. "Being of Whom thou speakest, and what is His Name?"  
 col. 2. Then Saint Mark spake unto him, saying, "I am the  
 "servant of Jesus Christ, the Son of the Living God."  
 And the leather dresser said unto him, "I wish to see  
 "Him," and the holy man said unto him, "I will shew  
 "[Him] unto you." And Saint Mark began to recite the  
 beginning of the Gospel, saying, "The Gospel of our Lord  
 "Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Son of David, the  
 "Son of Abraham;"<sup>1</sup> and he told him about the prophecies  
 which the prophets had prophesied concerning Him  
 [Page 260] in the Scriptures. And the leather dresser  
 said unto him, "I beseech thee [to give me] this book  
 "concerning which thou speakest, for I have not heard  
 "[it read] at any time, and I only know that the children  
 "of the Egyptians are instructed therein." Then Saint  
 B. fol. Mark began to converse with him concerning the word  
 229b. of God, saying, | "The wisdom of the world is that which  
 col. 2. "is with the word of God."<sup>2</sup> And the leather dresser  
 A. fol. "believed in God when he heard the words of | Saint  
 117b. col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> St. Matthew i. 1.

<sup>2</sup> The meaning must be, "the wisdom of this world is foolishness in the sight of God;" compare 1 Corinthians iii. 19.

Mark, and as soon as he knew him and had seen the mighty and wonderful deeds [which he wrought], he, and all his house, and many of the people of the city, were baptized. Now the name of the leather dresser was Anianus.

And when the believers in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ had increased in number, and the men of the city heard that a Galilean had come thereunto, and that he had changed the offerings unto the gods, and had diminished the worship which was offered unto them, they sought him that they might kill him, and they multiplied their search for him that they might overthrow him. Now when the blessed Mark had learned their plans he appointed Anianus to be [their] bishop, and three priests whose names are Malyôs, Kôrdônôs, and Barîmôs,<sup>1</sup> together with seven deacons, and fourteen men for the service of the church. And Mark | departed unto [the city of] Barġâ<sup>2</sup> and dwelt there for some years, and he appointed bishops and priests in all the districts thereof; then he returned to Alexandria and multiplied | grace therein. And [the people thereof] believed in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, and they built a church in the spot which is called the "Field of the Ox (*or* Bull),"<sup>3</sup> in a place above the sea shore, in a large [open] place in a stone quarry beneath the rocks. And the righteous man praised God because of the beauty of His faith.

B. fol.  
230a.  
col. 1.

A. fol.  
117b.  
col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> Milios, Sabinos, and Kerdon; see LIPSIVS, *op. cit.*, vol. ii. part 2, p. 333.

<sup>2</sup> Pentapolis.

<sup>3</sup> The square called "Bukolos" (see LIPSIVS, *ibid.*); the Bull of Serapis is probably referred to here.


And it came to pass that, when many days were ended, and the Christians [Page 261] had multiplied, and the people treated the gods of the heathen with contempt, and the Gentiles knew that Saint Mark had come unto the city, their hearts were filled with wrath by reason of the many wonderful things which they heard he had wrought (for he healed the sick, and cleansed the lepers, and made the deaf to | hear, and the blind received their sight, and he preached unto them the Gospel of good hope) and they sought to lay hold upon him.

B. fol.  
230a.  
col. 2.

And they gnashed their teeth upon him in their | assemblies and in their temples, and they cried out therein, saying, "We will overcome this sorcerer." And when the feast of the blessed Passover had come (now the Sabbath whereon the believers kept the festival that year fell on the seventeenth day of the month Miŷazyâ,<sup>1</sup> and the festival of the birthday of Serapis<sup>2</sup> took place on the selfsame day), the heathen found that day to be favourable [for their plan], and they sent men unto him to seize him as he was finishing the prayer of consecration, and they bound him with cords and dragged him into the road, saying, "We will drag the bull into "the Field of the Ox (*or* Bull.)" Now whilst they were dragging Saint Mark along he was giving thanks unto God, and saying, "I thank Thee, O my Lord and God "Jesus Christ, that | Thou hast made me worthy to suffer "for Thy holy Name's sake;" and the flesh of his body

B. fol.  
230b.  
col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> I. e., Easter Sunday fell on April 12.

<sup>2</sup> Serapis = the Egyptian  *Āsār Hāp*, i. e., Osiris-Apis, a name given to Apis, the sacred bull of Memphis, which was regarded as the incarnation of Osiris.

was torn to pieces by the ground, and his blood be-  
 smeared the stones of the streets. And when it | was  
 night they cast him into prison, until they could take  
 counsel together how to kill him.

A. fol.  
 118a.  
 col. 2.

And it came to pass that at midnight, when the  
 doors [of the prison] were shut fast and the guards were  
 asleep, a great earthquake took place, and the angel of  
 the Lord came down from heaven and touched the body  
 of Saint Mark. And the angel said unto Mark, "Thou  
 "art the servant of God, [Page 262] and the master who  
 "dost give consolation unto all the countries of Egypt.  
 "Behold, thy name is written in the Book of Life in the  
 "heavens, and thou art numbered among the number of  
 "the Apostles; and men shall not forget the commemora-  
 "tion of thee, for behold, God hath given thee upon the  
 "earth dominion, and grace, and power which cannot be  
 "reckoned, and thy soul is in heaven, and thy body shall  
 "not perish in the earth." And when Saint Mark had  
 seen this vision he lifted up his hands to heaven, | and  
 said, "I thank Thee, O my Lord Jesus Christ, that Thou  
 "hast not | cast me away from before Thy face, and hast  
 "placed me in the assembly of Thy saints. I beseech  
 "Thee, O my Lord Jesus Christ, to receive my soul in  
 "peace, and let not Thy grace forsake me." And when  
 he had said these words, our Lord appeared unto him in  
 the form in which He was when He was among the  
 Apostles, before His life-giving Passion and before they  
 had placed Him in the grave, and He said unto him,  
 "My peace be with thee, O thou Mark, My chosen one,  
 "who preachest My Gospel! Behold, I have appeared  
 "unto thee in the form in which I was with thy brethren

B. fol.  
 230b.  
 col. 2.  
 A. fol.  
 118b.  
 col. 1.

"the Apostles, before [My Passion], when I was not at  
 "any time separated from them." And the saint said,  
 "I give thanks unto Thee, O my Lord Jesus Christ, for  
 "Thy great act of grace, in that Thou hast held me to  
 "be worthy to see Thee as Thou wast in Thy flesh, and

B. fol. "because [Thou] hast given me | patience [to endure]  
 231a. "suffering for Thy holy Name's sake;" and our Lord  
 col. 1. gave him the salutation of peace and went up into heaven  
 with great glory.

A. fol. And when the morrow had come, | the men of the  
 118b. city gathered together and brought Mark out from the  
 col. 2. prison-house, and they bound him with cords, and dragged  
 him through the city, saying, "Let us again drag the  
 "bull into the Field of the Ox (*or* Bull);" and the blessed  
 Mark was sending thanksgivings into the heights of heaven.  
 And after [Page 263] they had made an end of dragging  
 him about, all the city was filled with his blood, and all  
 the highways of the city were full thereof, and the  
 borders round about it were full of his precious blood;  
 and he said, "O my Lord Jesus Christ, into Thy hands  
 "I commit my spirit," and having said these words he  
 died. Now when all the heathen saw that Saint Mark  
 was dead, they kindled a great fire in the place which is

B. fol. called 'Awbâkalyôn,' | that they might burn up his body  
 231a. there. Then by the good pleasure of our Lord Jesus  
 col. 2. Christ, darkness came on, and a cold wind [blew], and

A. fol. the sun hid his light, and there were lightnings and  
 119a. thunders, and rain, and | hail, until the evening of that  
 col. 1.

---

<sup>1</sup> Gr., εἰς τοὺς καλουμένους Ἀγγέλους: Latin, *in loco qui vocatur ad angelos*; see LIPSIVS, *ibid.*, p. 334.

day; and a great number of the noblemen of the city fell down headlong, and many of them died. Then straightway the people of the city became afraid, and they went and laid the body of the holy man [on the fire], and some of them who had mocked him said, "The "great Serapis hath received the soul of this man this "day, which is the birth-day of the god." And certain believing men came and took the body of the saint from the fire, and they bore it unto a place wherein they used to make their prayers, and they made supplications over him and thanksgivings, and they buried him according to the custom of the people of the city, and they laid him in a place which they had chosen for him. And they celebrated the commemoration of him frequently with gladness, and with prayers, | and with sanctifications, as a great storehouse [of good things] which they had found in him. Now they laid him [in a grave] to the east of the city. Thus Saint Mark the Evangelist was the first of the martyrs who died and shed their blood in the country of Egypt, in the Name of our Lord and God Jesus Christ, in the great city of Alexandria. And he ended | his martyrdom on the thirtieth day of the month Miyâzyâ,<sup>1</sup> [Page 264] that is to say, on the twenty-seventh<sup>2</sup> day of the Hebrew month Nêsân (Nisan), in the reign of the Emperor Tiberius. Thus Saint Mark<sup>3</sup> finished

B. fol.  
231b.  
col. 1.

A. fol.  
110a.  
col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> I. e., April 25.

<sup>2</sup> LIESIUS (ibid. p. 335) gives Nisan 17.

<sup>3</sup> The description of the personal appearance of the Evangelist quoted by LIESIUS (ibid. p. 335) is of considerable interest: — ἦν δὲ τῇ ἰδέᾳ ὁ μακάριος Μάρκος μακρόρυχος, συνοφρύς, εὐόμματος, ἀναφάλαντος, σιτόχροος, δασυπύγων, ὀξύς, εὐεκτικός, μεσήλιξ, πολίτης, τὴν σχέσιν ἀσκητικός, πεπληρωμένος χάριτος θεοῦ.

his contending, and fulfilled his testimony, and he is [now] in the heights of heaven, together with the righteous, praising the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Spirit. May his prayer and blessing protect us for ever and ever! Amen, Amen, and Amen.

---

## THE PREACHING OF SAINT THOMAS IN INDIA.<sup>1</sup>

[Page 265] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE SON, AND OF THE HOLY SPIRIT [ONE GOD].

B. fol.  
231b.  
col. 2.

Here beginneth the Book of the Preaching of Saint Thomas, the Apostle of our Lord Jesus Christ, which he preached in the country of India. In the peace of our Lord. Amen.

And it came to pass that, after the Resurrection of our Lord Jesus Christ from the dead, He appeared unto His holy disciples, and said unto them, "The peace of My Father | be with you. What He gave Me I have "not hidden from you; gather yourselves together, and "divide ye the world into twelve portions, and let each "one of you go unto his portion. And fear ye not, for "I will be with you, and I know everything which shall "come upon you, both the suffering and the tribulation "which ye shall endure from men in this world; but bear "ye patiently with them, for at length ye shall bring them "back from error into faith in My Name. And re- "member ye the sufferings which came upon | Me, and

A. fol.  
119b.  
col. 1.

B. fol.  
232a.  
col. 1

---

<sup>1</sup> See LIPSIVS, *Apostelgeschichten*, vol. I. p. 249 ff.

"everything which they did unto Me for the sake of the  
"children of men."

Now the lot went forth to Thomas to go unto the  
country of India. And he bowed down before the Lord,  
and said unto Him, "Why hath the lot gone forth that  
"I should go unto the country of India? The people  
"thereof are as strong as wild beasts, and their hearts  
"are too hard to hear the Word of the Gospel; but be  
A. fol. "Thou | with me, O my Lord, [until I arrive] in that  
119b. "country." And our Lord said unto him, "Behold, Peter  
col. 2. "will guide thee, and he will go forth with thee unto that  
"country." [Page 266] Then all the Apostles made ready  
to go forth, each one of them unto the country which  
had fallen to him by lot, and Peter was going forth unto  
the city of Rome and the regions round about it, and  
Matthias unto the country of Persia. And Thomas said  
unto Peter, "O my father, rise up and go with me and  
B. fol. "my brother Matthias until | thou hast brought us unto  
232a. "our countries;" and Peter said unto him, "I consent,"  
col. 2. and he went forth with them; and our Lord went up from  
them into heaven with great glory.

And it came to pass that after they had journeyed  
for forty days, they came unto a city which was half  
way [on the road] to the parts [of the world] wherein  
Thomas and Matthias had been ordained by lot [to  
preach the Gospel]; now as they were entering into the  
city they sat | down in the highroad to the city like  
A. fol. travellers. And our Lord Jesus Christ appeared into  
120a. them in the guise of a learned man, and He said unto  
col. 1. them, "Peace be upon you, O brethren;" and they said  
unto Him, "And upon Thee also be peace;" and He sat

down to the right of them at no great distance from them. Then Thomas said unto Peter, "O my father, let us enter into this city and preach therein in the Name of God, for it is the first city unto which we have come; peradventure we shall be able to save the people and bring them back unto the rule of | God. For God said, "Whosoever shall preach in a great city and shall save many men shall have great reward in the kingdom of heaven." Now whilst they were sitting down there came unto them a certain officer | of king *Ḳanṭûḱôrôs*<sup>1</sup> (Gundaforus), king of India. And he looked at the Apostles as they were seated like travellers, and he said unto them, "Whence are ye, O brethren?" And they said unto him, "Ask what ye desire;" and he said unto them, "It is not evil but good [that I desire]. Now, I see that [Page 267] ye are men of exceedingly fine stature, and I am wanting to buy a slave who shall be like unto you." And Peter said unto him, "We are three servants of One God, Whose Name is Jesus Christ, Who is coming unto this city; and when He hath come He will sell unto you whichever one of us thou desirest; for our country is good, and all those who dwell in the districts thereof are of fine stature." Now our Lord Himself was listening unto what they were | saying among themselves, and in that same hour our Lord appeared unto them, and held converse with them in a language which | they understood, and said unto them, "Peace be unto you,

B. fol.  
232b.  
col. 1.

A. fol.  
120a.  
col. 2.

B. fol.  
232b.  
col. 2.  
A. fol.  
120b.  
col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> The old Persian form of the name is *Vīdāfra*, in Greek Ὑνδοφέρης and Γουνδαφόρος. Gundaforus is, undoubtedly, the king of Parthian descent who reigned over Areia, Drangiana, and Arachosia, in the first century of our era; see LIPSIVS, op. cit., vol. I. p. 279.

"O noble Peter and Thomas, ye believing ones, and thou  
 "wise and meek Matthias! Behold, I know you, for I am  
 "never separated from you, but am with you always.  
 "Behold, I have come, even as I told you, and I will go  
 "before you into every place whithersoever ye shall go."  
 And it came to pass that, although the officer of the  
 king of India was close by them, he did not under-  
 stand the language wherein our Lord was conversing  
 with them.

A. fol.  
 120b.  
 col. 2.  
 B. fol.  
 233a.  
 col. 1.

Then afterwards our Lord appeared unto the Apostles  
 in the form of a rich man, and He sat down in a place  
 in the midst of the city. Then the Apostles said unto  
 the man who was the servant of the king, "Behold our  
 "Lord concerning Whose coming we informed thee; look  
 "and see which one of us thou desirest, and He will sell  
 "him to thee." And the royal officer said unto our Lord,  
 "Peace be unto Thee, O good Man! The rumour of Thee  
 "and Thine | appearance | betoken Thee to be a man of  
 "noble rank; art Thou willing to sell me one of these  
 "men?" And our Lord said unto him, "[Tell Me] which  
 "of these two I am to sell unto thee. Now this one, the  
 "eldest, was born in a great country, and I cannot sell  
 "him." [Page 268] Then the man looked at Thomas and  
 liked him, for he was a man whose body was strong and  
 full of power, and he said unto our Lord, "Sell me this slave  
 "of thine." And our Lord said unto him, "His price is  
 "[three] *artâḥ*<sup>1</sup> of gold;" and the man said unto Him,  
 "Behold, I have bought him from Thee;" and he gave

<sup>1</sup> In Arabic *أَرْطَال* (sing. *رَطْل*) The *roll* = 144 dirhams = .90 lb.  
 = 450 grammes = .79 pint.

Him his price. Then he said unto our Lord, "Write me  
 "a bill of his price, according to the custom of the  
 "country." And our Lord said unto him, "Do not seek  
 "for a man to write the bill for thee, for I will myself  
 "write it with My own hands, and it shall be declared | A. fol.  
 "therein for thee that this servant, who was Mine, I have 121a.  
 "sold unto thee 'Arbāsōs,<sup>1</sup> an officer of ῥόντορος (Gunda- col. 1.  
 "forus), the king of India." And He finished the writing  
 as the officer desired, and then went up from them into  
 heaven with great | glory.

And after this our Lord appeared unto Thomas, and  
 said unto him, "Take the price of thy sale and distribute  
 "it among the poor, and the needy, and the widows, and  
 "the orphans, in the place whither thou art going, for I sold  
 "thee for three *artāl* of gold because thou art the servant  
 "of the Holy Trinity of the Father, and the Son, and the  
 "Holy Ghost." And Thomas answered and said unto  
 Him, "Let Thy grace be with me;" and when our Lord  
 had spoken these words unto Thomas, He departed from  
 him. Then Thomas girded up his loins after the manner  
 of a slave, and he came unto Peter and Matthias, and  
 said unto them, "Remember me in your prayers;" and  
 they embraced each other in | a spiritual embrace, for A. fol.  
 this was the last of their meetings in this world, and each 121a.  
 and all gave thanks together, and in peace, with a spirit- col. 2.  
 ual embrace, they parted. And Thomas went with his  
 lord, and Peter and Matthias went on their way.

Then the royal servant enquired of Thomas con-  
 cerning his handicraft, and Thomas said unto him, "I

<sup>1</sup> A corruption of the name Ἀρβάνης, in Arabic كَبَّان  
 X\*

- B. fol. "am a stone-mason, and a carpenter, and a physician |  
 233b. "[Page 269]. As a carpenter I am skilled in making  
 col. 1. "measures, and balances, and mattocks, and hoes, and  
 "spades for digging up from the ground thorns, and  
 "whatever else men may wish to dig up therefrom. As  
 "a stone-mason I am skilled in building temples, and  
 "fortresses, and lofty towers which are excellent for kings;  
 "and as a physician I can heal the wounds which work  
 "decay in the flesh." Now when the officer heard these  
 words from Thomas he rejoiced and said, "Right and  
 A. fol. "good; the king seeketh a man of this kind;" | and after  
 121b. many days they came unto the country of India. Then  
 col. 2. the officer entered into the king's presence and told him  
 concerning Thomas, and he shewed him the writing which  
 [his Master] had written for him with His own hand; and  
 when the king saw Thomas he marvelled. Then the  
 officer told the king all the handicrafts wherein Thomas  
 was skilled, and he rejoiced because of this exceedingly,  
 and said unto him, "Take this man and bring him to  
 "Lûkiyânôs (Vecius) the governor, and let him give him  
 "the materials which he requireth, so that he may build  
 B. fol. "a great palace for me;" | so the officer went to the  
 233b. governor and told him everything which the king had  
 col. 2. commanded him, and Lûkiyânôs (Vecius) gave unto  
 Thomas everything which he desired.

Now after these things Lûkiyôs (Vecius) departed to  
 the city of the king, [but before he went] he commanded  
 his wife 'Arsônwâ (Arsenia), and said unto her, "Let not  
 "this man who hath come unto us in these [last] days<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., "recently."

"do work like the [other] slaves,<sup>1</sup> but let him work at his  
 "handicraft until I come back from the presence of the  
 "king." And after Lûkîyôs had departed | Thomas came A. fol.  
 to 'Arsônwâ (Arsenia) the wife of the governor, and read 121b.  
 to her the Gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ and the col. 2.  
 prophecies of the Prophets. And he said unto her, "I  
 "see that thou art in great darkness and art serving these  
 "gods of gold and silver, and thou sayest that they are  
 "gods, but they are not gods. What thou doest with  
 "them profiteth thee nothing [Page 270] whatsoever, for  
 "they can neither speak nor hear, | nor see, and if the B. fol.  
 "earth were to be shaken they would have no power to 234a.  
 "help themselves,<sup>2</sup> but would fall down and break in pieces. col. 1.  
 "I beseech thee to bring me unto the temple wherein ye  
 "bow down before them that I may see their strength;"<sup>3</sup>  
 so the woman [went] to shew Thomas her gods. And  
 when Thomas saw them he lifted up his eyes to heaven  
 and prayed, saying, "O God, the Sustainer of the universe,  
 "the Father of our Lord Jesus | Christ, Thy Son and Thy A. fol.  
 "beloved One, and [of] the Holy Spirit, Whom when they 122a.  
 "hear all the devils tremble, Thou art the Good Shepherd, col. 1.  
 "Thou art the good Lamb, Thou art the true Light  
 "which shineth in our hearts, Thou art He Whose Name  
 "all creation feareth, Thou art He Who did send me  
 "into this city that I might bring back unto Thee those  
 "who dwell therein, Thou art the Creator of all the races  
 "of the children of men, and all created things are subject  
 "unto Thee. When Thou lookest upon the earth it

<sup>1</sup> I. e., do the same kind of work as the other servants.

<sup>2</sup> Literally, "to strengthen themselves."

<sup>3</sup> See LIPSIVS, *Apostelgeschichten*, vol. 1. p. 274.

B. fol. "trembleth; | and the sea, and all that therein is, and all  
 234a. "the creatures thereof, and all the waves thereof are silent  
 col. 2. "when they hear Thy voice; and vipers and all reptiles  
 "bow low before Thee, because Thou art He Who judgeth  
 "them. Yea, O my Lord and God, Jesus Christ, make  
 "manifest through me wonders and marvellous signs in  
 "this city, so that [the people thereof] may praise Thee;  
 "for unto Thee belong glory and thanksgiving for ever  
 "and ever. | Amen."

A. fol. Now as the Apostle was praying thus the house  
 122a. wherein were all the gods trembled, and all the gods  
 col. 2. who were resting upon their stands fell down upon their  
 faces on the earth, and the devils that dwelt in them  
 cried out, [Page 271] saying, "Woe unto us! Woe unto  
 "us! For behold, our power is destroyed, and our shame  
 "is multiplied; and henceforward there shall be no God  
 "except Jesus Christ, the Son of the Living God." And  
 when 'Arsônva (Arsenia) had seen what had befallen  
 the gods she feared exceedingly, and she fell upon the  
 B. fol. earth before (*literally*, between) the hands of Saint |  
 234b. Thomas, and he stretched out his hands and raised her  
 col. 1. up. Then she took hold of him, and made supplication  
 unto him, and said unto him, "O servant of the Good  
 "God, who hast come into my house, art thou, O man,  
 "a slave, or a god? And what is this Name of Jesus  
 "whereon thou didst call? For when thou didst make  
 A. fol. "mention of His Name the house | shook, and all the  
 122b. "gods wherein I was putting my hope fell down upon  
 col. 1. "their faces on the ground, and they became like wind.  
 "Hide not thou from me this power which is with thee,  
 "O servant of the Good God, for behold, from this hour

"I will put away the dominion of false gods from me,  
 "and I will go up in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus  
 "Christ, the Son of God, and I will believe in thy God."  
 Then Thomas, the blessed Apostle, answered and said  
 unto her, "O 'Arsônwà (Arsenia), if thou believest with  
 "all thy heart, forsake this fleeting world which quickly  
 "passeth away, and know thou that thy glorying in gold  
 "and in silver, and in beautiful apparel which perisheth,  
 "and which the moth | consumeth, and in the perishable  
 "beauty of the flesh, and in everything in which man glorieth  
 "in this world, quickly cometh to an end. For when a  
 "man looketh upon one after the beauty [hath passed  
 "away], he seeth that the appearance and the face are  
 "miserable, and that the eyes have become blind, and that  
 "the tongue speaketh | not. And where shall man be  
 "then? For he goeth unto his everlasting home. Seek  
 "[Page 272] God, O 'Arsônwà, and thou shalt find Him;  
 "and be not remote from those who seek Him with all  
 "their hearts. Concerning God the prophet saith, 'I am  
 "'the Living God, and I cling close to thee like the  
 "'garment which thou dost put on.' And again he saith,  
 "'Repent, O ye children of Israel, for I am a God Who  
 "'desireth not the death of a sinner, and I desire that he  
 "'will return and save his soul alive.'<sup>1</sup> And again he saith,  
 "'Turn ye unto Me, O ye children who have transgressed  
 "'against Me; return, and ye shall find Me, for he who  
 "'seeketh after God shall find | Him, and unto him that  
 "'callest upon Him He hearkeneth.'"<sup>2</sup>

B. fol.  
 234b.  
 col. 2.

A. fol.  
 122b.  
 col. 2.

B. fol.  
 235a.  
 col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> Ezekiel xviii. 32; xxxiii. 11.

<sup>2</sup> Compare Jeremiah iii. 22; St. Matthew vii. 7.

And it came to pass that when 'Arsônwā, the wife of the governor, had hearkened unto him, her heart was turned unto the fear of God, and He opened the eyes of her heart; and all those who were in her house believed | in God, and many of the men of the city also believed in Him. Then she went into her habitation, and threw off her beautiful apparel, and bowed down upon her face, and sprinkled ashes about (*literally*, under) her; and made supplication, and gave thanks unto God, saying, "I believe in Thee, O my Lord Jesus Christ, Thou God of this "stranger who hath come into my house, and hath become "my guide into the path of life. I beseech Thee, O "my Lord, Thou merciful One, Whom I have only learned "to know this day (and yet, behold, Thou hast held me "worthy of the knowledge of Thee, O my Lord Jesus "Christ, the Son of the Living God), to forgive me all the "sins which I have in times past committed, and the error "wherein I have | dwelt until this day under the dominion "of impure gods. And behold now, I have turned unto "Thee, O my Lord Jesus Christ, Thou art my Light and "my Deliverer, [Page 273] Thou art my | Hope and my "Strength, Thou art my hiding-place, and in Thee have "I put my trust." And it came to pass that when she had finished her prayer she went out to the Apostle, having her face covered [*literally*, filled] with ashes, and she said unto Thomas, "O servant of the Good God, rise "up and baptize me in the Name of the Father, and of "the Son, and of the Holy Spirit, whereby thou canst "deliver me." And the Apostle rejoiced at her faith, and he said unto her, "O good woman, behold the grace of "God hath descended upon thee." Then the woman an-

A. fol.  
123a.  
col. 1.

B. fol.  
235a.  
col. 2.

A. fol.  
123a.  
col. 2.

swered and said unto him, "The faith of thy God dwelleth  
"in my heart, and mind, and soul, and I give thanks unto  
"my Lord Jesus Christ, Who hath brought back the sheep  
"which were cast away."

Then Thomas rose up quickly | and baptized her, and all those who dwelt in her abode, in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. And he took pure bread, and a cup full of wine, and he gave thanks, and brake [the bread], and gave unto the people who had | been baptized the Body of our Lord and His precious Blood; and he and all the brethren who had been baptized sang the Psalms of David far into the night (*or* all night), and prayed. Then they brought unto him all those who were sick of divers kinds of diseases, and those who were possessed of devils, and the blind, and the lame, and the lepers, and he healed them all. And Thomas went out into the city every day and preached in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, and told them the story of the Holy Gospel; and he said unto them, "Bring  
"forth unto me all the sick folk, and I will heal them for  
"nought, and I wish for no reward from any man." Then they were all gathered together unto the house of 'Arsôn-wâ, the wife of the governor, who had believed on the words of Thomas, and all the men of the city | became believers and Christians. And the Apostle used to read unto them the Gospel, and the books of the Prophets, and to teach them the [Page 274] Law of Faith, | and after these things he baptized them in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. And he dwelt with them from the time that he had entered into the city, that is to say, four

B. fol.  
235b.  
col. 1.

A. fol.  
123b.  
col. 1.

B. fol.  
235b.  
col. 2.

A. fol.  
123b.  
col. 2.

years, and their faith waxed strong in our Lord Jesus Christ.

And it came to pass that Lûkiyôs (Vecius), who had been with the king, returned unto his city, and his wife and all the people went forth to meet him. Now when he looked at his wife and saw that she was clothed in wretched apparel, he was greatly grieved thereat, for he imagined that thieves had stolen everything which he had in his dwelling. Then he called one of her servants and said unto him, "What hath happened in my abode?" And the servant said unto him, "Nothing evil, and only good "hath happened [therein] since thou hast gone away from "it;" so Lûkiyôs went to the bath, and then returned to his abode. | And he called for his wife 'Arsônwâ (Arsenia), and when she had come unto him he spake unto her according to the custom of the men of this world, concerning union with her. Then | she answered and said unto him with tears, "(O my lord, behold, God hath re-  
 B. fol. 236a. col. 1.  
 A. fol. 124a. col. 1.  
 "moved from my heart this impure thing wherein there is  
 "no profit, and this day is the Sabbath of God." And he answered in great wrath and said unto her, "What are  
 "these words which thou sayest to me? I never heard  
 "[the like] from thee [before]. Thou shalt not separate  
 "thyself from me this day until I have known thee. Woe  
 "be unto thee! Peradventure that strange slave who hath  
 "come unto us during these [last] days hath bewitched  
 "thee."

Then 'Arsônwâ answered and said unto him, "(O my  
 "lord, God forbid that thou shouldst say thus concerning  
 "him, for sorcerers cannot heal dead bodies, but this man  
 "healeth not only dead bodies but souls also. Speak thou

"not one foul word against him, but do thou thyself also  
 "hear his words." And when | Lûkiyôs [Page 275] heard  
 these words from his wife the wrath of Satan filled his  
 heart, and he answered | and said unto her, "If he be a  
 "sorcerer and a worker of magic let him heal himself of  
 "the scourgings which shall come upon him." And in  
 that same hour he commanded the soldiers of his guard  
 to bring unto him all the executioners<sup>1</sup> who were in the  
 city, and they brought them unto him. And he cried  
 out unto Thomas, and said unto him, "O thou wicked  
 "slave, thou sorcerer, where is the work of thy handicraft  
 "concerning which thou didst tell me, 'I can do it?'  
 "Where are the temples (*or* shrines) which thou wast  
 "to build? Where are the palaces concerning which  
 "thou didst say, 'I will build [them] for the king'? Where  
 "are the measures, and the balances, and the mattocks,  
 "and the hoes, and the spades, concerning which thou  
 "didst say, 'I can make [them]'? Where is the work, and  
 "the healing by medicines, and the good which thou hast  
 "wrought?" And Thomas answered, saying, "Behold, I  
 "have finished all my handiwork, and I have made an  
 "end thereof." Then Lûkiyôs said unto him, "Wouldst  
 "thou make a mock of me? | I will scourge thee, O thou  
 "wicked servant, until thou diest." And Thomas said  
 unto him, "I will inform thee rightly without | scourging  
 "concerning the things which I have not made known  
 "unto thee until this day, and I will tell thee truly. The  
 "temples and palaces which I have built are the souls  
 "who have made themselves pure and have believed;

B. fol.  
 236a.  
 col. 2.  
 A. fol.  
 124a.  
 col. 2.

B. fol.  
 236b.  
 col. 1.  
 A. fol.  
 124b.  
 col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> Literally, "cooking-men."

"these are the palaces which I have made beautiful for  
 "the heavenly King who liveth in them. And the mattocks,  
 "and the hoes, and the spades are the Holy Gospels,  
 "wherewith all hatred is dug out from the hearts of those  
 "who believe and who seek God with all their hearts.  
 "And the work which belongeth to the craft of the  
 "physician are the Holy Mysteries which root out every  
 "evil thought, and every pain, and every desire, from the  
 "hearts of all those who seek after purity. This is the  
 "honourable [Page 276] craft which God hath taught me."

And Lûkiyôs said unto him in wrath, "O thou wicked  
 "slave, where is [the fulfilment of] the word which thou  
 "didst speak unto me?" Then he commanded them to  
 put Thomas in prison, and they stretched him out there.

A. fol. And they made a wheel | in the ground and bound him  
 124b. upon it, and Lûkiyôs commanded the | executioners to  
 col. 2. strip the skin from his body, and said unto him, "I will  
 B. fol. 236b. "torture thee, and I will not let thee die quickly, but only  
 col. 2. "when I please." Then the men of the city wept with  
 a sore weeping and said, "Woe be unto us, for what can  
 "we do for this righteous man who hath healed us of  
 "every kind of sickness? If we lay our hands upon him  
 "his God will be wroth with us, and will make His anger  
 "to descend upon us, and He will send fire from heaven  
 "which will consume us, yet, if we do not do what this  
 "wicked man hath commanded us, he will kill us. Behold,  
 "we have seen many wonderful deeds [wrought] by this  
 "holy man. One day a boar of the desert came into the  
 "fields of a poor old woman, and the young men were  
 "unable to drive him away. Then the woman herself came  
 "and bowed down before this righteous man, and entreated

"him, saying, 'O my lord, help me,' and he had compassion upon her. For he went out into the field | and "said unto the wild beast, 'Get thee out from the fields "of this poor | woman, and destroy not her standing "crop;' and when the boar refused to depart in that "same hour fire came down [from heaven] and consumed "him. Now we are exceedingly afraid of this man's God."

A. fol.  
125a.  
col. 1.  
B. fol.  
237a.  
col. 1.

Then Saint Thomas answered and said unto them, "Rise up and fulfil the commands which he hath given "you, for I know that ye have received your commands, "and that ye perform them not of your own will, but "through fear of the foolish governor;" so Lûkiyôs commanded them to flay the holy Apostle. [Page 277] Then Thomas lifted up his eyes to heaven, and cried out with a loud voice, saying, "O my Lord Jesus Christ, Thou Son "of the Living God, help me in this hour, [and save me] "from this tribulation." And when 'Arsônwâ heard the words of the executioners and of the people who were weeping (now she was looking at them from a hidden window in her habitation), and saw the skin being stripped off the body | of the Apostle, she was greatly moved, and she fell down upon her face and died | straightway. Then Lûkiyôs cried out and said, "Behold, my wife has "died for thy sake, O thou wicked slave, but I will remove "all my strength from thee<sup>1</sup> until I know the full wickedness of the work which thou hast done."

A. fol.  
125a.  
col. 2.  
B. fol.  
237a.  
col. 2.

And it came to pass that when the parents and the brethren [of 'Arsônwâ] heard these things they came and wept, and made lamentation over her, and cried out, and

<sup>1</sup> I. e., "I will desist in my harsh treatment of thee."

said, "Woe be unto us! Woe be unto us! Thy death  
 "would not have taken place except for this stranger;  
 "still our hearts rejoice at thy death, because it hath  
 "taken place in the faith of our Lord Jesus Christ and  
 "through the commands of His blessed Apostle." Then  
 Thomas answered and said unto them, "Weep ye not,  
 "but be silent. Since she hath died through me I will  
 "raise her up." And Lûkiyôs said unto him, "Think not  
 "that thou shalt end [thy sufferings in this way], for I  
 "will torture thee as I wish, and I will not let thee escape."

Then he commanded them to bring unto him vinegar  
 and salt that he might rub them into the | body of the  
 saint. And the Apostle | cried out, saying, "O my Lord  
 "Jesus Christ, help me in this mine hour of tribulation,  
 "for behold, my heart, and my body, and my spirit, are  
 "on fire, and they have become very weak. O my Lord  
 "Jesus Christ, Thou merciful and compassionate God, let  
 "Thy help draw nigh unto me, and be Thou mindful that  
 "I am a stranger, and that I have no kinsfolk [here]  
 "[Page 278]. I have here neither father, nor mother, nor  
 "brethren, I have no kinsman in this city, and I have no  
 "acquaintance therein. O my Lord Jesus Christ, Thou  
 "Son of the Living God, Thou art my Helper, and in  
 "Thee have I put my trust; Thou art my Redeemer; it is  
 "Thou Who hast sent me into this city, and I have not  
 "transgressed Thy commandments, O my Lord and God.  
 "I have hated everything of this world for Thy Name's  
 "sake; my father, and my mother, and my kinsfolk, and  
 "everything which I have I forsook as soon as I heard  
 "Thy voice. It is Thou Who hast sent me into this city  
 "to deliver the people [thereof], and behold, | Thou seest

A. fol.  
 125b.  
 col. 1.  
 B. fol.  
 237b.  
 col. 1.

A. fol.  
 125b.  
 col. 2.

"what hath come upon me therein. Since Thou, O God,  
 "I didst suffer for me, it is meet that I also should bear B fol.  
237b.  
col. 2.  
 "patiently and with joy the suffering which hath come  
 "upon me here. Remember Thou Thy Word on the  
 "day wherein Thou didst appear unto Thy beloved  
 "Apostles, when Thou didst rise from the dead. Now  
 "I was not with them, and when they told me that they  
 "had seen Thee [I did not believe them], for I remembered  
 "Thy word which said, 'Make trial of the spirits, for many  
 "shall come in My Name, and shall lead astray many.'<sup>1</sup>  
 "Then I spake unto my brethren the Apostles and said  
 "unto them, 'Unless I see our Lord, and unless I see His  
 "hands wherein they drove the nails, and put my fingers  
 "in the places wherein the nails were driven, and put my  
 "hand into [the wound] in His side, I will not believe.'  
 "And Thou didst appear unto me and didst shew me  
 "what I sought from Thee, and I believed in Thy Re-  
 "surrection and was reproached for the littleness of my  
 "faith. And if on my account Thou didst suffer this  
 "thing, O my Lord Jesus Christ, I beseech Thee, O A. fol.  
126a.  
col. 1.  
B. fol.  
238a.  
col. 1.  
 "Lord, to forgive me, for Thou art the Good I God, and  
 "the Merciful God, and dost turn unto those who turn  
 "unto Thee with all their heart" [Page 279].

And it came to pass that when he had spoken these  
 words and was weeping, our Lord had compassion upon  
 him, and He appeared unto him upon a shining cloud,  
 and said unto him, "(O My beloved Thomas, bear patiently  
 "and with joy, and be strong, for thou shalt overcome  
 "thine enemies and all those who fight against thee.

<sup>1</sup> St. Matthew xxiv. 5; St. Mark xiii. 6; St. Luke xxi. 8.

"Verily, verily, I say unto thee, all the weariness, and all  
 "the scourgings which shall come upon thee for the sake  
 "of the sons of men, until I have delivered them from the  
 "hands of the Enemy, are not [to be compared with] one  
 "hour of the rest which I shall make thee to feel, or  
 "with the gift which I shall give thee, or with the position  
 "which thou shalt have at My right hand in My kingdom;  
 "now thou wast surnamed 'Twin', and thou art beloved  
 "by Me. Endure patiently, for thy reward shall be abun-  
 "dant, and thine honour shall be great with Me, and through  
 "thy skin a multitude of wonderful deeds shall be made  
 A. fol. "manifest. Let thine heart be strong, | and haste thee to  
 126a. "make manifest thy true | faith and My dominion in this  
 col. 2. "city. And after these things thou shalt depart and go  
 B. fol. "out unto a city in the East which is called *Ḳantôryâ*  
 238a. "(Quantaria), and thou shalt dwell therein, and shalt turn  
 col. 2. "the people [thereof] unto the faith in My Name. Behold,  
 "the whole world is filled with the grace of My Father,  
 "and His mercy is upon all created beings through My  
 "Blood, which was shed for the salvation of the world."  
 And saying these words unto Thomas our Lord laid [His  
 hand] upon him, and touched his flesh, and healed his  
 wounds; and then He was no longer seen by him.

And Thomas, having been made whole, rose up, and  
 came unto the place where the wife of *Lûkiyô's* was, and  
 he laid upon her the skin which they had flayed off him,  
 and said, "In the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, and of  
 "His Father, and of the Holy Spirit, let the word which  
 "came<sup>1</sup> to Lazarus raise thee up." And in that same

<sup>1</sup> *Literally*, "surrounded."

hour she opened her eyes, and saw the Apostle | standing  
 by | her head, and she rose up [Page 280] and bowed  
 down before him. And it came to pass that when  
 Lûkiyôs saw this wonderful thing, and the great miracle  
 which had been made manifest by Thomas the Apostle,  
 he rose up in fear and bowed down before him, and  
 said, "In truth there is no god except thy God, Whom  
 "thou servest. I beseech thee, O servant of the Good  
 "God, to forgive me the evil which I have done unto  
 "thee, for I did it in ignorance." Then Thomas raised  
 him up, and said unto him, "Fear thou not, for God  
 "doth not take vengeance upon those who repent and  
 "confess their sins." And in that same hour Lûkiyôs and  
 all the other men of his dominion believed, and forth-  
 with Thomas baptized him and all the nobles of the city,  
 for they all had believed with him. Then Thomas com-  
 manded them to bring forth bread and a cup [of wine],  
 and he prayed and administered unto them all the Holy  
 Mysteries, and they all became Christians. | And Thomas  
 appointed Lûkiyôs | over them, and gave them the com-  
 mandments of the Law of Faith and the admonitions of  
 the Gospel; and he dwelt with them three days, teaching  
 them each day from the Holy Scriptures. And he said  
 unto them, "If it be the will of God I shall return unto  
 "you, but behold, our Lord hath commanded me to go  
 "unto Him in a certain city which lieth to the east of  
 "you." And he departed from them, and with tears they  
 sent him away, saying unto him, "Stay not away from  
 "us too long, for we are only young plants." And the  
 Apostle prayed over them, and blessed them, and gave  
 them the salutation of peace, and departed unto Kan-

A. fol.  
 126b.  
 col. 1.  
 B. fol.  
 238b.  
 col. 1.

B. fol.  
 238b.  
 col. 2.  
 A. fol.  
 126b.  
 col. 2.

tiryâ (Quantaria) that he might preach therein, even as our Lord had commanded him.

And it came to pass that when he had arrived at the city he entered in through the gates thereof, and found an old man [there] who was shedding tears in abundance, and his apparel was rent, and his appearance was miserable [Page 281]. And the Apostle came up to him, and said unto him, "O aged man, why do I see thee in such a state of sorrow, and shedding tears so

B. fol. "abundantly? | Behold, thou art inflicting sorrow on thine  
239a. "heart." Then the old man said unto him, "Depart from  
col. 1. "me, O my brother, for my sorrow is great." And the  
A. fol. Apostle said unto him, "I beseech thee to tell me what  
127a. "hath happened to thee, for peradventure my Lord Jesus  
col. 1. "Christ will work [thy] healing through my hands." And  
the old man said unto him, "Hearken unto my words.  
"I had three sons, and I betrothed the eldest of them to  
"the daughter of an elder of the city that she might  
"become his wife. And it came to pass that when the  
"time for the marriage had come, he said unto me, 'O  
"my father, be not angry with me because of the mar-  
"riage, for I will not marry [any] woman. Behold, I  
"have forsaken this world and all the lust thereof.' And  
"when I heard this from him, I was grieved in my heart,  
"and he seemed to me to be mad (*or* foolish) when he  
"spake these words unto me, and I said unto him, 'Be-  
"hold, the time hath arrived when I wish to bring thy  
A. fol. "wife for thee to marry, and yet thou speakest these  
127a. "words unto me.' Then he said unto me, 'I have sworn  
col. 2. "by the Majesty of the King, Who is the King of kings,  
B. fol. "that I will not marry [any] woman. Behold, I  
239a. "have forsaken this world and all the lust thereof.'  
col. 2. "I beseech thee to tell me what hath happened to thee, for peradventure my Lord Jesus Christ will work [thy] healing through my hands." And the old man said unto him, "Hearken unto my words. I had three sons, and I betrothed the eldest of them to the daughter of an elder of the city that she might become his wife. And it came to pass that when the time for the marriage had come, he said unto me, 'O my father, be not angry with me because of the marriage, for I will not marry [any] woman. Behold, I have forsaken this world and all the lust thereof.' And when I heard this from him, I was grieved in my heart, and he seemed to me to be mad (*or* foolish) when he spake these words unto me, and I said unto him, 'Behold, the time hath arrived when I wish to bring thy wife for thee to marry, and yet thou speakest these words unto me.' Then he said unto me, 'I have sworn by the Majesty of the King, Who is the King of kings, that I will not marry [any] woman. Behold, I have forsaken this world and all the lust thereof.'

"manded me concerning this thing I will depart into the  
 "desert, and that thou shalt never again see me after  
 "this day.' And I said unto him, 'Tell me; what is it  
 "thou hast seen?' And he said unto me, 'I will tell thee  
 "what I have seen. Last night I was sleeping on my  
 "couch, and I saw a young Man with a beautiful face  
 "Who was dressed in apparel which was brighter than  
 "the sun, and the odour of flowers went forth from Him,  
 "and the place was filled with the scent thereof. On  
 "His head was a royal crown and in His hand was  
 "a sceptre of gold, and when I saw Him I was afraid  
 "of Him exceedingly, and I fell down upon my face at  
 "[Page 282] His feet, like a dead man. And He stretched  
 "out His hands and lifted me up, and said unto me,  
 "Take good heed unto thyself, and hearken not unto  
 "those who would counsel thee to marry a wife, but  
 "guard thy body that it may be pure, and that thou  
 "mayest become like unto Myself, and mayest be the  
 "head of the Church. Behold, the Apostle Saint Thomas  
 "shall come into this | city, and he shall bring thee into  
 "the faith, | and shall give unto thee the sign thereof,  
 "and shall devote himself to thee, and shall make thee  
 "worthy to receive the Holy Mysteries. And know that  
 "I am the God who made Himself incarnate for your  
 "sakes, and it is meet that ye should not be slothful  
 "concerning the salvation and life of your souls. And  
 "as He was saying these words unto me He laid his  
 "hands upon my head, and blessed me, and went up  
 "into heaven with great glory until He went beyond my  
 "sight. For this reason, O my father, I shall not forsake  
 "the gift of grace which God hath given unto me, so

A. fol.  
 127b.  
 col. 1.  
 B. fol.  
 239b.  
 col. 1.

"that this King may not be wroth with me, and may  
 "not blot me out because of my transgression of His  
 "word."

"And it came to pass that when I heard these words  
 "from my son I was silent, and was deeply grieved in  
 "my heart, [thinking] that perhaps it was the god of  
 "this city who had made himself manifest unto him. So  
 "I came unto certain men among the nobles of the city,  
 A. fol. "and I told | them all which my son had told me, and  
 127b.  
 col. 2. "I sent to the father of the damsel and told him all which  
 "they had heard from me. Now he was exceedingly  
 "angry, and said unto me, 'Dost thou treat my rank and  
 B. fol. "dignity with contempt? Wouldst thou | put to shame  
 239b.  
 col. 2. "my daughter by such lying words as these?' Then  
 "he came to the king, and he took us, that is to say,  
 "myself and my son, into his presence, and said, 'They  
 "have stolen the property of the temple;' and the king  
 "sent and killed all my seven children at one time. This  
 "is the reason why thou seest me weeping and sorrowful.  
 "[Page 283] And besides this, the money which I had  
 "borrowed (and which I gave to the damsel), they now  
 "require of me, and since the death of my children I am  
 "smitten with fear, and I have no means whereby I can  
 "restore their money. If only one of my sons had been  
 "left to me he would have helped me to give them what  
 "they demand from me."

Now when the Apostle heard these words from him,  
 A. fol. he answered and said unto him, "Weep | not, O aged  
 128a.  
 col. 1. "man. Behold, I have heard thy words, and thou must  
 "bring me, Thomas, unto the place where thy children  
 "are, and my Lord Jesus Christ will graciously grant unto

"them the gift of life." Then the old man went unto the place where his children were buried, | and many people followed them, saying, "If this counsel be right we ourselves will believe in the God of this man." And it came to pass that when they had come unto the grave, the Apostle gave his flesh (i. e., skin) unto the old man, and said unto him, "Go thou into the grave and lay this skin upon all thy children, and thou shalt say, 'In the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, rise up, O my children, and become living beings as ye were formerly;' for Thomas may not do [this] lest they say of me, 'He is a sorcerer!'" So the old man did as Thomas had commanded him, and he laid the Apostle's skin upon his children, and they became as they had been formerly. Now there were in | the grave a number of children of other folk who had died before his own children, and because of what was done they all rose up alive; and they were in number fifteen men. And they went forth unto the place where the blessed Apostle was, and they bowed down before him, and said unto him, "We beseech thee, O Apostle of our God, to give unto us baptism, which is the fulfilment of life."

B. fol.  
240a.  
col. 1.

A. fol.  
128a.  
col. 2.

And when the multitude saw | these wonderful things they cried out with a loud voice, saying, "Truly there is no god but Jesus Christ, the Son [Page 284] of the One Living God, the God of Thomas." Then certain of those men went to the temple of Apollo, and told the priest of the temple everything which had happened. Now when the priest heard the Name of Jesus he rent his garments and said, "Woe unto me! This man is one of the disciples of Jesus who came forth from the land of

B. fol.  
240a.  
col. 2.

- A. fol. 128b, col. 1. "Judaea, and who go round about all the world and lead  
 "into error | all those who hearken unto them. They are  
 "the disciples of the Man called Jesus, Who was a sor-  
 "cerer, Whom, as we have heard, Pilate crucified; and  
 "these men stole His Body, and they go about in the  
 "world, and say that He hath risen from the dead." Then  
 the priests said unto them, "Rise up, O people, and let  
 "us go forth unto him and heap curses upon him, and  
 "revile him, and tell him that his words are not true, and  
 "that all that he doeth is by means of sorcery." So the  
 B. fol. 240b, col. 1. priest rose up, and all the people | with him, [and they  
 went] unto the place where Thomas was, and they found  
 him in the highway of the city, and the people were  
 gathered together [there], for he was casting out Satan  
 from a man who had been possessed of him. Then the  
 priests said unto Thomas, "What doest thou in this city,  
 "O thou sorcerer and deceiver? Were not the land of  
 "Judaea and those who dwell therein sufficient for thee  
 "but thou must come [also] into this city? Who is this  
 A. fol. 128b, col. 2. "Jesus? If He | was God, why did He not deliver Him-  
 "self from the cross? [And why did] ye steal His Body,  
 "and why have ye all become witnesses unto all created  
 "beings that He rose from the dead? Know thou that  
 "the people of this city are men of understanding, and  
 "that they cannot be led astray like the other peoples  
 "whom thou hast made to err." Then turning his face  
 towards the people he said unto them, "Let each of you  
 "take a stone in his hands and cast it at this sorcerer,  
 "so that he may not find [Page 285] an opportunity of  
 "leading astray the people after these days;" and they did  
 even as the priest had commanded them, and stooped

| to take up stones to throw at Saint Thomas, but at that same moment their hands withered, [and they could not take up] the stones, and they were unable to stand. Then they all cried out with a loud voice, and said, "We entreat thee, O servant of the Good God, to beseech thy Lord God to have mercy upon us, and to deliver us [from this evil], that we may rise up and stand upon our feet. Then will we also believe in thy God, and behold, we shall know that | there is no God but thine, either in heaven or upon the earth; do not thou reward us according to our folly."

B. fol.  
240b.  
col. 2.

A. fol.  
129a.  
col. 1.

Then the Apostle prayed and said, "I give thanks unto thee, O my Lord Jesus Christ, for behold, Thou hast not slept [in performing for me that] which I requested of Thee, and I have made manifest Thy story unto these multitudes which are gathered together before Thee. I beseech Thee to send down from the heights of heaven Thy divine power, which shall make this heathen man to be suspended head downwards in the air, for he hath blasphemed Thy holy Name." And straightway the priest was suspended in mid-air | head downwards, [and he was carried] round about among the people;" and the people saw the might of God the Exalted One, which had worked this thing upon him. Then he who was suspended [in mid-air] cried out, saying, "I believe in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, and I do not believe in the gods. For indeed Thou art my God, Whom I blasphemed in my folly, and Thou art not a god | of the gods which are the work of the hand of man, which it is not seemly for men to call gods. Nay, Thou alone art God [Who didst exist] before

B. fol.  
241a.  
col. 1.

A. fol.  
129a.  
col. 2.

"all the world, and Thou, O God of heaven, and of earth,  
 "and of whatsoever is under the earth, Thou, O Jesus  
 "Christ, art He in Whom I have placed my confidence,  
 "Thou art my King, and Thou art my hope."

And it came to pass when the priest [Page 286]  
 had made this confession of faith, being suspended in mid-  
 air, and whilst the people were looking at him, he  
 descended to the earth. And the people who had seen  
 him believed and were saved, and they asked the Apostle  
 to baptize them in the Name of the Father, and of the  
 Son, and of the Holy Spirit. And when they were con-  
 firmed in the faith he took them to the | temple and rooted  
 up all the stands whereon the gods rested, and they made  
 the temple into a church. And Thomas appointed the  
 priest [of Apollo] to be bishop over them, and the seven  
 (*sic*) brethren, the sons of the old man, whom he had  
 raised from the dead, he appointed to be | priests and  
 deacons, and he placed them in the church that they  
 might minister in the holy place. And he dwelt many  
 days in the city, teaching the people all the mysteries  
 of the faith, and many wonderful deeds were made mani-  
 fest through him, and he used to carry his skin on his  
 neck [and shoulders], and to take it about with him unto  
 every place whithersoever he went. And after these things  
 he departed from the city, giving thanks unto God and  
 praising Him. Then afterwards our Lord appeared unto  
 him, and took his skin and arrayed his body therein, and  
 Thomas became as he was formerly. And He embraced  
 him, and did away his grief and said unto him, "Sit thou  
 "upon this cloud, and it shall bring thee unto the place  
 "where thy brethren | the Apostles are in peace. And I

B. fol.  
 241a.  
 col. 2.

A. fol.  
 129b.  
 col. 1.

B. fol.  
 241b.  
 col. 1.

"will be with thee [and them] in every place wherein thou shalt be, for ye are those whom my Father hath chosen "to preach in the world;" and our Lord went up from him | into heaven with great glory. Then Thomas mounted upon the cloud as our Lord had commanded him, and it bore him along and brought him to Mount Iya'onâdîn-'Eñsis,<sup>1</sup> and he found the Apostles gathered together there, and Paul, and MARY, who gave [Page 287] birth to God, were among them. And he embraced them with a spiritual embrace, and they made mention of the wonderful things which God had wrought through them, and they remained assembled there for eighty days, and they glorified God among themselves. To God be glory, and honour, and thanksgiving, for ever and ever! Amen, Amen, and Amen.

A. fol.  
129b.  
col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> B reads 𐌲𐌶𐌹𐌸𐌶𐌹 : 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌴 : *N'and'ar-'Eñsis*.

## THE MARTYRDOM OF SAINT THOMAS IN INDIA.

B. fol. | IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE SON, AND  
241b. OF THE HOLY SPIRIT, ONE GOD.  
col. 2.

*Here beginneth the Martyrdom of Saint Thomas, the Apostle of our Lord Jesus Christ, who finished his contending on the twenty-sixth day of the month Genbôt.<sup>1</sup> In the peace of our Lord. Amen.*

A. fol. among the people thereof | faithfully, and he declared  
130a. unto them the Law of the Holy Gospel. Now Lûkiyôs  
col. 1. (Vecius) the governor had stripped off Thomas' skin from him, but the Apostle continued to carry it upon his neck for many days; and he went round about through [all] the countries, and laid it upon the dead and upon those who were sick; and our Lord opened the hearts of the people, and they believed. Then Thomas built for them a church, and he strengthened them in the Law of the Faith, and appointed unto them a bishop, and priests, and deacons, and administered unto them the Holy

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., May 21.

Mysteries, and he departed from them in the peace of God. Then our Lord appeared unto him | and restored his skin, even as it was aforetime.

B. fol.  
242a.  
col. 1.

Now after these things he departed unto the city of Hakît,<sup>1</sup> which is by Macedonia, and he preached among the people thereof the knowledge of God; and when the magistrates heard thereof they were filled with wrath in their hearts, and they laid hold of Thomas and cast him into prison. Then Tërtëbânî,<sup>2</sup> the wife of [Mazdai] the king, and Marhanâ<sup>3</sup> his daughter, | came unto him in prison, and many believers followed them [Page 288]; and the gates were opened unto them, and they cried out to the Apostle, and Thomas went forth to them, and said unto them, "O my beloved brethren and children, ye servants "of Christ and ministers of God, hearken ye unto my "words this day, and unto the end of my teaching, for I "shall not see you again in the flesh in this world after "this day. Behold, the Lord wisheth to remove me from "this world, and to take me away from | the weariness "thereof into [His] rest. He gave Himself for us to save "us from the service of Satan, and He chose unto Him- "self [us] Apostles, and made us worthy to preach in His "Name in all the world. Behold, I have finished the "strife and I have brought [to an end] my service, even "as He hath commanded me. And behold, He desireth "to make me to rest from the sufferings of this world, "and to give unto me my reward which is laid up with

A. fol.  
130a.  
col. 2.

B. fol.  
242a.  
col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> This name is, of course, corrupt.

<sup>2</sup> I. e., Tartabania or Tertia, the wife of king Mazdai.

<sup>3</sup> I. e., Mygdonia, the wife of Charisius; see LIPSIVS, op. cit., vol. i, p. 258ff.

A. fol. "Him; | for He is rich, and He hath gifts in abundance,  
 130b. "and He giveth His grace in the measure which it pleaseth  
 col. 1. "Him unto those who ask Him. Now I am the servant  
 "of Jesus Christ and a doer of His will. And behold,  
 "He desireth, even as ye have heard from me, that ye  
 "should take good heed and should not let an opportunity  
 "occur for [the entrance of] Satan into your hearts, and  
 "that he should not draw nigh unto you. Be ye watch-  
 "ful and await the second Coming of our Lord, so that  
 "He may receive you into His kingdom, which is in the  
 B. fol. "heavens." And saying these things he left the women |  
 242b. and went unto the prison-house, and they departed  
 col. 1. weeping; and they knew that he had delivered himself  
 unto the magistrates, and that they would kill the  
 holy man.

And it came to pass that when he had gone into  
 the prison-house the doors thereof were closed as they  
 had been formerly; and when the keepers saw [this] they  
 cried out among themselves, and they were dismayed,  
 and they marvelled, [Page 289] and said, "This man is  
 "a sorcerer. He opened the gates of the prison-house and

A. fol. "wished to set free all those who were | therein, but he  
 130b. "could not find the way. Come ye, let us go unto the  
 col. 2. "king and inform him concerning this matter, and con-  
 "cerning both his wife and his daughter who came unto  
 "Thomas." Now whilst they were conversing in this  
 wise Thomas answered them never a word. And it came  
 to pass that when the day had come, they went unto  
 the king and said unto him, "O lord the king, bring  
 "forth this sorcerer out of this prison-house, and put him  
 "in another, for we are not able to guard him safely.

"Behold, twice have we seen the doors of the prison-house  
 "thrown open and it was he who opened them; moreover  
 "thy wife and thy daughter come unto him every day." B. fol.  
 Then the king looked at the door of the gate of the 242b.  
 prison-house, and saw that it was sealed with his seal. col. 2.  
 And he said unto them, "Ye are mistaken, and neither  
 "my wife nor my daughter has been unto him;" but  
 they took an oath to him that they had been unto the  
 Apostle.

Then the king sat upon the judgment seat in the  
 hall of the magistrates, and he commanded them to bring  
 Saint Thomas before him, | and they removed his gar- A. fol.  
 ments, and, having made him put a cloth round his loins, 131a.  
 set him before the face of the king. And the king said col. 1.  
 unto him, "Art thou a free man or a slave?" And  
 Thomas said unto him, "I am a servant of my God, over  
 "whom thou hast no dominion." Then the king said  
 unto him, "Why didst thou flee from thy country? Why  
 "didst thou come unto this place?" And Thomas said unto  
 him, "I came unto this place that I might bring back  
 "this people from their error, and when this hath been  
 "done I shall depart from this world." Then the king  
 said unto him, "What is the name of thy God? And  
 "from what | country comest thou?" And Thomas said B. fol.  
 unto him, "My God is the God of heaven and earth; 243a.  
 "His hidden Name [Page 290] thou art not able to hear, col. 1.  
 "but the Name which hath been revealed is Jesus Christ."  
 Then the king said unto him, "I do not wish to destroy  
 "thee, for indeed I have endured thee patiently; but thou  
 "hast multiplied evil, and hast made manifest thy | sorcery  
 "in this city, and at length all those who dwell in the A. fol.  
 131a.  
 col. 2.

"country of India have heard thereof. But I must slay  
 "thee, so that all thy sorcery may be destroyed, and that  
 "both thy name and thy magic may be forgotten through-  
 "out the country." And Thomas said unto him, "My  
 "work shall stand fast after my departure from this world."  
 Then Mastayôs (Mazdai) the king said, "Where shall we  
 "kill him?" Now he was afraid of the people who were  
 round about him, for many of the magistrates, and many  
 of the nobles of the city and country, had believed in the  
 story of Saint Thomas. And the king rose up and took  
 Thomas, and they went forth from the city, and with  
 him there marched many soldiers | bearing swords and  
 spears; and the rest of the people said, "The king wisheth  
 "to talk with him alone; come away from him." And it  
 came to pass that, when Thomas had departed from the  
 city a distance of | two marches, the king gave him into  
 the hands of his son, and of the chief magistrate of the  
 city, and of fifteen soldiers, and he told them to go to a  
 certain high mountain and to slay Thomas there; and  
 the king returned to the city. Now when the people  
 knew this they set out on the road wishing to follow  
 after the holy man, and to deliver him; but the soldiers  
 who were with him made haste to slay him. And there  
 were two soldiers standing on his right hand and two on  
 his left with spears in their hands, and the magistrate  
 laid his hand upon him. Then the holy Apostle said,  
 "A hidden mystery shall now be accomplished, [Page  
 "291] that is to say, by the exalted gift of grace my  
 "body shall not be given over to corruption. These  
 "four men are ready to overthrow the temple of  
 "my body, and they are types on this earth of the

B. fol.  
 243a.  
 col. 2.

A. fol.  
 131b.  
 col. 1.

"four | created things wherefrom my strength hath been  
"made."<sup>1</sup>

B. fol.  
243b.  
col. 1.

And it came to pass that, when Thomas had come to the place where they were to kill him, he answered and said unto them, "Hearken ye unto my words | on  
"my departure from this world. Let not the eyes of  
"your hearts be blind, and let not your ears be deaf,  
"but believe ye in God Whom I have declared unto  
"you. Let my words enter into your hearts, and into  
"your ears, and let the days of your life [be passed] in  
"purity, that is to say, in the life which will bring you  
"nigh unto God." Then Thomas said unto Maytewanyânôs,<sup>2</sup>  
the son of the king, "Since thou art a servant of Jesus  
"Christ give thou unto these men a gift, so that they  
"may let me pray unto my God;" and the king's son  
commanded them to do this thing. Then the blessed  
Apostle spread out his hands, and made supplication  
unto God, saying, "O my Lord and my God, my hope  
"and my consolation, and my Saviour, Who hast made  
"me strong, and hast made my heart | meet for judgment,  
"Who hast given unto me the power to endure patiently  
"from my youth up, Who hast been | to me a place of  
"life, Who hast given me understanding that I might not  
"defile my body with women, and from the impurity  
"which maketh unclean I have kept my temple holy

A. fol.  
131b.  
col. 2.

B. fol.  
243b.  
col. 2.  
A. fol.  
132a.  
col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> This seems to be the meaning of the passage. The allusion is probably to the four elements of which man is composed. For a Greek and a Latin text of this passage see LIPSIUS, *op. cit.*, vol. 1. p. 323.

<sup>2</sup> I. e., Vizan, the 'loužávn̄s or Oūažávn̄s of the Greek, and Zuzanes of the Latin texts. See LIPSIUS, *op. cit.*, vol. 1. p. 267.

- "unto Thee, and my mouth and my tongue have made  
 "known Thy praise, and Thy mercy upon me hath been  
 "abundant: I have not desired riches, for Thou didst  
 "say, 'The riches of this world are vanity unto those  
 "who desire them,' and I have desired poverty in this  
 "world, because Thou hast made me worthy to be with  
 "Thee, and hast opened unto me and unto all those who  
 "have believed in Thee Thine everlasting kingdom. [Page  
 "292] I have fulfilled Thy will and Thy commandments,  
 "and every kind of torture which Thou didst endure hath  
 "been multiplied upon me, and I have suffered weariness  
 B. fol. "patiently; but all these things were sweet | unto me for  
 244a. "Thy Name's sake. Thou art my hope, and in Thee  
 col. 1. "doth my soul put her trust, and my toil shall not be in  
 "vain. Receive thou my petition and cast me not away  
 "from before Thy face; and let not the Enemy root up  
 A. fol. "the precious | plants which Thou hast sown in my heart.  
 132a. "The talents which Thou didst give me I have paid back  
 col. 2. "with interest tenfold, for I traded and made profit with  
 "them. I have forsaken the world and followed thee; O  
 "help me. I looked unto Thy salvation, and I fulfilled  
 "the commandments which Thou didst give unto me; the  
 "service on which Thou didst send me I have brought  
 "to a successful ending, like a strenuous servant who  
 "feareth Thy Name. I have girded up my loins in all  
 "good things, and Thou hast made wide my steps in the  
 "way of the Gospel of Peace. I yoked my oxen, I laid  
 "hold upon the plough, I ploughed my field, and I looked  
 "not behind me, lest my furrow should be crooked. The  
 B. fol. "earth hath sent up shoots, and the time of harvest |  
 244a. "hath arrived, and I shall receive my reward, and I  
 col. 2.

"shall bring to an end in rest the weariness which  
 "hath come upon me. I have taken heed to the days  
 "of old, and to those which came after them, and  
 "to those which came last, that I might see Thy  
 "face and bow down before Thy glory. I have cast  
 "away that which is evil, that I might satisfy myself with  
 "the things that are good. I have fulfilled all Thy will,  
 "and I have not turned behind me; | nay, I have gone  
 "forward that I might not become a stumbling-block unto  
 "another, and might receive the crown of Thy glory, and  
 "the heavenly reward. Let not the serpent rise up in  
 "my path, let not the young adders rise up against me,  
 "and let not the power of darkness draw nigh unto me,  
 "but let them be remote from me. For to Thee, and to  
 "Thy Good Father, and to the Holy and Vivifying Spirit,  
 "be glory! Amen."

A. fol.  
 132b.  
 col. 1.

And it came to pass that when the blessed Thomas  
 [Page 293] had ended his prayer he turned his face to  
 the soldiers, and said unto them, "Fulfil ye the will of  
 "your king;" and four of the soldiers approached him,  
 and pierced him with spears, | whereupon he fell upon  
 the earth and yielded up his spirit. And the brethren  
 who were sitting [there] wept over him, and brought pure  
 and clean apparel and put on him, and having made him  
 ready for burial they laid him in the sepulchre of the  
 kings. Now Sekûrâ<sup>1</sup> and 'Awësyâs<sup>2</sup> did not come into  
 the city, but they remained there by the grave that day.  
 Then Saint Thomas appeared and said unto them, "Be-

B. fol.  
 244b.  
 col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> I. e., Siphor; see LIPSIVS, *ibid.*, p. 269.

<sup>2</sup> Vizan?

A. fol. "hold | now, I am alive. Why sit ye [here] watching?  
 132b. "Behold, Jesus Christ my King hath received me, and  
 col. 2. "behold, I have received from God all the gifts for which  
 "I hoped. Rise up, then, from this place, and know that  
 "in the days which are to come ye also must depart  
 "from this world. And be ye not careless concerning  
 "the salvation of your souls, for then ye shall return  
 "unto me."

Now Mastayôs (Mazdai, *or* Mastius), the king and  
 Zîrâyâsôs (Charisius) took their wives ẖêrtêbânâ (Tertia)  
 B. fol. and 'Aṭbânâ (Mygdonia), | and chastised them sorely because  
 244b. they wished to forsake the couches of their lords, and to  
 col. 2. return unto a state of purity, and because they refused  
 to have intercourse with them. Thereupon Saint Thomas  
 revealed himself, and said unto them, "Forget ye not the  
 "words which I spake unto you, saying, 'The Lord Jesus  
 "'Christ will help you.'" And when Mastayôs (Mazdai)  
 and Zeryâs (Charisius) knew that their wives would have  
 nought to do with them they commanded that they  
 A. fol. should leave their husbands and | live as they pleased.  
 133a. And all the brethren gathered themselves together and  
 col. 1. taught the commandments of God among themselves,  
 and they rejoiced in the gift of God and in the grace of  
 the Holy Spirit. Then 'Astayôs, the king's son, became  
 possessed of a devil, and the king meditated [Page 294]  
 within himself, saying, "What shall I do in this matter?  
 "For I have made myself an enemy of the Apostle, and  
 "I would not receive his words." Then he went unto the  
 B. fol. grave of Thomas | that he might take away therefrom a  
 245a. portion of his grave clothes to hang on the neck of his  
 col. 1. son, and he said, "I believe that God will heal my son."

Thereupon Saint Thomas appeared unto him, and said unto him, "O Mastēyōs (Mazdai), thou didst not believe "in me when I was alive; how then canst thou believe "in me after I am dead? But be not afraid, for God will "have compassion upon thee, and He will not withhold "His grace from thee." Now it came to pass that when he had opened the grave he was unable to take any thing | whatsoever from the body of the holy man, and then he went and took [some of] the dust from the place where the saint had been, and tied it to the neck of his son, and said, "I believe that, peradventure, this "unclean spirit shall depart from my son through the "prayers of the holy man;" and in that same hour Satan went forth from his son. Then the king believed, and he bowed down before 'Awētyōs Kōrōs, the priest, and entreated him | and his brother to seek forgiveness on his behalf from God. And the priests said unto his brother, "Pray for the king that he may be accepted "by God, and that God may forgive him all his sins." Then they did so with joy and gladness because they saw the faith of the king in God, the Lover of men, the King of kings, the Lord of lords, Who gave unto Mātsēyōs (Mazdai) the king right faith and firm hope. And the faith of the king and his goodness were noised abroad in all the country, and the people paid honour unto all the brethren, and | ascribed blessing to the Father, and to the 'Son, and to the Holy Spirit. Now [this] took place [Page 295] after the four soldiers pierced Thomas with the four spears. And Thomas ended his strife on the highway of a city of India on the twenty-sixth day of the month

A. fol.  
133a.  
col. 2.

B. fol.  
245a.  
col. 2.

A. fol.  
133b.  
col. 1.

Genbôt.<sup>1</sup> Glory be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Spirit, now, henceforth, and for ever and ever. Amen, Amen, and Amen.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., May 21.

---

## THE PREACHING OF JUDAS THADDEUS IN SYRIA.

| IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE SON, AND  
OF THE HOLY SPIRIT, [ONE GOD].

B. fol.  
249b.  
col. 1.

Here beginneth the Preaching of the blessed Judas, the brother of our Lord, [who was surnamed] Thaddeus, which he preached in Syria and in Dacia; and he finished his testimony on the second day of the month Hamle.<sup>1</sup> In the peace of our Lord Jesus Christ. Amen.

And it came to pass that, when the Apostles were gathered together on the Mount of Olives, and they had cast lots and divided the whole world into portions wherein they were to go about and preach the Gospel of Christ, the lot fell upon Thaddeus to go unto the country of Syria. | Then Thaddeus said unto Peter, "O

A. fol.  
133b.  
col. 2.

"my father Peter, come thou with me into that country;" and Peter said unto him, "Be patient, and I will bring thee [thither] in peace." Now whilst they were talking together our Lord Jesus Christ, in the form of a young man of most beautiful appearance, stood in their midst, and He said, "Peace be unto thee, O Peter, thou gover-

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., June 26. See LIPSIVS, *Apostelgeschichten*, vol. ii. part 2, p. 175.

“nor of the Church. Peace be unto thee, O Thaddeus,  
 “My beloved; depart, and fear not. Why | are ye cast  
 B. fol. “down? I will be with you, and will be your Comforter  
 249b. “until ye finish your strife.” And they said unto Him,  
 col. 2. “O Lord, be Thou with us and we will preach the Gospel  
 “in every place.” Then our Lord gave them the salutation  
 of peace and went up from them into heaven with great  
 glory. So Peter and Thaddeus departed in the peace  
 of God.

And it came to pass that when they had drawn  
 nigh unto the country [of Syria] Thaddeus said unto  
 [Page 297] Peter, “I would that I knew what would befall  
 “us in this country.” Then Peter said unto him, “I know  
 A. fol. “not. But behold, I am | looking at an old man who  
 134a. “is ploughing the fields. Let us go and say unto him,  
 col. 1. “‘If thou hast bread with thee, give us [some] to eat.’  
 “And if he shall say unto us, ‘I will give you [some],’  
 “then we shall know that good fortune hath befallen us;  
 “but if he shall say unto us, ‘I have none,’ then shall we  
 “be aweary in this country.” Now when they had drawn  
 nigh unto the man, Peter said unto him, “Peace be unto  
 B. fol. “thee, O aged one! If thou hast bread | with thee, give  
 250a. “us [some] to eat.” And the old man said unto him,  
 col. 1. “I have none here, but sit ye down with these oxen  
 “whilst I go and bring you bread which ye can eat here.”  
 Then Peter said unto him, “Since thou wilt bring us what  
 “we may eat we will sit down here by the side of these  
 “oxen.” And again Peter said unto him, “Are these oxen  
 “thine?” And the old man said, “No, I have only hired  
 “them.” Then Peter said unto him, “Are these fields  
 “thine?” and the old man said unto him, “Yea, they are

"mine." And Peter said unto him, "Go in peace, and  
 "return in peace." And it came to pass that when the  
 old man had departed Peter said unto Thaddeus, "It is  
 "shameful for us to sit down here, and keep the oxen  
 "[standing idle], for | the man hath gone to do us a kind- A. fol.  
 "ness." Then Peter girded up his loins, and took hold 134a.  
 of the handle of the plough, and called to the oxen to col. 2.  
 plough. And Thaddeus said unto him, "What is this  
 "great command | which thou wouldst perform? Thou B. fol.  
 "art an aged man, and thou hast attained unto an ex- 250a.  
 "ceedingly exalted grade, and many matters of weight col. 2.  
 "rest on thine arms. It is not for thee to work in this  
 "wise whilst I remain here [idle]. Shalt thou, who art a  
 "great man, toil whilst I take my rest?" So Thaddeus  
 took the handle of the plough from Peter and ploughed.  
 Then Peter took the [Page 298] baskets which were full  
 of wheat, and blessed them, and said, "O my Lord Jesus  
 "Christ, let Thy blessing descend upon these fields;" and  
 Thaddeus said, "O my Lord Jesus Christ, let the blessing  
 "of the earth be upon these fields." Now in the time  
 during which the man had gone to bring bread for the  
 Apostles they | ploughed thirty furrows, and in that same A. fol.  
 hour the seed [which they sowed] sprouted, and the ears 134b.  
 became full of wheat. col. 1.

And it came to pass that, when the man returned to  
 the fields and saw what the Apostles had done, he said unto  
 them, "O my lords, | who are you? Tell me whence ye B. fol.  
 "come, that I may follow you whithersoever ye go." Then 250b.  
 he fell down at the feet of the Apostles, and said unto col. 1.  
 them, "Verily ye are as gods who have come down from  
 "heaven to earth." And Peter lifted him up, and said

- unto him, "Stand up, O man, for we are not gods, but  
 "only servants and Apostles of our Lord, Who hath  
 "graciously bestowed upon us spiritual knowledge that we  
 "may teach [it] unto men, and unto the children of men,  
 "that they may repent them of their sins, and inherit life  
 "everlasting." Then the man said unto him, "What shall  
 A. fol. "I do that I may obtain everlasting life?" And Peter | said  
 134b. unto him, "Love the Lord thy God with all thy heart,  
 col. 2. "and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind." Then  
 Peter farther spake unto him, saying, "Hast thou a wife  
 "and children?" And the man said unto him, "Yea."  
 B. fol. Then Peter | spake again unto him, saying, "Thou shalt  
 250b. "not commit murder. Thou shalt not commit adultery.  
 col. 2. "Thou shalt not take an oath to a lie. What thou dost  
 "not wish men to do unto thee, that thou shalt not do  
 "unto men. If thou doest the things which I have now  
 "commanded thee thou shalt inherit life everlasting." And  
 the man said unto Peter, "Now, although I have done  
 "this (i. e., brought bread) for you, [Page 299] what  
 "[more] can I do in return for the good which ye have  
 "done for me? Since ye have made my fields to sprout  
 "with corn in this wise, and out of season, I will leave  
 "these oxen, and will follow you whithersoever ye go."  
 Then Peter said unto him, "It is not necessary for thee  
 "to do thus, but take the oxen and lead them back to  
 "their master, and make known unto thy wife that we  
 A. fol. "are [here], and let her make ready | for us to eat in her  
 135a. "house; for we desire to enter into this city this day and  
 col. 1. "to dwell therein, for our Lord Jesus Christ calleth unto  
 B. fol. "us [so to do]." | Then the man took an ear of corn in  
 251a. his hands from the field wherein the Apostles had sown  
 col. 1.

the seed, and he went into the city, together with the oxen.

And it came to pass that, when he had come into the gates of the city, the people looked at him as he held the ear of corn in his hands, and they said unto him, "Where didst thou find this ear of green corn, for 'it is as yet only the season for ploughing?'" But he answered them never a word. And it came to pass that he drove the oxen [before him], and he rejoiced as he went, and he brought them back to their owner, and then returned unto his habitation; and with such things as he had he courteously entreated the Apostles. Now the report of him came unto the magistrates of the city, and by reason thereof they sent unto him, saying, "Where 'hast thou found this green ear of corn? Tell us the 'story thereof. And if thou dost not tell us we will kill 'thee | by a cruel death." Then the man said unto them, "I fear not [death], for I have found life; but if | ye wish 'to learn the truth, hearken unto the testimony which I 'will declare unto you. Two men passed by me whilst 'I was ploughing, and they said unto me, 'If thou hast 'with thee bread which we can eat, give [it] unto us, 'and let us eat.' And I said unto them, 'I have nothing 'of any kind whatsoever here, but tarry ye with [Page "300] these oxen, whilst I go and bring for you that 'which ye can eat.' Now when I had departed to my 'habitation I took some bread for them, and came back 'to the field, and I found that it had been sown [with 'grain], and that it was full of green corn in the ear 'which had shot up, and I plucked this green ear from 'among them. And those men went forth outside the

A. fol.

135a.

col. 2.

B. fol.

251a.

col. 2.

"city." Then the magistrates said unto him, "Go and  
 "bring them into our presence." And the man said unto  
 them, "Have patience with me for a season, for I have  
 "made ready my habitation that they may come and rest  
 "therein, and if ye will come [there] ye yourselves can  
 A. fol. "see them;" and having said these words unto them | he  
 135b. returned unto his habitation. Then Satan | defiled the  
 col. 1. hearts of the magistrates with an evil intent, and they said,  
 B. fol. "Woe be unto us! Woe be unto us! Peradventure these  
 251b. "two men are of those twelve sorcerers concerning whom  
 col. 1. "we have heard that they go round about in every place,  
 "and corrupt men by their sorceries. What shall we do?  
 "We must not let them enter into our city." And some  
 of the magistrates said, "If they be sorcerers, let us rise  
 "up and go forth against them and slay them;" but  
 others answered and said, "We shall not be able to slay  
 "them, for we have heard concerning them that their  
 "God Jesus performeth for them whatsoever they ask of  
 "him. [Let us not do thus] lest He bring down upon us  
 "fire [from heaven], or a flood of water which shall  
 "destroy us; we may not be able to slay them, but we  
 "need not let them enter into our city. Now, we have  
 "heard concerning them that they hate fornicators [*or*  
 "adulterers], let us, then, take a woman who is a harlot,  
 A. fol. "and let us strip off | her apparel and set her | naked  
 135b. "outside the city, so that when they wish to come into  
 col. 2. "the city they may see the woman and not come in."  
 B. fol. Then they brought a woman who was a harlot, and  
 251b. having stripped off her apparel [Page 301] from her they  
 col. 2. set her by the gate; and when the Apostles came to the  
 gate of the city they saw the naked woman, and

she herself made known unto them her evil deeds. Then Thaddeus said unto Peter, "O my father, look upon this woman, and see how Satan hath counselled her to tempt God and his servants." And Peter said unto him, "The power is thine, therefore command her [to do] even as thou wilt." Then Thaddeus prayed, and said, "O my Lord Jesus Christ, I beseech thee to send Michael the archangel, and to let him suspend this woman in mid-air by the hair of her head until we have entered into the city; and when we desire to come forth do Thou bring her down again [to the ground]." And in that same moment the woman was suspended in mid-air by the hair of her head, and although all the magistrates were looking at her they could not see what it was which held her fast. Now the woman herself was crying out with loud cries, saying, "O God, judge Thou the magistrates of this city, for it is they who have done me this evil. For if I had remained in my own house and [continued] in my sin until the Apostles of our Lord had come into the city, they who save all sinners would have saved me, the sinful woman, also. Come, O ye young men whom I have corrupted by my fornications, and repent, and make supplication unto the Apostles of God on my behalf, that they may shew mercy upon me." Now although the woman was saying these words none of the men of the city believed, because Satan had hardened their hearts.

And Peter said unto Thaddeus, "Let us rise up, and pray and entreat God to help us, for behold, Satan hath corrupted the hearts of the people." So they rose up together, and prayed, saying, "O Lord God, Thou

B. fol.  
252a.  
col. 1.  
A. fol.  
136a.  
col. 1.

B. fol.  
252a.  
col. 2.  
A. fol.  
136a.  
col. 2.

“upholder of all things, Who hast commanded [Thy  
 “people] to call upon Thee in the time of tribulation,<sup>1</sup>  
 “[Page 302] and hast said, ‘I will hear them,’ hearken  
 “unto us, O Lord, and have compassion upon us, and  
 “give us strength so that we may be able to contend  
 “against Satan, who hath risen up against us in this place.”  
 And whilst the Apostles were making supplication Michael  
 the Archangel came down to them, and drove away the  
 evil spirits which had afflicted the souls of the people of  
 the city. Then Peter and Thaddeus went forth and jour-  
 neyed round about in the highways of the city, preach-  
 ing in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, and because  
 thereof all the men of the city believed, and at length  
 there was left no one of those who had corrupted their  
 hearts [who did not believe]; and Michael also brought  
 down the woman who was suspended in the air. | Then  
 after these things | [Peter] appointed bishops and priests  
 over them, and he baptized all of them in the Name of  
 the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost; and  
 they made the woman who had been suspended in the  
 air to minister in the church. And they healed the sick,  
 and they opened the eyes of the blind, and the dumb  
 spake, and the deaf heard, and the lame walked, and  
 they cast out devils, and they raised the dead, and at  
 length all the people of the city believed and entered  
 into the knowledge of God, Whose Name is most glorious.

Then was Satan wroth, and he returned to his  
 wiles and crafts, and entered into the heart of a rich  
 young man, and made him an enemy of the Apostles,

<sup>1</sup> Psalm l. 15.

B. fol.  
 252b.  
 col. 1.  
 A. fol.  
 136b.  
 col. 1.

and sent him unto them. And when he had arrived, he bowed down before them and said unto them, "O "ye chosen servants of God, what would ye have me to "do that I may have life?" Then Peter said unto the young man, "Love God | thy Lord | with all thy heart, and B. fol. 252b. col. 2. A. fol. 136b. col. 2. "with all thy mind, and with all thy soul. Thou shalt "not kill. Thou shalt not steal. Thou shalt not commit "adultery. Thou shalt not swear falsely. What thou "wouldst not [Page 303] that men should do unto "thee that thou shalt not do unto others."<sup>1</sup> Then the young man said unto them, "If I do these things, "shall I be able to work miracles like unto you?" And the Apostles said unto him, "Tell us everything "about thyself. Hast thou a wife?" Then he said unto them, "I have no wife. I am a handicraftsman (*or* car- "penter), and I have great possessions. Tell me what "ye would have me to do." And Peter said unto him, "Go, cast away thy possessions, and distribute them "among the poor of this city." Now when the young man heard these words from Peter he was angry with him with a great anger, and he leaped upon Thaddeus and seized him by the throat, and said unto him, "Wouldst thou counsel me to destroy my possessions?" And Thaddeus said unto him, "Our Lord spake | thus B. fol. 253a. col. 1. "concerning one who was like unto thee: It is easier for "a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a A. fol. 137a. col. 1. "rich man to enter | into the kingdom of heaven."<sup>2</sup> Then was the young man the more angry with Thaddeus, and

<sup>1</sup> Compare St. Matthew xix. 18, 19; xxii. 37; St. Mark x. 19; St. Luke xviii. 20.

<sup>2</sup> St. Matthew xix. 24; St. Mark x. 25; St. Luke xviii. 25.

he gripped his neck with a mighty grip, and he would have killed him had it not been for the power of God, Who kept his eyes from starting out of his head through the pain of the rich man's grip upon his neck. And Peter said unto him, "Why dost thou choke the Apostle of Christ in this manner because he hath spoken one true word unto thee? I also would that thou didst cast away thy possessions. But if thou wilt not cast away even one of the things which are thine, and wilt not hate [them, thou canst not possess life]. And if thou wouldst say that his words are not true, as to what he hath said concerning the camel in the needle's eye, [look and see]." Now at that moment a certain

B. fol.  
253a.  
col. 2.

man, who had a camel with him, | passed by them; and Peter and Thaddeus stopped them, and they asked a man who sold needles for a needle; and the seller of needles wished to help the Apostles, and he sought for a needle with a large eye. Then Peter said unto him, "God | shall bless thee, O my son, and thy faith shall [Page 304] be accepted; but look thou for a needle which hath an exceedingly small eye, so that the glory and the majesty of God may be made manifest in this city." And the man did as Peter had commanded him, and he found a needle with a very small eye. Then the Apostles rose up and stretched out their hands, and prayed, saying, "O Lord Jesus Christ, unto Whom be- longeth the power over all things, we beseech Thee to hearken unto our petition, and supplication, and to make

A. fol.  
137a.  
col. 2.

"manifest Thy power, so that all these people may know that everything | which Thou sayest is true. Yea, O Lord, hearken Thou unto the prayer of Thy servants.

B. fol.  
253b.  
col. 1.

"Behold, Thou seest what Thine Apostles would do, be  
 "pleased then, O God, that this camel shall enter in  
 "through the eye of this needle, and I will praise Thy Name."  
 And Peter said unto the man who was holding the camel,  
 "In the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Nazarene, do  
 "thou [ and thy camel enter in through the eye of this  
 "needle;" and in that same moment the man, together  
 with his camel, went in through the eye of the needle.  
 Then Peter said unto him, "Go in a second time, so  
 "that all these people may know the matter of a cer-  
 "tainty, and may glorify God, and may understand that  
 "there is nothing which is too hard for His power to do."  
 And when the people saw this wondrous thing they  
 lifted up their voices, and said, "There is no god save  
 "the Lord God of these two Apostles, Peter and Thaddeus."

A. fol.  
 137b.  
 col. 1.

And it came to pass that when the rich young man  
 saw this thing he rent his garments, | and smote his  
 face, and said, "Woe is me! Woe is me! because of  
 "what I have done unto this righteous man." Then he  
 bowed down with his face to the ground at the feet of  
 the Apostles, and he wept and besought them to take  
 all his possessions, [Page 305] and to divide them among  
 the poor and the needy, and to cause him to be for-  
 given by God; | and they did for him even as he had  
 asked them. And they admonished him and taught him  
 the commandments of the Law of Faith, and they bap-  
 tized them in the Name of the Father, and of the Son,  
 and of the Holy Spirit, that is to say, him and all the  
 people of the city. Then they administered unto them  
 the Mysteries of the Body of our Lord and His precious  
 Blood, and they built them a church, and appointed over

B. fol.  
 253b.  
 col. 1.

A. fol.  
 137b.  
 col. 2.

B. fol. 254a. col. 1. them bishops and priests, and they wrote for them a Gospel and a Book of commandments; then they departed | from them and were accompanied a short distance on their way by them in peace. Thus was the work of making them to believe performed by our Lord Jesus Christ; and immediately after they had made their confession of faith Thaddeus died, on the second day of the month Hamlē, glorifying the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Spirit, [Who shall endure] for ever and ever. Amen, Amen, and Amen.

A. fol. 138a. col. 1. Here endeth the "[Book of the] Contendings of the Twelve Apostles and of the Seventy-two Disciples." And they prayed and said, | "We have laboured and we have "been scourged for Thy sake; what is our reward?" Then our Lord said unto them, "Ye shall pass boldly [into heaven at "the last day]." And the Twelve Apostles said unto our Lord, "What shall be the reward of the man who putteth "his confidence in our prayers, and celebrateth the com- "memoration of us, and causeth the book [of our acts] "to be written?" And again our Lord said unto them, "Whosoever shall put his confidence in your prayers, and "shall celebrate the commemoration of you, and shall "write the book of your contendings, and shall praise "your sufferings, shall pass with you boldly [into heaven] "at the last day." And now, O brethren, let us celebrate the commemoration of the Apostles, and let us put our confidence in their prayers, so that we may attain unto a portion with them in the kingdom of the heavens. Amen.

And let our father Gabra Mar'āwī receive a tithe

of mercy without shame on that day, together with his children, [Page 306] for ever and ever! Amen.

And may God shew mercy alike upon him that wrote [this book], and upon him that had it written, and upon him that had it read, and upon him that translated it, and upon him that hath listened unto the words thereof, | for ever and ever! Amen, Amen.

A. fol.  
138a.  
col. 2.

And as for those who had this book of the "Con-  
"tendings of the Apostles" written, that is to say Sopho-  
nias, and Dorotheus, and our prince, Krestôs-'Arde'ët,  
and Victor the scribe, because of their love for the  
Twelve Apostles, having confidence in the prayers of the  
Twelve Apostles and in those of the Seventy-two Dis-  
ciples, may God write their names upon a pillar of light  
in letters of gold in the place where Christ the Lord  
shall be glorified with profound hymns of glory and  
praise, for ever and ever! Amen, Amen, and Amen. So  
be it! So be it!

## THE PREACHING OF SAINT MATTHIAS.<sup>1</sup>

B. fol. 118b. col. 1.      [(Page 307] In the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit, [One God.]

And it came to pass in those days that the holy Apostles were gathered together in Jerusalem (now they were all assembled in one place), and they divided the countries of the world among themselves, and they cast lots, so that each of them might go unto the place which fell to him by his lot; and it fell upon the blessed Matthias to go to the city of the Cannibals. | Now in that city the people eat neither bread nor drink water, but only the flesh of men do they eat, and their drink is the blood of men. And whensoever any man goeth into their country they put out his eyes, and give him certain medicine to drink whereby he becometh bewitched, and when he hath drunk the poison for seven days his heart changeth, and his mind changeth, and his understanding becometh like unto that of a beast. Then they carry him to prison, and bring him grass (*or* hay) to eat, and he dwelleth there for thirty days; and after this time

---

<sup>1</sup> The following section is a fuller account of the Preaching of Saint Matthias than that given above (see pp. 267—288); see Lipsius, *Apostelgeschichten*, vol. 1. p. 550 ff.

they bring him out, and slay him, and then they divide his flesh [among] | the people of the city.

B. fol.  
118b.  
col. 2.

Now when Matthias had come into the gate of the city, the people thereof laid hold upon him, and put out his eyes, and made him to drink enchanted medicines, and they put him into the prison-house, and brought him grass (*or* hay) to eat, but Matthias would not eat thereof; and although he had drunk their medicine his heart (*or* understanding) remained unchanged, and his mind | was in no wise altered. And Matthias began to weep, and said, "O my Lord Jesus Christ, for Whose sake we have "left all and followed Thee, I know that Thou wilt be "my helper. Look and see what they have done unto "Matthias Thy servant [Page 308], and how they have "treated me like a beast of the field; but Thou knowest "everything. Since Thou didst command me to come into "this city, if the sinful men thereof [wish] to devour my "flesh [let them do so], and I shall not flee from Thy "command; but give only light unto mine eyes so that "I may see what the sinful men of this city will do unto "me. Be not deaf unto my petition, O my Lord Jesus "Christ, and deliver Thou me not over unto a cruel | death."

A. fol.  
138b.  
col. 2.

And saying these words Matthias wept and groaned aloud. Then straightway there came a great light which illumined the inside of the prison-house, and a Voice went forth from that light which said, "O Matthias, "My beloved, look with thine eyes;" and Matthias looked, and he was able to see, and he rejoiced with an exceedingly great joy, and he fell upon his face and worshipped | that light. Then again a Voice went forth from that light which said, "Be strong, O Matthias, and fear

B. fol.  
119a.  
col. 1.

A. fol.  
139a.  
col. 1.

“not, for I will not forsake thee, and I, even I, will deliver thee; and not thyself only, but all those who are with thee, for I will be with thee every day, and for ever. “And now, wait thou patiently seven and twenty days “for deliverance by man, and after this period I will “send unto thee thy brother Andrew, and he shall bring “thee out from this place, and not thyself only but all  
 B. fol. “those who are with thee here.” Then the Voice | said  
 119a. unto him, “Peace be unto thee, O Matthias,” and the light  
 col. 2. passed away into the heavens. And Matthias, being full of joy said, “Let Thy grace come to me and be with “me, O Jesus Christ, my Lord;” and having said these words he sat down.

And the officers of the prison-house came to bring out men for the food of the people of the city; and Matthias was there, and he kept his eyes shut so that they  
 A. fol. should not see that | he had the power of sight. And  
 139a. the officers came to where he was, and they read out  
 col. 2. [Page 309] the writing of the tablet which was on his hand, and said among themselves, “Three days are still “left unto him, and then we will bring him out, and slay “him for the food [of the people].” Now it was the custom of that country for the people thereof whenever they seized a stranger (*or* traveller) to cast him into the prison-house, and they kept account of the day wherein they had brought him in [there], by tying a written tablet to his hand for thirty days; and then, when | he had  
 B. fol. become fat, they would bring him out, and kill him and  
 119b. eat him. And when Matthias had completed [his thirty  
 col. 1. days] they laid hold upon him [to bring him out, and to kill and eat him]. Then our Lord appeared unto Andrew

and his disciples in the country wherein they were teaching, and He said unto Andrew, "Andrew." And Andrew answered and said unto Him, "What is it, Lord?" Then the Lord said unto him, "Rise up and depart unto the city of the Cannibals,<sup>1</sup> unto the place which I will shew thee, and bring out Matthias | from thence. Three A. fol. 139b. col. 1.

"days are [still] left unto him, but after that time sinful men will lay hold upon him, so that they may perform the work of wickedness and kill him." Then Andrew answered and said unto him, "Lord, how can I perform the journey, and arrive [there], and find him in three days? And besides, I know not the road, for I have never travelled thereon. Send an angel [endowed] with power to bring him forth thence, for I am only a being of flesh, and Thou | knowest what the flesh of man is, B. fol. 139b. col. 2.

"and I am afraid to go thither." And our Lord answered and said unto Andrew, "Hearken, O Andrew, if I had the wish I could speak one word unto Matthias and his disciples, and I could bring them hither forthwith. But now, rise up and depart at daybreak unto the sea-coast, where thou shalt find a ship ready [to sail]; and thou shalt ask those who are in the ship where they are going, so that thou mayest go [with them] and fulfil My | command." Then Andrew rose up [Page 310] A. fol. 139b. col. 2.

at daybreak and went to the sea, and he saw a little

<sup>1</sup> The city of the Cannibals was probably situated in the wild country which lay to the east and north of the Black Sea, and it has been identified with Sinope. That the country to which Andrew went was Scythia seems tolerably certain, and we know from Strabo that cannibals were thought to live there (καίτοι τὸ γε τῆς ἀνθρωποφαγίας καὶ Σκυθικὸν εἶναι λέγεται (Bk. iv. cap. 5. § 4); the place identified with the city varied at various dates.

ship and three men sitting therein; now it was our Lord Jesus Christ and His power that had made the ship, and He had caused His glory to be hidden, and He appeared in the form of a man. And our Lord had brought three angels [with Him] and He made [them to appear] as if they were wishing to treat the Apostles with roughness. Then Andrew said unto them, "We may not give slumber

- B. fol. "[unto our eyes], for we are the | disciples of Jesus Christ,  
 120a. "and servants of the Good God. When He chose us  
 col. 1. "Twelve He gave us a commandment, saying, 'When ye  
 "travel ye shall preach and teach, and ye shall not  
 "take with you nor shall ye carry either gold, or silver, or  
 "wallet, or staff, or two changes of raiment, or any  
 "piece of money in your wallet, except that which [is  
 "sufficient to buy] one loaf of bread;' therefore we have  
 "no [money] in our hand. Now, if ye will deal graciously  
 A. fol. "[with us], tell us | quickly; and if ye will not, behold,  
 140a. "we will go and enquire [if we can sail] in other ships."  
 col. 1.

- And Jesus answered and said, "Is the command  
 "which your Lord hath given you indeed thus? Verily  
 "I say unto you, Get ye up into My ship, O ye Apostles  
 "of Jesus Christ, for I would rather have you in it than  
 "those who would give Me money. Is it not meet for  
 B. fol. "Me [to be] with the Apostles of the Lord God, | and  
 120a. "to travel with them unto Mine own country?" Then An-  
 col. 2. drew answered and said unto Him, "May Jesus Christ  
 "keep thee, and give Thee glory and praise, O my be-  
 "loved Brother;" and Andrew went up into the ship with  
 his disciples, and [stood on] the deck(?). And Jesus  
 answered and said unto the angels, "Rise up and go  
 "down into the body of the ship, and bring up three

"loaves of bread which [these men] may eat;" and they brought [them] unto Him. And Jesus answered | and said, "O my brother Andrew, [Page 311] rise up and "take [this] bread, so that ye may be able to bear the "waves of the sea;" and Andrew said unto his disciples, "We have found in this Man great love for His fellow "creatures." Then Andrew answered and said, "O my "Brother, may God give unto Thee bread in the kingdom | "of heaven! And now, leave me, O my Brother." And Jesus answered and said unto Andrew, "Compel these "thy men to take some food," but a voice answered Him, saying, "They are not able to eat anything whatsoever, "for they have been greatly frightened since they saw "the sea, and they are not accustomed to travel thereon." Then Jesus answered and said unto Andrew, "Fear thou "not, for nothing [shall harm] thy disciples in passing "over the sea. But enquire of them if they wish to "descend to the land [again], and to wait there until thou "hast gone and performed what thou hast been com- "manded [to do], after which thou wilt return unto "them." | So Andrew asked his disciples, saying, "O my "children, do ye desire to descend to the land, and to "wait there whilst I go and fulfil my mission and return "unto you?" Then Andrew's disciples answered and said [unto him], "If we were to dissemble in | our heart, and "were to say with our mouth 'We are not afraid', we "should be liars; but, inasmuch as if we were remote "from thee we should become strangers to the good "things which thou hast given unto us, we will go with "thee whithersoever thou goest."

A. fol.  
140a.  
col. 2.

B. fol.  
120b.  
col. 1.

A. fol.  
140b.  
col. 1.

B. fol.  
120b.  
col. 2.

Then Jesus answered and said unto him, "If thou

"art the disciple of our Lord Jesus Christ, teach thy  
 "disciples with sweet words how to make their hearts to  
 "rejoice, and to forget the billows of the sea, for behold,  
 "we are going to take the ship away some distance from  
 "the land." And Jesus commanded the angels, saying,  
 "Let go the ship from the land," and they let the ship  
 go from the land. Then Jesus went and [Page 312] sat

A. fol.  
 140b.  
 col. 2.

down | upon the place for steering that He might steer  
 the ship, and meanwhile Andrew admonished and taught  
 his disciples, and encouraged them, saying, "O my  
 "children who have delivered yourselves over [to tribu-  
 "lation] for the sake of Christ, let not your hearts be

B. fol.  
 121a.  
 col. 1.

"moved, for our Lord will | not forsake us, and He will  
 "be with us and will preserve us for ever. Now, in times  
 "past, we the Twelve Apostles embarked in a ship, and  
 "our Lord was with us; and our Lord went down into  
 "the body of the ship, and lay down to sleep, wishing to  
 "try us, but He did not go to sleep. And a very mighty  
 "wind arose, and the waves of the sea dashed over the  
 "ship, and great fear laid hold upon us; then He arose  
 "and rebuked the sea and the winds, and there came a  
 "great calm over the sea, for all things fear Him because  
 "they are the work of His hands. Fear not then, O my

A. fol.  
 141a.  
 col. 1.

"children, for God will not neglect you." | Then whilst  
 Andrew was admonishing them with these words, and  
 praying in his heart that sleep might overtake his dis-  
 ciples, they fell asleep. And whilst Andrew was praying  
 on their behalf his disciples fell into a slumber, and slept  
 a | deep sleep, and when Andrew knew that they were  
 asleep he rejoiced with an exceedingly great joy.

B. fol.  
 121a.  
 col. 2.

Then Andrew turned towards Jesus, Who was in the

form of the master of the ship, and he began to hold converse with Him; now He knew not that the Man was Jesus. And he said unto Him, "O my Brother, verily "Thou art cunning in Thy craft, and the steering of a "ship is well suited to Thee, for no man can steer a ship "as Thou canst. Verily, I say unto thee, I have crossed "the sea seventeen times, behold, seventeen times, and "I never saw a mariner as skilled as Thou art, for Thou "steerest this ship as well on the sea as if it were upon "land." Then Jesus answered and said [Page 313] unto Andrew, "O my brother, in travelling over this sea we "have been in | tribulation many times, but the sea knoweth "that thou art a disciple of Christ and a righteous man, "and it doeth honour unto thee [now], and it will not lift "up its waves against thee." Then Andrew cried out with a loud voice, saying, "I give thanks unto Thee, | and "I bless Thee, O my Lord Jesus Christ, that I am holding "converse with a Man Who doth glorify Thee." And Jesus answered and said unto Andrew, "Tell Me, O "disciple of the Lord Jesus, why the unbelieving Jews did "not believe in Jesus, and why they said, 'He is not the "'Son of God, but a man.' Reveal the matter to Me "then, O thou who art a disciple of Jesus, for we have "heard that He made Himself manifest to His disciples "in the mountain." Then Andrew answered and said unto Him, "Yea, He did, O my Brother, and I will tell "Thee how God revealed Himself unto us. It was He "Who made man, and Who for our salvation became "Man, and a was crucified, | and rose in the form of God, "for He is God." And Jesus answered and said unto him, "Why then was it that the Jews did not believe?

A. fol.  
141a.  
col. 2.

B. fol.  
121b.  
col. 1.

A. fol.  
141b.  
col. 1.

B. fol. "Dost thou know whether it was because He did not  
 121b. "work [miracles] before them?" | Then Andrew answered  
 col. 2. and said unto Him, "Hast thou never heard how our  
 "Lord wrought mighty deeds before them? How He  
 "opened the eyes of the blind, and made the lame to  
 "walk, and the deaf to hear, and how He raised the dead,  
 "and cleansed the lepers, and turned water into wine, and  
 "how He took five [loaves] of bread, and two fishes, and  
 "commanded the multitudes of the people to sit down  
 "upon the grass, and how having broken the bread [He  
 "gave it to them,] and they were all filled? Now the  
 "number of those people was five thousand, but even  
 "after this [the Jews] did not believe." And Jesus answered,  
 [Page 314] and said unto him, "I think that this miracle  
 "which He wrought [was done] among the people and  
 "not before the priests." Then Andrew said unto Him,  
 A. fol. "Not only openly did He | work [miracles], but He did so  
 141b. "in secret also; and still they did not believe in Him."  
 col. 2. And Jesus answered and said unto him, "Tell me now,  
 "truly, what your Master did in secret." Then Andrew  
 B. fol. answered and said, "I believe | that Thou wouldst put me  
 122a. "to the test." And Jesus answered and said unto him,  
 col. 1. "Tell Me, O my brother, so that My soul may rejoice."

Then Andrew answered and said unto Him, "O my  
 "son, may God perfect for Thee every good work! And  
 "now, hearken unto [the story of] the miracle which our  
 "Lord 'Jesus Christ wrought in secret. The Twelve  
 "Apostles were with our Lord, and when the chief priests  
 "saw us following Him, they said unto us, 'Woe be unto  
 "'you, O accursed ones, for ye follow after this Man who  
 "'saith, I am the Son of God. Who among you hath

"seen God and conversed with Him? Is not MARY His  
 "mother? And are not | James and Simon His brethren?" A. fol.  
 "Now when we heard these words our hearts turned 142a.  
 "towards unbelief. Then Jesus knew that our hearts were col. 1.  
 "turning away from Him, and our Lord took us and  
 "carried us away into a desert | place, and He wrought B. fol.  
 "a mighty miracle and performed a most wonderful thing 122a.  
 "before us, and made manifest His Divinity unto us. Then col. 2.  
 "we said unto the chief priests, 'Come ye and see for  
 "yourselves if ye will not believe us;' and the chief priests  
 "came with us, and we went with them into one of their  
 "heathen temples. And when we had entered in we saw  
 "a similitude of the heavens<sup>1</sup> [which was so exact] that  
 "we believed that it was God [Who had made it]; and  
 "there came in with us three men from among the  
 "people, and four of the [Page 315] chief priests. Then,  
 "having come inside the temple, Jesus saw two images  
 "which were hewn out of stone, the one on the right  
 "hand, and the other on the left of the temple. And  
 "our Lord made us to turn round and said unto the men,  
 "Do ye see the similitude (*or* figure) of the heavens?  
 "Those which ye | see are the figures of the Seraphim A. fol.  
 "and Cherubim, which are in heaven above, but they 142a.  
 "are the work of men upon the earth.' Then Jesus col. 2.  
 "turned to the figure which was at the right of the place  
 "where the cunning work was, and said unto it, | 'I say B. fol.  
 "unto thee, O thou figure of a heavenly being which 122b.  
 "hath been fashioned by a handicraftsman, remove thy col. 1.  
 "self, and come down from the place whereon thou art,

<sup>1</sup> Perhaps a figure, or statue, of a god is here meant.

- “and tell the chief priests whether I am God or no, and  
 “rebuke them.’ Then straightway, in that same hour,  
 “the statue leaped down, and spake after the manner of  
 “a man, and said, ‘O ye foolish Jews, who live always in  
 “blindness, and are never able to cease therefrom!  
 “moreover, there are others who wish to be as blind as  
 “ye are, and who say that [He Who is] God is [only] a  
 “man. But it is He Who fashioned man in the beginning,  
 “and Who gave unto him His own breath of life; it is  
 “He Who causeth to move everything which moveth; it  
 “is He Who held converse with Abraham; it is He Who  
 “brought Jacob back to his own country; it is He Who  
 A. fol. “is the God of the living and of the dead; | it is He  
 142b. “Who is ready [to bestow] blessings upon those who call  
 col. 1. “upon Him; and it is He Who is ready to punish those  
 “who do not submit unto Him. Can ye not see that I  
 B. fol. “am only a [piece of] carved stone? | I say unto you  
 122b. “that we are [pieces of] carved stone which have been  
 col. 2. “hewn into shape by the hand of the handicraftsman,  
 “and yet they call us, and give us the name of ‘gods!’  
 “But this they say because they know not God; and  
 “their priests who minister with sacrifices make them-  
 “selves pure that they may minister at their altars because  
 “they are afraid of devils; and for this reason [Page 316]  
 “they have given us the name of ‘gods,’ and they call  
 “us by this name because they know not God. For  
 “when the priests have had intercourse with devils (i. e.,  
 “women) they purify themselves [for seven days], and  
 “then they bring in offerings to me through fear. Ye  
 A. fol. “commit fornication, and then ye take the Law of God  
 142b. “in your hand, and come into | your synagogues, and  
 col. 2.

“perform the service, and read the services, and yet fear  
 “not the glorious Word of God. Therefore shall your  
 “synagogues be destroyed, | and they shall become B. fol.  
 “churches to the Name of the One Who is the Son of 123a.  
 “the Lord God.’ col. 1.

“And having said these things the image held its  
 “peace. Then we answered and said unto the chief  
 “priests, ‘Do ye believe? Behold, ye must speak what is  
 “right [before] this stone image, and ye must shew your-  
 “selves to be ashamed.’ And the chief priests answered  
 “and said, ‘Ye must see and understand that this stone  
 “speaketh only by means of [your] sorceries, and ye  
 “must not imagine that it is God Who speaketh unto us;  
 “and if ye think that it is the stone itself which speaketh,  
 “[ye err] and ye must know that it is only by means  
 “of [your] sorceries that [it doeth so]. For behold, ye  
 “heard the stone say, It was He Who spake with  
 “Abraham. Where now, did the stone find | Abraham? A. fol.  
 “It is not a few days since Abraham died, nay, it must 143a.  
 “have been before he (i. e., the figure in the stone) was col. 1.  
 “born. How then could he have known Abraham?’ And  
 “having again turned Himself towards the statue, | Jesus B. fol.  
 “said unto it, ‘Inasmuch as they do not believe what thou 123a.  
 “didst say unto them concerning Abraham, whose body col. 2.  
 “is in the grave, and whose soul is in the Garden of Joy  
 “(i. e., Paradise), go thou and speak unto them, saying,  
 “Thus saith He Who fashioned man at the creation, and  
 “Who made thee to be [His] friend,<sup>1</sup> Rise up, and come

---

<sup>1</sup> The allusion here is to the Bible passages in which Abraham  
 is called the “Friend” of God; see 2 Chronicles xx. 7; Isaiah xli. 8.

"forth, thou and thy son Isaac, and Jacob, thy son's son,  
 "and come into the three temples of Bâsyôs, and rebuke  
 "the priests, [Page 317] and let them know that I know  
 "thee, and that thou knowest Me.'

"And when the image heard these words from our  
 "Lord it straightway passed by us, as we were all  
 "looking on, and it departed and journeyed unto the land  
 "of the Canaanites, and came unto the grave of Abraham;  
 A. fol. "and it stood up outside the grave, | and cried out and  
 143a. "declared the command which [it had received] from our  
 col. 2. "Lord. Then straightway the twelve patriarchs came  
 B. fol. "forth alive | from the grave, and they said unto the  
 123b. "image, 'Unto whom among us hast thou been sent?'  
 col. 1. "And the statue answered and said unto them, 'Unto  
 "three of the patriarchs [only]; get ye in and sleep until the  
 "time of the resurrection;' and when they [the nine other  
 "patriarchs] heard [this] they went into their graves. Then  
 "the [three] patriarchs departed with the image, and they  
 "came unto the chief priests, and rebuked them; and  
 "after this Jesus said unto them, 'Depart ye unto your  
 "'places and sleep, O fathers.' And having turned Him-  
 "self towards the image, Jesus said unto it, 'Return thou  
 "unto thy place;' and straightway it returned to its place,  
 "and remained as it had been aforetime. Now the chief  
 "priests, although they had seen these things, did not  
 "believe. And besides this thing there were many other  
 A. fol. "things which our Lord shewed unto us in secret, and  
 143b. "if | I were to tell [them] to Thee, O my Brother, Thou  
 col. 1.

(אַבְרָהָם אֱהִי). Among the Arabs Abraham is usually called ابراهيم  
 الخليل "Ibrahim al-Khalil;" see Masûdi (ed. B. de Meynard), tom. 1.  
 p. 83; Sale, *Koran*, p. 67.

"wouldst not be able to understand them." And Jesus  
 "answered and said unto him, "I am able to understand  
 "every hidden thing, and everything which belongeth  
 "unto faith; | for a few words suffice for the wise man, B. fol.  
 "but the soul of the fool will not believe whatsoever a man 123b.  
 "tellet him until the day of his death." col. 2.

And Jesus knew within Himself that the ship was  
 nigh to arrive at the shore, and He ceased to talk with  
 Andrew, and having laid down his head he also fell  
 asleep. Now when Jesus knew that Andrew was asleep, He  
 said unto His [Page 318] angels, "Make flat your hands, and  
 "lift up Andrew and his disciples, and depart, and set them  
 "down outside the City of the Cannibals, and when ye  
 "have set them down, then come back to Me." Then  
 they laid flat [their hands], as Jesus had commanded them,  
 and they lifted up Andrew and his disciples, and they  
 flew up | into the air [with them], and laid them down B. fol.  
 outside the | City of the Cannibals; then Jesus went back 124a.  
 into heaven, together with His angels. And when the col. 1.  
 morning had come Andrew awoke, and opened his eyes, A. fol.  
 and he saw that he was upon dry land, and he sat and 143b.  
 gazed at the gates of the city; and turning round he col. 2.  
 saw that his disciples were [still] sleeping. Then he woke  
 them up, and said unto them, "Rise up, O my children,  
 "and learn ye concerning the work of mercy which the  
 "Lord wrought for us on the sea, but we did not recognize  
 "Him, for He turned away his face; and He appeared  
 "in the form of a man [wishing] to try us." Then Andrew  
 said, "O Lord, I know the beauty of Thy works and  
 "word, but Thou didst not reveal Thyself unto me, and  
 "therefore I did not recognize Thee." And Andrew's

- B. fol. disciples answered and said unto him, "We | know that  
 124a. "whilst thou wast talking with Him we fell asleep, and  
 col. 2. "three eagles swooped down and snatched away our souls  
 A. fol. "into heaven. | And we saw a great marvel, for we saw  
 144a. "our Lord Jesus Christ sitting on the throne of His glory,  
 col. 1. "and all His angels were round about Him. And we saw  
 "Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, and all the saints, and  
 "David singing psalms to his harp, and we saw you, and  
 "the [other] Apostles, standing before our Lord Jesus  
 "Christ; and by the side of you were [twelve] angels, and  
 "behind you was [one] angel in your form. And we heard  
 "God [Page 319] saying unto His angels, 'Hearken ye unto  
 "whatsoever My Apostles shall say unto you.' This is  
 "what we saw, O our father Andrew, and at length thou  
 B. fol. "didst wake us up, and we | arose, and our souls returned  
 124b. "into our bodies." Then when Andrew had heard these  
 col. 1. words he rejoiced with an exceedingly great joy, because  
 A. fol. | God had made his disciples worthy to see this wonder-  
 144a. ful thing. And Andrew lifted up his eyes into heaven,  
 col. 2. and cried out with a loud voice, saying, "O my Lord  
 "Jesus Christ, shew Thou Thyself unto me that I may  
 "know that Thou art not far from Thy servants. And  
 "O my Lord Jesus Christ, forgive Thou me in that when  
 "I was on the ship I held converse with Thee pridefully,  
 "thinking that Thou wast a man whom I could teach;  
 "and now, O my Lord, appear Thou unto me and make  
 "Thyself manifest."

And whilst Andrew was speaking thus the Lord came  
 unto him, and He appeared in the form of a beautiful  
 B. fol. Child. Then Jesus answered and said unto him, "Hail,  
 124b. "My friend | Andrew!" And Andrew [looked and] saw  
 col. 2.

great majesty, and the Child standing there, and he knew that He was Jesus; and Andrew bowed low before Him, saying, "Forgive me, O my Lord Jesus Christ, | in that I "thought Thee to be a man on the ship, and because I "held converse with Thee [as such]. How could I help "sinning against Thee, O Lord? For Thou didst not "reveal Thyself openly unto me." Then Jesus answered and said unto him, "Thou hast not sinned, O Andrew, "but I have done all these things unto thee because thou "didst say that thou couldst not go to this city in three "days. Therefore have I shewn thee that I am able to "do everything, and that I can make Myself to appear "in any form I please. And now, rise up, and enter into "the City of the Cannibals, and go to the [Page 320] "prison- | house wherein Matthias is, and bring him and "all the other men out therefrom. Behold, I tell Thee "what shall happen [unto thee]. Thou shalt endure "suffering, and in this city they shall treat thee with "contumely and disgrace; and they shall bring judgments "upon thee, and shall strew the flesh of thy body about "in the streets and open places in the city. They shall "pour out thy blood like water, but they shall not be "able to slay thee, and they shall bring | many judgments "upon thee, but bear thou them patiently, O My friend "Andrew, and act not as do those who have no faith. "Remember how they scourged Me, and spat in My face, "saying, 'He casteth out devils by means of Beelzebub.'<sup>1</sup> "Was I not able, in the twinkling of an eye, to shake "down the heavens and the earth upon those who sinned

A. fol.  
144b.  
col. 1.

B. fol.  
125a.  
col. 1.

A. fol.  
144b.  
col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> St. Matthew xii. 24.

“against Me? Yet I endured patiently that I might give  
 “the example of Myself unto you. But know, O Andrew,  
 B. fol. “and endure, for those | who will shew themselves hostile  
 125a. “to thee in this city are those who have no understanding.”  
 col. 2. And having said these words Jesus went up into heaven.

Then Andrew rose up and came into the city, together with his disciples, and there was none who saw them. And when they arrived at the prison-house, Andrew saw seven men standing by [and guarding] the door of the prison-house, and he prayed a prayer, and these  
 A. fol. men fell down upon the ground, and | died; and the Apostles  
 145a. drew nigh unto the doors, and by the might of Christ  
 col. 1. they opened wide of themselves. Then Andrew went into the prison-house with his disciples, and they saw Matthias sitting and singing psalms; and when Matthias saw him, he rose up, and they embraced each other. And Andrew answered and said unto him, “O my brother  
 “Matthias, how findest thou thyself [here]? Behold, there  
 “are only three days left unto thee before they bring thee  
 “out to eat thee. What hath become of the mighty  
 “deeds which [our] Master [Page 321] hath wrought? If I  
 “were to tell thee | the earth would quake.” And Matthias  
 B. fol. said unto him, “O my brother, hast thou not heard our  
 125b. “Lord say, ‘Behold, I send you forth like sheep among  
 col. 1. “‘wolves?’”<sup>1</sup> Now, our Lord came and entered into the  
 “prison-house, and appeared unto me, and said unto me,  
 “‘Bear patiently for seven and twenty days, and after  
 A. fol. “‘that time I will send Andrew to bring thee out of the  
 145a. “‘prison-house, and not thee only, but all those | who are  
 col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> St. Matthew x. 16.

"with thee;" and behold, according as our Lord spake  
 "unto me I see thee this day. Look at these things and  
 "see, O Andrew." Then Andrew turned and saw men  
 and women naked, and they were all eating hay like  
 animals. And Andrew smote his breast, and said, "Look  
 "and see how they treat these people who are like unto  
 "ourselves, for they treat them like the beasts." Then  
 Andrew began to curse the Devil, and he said unto him,  
 "Woe be unto thee, O thou Devil, thou enemy of God,  
 "thou foe of all the | saints, for these rational beings have B. fol.  
 "done no evil whatsoever! How couldst thou bring upon 125b.  
 "them this cruel treatment? How long hast thou fought col. 2.  
 "[with us]? Even from the time of the Garden of Delight  
 "[which was] in [this] earth. Thou hast given them to  
 "eat of hay which was sown in the earth, and thou hast  
 "placed a stone upon the table in the place of bread.  
 "And, moreover, thou didst enter into the minds of the  
 "angels in such wise that they desired women | where- A. fol.  
 "with they might work uncleanness, and they begot sons 145b.  
 "[who were] giants. And besides, thou didst enter into col. 1.  
 "the heart of the giants in such wise that they devoured  
 "men upon the earth, and God was wroth with them,  
 "and brought a flood and blotted out everything which  
 "He had created upon the earth, except the righteous  
 "man Noah and his house. And besides, thou hast come  
 "hither and hast made [Page 322] [the people] to devour  
 "men. Dost thou imagine that God cannot blot thee  
 "out because the waters of a flood shall not come [again]  
 "upon the earth? But beyond doubt thy doom | shall B. fol.  
 "come upon thee." 126a.  
 col. 1.

Then Andrew and Matthias prayed, and after they

BB\*

had prayed, Andrew laid his hand on the faces of those who were in the prison-house, both men and women, and straightway they were able to see; and then, again, he laid his hand upon their bodies (*literally*, livers), and their hearts turned again into those of men. And Andrew answered | and said unto them, "Rise up and depart unto  
 A. fol. 145b. col. 2. "the lower parts of the city, and ye shall find on the way a large fig tree; sit ye down under it, and eat of the fruit thereof, until I come unto you. And however long I tarry [in coming], ye shall find thereon food for you to eat, for the fruit which is upon that fig tree is without number, and the more ye eat of the fruit of that fig tree the more will the fruit thereof increase, according as God hath commanded." Then those people answered and said unto Andrew, "Come thou also with us, lest, when the people of the city see us, they treat us again as enemies and inflict upon us much more  
 B. fol. 126a. col. 2. "injury than they have hitherto done." | And Andrew said unto them, "Verily I say unto you, that as ye go on your way not even a dog shall lift up his tongue against you." So they all went forth from the prison-house, even as the | blessed Andrew had told them [to do].  
 A. fol. 146a. col. 1. Now those people who were in the prison-house were both men and women, and the number of the men was one thousand and forty-nine, and that of the women was forty-nine,<sup>1</sup> and [all] these Andrew made to go forth from the prison-house. And Matthias and his disciples set out to go towards the eastern part of the city. Then Andrew said, "Let a cloud descend and take up Matthias and the

---

<sup>1</sup> LIPSIVS gives "27 Männer und 49 Frauen" (vol. 1. p. 551).

"disciples of Andrew, and carry them unto [Page 323]  
 "the place where Peter sitteth and teacheth [the people];"  
 and the cloud brought them unto him.

And Andrew went forth from the prison-house and departed unto the market-place of the city, and no man saw him; and as he was going along he saw a pillar of brass whereon [stood] an image, and he went and sat down by the side of it in order that he might see what it was. Then certain men departed to go unto the prison-house to bring forth people for the food of the [men of the] city, according | to their ancient wont and usage, and they found the doors thereof wide open, and the keepers | lying dead outside them; and when they had come into the prison-house they found no one there at all, and they departed and told the magistrates of the city what had happened. And they said unto them, "We went to the prison-house, and found the doors wide open, and those who had guarded them were lying dead upon the ground; and when we went inside we found no one at all [there]." Now when the magistrates of the city heard this, they said, "What hath happened? Many people had gone into the prison-house, and where shall we find our food?" Then they gave orders unto the soldiers of the guard, and said unto them, "Bring hither unto us those seven men who died, and let them be our food this day. To-morrow we will gather together the aged men of the city and they shall cast lots, and the seven men upon whom the lot shall fall shall be our tribute, and they shall be our food, until we can send | and gather together stranger folk and people from the districts and borders of the city, | and bring them [here]

B. fol.  
 126b.  
 col. 1.  
 A. fol.  
 146a.  
 col. 2.

B. fol.  
 126b.  
 col. 2.  
 A. fol.  
 146b.  
 col. 1.

"that we may eat them." So the soldiers of the guard went to fetch the men who were dead.

Now there was in the middle of the city a burning, fiery furnace, above which was a huge stone in the form of a shallow trough, and upon this stone they slaughtered men and women, and distributed their blood; and they brought the [seven] dead men and [Page 324] laid them upon the stone slab to cut them up. Then Andrew heard a voice which said, "Andrew, see what [great] sin "is committed in this city!" And when Andrew had seen it, he prayed to the Lord God, and said, "O my Lord "Jesus Christ, I have come to live in this city, and let "not the deeds of violence which are wrought therein be "multiplied in any way. Let the slaughtering knives slip

B. fol. 127a. col. 1. "out of their hands, and, as wax melteth at the fire, | even  
A. fol. 146b. col. 2. "so let [the bodies of the slaughterers] melt away." Then the soldiers of the guard of the city put forth their hands | to cut up the dead bodies, but their knives fell from them. Now when the magistrates saw these things they wept, and said, "Woe be unto us! Sorcerers have "come into our city and have wrought all these things, "and they have caused the knives to fall from their "hands; what shall we do? Let us gather together the "aged men of the city, for we are hungry." Then the guards of the city went and gathered together all the aged men (now the number of those who were thus gathered together was two hundred and ten),<sup>1</sup> and they brought them to the magistrates, and they made them to cast lots for seven men. And [one] of those upon whom

<sup>1</sup> LIPSIUS (*ibid.*) gives 217.

the lot fell said unto the guards of the city, "I have a  
 "son, prithee, take him, and slaughter him instead of me,  
 "and let me go free;" and the guards said unto him,  
 "We may not take thy son without first of all telling  
 "the | magistrates." So the guards went and told the | B. fol.  
 magistrates, and they answered and said unto the guards, 127a.  
 "If he will give you his son in his place, take him, and col. 2.  
 "let the father go free." And the guards came and A. fol.  
 told the old man what the magistrates had said, and he said 147a.  
 unto them, "I have a daughter [also]; take them both and col. 1.  
 "slaughter them, and let me [Page 325] go free." And  
 he gave his children to the guards that they might  
 slaughter them, and they took the children to the stone  
 slab to do so. Then the children of the man wept and  
 cried out, and made supplication unto the guards, praying,  
 "We beseech you not to kill us at this season of our  
 "lives, but let us be free for a little while longer, and  
 "let us live until we arrive at our maturity, and then ye  
 "can slaughter us;" but the guards would not consent  
 [to this]. And, moreover, these people had yet another  
 sinful habit: if anyone died belonging to them they used  
 to eat them and did not bury them, and for this reason  
 they have no graves in their country. | Now the guards B. fol.  
 would not consent | to what the children asked them, but 127b.  
 they made them go forth to the place where they intended col. 1.  
 to slaughter them without mercy. A. fol.  
 147a.  
 col. 2.

And when Andrew saw what had taken place, he  
 wept, and said, "O my Lord Jesus Christ, hasten Thy  
 "mercy, for Thou seest [these] children weeping and  
 "groaning." And Saint Andrew wept, and looked up  
 into heaven, saying, "O my Lord Jesus Christ, Who didst

- "hear me in the matter of the seven dead men, and didst  
 "not permit these guards to lift up their hands against  
 "them, hear me now, I beseech Thee, and permit not  
 "these guards to lift up their hands against these  
 "children." Then when the guards lifted up their hands  
 against the children their slaughtering knives fell from  
 their hands, and they (i. e., the men) melted away as  
 doth wax before the face of the fire. Now when the  
 magistrates saw [these things] they feared exceedingly; and  
 when | Andrew saw the miracle which had taken place,  
 he | blessed God with a salutation of peace. Amen.
- A. fol. 147b. col. 1.  
 B. fol. 127b. col. 2.
- And when the magistrates saw what had taken place,  
 they wept with a great weeping, saying, "Woe unto us!  
 "Woe unto us! What shall we do?" [Page 326] And behold,  
 the Devil came in the form of an old man, and stood up in  
 their midst, and he began to say unto them, "Woe unto  
 "you! Woe unto you! Now shall ye die for want of  
 "food, for what shall sheep and ox profit you, seeing that  
 "ye cannot eat them? And now, rise up, and seek in  
 "the city for a man whose name is Andrew, and slay  
 "ye him, for if ye do not this there is nothing whatso-  
 "ever left for you to do. He it is who hath entered into  
 "the prison-house and set free the strangers whom ye  
 "had shut up therein, and he hath been living in the  
 "city, yet ye knew him not! And now, deal cunningly  
 "with him and seek him out, and rise up and kill him,  
 "so that henceforth ye may be able to | gather together  
 "your food [without hindrance]." Then Andrew, who  
 was listening, said unto the | Devil, "Woe unto thee, O  
 "Bêrâhêl, thou enemy of all created beings, who dost  
 wage war [against them] continually, for our Lord Jesus
- A. fol. 147b. col. 2.  
 B. fol. 128a. col. 1.

"Christ shall bring thee down into Sheol [and] Gehenna." And when the Devil had heard [these words], he said, "I hear his voice, but I see no man." Then Andrew answered and said unto him, "It is because thou art "blind that thou hast been named 'Semâ'êl', and thou "shalt never see the saints." And on hearing this the Devil said unto the men of the city, "Now, seek ye after "him that speaketh unto me, for he is the man [who "hath bewitched the men of the guard];" and the people of the city ran and shut the gates. Then Andrew said unto them, "Here am I whom ye seek;" and they all ran towards him, and they came up to him and laid hold upon him, and said unto him, "According as thou "hast done evil unto us even so will we do evil unto "thee." And they said among themselves, | "If we cut "off his head his death will not be [sufficiently] cruel." Then one of them, whose heart had been entered and filled by the Devil, [Page 327] answered and said, "Hearken unto me, all of you. | Let us tie a rope round "his neck and drag him through the market-place of the "city and through the squares thereof, and let us drag "him about the streets until he die, and [then] we will divide "his body among the people of the city." And when they heard these words they did even as the Devil had said unto them, and they tied a rope round the neck of the blessed Andrew, and began to drag him about through the squares and the market-place of the city. Now as they were dragging him about [portions of] his flesh clave unto the ground, and his blood flowed down like water upon the earth; and when the evening had come they bound him in chains, and fastened his hands in fetters,

A. fol.  
148a.  
col. 1.

B. fol.  
128a.  
col. 2.

and cast him into the prison-house, where they inflicted grievous sufferings and cruel injuries upon him. And as

A. fol. soon as | the morning was come they tied a rope round  
148a. his neck and dragged him about the streets, and again  
col. 2. [portions of] his flesh clave unto the ground. Now whilst

they were dragging him about the second time, the blessed Andrew wept, saying, "O my Lord Jesus Christ,

B. fol. "look upon me, and see what these sinful men are | doing  
128b. "unto me; but I am bearing [all] patiently because of the  
col. 1. "command which Thou didst give me, saying, 'Act not

"like unto those who have no faith.' And now, O my  
"Lord Jesus Christ, strengthen Thou my soul, for the

"sufferings which these men are inflicting upon me are  
"not a few. And behold, my soul waxeth weak, and

"Thou Thyself knowest well what the flesh of man is,  
"and how if but a small wound be made in his body he

"suffereth pain in every part thereof. O my Lord, my  
"whole body hath become dead because of the multitude

"of tortures [which it hath endured]. But make strong  
"my soul and see what they have done unto me, for I

A. fol. "know that | Thou wilt be remote neither from me nor  
148b. "from Thy servants, and I will not refuse [to obey] the  
col. 1. "command which Thou hast given unto me. And if it

"be that Thou wilt not make [Page 328] these men to go  
"down into the abyss, even then far be it from me to

"forsake Thy commandment until I die. For Thou art  
"my God, therefore let not mine adversary the Devil have

B. fol. "me in derision, and smite Thou him | upon the mouth,  
128b. "so that he may not be able to speak."  
col. 2.

And as soon as the evening was come they again bound him in chains, and cast him into the prison-house.

Then the Devil went unto the prison-house to the blessed Andrew, taking seven devils with him, and they went in before Andrew, and began to laugh and to mock at him exceedingly. And the seven devils and the Devil answered and said unto Andrew, "Andrew, now hast thou "come into our hand[s]. Where is thy strength, and thy "might, and the glory, and [the greatness] wherewith "thou hast magnified thy face? Thou hast disgraced us, "and driven us away and hast declared our | works unto A. fol. 148b. col. 2.

"all men. Thou hast made our altars houses of desola-  
 "tion, and no offerings wherein we might delight our-  
 "selves enter therein, and because of this thing we are  
 "going to kill thee, even as was killed thy Master Jesus  
 "Christ, Whom the Jews slew." And the Devil said unto  
 his devils, "Go ye and slay this man who put us to  
 "shame, that all countries [of the world] may be ours;"  
 so the devils came before Andrew wishing to kill him. |  
 Now when they saw in his forehead the mark which our B. fol. 129a. col. 1.

Lord had given him, they were afraid, and were not able  
 to draw nigh unto him; and Andrew blew at the devils,  
 and they fled. And the Devil said unto them, "Why do  
 "ye flee without having slain him?" Then the devils an-  
 swered and said unto him, "We were not able to kill  
 "him, for we saw the sign of the cross in his forehead,  
 "and we were afraid, for we know that without [it] he  
 "must have suffered this | pain. But do thou thyself go A. fol. 149a. col. 1.

"and kill him, if thou art able so to do, for we cannot  
 "obey thee [Page 329]; and unless God shall give us  
 "strength he (i. e., the Apostle) will be the victor." And  
 one who dwelt in the devils answered and said unto  
 them, "To kill him we are not able, but we will go and

- "make a mock of him." Then the devils went with the Devil, and they stood up before Andrew, and made a mock of him, and said unto him, "Behold, O Andrew, B. fol. "thou hast come | into shame and disgrace; who is able  
129a. "to deliver thee?" Then a voice came unto Andrew  
col. 2. which said, "Wherefore weepest thou?" Now that voice was the voice of the Devil who had turned (i. e., changed) his voice, and had made it to appear to be that of another man, but it was that of the Devil. And Andrew answered and said, "I am not weeping, for my Lord "gave me [His] commandment, saying, Bear patiently, "for no evil whatsoever shall be done unto thee by them, "and if it be otherwise then ye shall see what I will  
A. fol. "do | unto them." Then the Devil answered and  
149a. said, "Whatsoever thou canst do, that do." And An-  
col. 2. drew answered and said, "Now ye would kill me, but "your will shall not be performed unless it be the will "of my Lord Jesus Christ. Ye would make me to for- "sake the commandment of my God, but my Lord "keepeth watch over me in this city, and He will judge "you according as it shall be necessary for you to be "judged."
- B. fol. And when the seven devils | and the Devil had heard  
129b. [these things] they took to flight. And when the morn-  
col. 1. ing had come they brought forth Andrew, and again they tied a rope round his neck and dragged him about [thereby]. Now as they were dragging him along he wept, and cried out, and said, "O my Lord Jesus Christ, [this] "torture consumeth me; O my Lord, my body becometh "feeble, and my soul waxeth faint. Behold, O my Lord, "Thou seest how the Enemy hath acted towards me

“with his devils. O my Lord, when Thou wast being  
 “killed, [Page 330] and Thy soul was waxing faint, Thou  
 “didst say, | ‘Father, why hast Thou forsaken Me?’”<sup>1</sup>  
 “Thou Thyself hast tried and hast had experience of the  
 “flesh of the children of men, and Thou knowest well  
 “what is the suffering which is upon me; O command  
 “Thou, my Lord, that my soul be taken away from me,  
 “and then let me rest. Where are Thy words, O Lord,  
 “wherewith Thou didst speak to give me strength, say-  
 “ing, ‘If ye come unto Me not one hair of your heads  
 “shall be destroyed?’”<sup>2</sup> And behold, both my flesh and  
 “my hair are mingled [with] the dust, and behold, [I have  
 “endured] this torture for three days, and yet Thou hast  
 “not appeared unto me to strengthen my soul, for it  
 “waxeth very faint.” | Now he spake thus whilst they  
 were dragging him [round about the city].

A. fol.  
 149b.  
 col. 1.

Then a voice came unto Andrew which spake unto  
 him in the Hebrew tongue, saying, “Andrew, heaven and  
 “earth shall pass away, but My Word shall not pass  
 “away. Look in front of thee and see what thy members,  
 “and the hairs of thy head which have fallen to the ground,  
 “have become upon the earth;” and Andrew turned, and  
 saw a mighty tree which was full of | fruit. Then An-  
 drew said, “I know, O Lord, that Thou wilt not forsake  
 “me.” And when the evening was come they cast him  
 into the prison-house. Now when they saw that he was  
 becoming weaker and weaker, they said among them-  
 selves, “His body is perishing little by little, and presently

B. fol.  
 129b.  
 col. 2.

A. fol.  
 149b.  
 col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> St. Matthew xxvii. 46; St. Mark xv. 34.

<sup>2</sup> St. Luke xxi. 18.

"he will die; we think that it may be this night." Then our Lord Jesus Christ came into the prison-house, and stretching out His right hand He said unto Andrew, "Give Me thine hand, O My beloved, and rise up whole." |  
 B. fol. And when Andrew saw Him he rejoiced greatly, and he  
 130a. gave Him his hand, and he rose up, having been made  
 col. 1. whole. Then Andrew fell down and worshipped the Lord and said, "I thank Thee, O my Lord Jesus Christ, Who "hast appeared unto me and given me strength." And Jesus said unto him, "Peace be unto thee, O Andrew;" and He departed into [Page 331] heaven.

And Andrew turned round from the prison-house, and saw a pillar, which was like unto marble, standing [there], and he stretched out his hand, and said unto |  
 A. fol. the pillar, "Pour forth water upon the ground, and let  
 150a. "the mouth of the image which is on the top of the  
 col. 1. "pillar send out water in abundance, like unto the waters "of a flood, so that those who are in the city may be "rebuked and may turn unto God. Fear thou not, O "pillar, and say not, 'I am a stone, and it is not meet "for me to praise God.'" And Andrew said, "Yea, ye "are stone[s] which have been hewn, but God made you "in the earth, and ye are pure. For God gave the Law "unto Israel [written] upon stone; and it was not written |  
 B. fol. "with gold and silver, but it was [cut] upon tables of  
 130a. "stone, therefore shalt thou perform this command, O  
 col. 2. "thou image." And when Andrew had said these words water poured forth in abundance from the image which was on the top of the pillar, like unto the waters of a river which had overflowed, and the waters rose to a [great] height in the city. Now the water was exceed-

ingly bitter, and it consumed the flesh of the people, and killed their | children and their wives; and they all wished to flee from the city. Then Andrew said unto God, "O "Lord, since Thou art performing this sign, forsake me "not, O my Lord Jesus Christ, but send Thine angel "Michael with a cloud of fire that he may surround this "city with fire as with a wall, so that he who wisheth "to escape from the fire may not be able so to do." Then straightway fire came down and surrounded the whole city as with a wall, from the one side thereof even unto the other; and Andrew knew then that God [had wrought] a miracle, [and] he blessed Him. And the marble | pillar [continued] to pour out water from [Page 332] its mouth like a torrent, and the water rose up to the height of the necks of men, and it swallowed them up; now it was very bitter. Then the people cried out in lamentation, and wept, and said, "Woe be unto us by "reason of all the things which have come to pass and "which have befallen us because of the stranger in the "prison-|house who hath come unto us, and because of "the multitude of the judgments which have come upon "us! What shall we do? Let us go and bring him out from "the prison-house, lest we die in this place through the "waters of this flood, and let us cry out, saying, 'We "believe in the God of this stranger,' so that He may "remove from us this flood of waters." And they all cried out unto God, and they went forth wailing with loud voices, and the sound of their outcries came in unto Andrew, and he knew that their souls had been made subject unto him. And Andrew said unto the marble image, from the mouth of which the water was flowing,

A. fol.  
150a.  
col. 2.

B. fol.  
130b.  
col. 1.

A. fol.  
150b.  
col. 1.

“Thou hast poured forth sufficient [water], for behold,  
 B. fol. “the time of [thy] service | hath passed. Behold, I will  
 130b. “go forth, and I will preach concerning the word, and  
 col. 2. “behold, O pillar, I say unto thee, that if the people in  
 “this city believe, I will build a church and will carry  
 “thee into it because thou hast fulfilled for me my work,  
 “O marble pillar, from the mouth of which water has  
 “poured.” [And thereupon water ceased to flow from  
 the mouth of the statue].

A. fol. And the people of the city came unto | the door of  
 150b. the prison-house, and they all cried out, saying, “O God  
 col. 2. “of this stranger, have compassion upon us, and do not  
 “unto us according as we have done unto this stranger,  
 “and remove from us this water.” Then Andrew went  
 forth from the prison-house and thrust aside the water  
 with his feet; and all the multitude came unto him, and  
 there came also the old man who had given his children  
 to be slaughtered instead of himself and on his behalf,  
 and he made supplication unto Andrew, and said unto  
 him, “Have compassion upon me.” Then Andrew an-  
 swered [Page 333] and said unto him, “I marvel how  
 “thou canst say unto me, ‘Have compassion on me,’ see-  
 “ing that in the time past thou hadst no compassion on  
 “thine own son, for when the lot to die fell upon thee |

B. fol. “thou didst give thy son unto death instead of thyself.  
 131a. “Behold, I tell thee that thou and the soldiers of the  
 col. 1. “guard who put strangers to death every day shall dwell  
 “in Gehenna, until the time when I shall return and bring  
 “you out therefrom. And now, depart ye that ye may  
 A. fol. “see | the men of the guard and the place of their slaughter,  
 151a. “and the place of peace; and this old man shall [see]

"the place where are the children whom he loveth; follow  
 "ye me, then, all of you." Then Andrew departed, and  
 they all followed him. And Andrew, thrusting aside the  
 water with his foot, came unto the slab where they slaughter-  
 ed the people, and he stretched out his hands, and look-  
 ing up into heaven he began to pray, and all the mul-  
 titude was looking on; and the earth opened herself  
 and swallowed up the water, and the old man and the  
 men of the guard went down into Sheol. Then when  
 the people saw what had happened they were afraid,  
 and they began to say, "Woe unto us! for this man  
 "is a man of God, and behold, he will kill us because of  
 "the evil which we did unto him; for behold, | what he B. fol.  
 "said unto the men of the guard and unto the old man 131a.  
 "[was true], and see what hath come upon them." col. 2.

And when Andrew heard these words he said unto  
 them, "O my children, fear not, for it is not an evil  
 "reward which hath come through me, but good. And as for  
 "those | who have gone down into Sheol I will not leave A. fol.  
 "them there; for they have only departed thither that ye 151a.  
 "might believe." Then Andrew commanded the people col. 2.  
 to bring [unto him] all those who had died through the  
 water, but they were unable to do so because those who  
 had died, both men and women, and children, and ani-  
 mals, were very many; and Andrew prayed, and they  
 all came to life [again]. And he marked out a church  
 upon the ground [Page 334] and commanded them to  
 build [one there], and he gave unto them the command-  
 ments of the Law, and said unto them, "Stand ye in  
 "these, and after ye have kept these I will give unto  
 "you the hidden things of God; at this present I cannot

“give them unto you, because your works are more [evil]  
 “than those of all other men, but when I return I will  
 “give them unto you.” And they made supplication unto  
 B. fol. him, saying, | “We beseech thee to be graciously pleased  
 131b. “to abide with us for a few days, so that we may flourish  
 col. 1. “in the faith, for [at this present] we are new plants.”  
 A. fol. And although they besought him to do so | he refused  
 151b. them, saying, “I must go forthwith unto my disciples  
 col. 1. “and children,” and although they followed after him,  
 and made supplication unto him, and cast ashes upon  
 their heads, he did not consent. Then he said unto  
 them, “I must go unto my disciples, but afterwards I  
 “will come [again] unto you;” and so Andrew departed  
 on his way.

Then Jesus Christ came down from heaven in the  
 form of a little child, and He said unto Andrew, “Why  
 “dost thou depart from and forsake these little children  
 “who make supplication unto thee, and the men of the  
 “city who cry out unto thee, saying, ‘Stay with us a  
 “‘few days’? Behold, their voice, and their cry, and their  
 “weeping, have ascended into heaven, and when I heard  
 “their cry and their weeping I came down, and Mine eyes |  
 B. fol. “shed tears before My Father because of their repentance.  
 131b. “And now, come back into the city, and tarry there seven  
 col. 2. “days, until the faith of the people shall wax strong;  
 A. fol. “after this time thou shalt go forth from their city, | and  
 151b. “depart unto the country Barbârôs<sup>1</sup>, both thou and thy  
 col. 2. “disciples, and after thou hast entered into that country  
 “thou shalt depart and come hither, and bring out those

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., the land of the Barbarians.

“people who are in Sheol.” Then Andrew returned [to the city], saying, “Blessed art Thou, O my Lord Jesus Christ, Who dost desire the [Page 335] salvation of all created beings, and Who hast not permitted me to depart in mine anger.” So Andrew came into the city, and when the people saw him they rejoiced with a great joy, and they [i. e., Andrew and his disciples] dwelt there for seven days, teaching them and strengthening them [in the faith] of our Lord Jesus Christ. And when the [seven] days were fulfilled Andrew set out upon his way, and all the people, from the greatest unto the least, came together and sent him and his disciples on their way, saying, “Praise be unto the God of Andrew for „ever and for ever! Amen.”

## THE ACTS OF SAINT THOMAS IN INDIA.

B. fol. THE FIRST ACT. TO BE READ ON THE EIGHTEENTH  
139a.  
col. 2. DAY OF THE MONTH MASKARRAM.<sup>1</sup>

A. fol. [Page 336] Of what happened unto Thomas, the Apostle, when  
152a.  
col. 1. he went to teach, and to preach, and to journey in the country of India.

And it came to pass in those days that all we Apostles were in Jerusalem, that is to say, Simon who is called Peter, and Andrew his brother, and James, the son of Zebedee, and John his brother, and Philip and Bartholomew, and Thomas and Matthew, and Thaddeus and James, the son of Alphaeus, and Simon Zelotes, and Judas the son of James. And we counted up the countries [of the world] together and divided them among us, and we departed unto that which had come unto us by lot when our Lord sent us forth among the nations. Now the country of India had fallen to the share of Judas Thomas, who [is surnamed] Didymus, and he was unwilling to go there, and said, "I cannot go [there] because of the weariness of the flesh, for I am a Hebrew. How can I possibly depart to India and preach the faith [there]?" And whilst he was thinking in this wise and saying [these

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., September 15.

words], our Redeemer appeared unto him by night, and said unto him, "Fear thou not, O Thomas; | depart unto "India, and preach thou My word [therein], for I Myself<sup>1</sup> "am with thee." | Then Thomas said unto Him, "I do not "wish to go, but if Thou wilt, I desire that Thou wouldst "send me unto another country, for unto the country of India "[Page 337] I cannot go." Now whilst Thomas was speaking in this wise a certain merchant who was from the county of India came nigh unto them, and his name was Abnês,<sup>2</sup> and he was from the king of Gônâ,<sup>3</sup> who had sent him to bring [back to India] workmen and tools. And as our Lord was standing by his side He saw Abnês in the market, and he was going to his workshop. Then He said unto him, "Dost thou wish to obtain a "workman?" And Abnês said unto Him, "Yea, my Lord, "I wish to buy a workman." Now when he had said these words unto Him, our Lord shewed him Thomas in the distance, and He made a covenant with Abnês to sell him for one pound<sup>4</sup> of silver. Then He wrote for him a deed, saying, "I [Jesus], the Son of Joseph, hand "over to thee to keep, and I sell unto thee my slave the "workman Thomas, to journey unto Gônâ." And when the deed was finished according to the law [of the land] the Saviour took Judas, and gave him unto Abnês, and said | unto him, "Behold thy master." Then the Apostle | answered and said unto Him, "Yea, he is my master;"

B. fol.  
139b.  
col. 1.  
A. fol.  
152a.  
col. 2.

B. fol.  
139b.  
col. 2.  
A. fol.  
152b.  
col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> Literally, "My Body."

<sup>2</sup> Gr. Ἀβδὲνης, Arabic حَبَّان, Syriac بَيْخ.

<sup>3</sup> Read "from the king Gundaphorus" (Γουνδάφορος).

<sup>4</sup> The Syriac reads, "twenty (pieces) of silver;" see WRIGHT, *Apocryphal Acts*, p. 147.

and Abnês said unto him, "I have taken thee," and the Apostle held his peace.

And when the morrow had dawned the Apostle prayed unto the Lord and said, "I will go whithersoever "Thou wishest, O Jesus, and Thy will be done;" then he departed with Abnês the merchant, who took nothing whatsoever with him except what he had bought. And our Lord gave him [the salutation of peace], and said unto him, "Behold, thou hast thy merchandize with thee, "and My grace shall be with thee wheresoever thou goest." Now the Apostle found Abnês taking his goods into a ship, and he was his slave. And when they had gone up into the ship and had sat down therein Abnês enquired of the Apostle, and said unto him, "In what handicraft "art thou skilled?" Then the Apostle said unto him, "In "wood I can make the things which are used in ploughing, "such as yokes [for cattle], and the bent ends of ploughs, "and oars and steering poles for ships, and wheels; and "in stone I can make picks(?), and spades(?), and columns, "round ornaments for pillars, and tombs, and sepulchres "for kings." And Abnês the merchant | said unto him, "Thy knowledge of thy handicraft is [Page 338] sufficient "for my needs." So they put forth and travelled on their journey with fair winds, and they sailed on happily | until they arrived in the country of India, and came to the city of the king.<sup>1</sup> And when they had come down from the ship and had entered into the city, they heard the sounds of flutes and organs which rent the heavens, and

A. fol.  
152b.  
col. 2.  
B. fol.  
140a.  
col. 1.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., Andrapolis, or Sandarûk; see LIPSIVS, op. cit., vol. I. p. 249; WRIGHT, op. cit. p. 148.

they were mingled with the blasts of horns, and the blare of trumpets, and the sounds of the harp, and voices singing sweet songs of divers kinds. Then the Apostle enquired, and said, "What is the festival which [they are "celebrating] in this city to-day?" And the men said unto him, "The angels have brought thee hither so that thou "mayest take part [in it with the people of] this city. "Now the king hath a daughter,<sup>1</sup> and he hath married "her and given her unto the bridegroom, and so there is "great rejoicing this day; this is the cause of the festival "concerning which thou didst speak and make enquiries. "The king hath sent a herald round to proclaim and to "publish abroad to everyone [that they shall come] unto "the marriage feast, [both rich and] poor, and bondman "and freeman, and stranger and citizen; and if there be "any who will not come | unto the feast he shall be A. fol. 153a. col. 1.

"doomed to suffer punishment according to the king's "pleasure." Now when Abnès the merchant heard this, he said unto | the Apostle, "Come, let us also go [to the "feast], lest we be punished by the king; and besides, we B. fol. 140a. col. 2.

"are men recently come. And the Apostle said unto him, "Yea, let us go;" and having gone into the house for strangers they rested there for a little, and then they went to the feast. Now those who had taken their seats looked at the Apostle as he took his place among them, and they all saw that he had the manner of a stranger [who was poor], and of one who had come from another country; and Abnès having the manner of a noble took

<sup>1</sup> In the Latin text she is called Pelagia, and her bridegroom Dionysius.

his seat in another place, and having eaten their meal they drank their wine, but the Apostle tasted no food whatsoever. Then those who were sitting with him said unto him, "Why hast thou come hither? for thou neither "eatest nor drinkest." And the Apostle answered and said unto him, "I did not come hither for the sake of the "meat and drink, [Page 339] but because it was the will "of the king that I should do so, for the herald who  
 A. fol. "went round crying said, | 'If there be any man who doth  
 153a. "not come to the feast he shall be punished with the  
 col. 2. "punishment of the king."

And when they had eaten and drunk [the servants brought] unto them sweet scents, and unguents, and  
 B. fol. garlands, and crowns of flowers; | and they came and  
 14ob. every man took one, and some of them anointed their  
 col. 1. faces, and some their beards, and some their bodies. And the Apostle anointed the top of his head, and his head, and he placed a little of the unguent in each of his nostrils, and in each of his ears. Now the flowers in the garland which had come to the Apostle were the flowers of the lentil plant, and of other sweet smelling herbs, and he took the garland and put it on his head; and he took the reed, and held it in his hand. Then a certain singing woman took her tambourine in her hand, and went round about among the company singing, and when she came unto the place where the Apostle was she stood still near him, and sang a song before him; now the singing woman was of the people of the Hebrews. And as the Apostle was keeping his gaze [fixed] upon the ground, one of those who had eaten with him lifted up his hand and smote him; and the Apostle lifted up

| his eyes, and looked at the man who had struck him, and said, "My God may set aside (i. e., keep) for thee "the hand wherewith | thou hast smitten me in the world "which is to come, [and may He forgive thee] this injury; "but in the present world He will shew thee His wonders, "and I shall see the dogs dragging away the hand where- "with thou didst smite me." And having thus spoken unto him the Apostle began to sing this song<sup>1</sup> concerning the congregation (i. e., the Church): —

"The Church is she who hath become the splendour "of the kingdom; and she is pleasant of aspect, and lovely, "and beautiful unto him that beholdeth [her]. Her garments "are like unto flowers of every kind, and the odour there- "of goeth forth and anointeth the crown of the head. "The King giveth food with joy unto those who are with "him, the mighty ones; Truth is upon His head, and joy "is at His [Page 340] feet, and appeareth in His mouth, "which openeth as becometh it. And two-fold are the "praises with which she is praised by this tongue in this "wise; whosoever shall forget [so to do] shall become . . . . "straightway, and he who rejoiceth according to the mind " . . . . . |. [Her] neck, which towereth upwards, [is "like unto brass, which the God thereof hath made. Her "two hands make manifest and reveal the places of beauty "which He hath made, and proclaim where they are; and "her fingers shew where the ante-chamber [thereof] is. "The bride chamber is made of light, and the sweet

A. fol.  
153b.  
col. 1.  
B. fol.  
140b.  
col. 2.

A. fol.  
153b.  
col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> The text of this mystical hymn is corrupt in many places, and varies considerably from the Syriac text, a version of which will be found in WRIGHT, *Apocryphal Acts*, vol. II. p. 150—152. On the hymn see the excellent remarks of LIPSIVS (op. cit., vol. I. p. 301ff.).

"smell thereof is on the tongue, together with beautiful  
 "odour of divers kinds, and incense, and sweet spice, and  
 "every sweet whatsoever the savour of which ariseth from  
 B. fol. "its essence. | And the Bridegroom shall be adorned, and  
 141a. "He shall hold the reed of the Seven whom He hath  
 col. 1. "chosen; and the guardians of the Bride are Seven [also].  
 "Those who follow her and [those who] are before her  
 "every[where] are twelve [in number]; and they hope to  
 "see the Bridegroom, and to be baptized, and to live  
 "with Him for ever. And they shall go and wait for  
 "Him in that great assembly with righteousness; and it  
 "is meet for them to array themselves in the apparel of  
 "the kingdom; and they shall dress themselves in shining  
 "raiment with joy and gladness; and they all shall belong  
 "unto Him to Whom belongeth great splendour. And  
 "they shall be received in heaven and shall shine through  
 A. fol. "(or in) the Divinity | of God; and [they shall be changed],  
 154a. "and shall receive food which is without spot or blemish  
 col. 1. "of any kind whatsoever, and they shall drink wine which  
 "never causeth them to suffer thirst again. And He (i. e.,  
 "the King) shall give them the desire of their souls, and  
 "they shall sing praises and glorify [Him] with the living  
 "ones, and with the souls of the fathers who have gone  
 "to their rest in the confidence which is of wisdom, and  
 "henceforth they shall praise [Him] with perfect praise."

And when he had [said] these words all those who  
 were there were looking at him, and they saw that the  
 B. fol. form of his visage was different, and his | whole aspect  
 141a. appeared unto them to be changed; but what he was  
 col. 2. saying unto them they did not understand, for he was a  
 Hebrew and his speech was Hebrew, and the singing

woman alone heard (i. e., understood) everything [Page 34r] which he was saying, for she was a Hebrew. Then having withdrawn herself from near him she continued to sing and to beat the tambourine; and she was thinking about him, and she was looking at him continually, and was watching him at every moment, and she loved him because she found him to be a man of her own nation; now he was more handsome in | appearance than all those who were there. And it came to pass that when the singing woman had finished her song everyone gave signs of his approval [except the Apostle], and she went and sat down in front of him, and she continued to look at him, and to watch him with great care; but the Apostle never allowed his eyes to wander away from the ground for a moment, and he waited for the opportunity when he might escape from the place. Then the man who had sat at meat with him and who had struck him went down to the fountain to draw some water, and a lion came there by chance and slew him, and left him [lying] there torn limb from limb. And the dogs carried away the members of his body, and one of them, a black | dog, took his right hand in his mouth, and brought it into the feast chamber unto those who were sitting at meat there. Now when they saw this they were all dismayed, and they were asking questions, and saying, "Who "is he that hath died?" And they knew that it was the hand of the man who had ministered unto them, and who had smitten the Apostle. Then the singing woman took her tambourine and cast it away from her, and she went and sat down at the feet | of the Apostle, saying, "This man is either God or the Apostle of God. For I

A. fol.  
154a.  
col. 2.

B. fol.  
141b.  
col. 1.

A. fol.  
154b.  
col. 1.

"heard him speaking in Hebrew unto him that was  
 "ministering, and I now see the dog carrying about the  
 "hand wherewith he smote him; and behold, ye all see  
 "that according to what he spake even so hath it come  
 "to pass." And some believed, but some did not believe.  
 Now when the king heard this he drew nigh unto the  
 Apostle, and said unto him, "Rise up, and come with  
 "me, and pray for my daughter, for she is the [Page 342]  
 "only child I have, and this day I have given her in  
 "marriage." Now the Apostle refused to go with him,  
 because our Lord had, as yet, | not revealed Himself unto  
 him in that place; but the king, notwithstanding his  
 refusal, compelled him [to go, and] he took the Apostle  
 into the chamber of the bride that he might pray on  
 their behalf [there]. And the Apostle stood up, and he  
 began to pray thus: —

B. fol.  
 141b.  
 col. 2.

A. fol.  
 154b.  
 col. 2.

"O my Lord and God, | Who art the Guide of Thy  
 "servants, Who dost lead them, and dost toil on behalf  
 "of those who believe on Thee, Thou Refuge and Resting-  
 "place of those who are afflicted, Thou Hope of the poor,  
 "Thou Deliverer of captives, Thou Healer of the souls  
 "that are sick, Thou Saviour of all created beings, Thou  
 "Life-giver of all the world, Thou Strengtheners of souls  
 "Who dost give them might, Thou, O God, knowest  
 "what is about to come to pass, and what shall be ful-  
 "filled by means of us. Thou, O our Lord, art a hidden  
 "Mystery, and Thou dost teach [hidden] words unto those  
 "who know Thee not. Thou, O my Lord, art the Planter  
 "of good trees, and through Thine hands they bring to  
 "perfection good works. Thou, O my Lord, art in our  
 "every hope, Thou livest in all Thy work, and all Thy

"works | conceal Thee, Jesus Christ, the God of mercy,  
 "the perfect Saviour, Christ, Son of the Living One, God  
 "Almighty, the Mighty One, Who canst not be conquered  
 "by the Enemy. | Thou art the Word which was heard  
 "by Principalities, and which made Powers and all Domi-  
 "nions (*or* Rulers) to tremble; Thou wast sent down from  
 "on high and didst come down to Sheol, and didst at  
 "length open the gates thereof and take up from thence  
 "those who had been captive there for many years, and  
 "who had been dwelling in the mansions of darkness;  
 "and to those who would be guided Thou didst shew  
 "the way whereby to return. O my Lord Jesus Christ,  
 "I entreat Thee, and I offer [unto Thee my petition on  
 "behalf of myself] and these young folk, [Page 343] that  
 "Thou mayest be pleased to help them, and to grant  
 "unto them the things which are good and excellent, and  
 "that Thou wilt lay Thine hand upon them." Then the  
 Apostle said [unto them], "My Lord be with you;" and  
 he left them in their place.

B. fol.  
 142a.  
 col. 1.

A. fol.  
 155a.  
 col. 1.

Now when the king had gone forth he besought the  
 friends of the bridegroom to depart from their chamber,  
 and when they had all gone forth, and had closed the  
 | doors, the bridegroom drew back the curtains of the  
 doors that he might take the bride to himself. And he  
 saw our Lord | Jesus Christ in the form of Judas Thomas,  
 and He was talking with [the bride], even as did Thomas  
 [when] he blessed the bridegroom and bride, [and he  
 seemed] not to have gone forth [from the chamber].  
 [And the bridegroom said unto Him that appeared unto  
 him, "Didst Thou not depart first of all? How then hast  
 "Thou returned, and come hither?"] Then our Lord said

B. fol.  
 142a.  
 col. 2.  
 A. fol.  
 155a.  
 col. 2.

unto him, "I am not Judas Thomas, but I am his brother." And our Lord sat down in the room, and He commanded them to sit down on the footstool, and He said unto them, "Remember, O ye my children, what my brother hath said unto you, and unto Whom he committed you. "And know ye that if ye forsake the intercourse in which "the polluted [indulge], ye shall afterwards become holy, "and perfect in purity; and [ye shall spare] yourselves "labour and sufferings, both those which are seen and "those which are unseen; and ye shall be delivered from "the anxiety of this world; and the children which should "be your posterity shall never exist. If ye have many "children, for their sakes ye will become oppressors and  
 B. fol. 142b. " | avaricious folk, and ye will afflict orphans and widows, col. 1. "and ye will become men of violence. All these things  
 A. fol. "will ye | do, and ye will bring yourselves under sore  
 155b. "chastisement, for the greater number of children become col. 1. "evil and fall into error. And they are either attacked  
 "by devils in secret or openly, or they become mad, or  
 "foolish, or deaf, or left-handed, or lame, or paralysed.  
 "And if they escape all these things, they become doers  
 "of evil in whom there is no benefit, or they do the  
 "things which it is abominable to do, or they become  
 "[Page 344] the companions of avaricious men and thieves;  
 "and by reason of all these things ye suffer labour and  
 "sorrow. But if ye be firm and keep yourselves pure  
 "unto God there shall be born unto you living children  
 "who shall be free from all these pains, concerning which  
 "I have spoken unto you, through your own strength.  
 "Ye shall be [at] rest, and shall not be separated in the  
 "beautiful abode(?), ye shall be without sorrow and without

"pain, ye shall hope for [the time when] ye shall | receive  
 "(i. e., enjoy) the marriage which shall never be  
 "brought to an end. | And ye shall be there the friend of  
 "the Bridegroom, by Whom ye shall be known when ye  
 "come unto that never ending marriage feast and into the  
 "perfect light."

B. fol.  
 142b.  
 col. 2.  
 A. fol.  
 155b.  
 col. 2.

And when the young man and the young woman had heard these words, they believed on our Lord, and gave themselves unto Him; and they forsook the impurity of their lust, and they remained as they were in that place the whole night praying. And our Lord passed away from their presence, saying unto them, "The grace of God be with you." Now when the morning had dawned the king came and made ready a table, and he entered into the presence of the bridegroom and bride and found them sitting and talking together; and the face of the bride was uncovered, and the bridegroom himself was exceedingly happy (*literally*: bright). Then the mother of the bride came and drew nigh unto her, and said unto her, "Why art thou sitting in this manner, "O my daughter, and art not ashamed? Ye sit [and talk] "as if ye had been in the habit of behaving like married "folk | for many days." And her father said unto her, "Is it because | of thy love for him unto whom thou art "married that thou dost not cover thy face?" Then the bride answered and said unto him, "O my father, verily "I am in love with God Almighty, and I pray that I "may abide in this my love which I have [learned] to "know this night, and that I may possess this man, con- "cerning whom I have got understanding this day [Page "345]. Therefore too, I am not ashamed, for the mirror

A. fol.  
 156a.  
 col. 1.  
 B. fol.  
 143a.  
 col. 1.

"of shame hath passed away from me, and from this  
 "time forth I shall never be ashamed, and I shall never  
 "veil myself, for the works of shame have departed, and  
 "they have removed themselves to a great distance and  
 "are hidden from me. Henceforth I shall not make  
 "myself a stranger, and there shall be no making strange  
 "with me, for I shall live in light and in joy. On the  
 "day of my joy I shall not be moved, for I have rejected  
 "this man, and I have not been united to him up to this  
 A. fol. "present; but I shall be united | unto the true Hus-  
 156a. "band Who shall come at last, Whose soul is full of  
 col. 2. "mercy, and I shall, moreover, henceforth have greater  
 "enjoyment."

And as the bride was thus speaking the bride-  
 groom | answered and said, "I give thanks unto thee, O  
 B. fol. "God, because through this stranger Thou hast glorified  
 143a. "Thyself before us, and hast revealed Thyself unto us,  
 col. 2. "and hast removed me from vanity, and hast sowed life  
 "upon me, and hast taken me away from the sickness  
 "which is without healing, and which abideth for ever.  
 "Thou hast graciously bestowed upon me the life of ab-  
 "stinence, O Thou Who hast shewn Thyself unto me,  
 "and Thou hast revealed to me [the evil of] all the  
 "works wherein I lived, and hast delivered me from  
 "stumbling and hast guided me into that which is good.  
 "Thou hast led me out from destruction, and hast brought  
 "me into [a land] wherein I shall neither die nor be over-  
 "come. And when Thou didst abase Thyself and didst  
 "descend to my humble estate Thou didst do so that  
 "Thou mightest give me joy and gladness, O Thou Who  
 "didst not withhold Thy mercy from me, the sinner.

"And Thou didst shew me [how] to seek myself, for I  
 "did not know who (*or* where) I was, | and the works  
 "which were alien unto me Thou hast now put away from  
 "me. Then again, I have become like unto one who  
 "knoweth Thee, for Thou didst seek me when I knew  
 "Thee not, and Thou wilt receive me into the place where |  
 "Thou now art. And now, I am not able to forget this, for  
 "love moveth me, and I am not able to speak [against] Thee;  
 "and now I desire [Page 346] to speak a few mighty  
 "things concerning Thee. And my confidence [in Thee]  
 "is equal unto Thy praise; but boldness is not seemly  
 "for me before Him, yet if it were that I knew Him not  
 "I would say unto Him that which I want to say be-  
 "cause of this my love for Him."

A. fol.  
 156b.  
 col. 1.

B. fol.  
 143b.  
 col. 1.

Now when the king heard these words from the  
 bridegroom and bride he rent his garments, and said  
 unto those who were standing near him, "Go ye out  
 "quickly, and journey round about through the city and  
 "lay hold upon that man, and bring hither that worker  
 "of sorcery, who with evil intent hath come into this  
 "city, and whom | I myself brought into my house and  
 "told to pray over my wretched daughter. And," he added,  
 "whosoever shall find him and shall bring him hither to  
 "me to him will I give whatsoever he asketh from me."  
 Then they departed, one and all, and they went round  
 about the city, seeking him; [but they found him not]  
 for he had journeyed into another city. And they went  
 also into the house wherein he had lodged in that city,  
 and there | they found the dancing woman who was  
 weeping and lamenting because the Apostle had refused  
 to take her with him; and they told her of everything

A. fol.  
 156b.  
 col. 2.

B. fol.  
 143b.  
 col. 2.

which he had done unto the young man. Now when she heard those things she rejoiced greatly, and forsook her sorrow, and said, "Now shall I find rest here." And she rose up and went unto the bridegroom and bride, and tarried with them for many days, even until the Apostle returned unto the king. And many of the brethren who were with him believed, and when they heard where the Apostle was, and that he was living in the | country of India and teaching the people thereof, they departed and joined themselves unto him.

A. fol.  
157<sup>a</sup>.  
col. 1.

HERE ENDETH THE FIRST ACT OF SAINT THOMAS.

---

## THE ACTS OF SAINT THOMAS IN INDIA.

THE SECOND ACT. TO BE READ ON THE NINTH DAY  
OF THE MONTH TEKEMT.<sup>1</sup>

[Page 347] How Thomas built a palace for the king.

B. fol.  
144a.  
col. 1.

Now when the Apostle had entered into the country of India<sup>2</sup> with 'Abnès the merchant, 'Abnès departed to salute Gondapôr (Gondaforus) the king; and he told him concerning the workman whom he had brought with him, and the king rejoiced and commanded 'Abnès to bring him unto him. And when the Apostle had come into his presence, the king said unto him, "What is thy handicraft?" And the Apostle said unto him, "I am a carpenter and stone mason." Then the king said unto him, "What dost thou know how to make in wood, and what in stone?" And the Apostle said unto him, "In wood [I can make] ploughs, and yokes, and measures, and wheels, and ships, and oars, and steering poles; and in stone I can make statues, and build houses with halls and courts [fit for] kings." Then straightway the king

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., October 6.

<sup>2</sup> See LIPSIVS, *Apostelgeschichten*, vol. 1. p. 252; WRIGHT, *Apocryphal Acts* p. 159.

- A. fol. said unto him, "Canst thou build me | a palace?" And  
 157a. the Apostle said unto him, "Yea, I can build [one] and  
 col. 2. "finish it, for I have come hither for the purpose of  
 "working at my trade of stone mason and carpenter."
- B. fol. And the king took them | and they went out through  
 144a. the gates of the city, and he began to converse with the  
 col. 2. Apostle about building the palace, and about how and  
 where he would dig out and lay the foundations, and  
 at length he came to the place wherein the king had  
 thought to build [his palace]. Then the king said, "See,  
 "here is the place where I wish [Page 348] to build it."  
 And the Apostle said unto him, "Yea, this place is very  
 "suitable and excellent for the purpose;" now the place  
 was swampy and marshy, and there was much water in  
 it. Then the king said unto him, "Begin to build [here]."  
 [And the Apostle answered and said, "I cannot begin to  
 "build now], but only at the [proper] season." Then the  
 king said unto him, "When then wilt thou be able [to  
 "begin]?" And the Apostle said, "After two months. [I  
 "will begin it] at the new moon of the month H̄adār,<sup>1</sup>  
 "and I will finish it in the month of Miyāzyā."<sup>2</sup> Now  
 the king was silent and marvelled at him, and said unto  
 him, "All buildings are built in the summer, and canst  
 A. fol. "thou | build and set up thy palace in the winter?" And  
 157b. the Apostle said unto him, "It must be [done] in this  
 col. 1. "wise, for there is no other [way]." Then the king said, |  
 B. fol. "If it seemeth that it must be thus unto thee, mark out  
 144b. "for me [on the ground the place] where the buildings  
 col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> I. e., November.<sup>2</sup> I. e., April.

"of the palace will come; then [after] the lapse of a "certain time I will come [back] here." Then the Apostle took a reed and divided and measured the ground into lengths, and marked out the position of the foundations of the building and of its hall, and he set the building to face the east whence cometh the light of the sun, and he placed the windows thereof to face the west whence come the winds, and the door of the bakehouse (*or* kitchen) [faced] the south, and the best water [flowed] by the side of the bakehouse. And when the king saw him, he said unto the Apostle, "Verily, thou art a cunning handicraftsman, and it is meet for thee to be in the "service of the kingdom;" and he gave him much money, and passed on. And straightway the Apostle went on building, and the king sent unto him silver (*or* money) and every thing which was necessary for himself, and for the other workmen who were performing the work with | him; and he received it all and took it and began to go about teaching and giving alms to the poor, and the sick, and the needy, and the wretched, and thus he gave them relief. And he said, "What belongeth unto "the king shall be given unto the king; | and there shall "be relief (*or* rest) unto many." Thus was his desire.

A. fol.  
157b.  
col. 2.

B. fol.  
144b.  
col. 2.

Then after all these things the [Page 349] king sent a messenger unto the Apostle, and he wrote unto him, saying thus:—"Write to me [an account of] everything, "and what I shall say unto thee, and concerning whatsoever "thou desirest send me word, and I will despatch it unto "thee." And the Apostle wrote unto him, saying, "The "palace is finished, but the roof thereof is wanting." Now when the king heard this, he sent unto him much gold

and silver, and he wrote unto the Apostle, saying, "I  
 "have built the palace, and I will finish the roof thereof."  
 Then the Apostle prayed unto God and said, "I give  
 A. fol. "thanks unto | Thee, O God, for all things, and because  
 158a. "through Thy death I shall live for ever, and because  
 col. 1. "Thou didst sell me so that Thou mightest set free from  
 "bondage many." And the Apostle ceased not to teach  
 and to comfort those who were in sorrow, saying, "Do  
 "Thou, O God, bestow gifts of grace upon them;" for  
 B. fol. it is He Who feedeth | and keepeth in safety the orphans,  
 145a. and it is He Who supporteth the widows and all those  
 col. 1. who are cast away, and it is He Who causeth them to  
 have rest and peace.

And when the king came into the city he made  
 enquiries of his friends concerning the palace which Judas  
 Thomas had built for him, and they said unto him, "He  
 "hath neither built a palace nor anything else, and," they  
 added, "He hath done nothing at all except go about  
 "through the city and the country round about it, and  
 "everything that thou didst give him, and everything  
 "which he had, he hath given to the poor and needy.  
 "And he hath been teaching the people a new God, and  
 A. fol. "healing the sick, and casting out devils, | and besides  
 158a. "these things he hath been performing many wonderful  
 col. 2. "things. Now we think that he is a sorcerer, only the  
 "things which come from his hands are mercy, and grace,  
 "and healing; and moreover, the humility and wisdom  
 "which he maketh manifest for the sake of [his] faith  
 "make us believe that he is truly the Apostle of the  
 B. fol. "God Whom he preacheth, [Page 350] for he fasteth | and  
 145a. "prayeth always. With his bread he eateth nothing except  
 col. 2.

"salt, his drink is water, and his apparel, both in summer  
 "and in winter, consisteth of nothing but one garment;  
 "he taketh nothing from any man, and that which he  
 "hath he giveth unto others." Now when the king heard  
 this, he rubbed his face with his hands, and he smote  
 his head, being filled with wrath.

And in that same hour he sent and caused the  
 Apostle to be brought unto him, and also the merchant  
 who had brought Judas Thomas to him. Then the king  
 said unto him, "Hast thou built the palace for me?" And  
 the Apostle answered and said unto him, "Yea, I have  
 "built [it]." Then the king said unto him, | "When can  
 "we go and see it?" And the Apostle answered [and said  
 unto him], "Thou canst not go to see it now, but only  
 "when thou hast departed from this world wilt thou be  
 "able to see it." Then was the king exceedingly wroth,  
 and he commanded them to put the merchant and Judas  
 Thomas in prison, and they took him to the prison-house  
 that they might question him and find out unto whom  
 he had given the king's money; | and when they had  
 questioned him they were to kill him and the merchant  
 who had brought him [there]. And Judas Thomas went  
 unto the prison-house with rejoicing, and he said unto  
 the merchant, "Fear thou nothing whatsoever, only believe  
 "in the God Whom I preach, and thou shalt be saved  
 "in this world, and in that which is to come thou shalt  
 "receive life [everlasting]."

A. fol.  
 158b.  
 col. 1.

B. fol.  
 145b.  
 col. 1.

Meanwhile the king was meditating upon the manner  
 in which he would punish them, and he determined to  
 do so by means of fire, after they had been flayed  
 alive. And it came to pass on that same night that

- Gâdôn (Gad),<sup>1</sup> the brother of the king, fell sick and ill by reason of his sorrow for the grief and fraud which had come upon the king. Then the king's brother sent
- A. fol. 158b. col. 2. for | the king, and said unto him, "I commit my house  
"and my children into thy safe keeping, for by reason  
"of the fraud which hath come upon thee am I stricken  
"with sorrow, and I shall die because of this; and if  
"thou dost not seize and slay that worker of sorcery  
"thou wilt [not] give my soul rest in death." [Page 351]  
And the king said unto his brother, "I have been think-  
"ing this very night by what means I should kill him,  
"and I have determined that I will burn him in a blazing  
"fire, after he and the merchant who brought him have
- B. fol. 145b. col. 2. "been flayed alive." | Now whilst the king was speaking  
in this wise the soul of Gâdôn (Gad), the brother of the  
king, departed. Then the king mourned for his brother,  
for he loved him dearly, and he commanded that he  
should be buried with a royal burial and at great ex-  
pense. And whilst all these things were being performed,  
the angels took the soul of Gâdôn (Gad), the brother of  
the king, and bore it unto heaven, and they shewed it  
the place of its abode, and they asked him, saying, "In  
"which of these places wouldst thou dwell?" Now when  
he had come to the building which Thomas had built  
for the king [in heaven], and had looked upon it, Gâdôn |
- A. fol. 159a. col. 1. said unto the angels, "I beseech you, O my lords, to allow  
"me to dwell in this mansion." And the angels said unto  
him, "Thou canst not dwell in this building;" and he said  
unto them, "Why [not]?" Then they said unto him, "Be-

---

<sup>1</sup> See WRIGHT, *op. cit.*, p. 162.

"cause this is the palace which the Christian hath built  
 "for thy brother;" and he said unto them, "I beseech  
 "you, O my lords, to allow me to go unto my brother,  
 "and to buy this | palace from him, for he knoweth no- B. fol.  
 "thing whatever concerning it, and he will sell it unto me." 146a.  
 col. 1.

And it came to pass that, when the angels had let the  
 soul of Gâdôn go free, it returned unto his body as they  
 were swathing it for burial, and it spake and said unto  
 those who were standing by it, "Call ye for me my  
 "brother, that I may ask him a certain question." Then  
 straightway they went and related the matter unto him,  
 and said unto him, "Thy brother hath returned whence  
 "he had departed and hath come back to life." And  
 the king ran, together with many people, and when he  
 had arrived at the place where his brother was, and had  
 entered in, he stood up by the bier of his brother in  
 wonderment, and he was unable to | speak with him. A. fol.  
 Then his brother answered and said [Page 352] unto him, 159a.  
 "Thou must know, O my brother, and be sure that if col. 2.  
 "thou wilt grant unto me the petition which I shall ask  
 "of thee for myself I will give thee even unto the half  
 "of my kingdom; so now, grant unto me my one request  
 "for a price." And the king answered and said unto  
 him, "What is the petition which thou wouldst have me  
 "sell unto thee?" Then his brother said unto him, "Swear  
 "thou unto me by thy faith that thou wilt grant it unto  
 "me;" and the king ·sware | an oath unto him, saying, B. fol.  
 "Whatsoever thou askest of me, if I possess it, I will 146a.  
 "give unto thee." Then he said unto the king, col. 2.  
 "palace which thou hast in the heavens sell thou unto  
 "me;" and the king said unto him, "Where have I a

"palace in the heavens?" Then his brother said unto him, "I mean this palace which the Christian hath built. "This Christian is the man who is now in the prison-house, and he was brought unto thee by the merchant "who bought him from a Man Whose name was Jesus; "this Christian is the Hebrew slave whom thou wishest "to condemn to death because he defrauded thee, and "because of whom through sorrow for thee I died. But "behold, I am now alive." And straightway the king perceived, and understood, and knew of a certainty that the good deeds would endure for ever, | and that they would benefit him, and he said unto him, "I cannot sell "this palace, nay, I pray and entreat [God] that I may "enter therein and dwell there, and then He will grant "unto me a portion like unto that which He hath given "unto those who are therein. And as for thyself, if thou "thinkest to make such a palace as this, behold, he who "built it is [still] alive, and he can build a better one "for thee."

A. fol.  
159b.  
col. 1.

Then straightway the king sent and brought out the Apostle, | and the merchant who was shut up with him in the prison-house, and he said unto him, "I entreat "thee, even as one who maketh entreaty to a priest of "God, to pray on my behalf and to beseech Him, Whose "messenger thou art, to remit unto me and to forgive "everything which I have done unto thee, and everything "which I have meditated concerning thee, and to let me "dwell in that palace, at [the building] of which I have "in no way toiled, [Page 353] for thou alone hast laboured

A. fol.  
159b.  
col. 2.

"therein, grace being thy helper. And let me, even "me, | become the minister of this God Whom thou

"preachest, and let me serve Him." Then the brother  
 of the king bowed down before the Apostle, and said  
 unto him, "I beseech and entreat thee in the presence  
 "of thy God that I also may become the minister of  
 "Him Whose angels have made Him known unto me."  
 And the Apostle rejoiced and said, "I give thanks unto  
 "Thee, O Lord, because Thou hast revealed Thy righte-  
 "ousness, and because Thou, the God of righteousness, art  
 "God alone, and there is no other god besides Thee.  
 "Thou knowest all hidden things, and Thou shewest  
 "mercy unto all, and Thou art pitiful unto men; | and  
 "those who are wicked, and who have no understanding,  
 "forgive Thou them [because they] have no knowledge.  
 "And now, I pray and beseech Thee, accept the king  
 "and his brethren, and lead Thou them among Thy flock,  
 "and purify them in Thy compassion, that which is right  
 "being over them, and guard them against the Satans,  
 "and bring them into Thy haven, and give them to  
 "drink | of Thy gracious gifts and from Thine own foun-  
 "tain, which never faileth. And let them beseech and  
 "entreat Thee, and ask Thee mercifully to grant them  
 "escape from the Enemy Who hath in times past hated  
 "them, and who would have slain them, even as for our  
 "sakes all these things did come upon Thee. And forgive  
 "us, O Thou Who art indeed the Shepherd, and grant unto  
 "them that they may come to their right minds with  
 "Thee, and that they may obtain help from Thee. Let  
 "them wait for the hope of their salvation from Thee,  
 "and let them abide in Thy mystery, and let them receive  
 "Thy gracious gifts, and fulfil what Thou wouldst [they  
 "should do], and let them rejoice in serving Thee, and

B. fol.  
 146b.  
 col. 2.

A. fol.  
 160a.  
 col. 1.

B. fol. "finally | let them array themselves in apparel which is  
 147a. "from Thy Father, because they have believed in Thine  
 col. 1. "Apostles."

And when the Apostle had thus spoken Gandâpôr (Gondaforus) the king and his brother Gâdôn (Gad) departed, and they withdrew themselves, [Page 354] and waited for the Apostle to ask them for whatsoever he wished, and they became a place of rest for everyone, and asked that they might receive the seal of his words.

A. fol. Then he | said unto them, "Prepare your souls, and desire  
 160a. "it greatly from God, and then I will give unto you the  
 col. 2. "seal itself." And they said unto him, "We have heard  
 "thee say that the God Whom thou preachest knoweth  
 "His own sheep by His own seal." Then the Apostle answered and said unto them, "I rejoice, and I beseech  
 "[you] to receive this seal and to associate yourselves  
 "with me in this fasting, and giving of thanks, in the  
 "blessing of God, and to become perfect wholly in [our]  
 "God, Jesus Christ, in Whose Name I preach, and to  
 "believe in the Name of the Father of righteousness, con-

B. fol. "cerning Whom | I have taught you." And he commanded  
 147a. them to bring oil and to receive the seal, and they brought  
 col. 2. oil and lit many lamps, for it was night. Then the  
 Apostle rose up and recited prayers over them with [his]  
 voice, saying, "Peace be unto you, O my brethren;" now

A. fol. they heard the voice only, | but they did not see the  
 160b. form, for as yet they had not received baptism. And  
 col. 1. the Apostle took the oil, and poured it over their heads,  
 and recited prayers over them; and he answered and  
 said, "Let the Name of Christ, which is over all things,  
 "come! Let the Name which is holy, and exalted, and

"of perfect mercy, come, and let Thy mercy come, and  
 "let Thine excellent participation [with us] come! And  
 "let that which is a hidden mystery come! And let the  
 "mother of seven habitations come, so that Thy rest may  
 "be in the eighth habitation! And let the intercession of  
 "wisdom, and of counsel, and of understanding come and  
 "associate itself with | these young men! Let the Holy B. fol.  
 "Spirit come and cleanse their heart and reins!" and he 147b.  
 recited prayers over them [Page 355] in the Name of the col. 1.  
 Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. And  
 when the exorcisms had been said a young Man appeared  
 unto them, and He held a lighted lamp [in His hand],  
 whereupon all the [other] lamps flickered, and went out,  
 and became extinguished. | Then the Apostle said unto A. fol.  
 the Lord, "O Thou Who art able [to do] all things, we 160b.  
 "are not able to bear Thy light which Thou hast revealed col. 2.  
 "unto us, for the grace which is Thine is mighty com-  
 "pared with the grace which is ours." And when the  
 earth had become bright, and the morning had come, he  
 dispensed unto them the bread of association, and they  
 stood up in thanksgiving unto Christ, and they rejoiced  
 and were glad.

Then many other people believed, and were added  
 unto them, and came into the refuge of Christ. But the  
 Apostle ceased not to teach and to preach, and he said  
 unto them, "O men and women, and young men and  
 "maidens, and aged men and youths, whether ye be  
 "bond, or whether ye be free, flee from injustice, and  
 "fornication, and the | service of the belly, for under these B. fol.  
 "three heads are [grouped] iniquities of every kind. For 147b.  
 "fornication burneth up the mind, and it darkeneth the col. 2.

- “eyes of the soul, and it maketh the doing of good works  
 “by the body to cease, for ye know that a woman turneth  
 A. fol. “the mind of a man away from them, | and leadeth him  
 161a. “into suffering. And avarice bringeth the soul into fear  
 col. 1. “and shame, and this [vice] it is which dwelleth in the  
 “body, and which plundereth the possessions of others,  
 “and it is this which thinketh that it should not restore  
 “the possessions of others, and it maketh the soul not to  
 “give them unto their owners. And the service of the  
 “belly cloudeth over the mind, and casteth sorrow into  
 “the soul; for it is this [vice] which meditateth whether  
 “it will be in need of such and such things, and it asketh  
 “for the things which are remote from it, and it wondereth  
 “whether it will be saved from the things which are to  
 “come, and whether it shall have rest. Therefore ye  
 “shall dwell without sorrow and without fear, and this  
 “Saviour of Whom [Page 356] I speak shall dwell with  
 “you; and ye shall take no thought for the morrow, for  
 “the morrow shall take thought for the things of itself.  
 B. fol. “And remember ye | these words which were spoken con-  
 148a. “cerning the ravens in olden time: — ‘Look at the birds  
 col. 1. “of heaven, for they neither sow, nor reap, nor gather  
 “into barns, and God feedeth them; how little is the faith  
 A. fol. “‘which | ye have!’<sup>1</sup> But ye must accept Him Who shall  
 161a. “come, that is to say, our Lord, in Whom your hope  
 col. 2. “shall be. And believe in His Name, for He shall be the  
 “Judge of the living and of the dead, and He shall reward  
 “every man according to his work. And at His coming  
 “and at His appearance at the last day, there shall be

<sup>1</sup> St. Matthew vi. 26; St. Luke xii. 24, 28.

"no word which a man can utter that will excuse him, "for He shall judge according to the Law, [and it will "avail men naught to say that] they did not hear. The "word of His preaching is in the four quarters of the "world. Understand ye then that which is preached, and "believe ye at this present these words, and take upon "you the easy yoke and the burden which is light, so "that ye may live and not die. Keep ye these things, "and confirm yourselves in these commandments, and go "forth from the darkness, so that ye may be received "into the light. Come ye unto the Good One that ye "may receive of His gracious gift, | and may fill your "souls with the doctrine which is His."

B. fol.  
148a.  
col. 2.

And when the Apostle had said these things, some of those who were standing [there] said unto him, "It is "time | for those to whom a debt is due to be paid;" and he answered and said unto them, "God always taketh "from others so that He may remit [the debt] to him "that wisheth [it]; but let us give unto Him that which "is meet." And he blessed them, and took bread, and oil, and sheep's flesh(?), and salt, and gave unto them, but he himself continued his fast until the dawn of the Christian Sabbath came. And in the night our Lord came and stood by the Apostle, near his pillow, and said unto him, "Rise up forthwith, O Thomas, and at day- "break, at the time [Page 357] of prayer, go forth along "the road which goeth towards the east for a distance "of two stages, and there I will shew thee My glory, and "because of thy going there shall be many who shall "come and take refuge in Me, and the might and mind "of the Enemy shall be rebuked." And when he had

A. fol.  
161b.  
col. 1.

risen up from his slumber he said unto the brethren who  
B. fol. were with him, "O my children | and brethren, | God hath  
148b. "the desire to work miracles and to do wonders by me.  
col. 1. "But let us pray and entreat Him that there may be no  
A. fol. "cessation to them through us, but on the contrary, that they  
161b. "may never cease; and now, let it happen unto us accord-  
col. 2. "ing to His counsel and His will." Then having said  
these words, he laid his hand upon them, and blessed  
them, and said unto them, "Let this thanksgiving be with  
"you, and mercy, and compassion, and may it not be for  
"judgment;" and they said, Amen.

HERE ENDETH THE SECOND ACT OF SAINT THOMAS.

---

## THE ACTS OF SAINT THOMAS IN INDIA.

[Page 358]. THE THIRD ACT.<sup>1</sup> TO BE READ ON THE SECOND DAY OF THE MONTH YAKÂTÎT.<sup>2</sup>

B. fol.  
205a.  
col. 2.

### *The miracle of the snake.*

And the Apostle departed to go forth unto the place whither our Lord had commanded him.<sup>3</sup> And when he had drawn nigh thereto, being about one stage from it, he withdrew a little from the way and saw by chance a young man of very handsome appearance [lying] dead. And the Apostle said unto our Lord, "Was it because of this, O Lord, that Thou didst make me to go forth and come hither, that Thou mightest make me to experience this trial? But, inasmuch as Thou hast sent me, let Thy will be done in this matter." Then he began | to pray, saying, "O God, Thou Judge of the quick and of the dead, the quick being those who are standing, and the dead those who are [lying down], "Thou God of all, Who art the Father of those who are

A. fol.  
162a.  
col. 1.

---

<sup>1</sup> In the Third Act of Saint Thomas the Ethiopic text introduces the story of the ass that spake, which forms the Fourth Act in the Greek and Syriac texts.

<sup>2</sup> I. e., January 27.

<sup>3</sup> See LIPSIVS, op. cit., vol. 1. p. 255; WRIGHT, op. cit., p. 169.

- “in the body, and of those who are in the spirit but have  
 “departed [from the body], O Lord, Thou art the Judge  
 “in this hour, and therefore I cry unto Thee; let me see  
 “Thy glory through this [young man] who is here.” Then  
 he turned to those who were following him, and said,  
 “The matter is not a light one, but one which the Enemy  
 “himself hath performed that he might bring [the young  
 B. fol. “man to him]; but see, | he shall not have the power to do  
 205b. “it unto any one else, and he shall not do it unto any other  
 col. 1. “man except him that shall be obedient unto him.” Now  
 when he had said these words a large snake, which was  
 by the side of a stone, put forth its head and shook it,  
 and its tail was in the earth. And it cried out with a  
 loud voice, [Page 359] saying, “I will declare before thee  
 “in the following words the story of the quarrel which I  
 “had with this [young man], for,” he continued, “I know  
 “that thou hast come hither that thou mayest rebuke my  
 “deeds.” And the Apostle said unto him, “Yea, speak.”  
 Then the serpent said, “There was a certain beautiful  
 A. fol. “| woman who lived in the village opposite [this place],  
 162a. “and because she lived there I saw her, and I loved her,  
 col. 2. “and I followed her, and I watched her; and I found  
 “that this young man was wont to kiss her, and to lie  
 “with her, and to work other things with her, which it  
 “would be easy for me to declare, but it is not meet for  
 “me to reveal them before thee, for I know that thou art  
 “the twin of Christ Who doth continually do away our  
 “souls. At the time when he was with her I did not  
 “slay him, but I watched her until the evening had come,  
 B. fol. “and then I smote him, | and killed him, because he was  
 205b. “wont to do this thing on the Sabbath of the Christians.”  
 col. 2.

And the Apostle answered and said unto him, "Of  
 "what kith and kin art thou?" Then the serpent said,  
 "I am he who moveth and who is moved, and I am an  
 "oppressor and have the power to oppress, and I am the  
 "son of him who sitteth upon the throne in the heavens,  
 "and who gathereth together those belonging unto him  
 "who have been avenged. I am the son of him that  
 "fettereth the drunken man. I am the kinsman of him  
 "who is on the outside of the | Ocean, and whose tail is A. fol.  
 "in his mouth. I am he who was born in the Garden, 162b.  
 "and who dwelt therein, and I came in with Eve, and I col. 1.  
 "held converse with her, and I spake the things which  
 "my father commanded me to speak. I am he who in-  
 "cited Cain and made him burn to slay his brother, and  
 "because of me the thorn and the thistle sprouted and  
 "blossomed on the earth. I am he who made the angels  
 "to come down from on high, and I snared them with  
 "the lust for women so that the children of earth might  
 "arise | from them, and I wrought my will [upon them]. B. fol.  
 "I am he who hardened the heart [Page 360] of Pharaoh 206a.  
 "that he might slay the children of Israel, and make them col. 1.  
 "serve under a cruel yoke. I am he who corrupted the  
 "multitudes in the desert when they made the graven  
 "image. I am he who inflamed Herod, and I incited  
 "Caiaphas when [the Jews] made false accusations before  
 "Pilate against Him Whom it is meet [I should] worship.  
 "I am he who caused Judas to sell Christ and to deliver  
 "Him over unto death. I am he who layeth hold upon A. fol.  
 "the depth of the cold, although the Son of God desireth 162b.  
 "it not. I am he who hath led the way, and whatsoever col. 2.  
 "He hath chosen from me He hath chosen. I am the  
 EE\*

- “kinsman of Him Who shall come from the east, and  
 “to Whom hath been given the power to do in the earth  
 “whatsoever He pleaseth.” Now these things did the  
 serpent say whilst all the multitude was listening. And  
 the Apostle answered and said unto him, “Be silent, and  
 “[hearken unto] what I shall say unto thee, O abominable  
 “one, and thou shalt be put to shame. For the time for  
 “thee to be destroyed hath arrived, and thou shalt never
- B. fol. “| again speak these words wherein thou didst proclaim  
 206a. “what thou didst do for those who listened unto thy  
 col. 2. “speech. I command thee in the Name of Jesus Who  
 “hath lived until this present, and Who shall live for  
 “ever, and because of these chosen men, to suck out and  
 “withdraw from this [young man] the poison which thou  
 “hast cast into him.” And the snake spake again, saying,  
 “The time hath not yet come for [my] destruction as  
 “thou sayest, and why wilt thou make me to take [back]  
 “that which I have cast into this young man? [Why]
- A. fol. “should I die before my time? | For it was [my] father  
 163a. “himself who made the poison, and who took it and  
 col. 1. “cast it into the world, and the destruction thereof took  
 “place.” Then the Apostle said, “Shew me now what  
 “thy father made.” And the serpent, having drawn nigh,  
 put his mouth into the wound, and in the presence of  
 all the multitude sucked out his poison and, little by  
 little, the appearance of the young man, which was like  
 unto purple, changed and became white even as it had  
 been formerly [Page 361]. Now the serpent became  
 puffed out as he collected within himself the poison which  
 he took from | the young man, but the young man leaped  
 up and embraced the feet of the Apostle; and straightway
- B. fol.  
 206b.  
 col. 1.

the serpent became filled out full, and he burst asunder, and all his venom and poison were poured out. And the place where the poison was poured out was rent asunder to a great depth in the earth, and the serpent was swallowed up. Then the Apostle commanded the king and his brother, and they brought hirelings and covered over the place, and they laid the foundations, and built upon it houses wherein the poor might dwell.

Then the young man spake unto the Apostle, saying, "In what have I sinned against thee, O thou man, whose "grace is | twofold? What thou thinkest upon that thou "obtainest, and there is nothing impossible unto thee, even "as I see [from] this man who is standing by thee. And "moreover, he telleth me that I shall see many miracles "through thee, and that by thee I shall perform many "mighty works, and that I shall fulfil them in such wise "that there shall be a reward [unto me], and that many "shall be saved by them, and shall attain unto the rest "and the light which is for ever, and shall become children "of God. Now thou hast given life unto me, a young "man who was held fast by the Enemy, | and thou hast "placed me under thine own protection; thy advent among "us was for good, and unto good things thou wilt guide "us. I have become free from sorrow and trouble, and "I have returned from the darkness into the light. I have "rested from the service of the world, and I have been "saved from him that would urge me to perform the "deeds of error; and I have forsaken him that was born "with the darkness, and who would have forced me to "commit sin by my acts. But now I have found Him "Who will give me light, and Who will be a kinsman

A. fol.  
163a.  
col. 2.

B. fol.  
206b.  
col. 2.

"and a Redeemer unto me, and He will [cover] our eyes,  
 A. fol. "and will draw | those who hearken unto Him that they  
 163b. "may have knowledge, and may work, and may be  
 col. 1. "ashamed, and shewing themselves penitent may be  
 "saved(?). And now I have seen this deed, [Page 362]  
 "which is of the light, and is one which, indeed, cannot  
 "be put to shame. I am delivered from this work of  
 "darkness and error, and I shall not be put to shame.  
 "I have found him who will do good unto me, and who  
 "will drive away evil from me, and I have come unto  
 "him that is indeed the son and kinsman of the Wonder,  
 "Who will dispel the cloud, and illumine the world, and  
 B. fol. "heal our wounds and overthrow | hatred of Him. O  
 207a. "servant of God, I beseech thee to shew Him again unto  
 col. 1. "me so that I may know Him, and may hear His mar-  
 "vellous voice, which it is impossible to describe, for the  
 "music of [His] Person is beyond that of nature."

And the Apostle answered and said unto him, "If  
 "thou art saved, and hast placed thy trust as thou hast  
 "known how to do, even as thou sayest, Who is he who  
 "hath wrought this upon thee, and hath given thee  
 "knowledge and testimony? Because thy love is certain  
 A. fol. "unto thee, thou desirest to | see Him, and to be with  
 163b. "Him for ever, and to abide among His own creatures,  
 col. 2. "and to have thy rest in his joy. And if it be untrue  
 "that thou hast fled unto Him for refuge, and if thou  
 "hast returned again unto the work which thou didst  
 "aforetime, then forsake the beauty of the work of His  
 "goodness which hath now appeared unto thee, and the  
 "light of His baptism which thou now desirest. And if  
 "thou forgettest Him thou shalt lose not only this life

"which perisheth, but also that which is to come, and  
 "thou shalt return to thy former state which is behind  
 "thee of which thou speakest." And when the Apostle  
 had thus spoken, he came into the city holding the young  
 man | by the hand, and he was saying unto him all these  
 things: — "[What thou hast seen] are only a few out of  
 "many of the things which are with God, and He doth  
 "not give you information concerning the things which  
 "are seen, but He sheweth you things which are greater.  
 "As long as we belong to the body we are not able to  
 "declare and manifest openly the things which He hath  
 "prepared for those who believe on Him; and if I would  
 "declare unto you the Light | it would be a hard thing  
 "for me to do [Page 363]. And if we say unto you that  
 "He is rich, since His riches do not appear in this world  
 "we can only make mention [thereof] and cannot seek  
 "them. For He said, 'It belongeth unto what is difficult  
 "if a rich man entereth into the kingdom of heaven.'<sup>1</sup>  
 "And it hath been heard and said, 'Those who wear fine  
 "raiment are found in the palace.'<sup>2</sup> And because of  
 "those who are pure the suppers which we have been  
 "wont to take have been spoken and declaimed against,  
 "that we might know within ourselves that we must not  
 "overload our bodies either with strong drink or with the  
 "care of this world. 'Take not thought for yourselves  
 "what ye shall eat, and what ye shall drink, nor for your  
 "bodies | what ye shall put on; for the soul is of more  
 "account than the food, and your bodies are of more

B. fol.  
 207a.  
 col. 2.

A. fol.  
 164a.  
 col. 1.

B. fol.  
 207b.  
 col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> St. Matthew xix. 23, 24; St. Mark x. 25; St. Luke xviii. 25.

<sup>2</sup> St. Luke vii. 25.

"account than the raiment."<sup>1</sup> If we speak of the pleasure  
 "[which is caused by] a little food, a judgment is waiting  
 "thereupon. But we speak concerning Him that is above  
 "the world, and concerning God and His Angels, and  
 "concerning the saints and those who keep vigil, and  
 A. fol. "concerning the | way of joy, and concerning the drinking  
 164a. "of the wine of the true Vine, and concerning the putting  
 col. 2. "on of apparel which abideth and which groweth not old,  
 "which the eye hath not seen, nor the ear heard, and  
 "which it hath not entered into the heart of sinful man  
 "to imagine, and which God hath made ready for those  
 "who love Him.<sup>2</sup> Of these things we speak, and of such  
 "do we preach. Believe thou then in Him that thou  
 "mayest live, that thy hope may be upon Him, and thou  
 "mayest not die. For He desireth not a gift, and with  
 "a gift He cannot be appeased if thou wouldst give Him  
 "[one]; and He asketh not thee to offer up sacrifices unto  
 "Him. But put thy trust in Him, and He will not reject  
 "thee; and turn unto Him, and He will not forsake thee.  
 B. fol. "| For His goodness will induce thee to love him, and  
 207b. "when thou hast turned unto Him He will never forsake  
 col. 2. "thee."

Now when the Apostle had said these things unto  
 the young man, many people came unto him. And the  
 Apostle looked at them, and saw that they were stretch-  
 ing up their heads [Page 364] that they might see him,  
 and that they were going up unto a place which was  
 higher than he was that they might observe him. Then

<sup>1</sup> St. Matthew vi. 25.

<sup>2</sup> Isaiah lxiv. 4; 1 Corinthians ii. 9.

he said unto them, "O ye men who | have come that  
 "ye may believe in the works of Christ, henceforth know  
 "ye and understand that unless ye raise yourselves a  
 "little above the ground ye cannot see me who am a  
 "man like unto yourselves. How then will ye be able to  
 "see Him Who dwelleth in the height and in the depths  
 "unless, first of all, ye withdraw yourselves from your  
 "former habits, and from the works wherein there is no  
 "benefit? I desire that ye keep yourselves from that  
 "wherein there is no profit, and from the riches which  
 "perish, and from the possessions which grow old and  
 "fall into decay in the earth, and from [fine] apparel, and  
 "[from] the flesh which groweth old | and decayeth; and  
 "moreover, all your bodies also wax old, and are buried  
 "in the ground, and become dust, and return to their  
 "former state and become ashes. This is the body which  
 "worketh! But believe ye, and be baptized in Christ  
 "Jesus, Whom we preach, so that He may become your  
 "hope. Then shall your life be everlasting, for He shall  
 "be your guide in this | land of violence, and He shall  
 "become unto you a haven amid the billows of the sea.  
 "He shall be unto you a fountain of pure water in this  
 "land of thirst, and He shall be unto you | food in every  
 "place, and a resting-place for your souls, and a healing  
 "for your bodies."

A. fol.  
 164b.  
 col. 1.

B. fol.  
 208a.  
 col. 1.

A. fol.  
 164b.  
 col. 2.

Then the multitudes of the people who had gathered themselves together wept [when] they heard [these things], and they said unto him, "O man of the God Whom thou  
 "preachest, of the God Who is God, it is not meet for  
 "us to say that we are His, for the works which we have  
 "been wont to do are | alien unto Him, and remote from

B. fol.  
 208a.  
 col. 2.

"Him, and they are not well-pleasing unto Him. But if  
"He will have compassion upon us, and will shew mercy  
"unto us, and will redeem us, and will deliver us from  
"our former works, and from all the evil [Page 365] and  
"from the error wherein we have erred and gone astray,  
"and will neither keep in mind nor remember against us  
"our transgressions of former times, we will conform unto  
"His will, and we will keep His commandments perfectly."  
Then the Apostle answered and said unto them, "He will  
"neither keep in mind, nor remember against you your  
A. fol. "transgressions, nor the error wherein ye have lived, | and  
165a. "He will not keep beneath His eye the sins which ye have  
col. I. "committed."<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> What follows forms the Fourth Act of Saint Thomas in the Greek and Syriac texts; see WRIGHT, *op. cit.*, p. 179; LIPSIVS, *op. cit.*, vol. I. p. 257.

## THE ACTS OF SAINT THOMAS IN INDIA.

THE FOURTH ACT. TO BE READ ON THE SECOND DAY  
OF YAKÂTÎT.\*

*How an ass spake to the Apostle.*

Now whilst the Apostle was standing in that place and talking with the multitude, the colt of an ass came and stood before him; and he opened his mouth, and said unto the Apostle, "O kinsman of Christ, and Apostle of the Most High! Thou art full of the word of Christ, "thou art he that knoweth hidden things; thou who wast "a free man, like unto the Son of God, didst turn thyself "into | a slave, even as He did, that thou mightest redeem B. fol.  
"many; thou who art of noble race didst bind thyself 208b.  
"unto an enemy, and didst deliver his chosen one, and col. 1.  
"didst become the means of life unto many in the country  
"of India; and thou didst come unto the sinful men, who  
"at the appearance of thee and through the voice of God  
"have turned unto the things which God sent thee to  
"teach them. If thou wilt mount and ride upon me thou  
"canst have rest until thou enterest the city." And the  
Apostle answered and said, "O Jesus, by Whose desire  
"Thy mercy is given for the perfecting of patience, Who

---

\* L. e., January 27.

- A. fol. "speakest by means of animals which speak not, | Who  
 165a. "art the hidden rest, and Who art [only] revealed by  
 col. 2. "divers means, our Redeemer and our Nourisher, and  
 "our Guardian, Who giveth us rest in the body and  
 "salvation unto our souls, sweet spring and pure fountain  
 "which never fail, and never become befouled! Thou  
 "art the Merciful One, and Thou art the Helper of those  
 "who are Thy servants and who fight for Thee, Thou  
 "turnest back the Enemy, and makest him to withdraw  
 "from us, and Thou dost wage war on our behalf in many  
 "combats, and we overcome [through Thee], Who art  
 B. fol. "| indeed [Page 366] [the Athlete] and Angel Who cannot  
 208b. "be overcome, Thou holy, victorious, and glorious God!  
 col. 2. "Thou givest unto Thy chosen ones the joy which never  
 "endeth, and the rest which is without labour; Thou didst  
 "give Thyself on behalf of Thy sheep, and didst vanquish  
 "the wolf, and didst deliver us Who are the sheep of  
 "Thy pasture, and Thou dost lead them in the ordinances  
 "which are good. Thee we glorify, and Thee we praise,  
 "together with Thy Father, Who is invisible, and the  
 "Holy Spirit, for Thou art the Righteous One in all the  
 "world."

- And when the Apostle had said these things unto  
 him, the multitudes who were there were looking at the  
 A. fol. Apostle and waiting anxiously [to hear] what answer | he  
 165b. would make unto the ass's colt. Then when he had stood  
 col. 1. for a long time in astonishment, and with his gaze fixed  
 upon heaven, the Apostle said unto him, "Who art thou?  
 "Unto whom dost thou belong? For that which hath  
 "gone forth from thy mouth is astonishing, and glorious,  
 "and thereby many most marvellous and hidden things

"[are made known]." And the ass's colt answered and said unto him, "I am of the generations of the ass which "served Balaam, and upon my father, | from whose off-spring I have come, did thy Lord and teacher sit. "And now, I have been sent unto thee that I might "give thee rest, and that thou mightest ride upon me." Then the Apostle believed, and said in his heart, "This "is my portion which hath come unto me through thy "labour; I will go; rise up." And the Apostle said [unto the ass, "He Who hath given unto thee this gracious "gift is able to make it perfect for thee from generation "to generation, for the matter is too honourable for me, "and I am not meet therefor;" and he refused to ride upon the colt of the ass. Then the colt of the ass asked and entreated the Apostle that he might receive a blessing from him, and he stood still, and the Apostle mounted upon him, and told him [to journey on]. | And all the people followed him, some running in front of him, and some behind him, that they might see the conclusion of the matter and how he would leave the colt of the ass. Now when he came to the gates of the city, he threw himself off him, [Page 367] and said unto him, "Go, and take heed where thou goest;" and straightway the ass's colt fell down before him and died. And | all those who were there were terrified, and said unto the Apostle, "Bring him to life, and raise him up "again." Then the Apostle answered and said unto them, "I have the power to raise him up through the "might of Jesus Christ, but he is better thus; and He "Who gave him a voice to speak with is able to "make him not to die and to raise him up again,

B. fol.  
209a.  
col. 1.

A. fol.  
165b.  
col. 2.

B. fol.  
209a.  
col. 2.

"but He wisheth it not. This state is best for him."  
And the Apostle commanded those who were standing  
there to dig a hole and bury the body of the colt of  
the ass.

HERE END THE THIRD AND FOURTH ACTS OF SAINT  
THOMAS.

---

## THE ACTS OF SAINT THOMAS IN INDIA.

[Page 368]. THE FIFTH ACT.<sup>1</sup> TO BE READ ON THE FOURTEENTH DAY OF THE MONTH MAGÂBÎT.<sup>2</sup>

How a Devil seized and took possession of a woman, and tarried with her, and dwelt in her for five years.

B. fol.  
221a.  
col. 1.  
A. fol.  
166a.  
col. 1.

And the Apostle came into the city,<sup>3</sup> and all the multitude followed after him; and he decided to go unto the kinsfolk of the young man who had been killed by the serpent, whom he had made to live, for they besought him earnestly to go unto them. Now when the Apostle had come into their house there was a certain woman there who was beautiful, and she cried out with a loud voice, and said, "O thou new Apostle of the new God, "who hast come unto the country of India, through whose "coming the salvation of our souls hath arrived, through "whom, if they believe in Him, the bodies of such as are "sick by reason of the sickness of the Enemy are made "whole, thou art the means of life unto all those who "turn to Him. Give thou me the command that I may

---

<sup>1</sup> The *Fourth* Act, according to the Ethiopic text.

<sup>2</sup> I. e., March 10.

<sup>3</sup> See LIPSIVS, op. cit., vol. I. p. 257; WRIGHT, op. cit., p. 182.

- "draw nigh unto thee, and that I may declare [unto thee]  
 "everything which hath happened unto me; then shall I  
 "have hope through thee, and those who are standing by  
 "thee shall also have hope in the God Whom thou  
 "preachest. Behold, for five years not a little torment  
 B. fol. "I have I suffered through the Enemy, and I have  
 221a. "during that time been like | unto a woman who was in  
 col. 2. "suffering and sorrow, although formerly I was at peace  
 A. fol. "with everyone, and I had neither care nor any anxiety  
 166a. "whatsoever. Now, one day, as I was coming out of the  
 col. 2. "bath, there met me a certain man who appeared to be  
 "in a hurry [Page 369], and he was [much] moved, and  
 "his voice was weak and feeble within him. And he  
 "said unto me, 'Stand still before me, for thou and I are  
 "one, and our love shall be one, and we will have inter-  
 "course one with the other after the manner of a man  
 "with a woman.' Then I answered and said unto him,  
 "I had nought to say unto him who was betrothed unto  
 "me, for I wished not to have intercourse with him; how  
 "then is it possible for thee to desire to have intercourse  
 "with me except as a harlot?' And having thus spoken  
 "I passed on my way. Then unto her who was with  
 "me I said, 'Didst thou see this man who was not  
 "ashamed to speak openly with me [of fornication]?'  
 "And she said unto me, 'I saw an old man holding con-  
 "verse with thee.' Now when I had come into my  
 "habitation, and had eaten my supper, I fell to thinking  
 B. fol. "very much about the young man whom I had seen,  
 221b. "and whom | she who was with me had seen also; | and  
 col. 1. "as I was thus engaged in thought I fell asleep. And  
 A. fol. "in the night the man himself came and had intercourse  
 166b.  
 col. 1.

"with me, but when the day broke I fled from him; and  
 "as soon as the night fell he used to come and tarry  
 "with me. For these last five years he hath been in the  
 "habit of approaching me, and behold, he weareth me  
 "out, and refuseth to leave me. I know and am certain  
 "that devils, and unclean spirits, and Satans are subject  
 "unto thee, and that they tremble [before thee] and thy  
 "prayer. Pray thou, then, over me (*or* for me) and drive  
 "away from me him that tormenteth me, so that I may  
 "be set free from him, and may return unto my former  
 "condition, and may receive back the gracious treatment  
 "which my kinsfolk have removed from me."

And the Apostle said, "What evil is there that is  
 "wrought by the Enemy which cannot be put down?  
 "There is no opposition which cannot be overcome, and  
 "there is no evil which hath not [its] cure. Thou, O  
 "Evil One, hast many aspects, and according to thy  
 "desire thou appearest [in any one of them], and thy  
 "nature changeth with each; thou art without faith, and  
 "thou destroyest him whose works are good. | Thy nature  
 "is bitter, and thy fruit is from Diabolos. Thou art shame-  
 "less Error, and thy leadings astray | burn [Page 370]  
 "like unto the venom of the serpent of the ground."  
 Now when the Apostle had said these words, the devil  
 came forth into his presence, but none saw him except  
 the woman; and he said with a loud voice, all the people  
 hearing him, "What have I to do with thee, O Apostle  
 "of the Highest? What have I to do with thee, O thou  
 "servant of Jesus Christ? What have I to do with thee,  
 "O thou associate of the Holy Son of God? Why dost  
 "thou wish to destroy us before our time? Why dost

B. fol.  
 221b.  
 col. 2.  
 A. fol.  
 166b.  
 col. 2.

"thou wish to take away the power which is ours? For  
 "we had hope [therein] and opportunity, just as thou hast  
 "opportunity, and we had dominion [thereby], and simi-  
 "larly in each one of us there is the [same] dominion.  
 "And what is the power wherewith thou hast come to  
 "gain the mastery over us? Now we have also in us  
 "this knowledge (*or* doctrine) of another through which  
 B. fol. "thou shalt not gain the mastery | over us. And why  
 222a. "dost thou covet for thyself, like an unrighteous man,  
 col. 1. "that which belongeth unto another, and dost make thy-  
 A. fol. "self like unto the Son of God, Who | hath guided us,  
 167a. "and dost pretend, having come hither, that thou doest  
 col. 1. "deeds by the strength which is thine own? Now we  
 "imagined that we could hold Him in our hand, like a  
 "man, but we understand [Him] not, for He hath turned  
 "us, and hath brought us back into His hand; and we  
 "knew Him not, for He came in the similitude of a man,  
 "and He hid Himself and abased Himself. And we saw  
 "Him, and imagined that He was a man who had put  
 "on flesh, but we knew not that it was He Who would  
 "give life unto man. And He gave us power over our  
 "adversaries, and we had dominion over them for many  
 "days, and we led them into error, being lords over them,  
 "and we made them to go round about. Now thou  
 "desirest, without opposition, to exceed the power which  
 "was given unto thee, and to cast us away."

And having said these words the devil wept, and  
 B. fol. said, "I must leave this my kind and | beautiful wife  
 222a. "[Page 371] with whom I have dwelt for [many] days,  
 col. 2. "and in whom I have found my place of rest. Must I  
 "leave thee now, O my most beloved sister, my beloved

“one, in whose body I have been well | pleased? I know A. fol.  
 “not upon whom I am to call, or who will hear me and 167a.  
 “give me rest. But now I know what I will do. I will col. 2.  
 “go into countries where I have never [before] been, and  
 “where his opportunity (i. e., the Apostle’s) will not come,  
 “and I shall find another [woman to take] thy place.”  
 And lifting up his voice, he said, “Dwell thou in rest and  
 “peace, for thou hast received one who is greater than  
 “I. I will go and will seek out one who is like unto thee,  
 “and if I find one not I will return unto thee. For I  
 “know that since thou art near this man thou wilt take  
 “refuge with him; but when he hath passed away thou  
 “wilt be unto me even as thou wast aforetime when thou  
 “hadst not seen him, and hadst [not] chosen him. And  
 “now when the time hath come I shall appear openly,  
 “but I am afraid of Him Whom this man preacheth.”  
 And having said these | words the demon went forth, B. fol.  
 and was no more seen; but fire and smoke appeared, 222b.  
 and all those who were there marvelled. Now when the col. 1.  
 Apostle | had seen him, he said unto them, “There is A. fol.  
 “nothing whatever marvellous here in what the devil hath 167b.  
 “wrought except his nature, by which he hath been col. 1.  
 “brought to nought, for his own fire hath swallowed him  
 “up, and the smoke of himself hath been scattered abroad.”

And the Apostle answered and said, “O Thou hidden  
 “Mystery which hath been revealed unto us, Jesus, Who  
 “art not hidden, it is Thou Who hast created me [and  
 “Who hast revealed mysteries unto me] more than unto  
 “all my [other] companions; and Thou hast spoken  
 “unto me three words whereby my mind shall be re-  
 “vealed unto others, but I am unable to declare them.

- "Jesus, Thou Man, Who wast killed and buried, Jesus,  
 "our God and our Redeemer, Who gavest life to the  
 "dead, Who healedst the sick; there is no man whom  
 "Thou wilt not save in Thy mercy if he asketh Thee.  
 "Thou didst catch fish for supper and dinner, and Thou  
 "didst satisfy all [the multitude] by means of a very little  
 "[Page 372] bread. Jesus, Who didst rest Thyself after  
 "a journey like a man, Thou didst walk upon the waves  
 B. fol. "of the | sea like God; Thou Voice of the Most High  
 222b.  
 col. 2. "Who dost shew Thyself in the hearts of the perfect;  
 A. fol. "| Thou absolute Saviour, and Right Hand of the Light,  
 167b.  
 col. 2. "Who didst destroy by Thy power Satan, and didst blot  
 "out all his works, and every likeness of him; O Thou  
 "Only Birth, Who art above all the firstborn of many  
 "brethren, Thou God Who art from God, Thou exalted  
 "One Whom men have rejected and despised until this  
 "present; O Jesus Christ, Who didst not make Thy grace  
 "to be remote from us, therefore we cry out unto Thee,  
 "O Thou Who didst become the cause of life to all the  
 "race of men. For our sakes Thou didst endure con-  
 "demnation, and didst suffer pain, and wast shut up in  
 "prison; and Thou didst set free all who were therein,  
 "and those who had been cast aside, and those who had  
 "gone astray, and Thou didst redeem from the path of  
 "error those who believed in Thee. I beseech Thee, O  
 "my Lord, on behalf of those who stand and believe in  
 "Thee, and Who await Thy grace, and Thy place of  
 B. fol. "refuge, and who listen with their ears to Thy word  
 223a.  
 col. 1. "| which is spoken unto them by Thee. Let Thy peace  
 A. fol. "come, and let Thy joy and Thy faith | dwell upon them,  
 168a.  
 col. 1. "and make new their works in the time which is past;

"and let them put away their old deeds, and clothe themselves in the new [man] which is preached unto them by me."

Then the Apostle laid his hand [upon them] and blessed them, saying, "The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you for ever and ever. Amen." And the woman made supplication, and said unto him, "O Apostle of the Most High, give me the seal so that this evil enemy may not come back upon me." And the Apostle placed her [before] him, and he laid his hand upon her, and he made the sign of the cross over her in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost; and very many other people were sealed with the sign of the cross with her. Then the Apostle commanded them [Page 373] to bring a table, and they placed a seat which [they] found there; and the Apostle spread upon it a linen cover and placed thereon the Bread of blessing, | and standing up, he said, "O Jesus, Who hast caused me to appear that we may give thanks unto Thee, and may partake of Thy holy Body, and Thy precious Blood: because of Thy grace unto us we offer | thanks-giving unto Thee, and we proclaim Thy Name to be holy; and now, come and receive us. And let the grace of the Most High come, and let Thy holy mercy come, and let the human nature unto which Thou hast united Thyself [also] come, and let Thy doctrine which hath knowledge of hidden mysteries come, and let the mighty companion come, and let the mighty warrior come, and let the storehouse of life come, and let the grace of the elect come, and let the grace which is of old come, and let it reveal great and marvellous works, and let

B. fol.  
223a.  
col. 2.

A. fol.  
168a.  
col. 2.

“that which is hidden appear openly, and let grace and  
“rest be given unto those who think with me, and moreover  
“let it come and mingle itself with this thanksgiving which  
“we make in Thy Name, and in Thy love, and let us be  
“blessed unto Thee.” And having said these words the  
Apostle made the sign of the cross over the bread, and  
B. fol. he brake it and offered it unto the | woman over whom  
223b. he had made the sign of the cross, and said, “This shall  
col. 1. “be unto thee for the remission of sin and transgression,  
“and it shall be unto thee for everlasting life.” And  
A. fol. | after this he gave it unto all those who were with her,  
168b. and they were sealed with the sign of the cross and  
col. 1. were blessed.

HERE ENDETH THE FIFTH ACT OF SAINT THOMAS.

---

## THE ACTS OF SAINT THOMAS IN INDIA.

THE SIXTH ACT.<sup>1</sup> [TO BE RECITED] ON THE TWENTIETH  
DAY OF THE MONTH SANÉ.<sup>2</sup>

*How a woman was slain in a shop.*

B. fol.  
245b.  
col. 1.

Now there was a certain young man who had committed a most unseemly act,<sup>3</sup> [Page 373] and he was rebuked and he drew nigh and partook of the Blessing and gave thanks, and he was about to put the bread in his mouth when both his hands dried up, and he was unable to do so; and those who were standing there saw him, and they told the Apostle what had taken place. Then the Apostle called the young man and said unto him, "Tell me, O my son, and be not afraid. What didst thou do [before] thou camest here? For the grace of God hath rebuked thee. Now the grace of God is a healing unto many, and especially unto those who receive it in faith and love, but thee hath it caused to wither, because

---

<sup>1</sup> The *Fifth* Act, according to the Ethiopic text.

<sup>2</sup> L. e., June 14.

<sup>3</sup> See LIPSIVS, op. cit., p. 258; WRIGHT, op. cit., p. 190.

"of the sin and transgression which thou hast committed."

A. fol. 168b. col. 2. And when the young man [saw that] the grace | of God had rebuked him, he drew nigh, and bowed down at the feet of the Apostle, and he made supplication unto him,

B. fol. 245b. col. 2. saying, "I have committed an abominable deed, | although "I imagined that I would do a good one. Behold, there

"was a certain woman who lived outside the city, and "who kept a shop, and she loved [me exceedingly]. And "when I heard from thee how thou didst preach Christ "the Living [God], I came and I received the sign of the "cross from thee together with all [the other folk] And "thou thyself didst say, 'If any man joineth himself unto "foul impurity, and especially if he hath intercourse with "any woman who hath a husband, he shall not have "forgiveness of sins with God.' And by reason of these "words, and because I loved her, I should have been well- "pleased that she should live with me in purity of heart, "even as thou hast taught me; but the woman wearied "me greatly, and when she refused to leave [her evil "ways] I took a sword and killed her, for I could not "bear to see her [leading an evil life]." And when the

A. fol. 169a. col. 1. Apostle had heard these words, he said, "O evil | lust, "which could not contain [itself], thou hast caused this "man to commit a shameful deed of anger! How hast thou "made him to commit in [Page 375] a shameless manner

B. fol. 246a. col. 1. "a deed of the | serpent!"

And the Apostle commanded them to bring unto him water in a washing basin, and they brought some unto him. And the Apostle said, "O water which hath "come unto us from the Water of life! O grace which "hath been given and sent unto us from Grace! O rest

"which hath been sent unto us from Rest! O might of  
 "the redemption of Christ which vanquisheth all things,  
 "and which doeth all things! Yea, O Lord, by Thy  
 "command come and abide upon this water, so that the  
 "grace of the Holy Spirit may [rest] upon this water."  
 Then the Apostle said unto the young man, "Go, and  
 "wash thine hands in this water;" and the young man  
 washed, and was healed, and became as he was afore-  
 time. Now before the young man had washed, the  
 Apostle said unto him, "Believest thou that Jesus Christ  
 "is able to do all things?" And the young man said,  
 "Let not this my punishment be too hard for me, be-  
 "cause I have done this evil thing, for I committed the  
 "deed | in faith | imagining that I was doing a good act,  
 "and I did it because of my belief. I made supplication  
 "unto her, as I have already told thee, and she refused  
 "to keep herself in purity, and then I did this thing  
 "unto her."

A. fol.  
 169a.  
 col. 2.  
 B. fol.  
 246a.  
 col. 2.

And the Apostle said unto him, "Come now, and  
 "guide me unto the house of the woman to whom thou  
 "hast done this evil, and let us see her;" so the young  
 man went with the Apostle, and when they had arrived  
 at the place they found the woman ready for burial.  
 Now when the Apostle had seen her he was sorrowful,  
 for she was fair to look upon and of graceful stature,  
 and he commanded them to bring her out into the garden,  
 and they brought her out and laid her upon a bed out-  
 side [the house], and they did even as he commanded  
 them. Then the Apostle laid his hand upon her, and  
 said, "O Jesus Christ, Who withdrawest not Thine hand,  
 "and Who makest not Thy face to be remote from those

- “who call upon Thee; Jesus, Who appearest at all times,  
 “both whenever we desire [Thee], and whenever we call  
 “upon Thee, [Page 376] Thou hast given [unto us] this  
 B. fol. “power | that we may receive [it]. | And not this only  
 246b. “hast Thou commanded us, but Thou hast taught us to  
 col. 1. “pray; and not only dost [Thou] teach man, but Thou  
 A. fol. “makest Thyself to be visible, and man seeth [Thee].  
 169b. “From Thee iniquity is not hidden, and Thou hast shewn  
 col. 1. “[Thy] works openly unto men. Thy works, as far as we  
 “are able to understand Thee, are immeasurable, O Thou  
 “Who hast given us this gracious gift, and Thou hast  
 “said unto us, ‘Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and  
 “‘ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.’  
 “We make supplication unto Thee, knowing our sin, and  
 “we beseech Thee neither for riches nor for possessions,  
 “nor for gold and silver, nor for any desirable thing  
 “whatsoever which returneth unto the earth. But we  
 “beseech and entreat Thee, for the sake of Thy holy  
 “Name, to raise up by Thy might and by Thy glory  
 “her who hath fallen down, that those who are here may  
 “believe.” Then the Apostle said unto this young man,  
 “Go, take hold of her and say unto her, I slew thee by  
 “an iron weapon with mine own hand, but Christ by  
 B. fol. “mine own | hand, through faith, shall raise thee up.” And  
 246b. having drawn nigh unto her the young man said, | “I  
 col. 2. “have believed in Thee, O Jesus Christ; grant unto this  
 A. fol. “woman the gift of life, and as for me, draw Thou nigh  
 169b. “unto me, [and help] my faith.” Then he drew the hand  
 col. 2. of the woman towards him, and she arose, and turned,

<sup>1</sup> St. Matthew vii. 7; St. Luke xi. 9.

and sat up, and all those who were there saw her. And [when] she saw the Apostle standing in front of her, she left her couch, and rose up, and bowed down in homage at the feet of the Apostle, and she took hold of the hem of his garment, and said unto him, "I beseech thee, O "my lord, [to tell me] where is the other being, who was "with me and who would not let me remain in the place "of abomination, but handed me over unto thy care [and "said], Let this woman return unto her place, and let her "dwell as she hath dwelt in the time which is past?" Then the Apostle said unto her, "Tell me, whence hast "thou come?" And she answered and said unto him, | "Dost thou, who [Page 377] wast with me, wish to hear "unto what place I came?" Then she began to speak unto the Apostle, and to say unto him, "A man who was "altogether black, and whose apparel was altogether filthy, "carried me away, | and set me in a place wherein there "was an abundance of pits, which reeked with a filthy "smell. Then he brought me out from this place and "set me in another wherein I saw before me a pit of "blazing fire, and therein were wheels which went round, "and to these wheels were bound souls which shrieked "and cried out, but there was none to deliver them. "And this black man said, "These are the souls of thy "people who, when their days have come to an end, "are given over unto this punishment; these [are the souls "of those who] being men have made themselves to be "'as women.' And again I saw little children, the one | "being above the other, and [the black man] answered "and said unto me, "These are the children of the souls, "and God hath placed them here to disgrace them.'

B. fol.  
247a.  
col. 1.

A. fol.  
170a.  
col. 1.

B. fol.  
247a.  
col. 2.

- "Then again he set me in another pit, and I looked and  
 "saw an abyss filled with worms, and the souls which  
 "were there were writhing, and they were gnashing their  
 A. fol. "teeth, and uttering cries. And the [black] man | said  
 170b. "unto me, 'These are the souls of the women who have  
 col. 2. "left their husbands and have committed fornication with  
 "other men, and of the men who have left their wives  
 "and committed fornication with other women; and be-  
 "hold, they have entered into [their] punishment.' Then  
 "he shewed me another pit, and I looked and saw therein  
 "souls that were hanging, some by their tongues, and  
 "some by the hair of their heads, and some by their  
 B. fol. "hands, | and some by their feet, and some with their  
 247b. "heads downwards; and the smoke of pitch was fuming  
 col. 1. "below them. And the [black] man said unto me, 'The souls  
 "that are hanging by their tongues are the souls of those  
 "[Page 378] who are guilty of falsehood, and who spake  
 "lies without being ashamed. The souls that are hang-  
 "ing by their hair are the souls of those who were  
 "perverse, and who never had reverence either for man  
 "or woman. The souls that are hanging by their hands  
 "are the souls of those who robbed and plundered the  
 "poor, who never gave to those who were in affliction,  
 "who stole the goods of others and who neither re-  
 "membered nor thought of the law (*or* religion) of God.  
 A. fol. "'The souls that are hanging by their | feet are the souls  
 170b. "'of those who followed after evil desire, and who never  
 col. 1. "'regarded those who were in misery, or those who died  
 "and had not been buried. Therefore each soul shall  
 "be rewarded according to its work.' Then he set me  
 "in another place of darkness wherefrom there proceeded

"a filthy smell, and multitudes of souls were looking forth  
 "from there that they might see | the light; and those B. fol.  
 "who were keeping guard over them were preventing 247b.  
 "them from looking. And the [black] man who was with col. 2.  
 "me said unto me, 'Those are the punishments of those  
 "'souls whom thou seest. When the punishment which  
 "'is assigned to a certain company of souls, according  
 "'to their works, is ended, others take their places; now  
 "'some of these souls, when their punishment is ended,  
 "'are destroyed, but others are handed over to other  
 "'punishments.' Then those who were keeping guard  
 "over the souls which were in darkness said unto this  
 "man who was guiding me, 'Give us this soul that we  
 "'may set it with its companions until the time for it to  
 "'be judged shall come.' And he said unto them, 'I will  
 "'not give it up unto you, but unto Him that | sent me, A. fol.  
 "'for He commanded me that I was [not] to leave it 17ob.  
 "'here, but that I was to take it out with me until an col. 2.  
 "'order should be made concerning it.' Then the [black]  
 "man took me, and set me in another place wherein  
 "were men walking round about, and he who was like  
 "unto thee | took me, and gave me unto thee, saying, B. fol.  
 "'Take her, and keep her, for she belongeth unto the 248a.  
 "'sheep who [Page 379] have gone astray in the times col. 1.  
 "'that are past.' And now, behold me, I am here before  
 "thee, and I beseech and entreat thee not let me go  
 "into this place unto the punishments which I have  
 "seen."

Then the Apostle said unto those who were [stand-  
 ing] by him, "Hear ye what this woman saith? But there  
 "are other punishments which are much more evil than

- "these, and if ye do not turn unto the Lord Whom I  
 "preach unto you, and forsake the evil works, which ye  
 "have done through ignorance in the times which are past,  
 "at your end ye shall receive such punishments. But  
 "believe in our Lord Jesus Christ that He may remit to  
 "you the sins which ye have committed, and may cleanse  
 "you from all your sins, and from all your evil mind,  
 B. fol. "and | may be with you | continually. And having heard  
 248a. "these things put off from you the old apparel, and array  
 col. 2. "yourselves in the new raiment, [and put away] your  
 A. fol. "former works and lusts, and let those who have stolen  
 171a. "steal no more, but let them love labour, and gain  
 col. 1. "possessions for themselves. And as for those who have  
 "committed fornication, let them do so no more, lest,  
 "having given themselves unto the lust [the enjoyment  
 "of which] is for a short time, they [find] in the end [the  
 "pain] which is for ever. Now for a man to go with a  
 "man as with a woman is the worst sin of all before  
 "God. And flee falsehood, and oppression, and plunder,  
 "and strong drink, and [blood] guiltiness, and reward ye  
 "not with evil him that doeth evil unto you, for all these  
 "things against which I preach unto you are alien unto God.  
 "But dwell in faith, and believe in a meek spirit, and in  
 "holiness, and in hope, and walk ye in [the path] wherein  
 "God rejoiceth, and be ye followers of Him; and ye shall  
 B. fol. "receive the gift of grace which | many shall receive at  
 248b. "this present."  
 col. 1. Then all the people believed and gave themselves  
 unto God, [Page 380] and they marvelled at the exalted  
 A. fol. works and at His | holy service. And they collected much  
 171a. money to give to the widows, for the Apostle was in the  
 col. 2.

habit on certain days in each month of giving unto them with his own hands whatsoever they had need of, both as regards apparel and raiment, [and food]. And he never failed to preach and declare that it had been written that Jesus Christ should come and be crucified, and be raised up on the third day. And he shewed them again and again, and made it clear unto them from the Prophets, beginning [with the first of them and going on] until Christ Himself appeared, that when He came whatsoever had been said [by them] concerning Him had been fulfilled. Now the report of the Apostle came into all countries and cities, and from all those wherein there were sick and diseased folk, and people possessed of devils, and lunatics, and infirm, | and those who were grievously afflicted they came unto him. And those who were [lying] on beds were carried unto him by those who could walk upon their legs, and they took them and laid them by the road whereby the Apostle would pass, and he, by the might of God, healed them | all. Those who were sick were healed, and those who were helpless rose up, and they all said with [one] voice, "Glory [be] to Jesus Christ, "Thou Who hast given healing unto us all alike by the "hands of Thy servant Thomas! We praise Thee and we "entreat Thee to allow us to enter Thy pasture, and to "be among the number of thy sheep; and now, receive "us, and bear not in mind against us the sins which we "did in times of old in our ignorance."

B. fol.  
248b.  
col. 2.

A. fol.  
171b.  
col. 1.

And the Apostle said, "Glory be unto Thee, O One, "Who wast begotten of the Father. Glory be unto Thee, "Thou Firstborn, Who givest life unto many. Glory be "unto Thee, Thou Who rebukest and receivest those

- "who turn unto Thee. Thou art He Who never slumber-  
 B. fol. "eth, and Thou raisest up those who | slumber, and givest  
 249a. "life unto the dead. O our Lord Jesus [Page 381] Christ,  
 col. 1. "the Son of the living God, the Saviour, and Helper,  
 "and Refuge, and Rest, of all those who labour [to do]  
 "Thy will, Thou givest healing unto those who walk in  
 "Thy Name, and who bear the burden and heat of the  
 "day. We give thanks unto Thee for Thy gracious gift  
 A. fol. "which hath been given unto us, and for Thy help | which  
 171b. "hath been with us, and for Thy grace which hath come  
 col. 2. "forth from thee upon us, O Lord, for Thou hast loved  
 "us, and hast shewn Thyself true unto us. And look upon  
 "us, O Lord, for on Thee we have set our mind, and for  
 "Thy sake we have become alien unto our desires.  
 "And look upon us, O Lord, for for Thy sake we have  
 "left our possessions so that we may find Thee, the  
 "great Treasure. And look upon us, O Lord, for for  
 "Thy sake we have forsaken our kinsfolk that we may  
 "mingle with Thy kinsfolk. And look upon us, O Lord,  
 B. fol. "for for Thy sake we have forsaken | our fathers and  
 249a. "our mothers, that we might see Thy Father, and might  
 col. 2. "obtain from Him the food of blessing. And look upon  
 "us, O Lord, for for Thy sake we have left our wives  
 "and our offspring, that we might enter into the com-  
 "panionship with Thee which indeed abideth and never  
 "perisheth. And let us find the fair offspring which  
 "shall be given unto us by Thee, and let us not be  
 "separated from this state of purity, and let us be pure,  
 "and may we all unite with Him for ever and ever!  
 "Amen."

HERE ENDETH THE SIXTH ACT OF SAINT THOMAS.

Let the prayer and blessing of the Apostles be poured out upon the writer of this book, and upon him that causeth it to be read, and upon him that translated it, and upon her who gave it, Thine handmaiden Walatta Madhan, for ever and for ever! Amen.

---

## THE ACTS OF SAINT PETER.

B. fol. 10a. [Page 382] IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE  
col. 1. SON, AND OF THE HOLY SPIRIT, ONE GOD.

The noble and excellent disciple Clement<sup>1</sup> relateth unto us the history of his master Peter, the chief of the Apostles, and how our Lord Jesus Christ appeared unto him. May his prayer and his blessing be with our king John,<sup>2</sup> and with the Queen Sabla Wangel.<sup>3</sup>

### CHAPTER I.

CONCERNING THE MANIFESTATION OF AND HOW OUR LORD ASCENDED INTO HEAVEN, AND HOW HE BLESSED THE APOSTLES, AND MADE KNOWN UNTO THEM CONCERNING THE ANGELS WHO SING PRAISES BEFORE HIM, AND THE SIMILITUDE OF THEIR FORMS, AND THEIR ORDERS, AND THEIR ORDINANCES AND WHATSOEVER APPERTAINETH THERETO.

Clement saith:—Thus spake my father Peter:—Hearken, O my son Clement, unto what I shall declare unto

---

<sup>1</sup> Presumably the fellow-worker, and disciple of St. Paul mentioned in Philippians iv. 3, who is identified with Clement of Rome in the following composition, which is probably apocryphal.

<sup>2</sup> I. e., John I., 'Aláf Sagad, reigned from October 1667 to July 1682.

<sup>3</sup> I. e., Sabla Wangel 'Aláf Mogasá.

thee, Our Lord Jesus Christ was on the Mount of Olives, and I [was with Him] after He had spoken unto me and commanded me [concerning] all the | Law. And again <sup>B. fol. 10a. col. 2.</sup> He said unto me, "O Peter, go thou unto thy brethren, "and call them unto Me here." So I went down from the Mount of Olives, and I left our Lord standing there; and I cried out to my brethren, that is to say, to James, and John, and Andrew, and they cried out to the rest of the Twelve Apostles and to the Seventy-two Disciples, and we all came into the mountain, and we stood upon it facing towards the east, with Jerusalem [lying] below [us].

[Page 383] Then a white and shining cloud, which was like unto a flame of fire, surrounded us, and all the people of Jerusalem saw the splendour thereof and were dismayed. And we were standing in the midst of the cloud, and we saw the doors of heaven opened, and the angels of light ascending and descending upon a ladder of light. And we saw our Lord standing at the foot of the ladder, and He was wishing to ascend unto His throne of radiant glory, and He stretched out His holy right hand, and blessed us, and He breathed into our faces, and said unto us, "Receive ye the Holy Spirit;" | and when He <sup>B. fol. 10b. col. 1.</sup> had thus spoken unto us, our bodies and our hearts burned with the light of the Holy Spirit. And again, we saw a chariot of light descend from heaven upon the wings of the Cherubim, and with it there were thousands and tens of thousands of thousands of angels, and the Seraphim, each of whom had six wings; and they all in their various grades were singing praises, and crying out joyfully, and were ascribing holiness and thanks [unto Him] to the strains of beautiful music, and with clear and

sweet voices. Now all we Apostles, and the company of the [Seventy-two] Disciples [rejoiced], even as [we rejoiced] at the time of the Resurrection. And we heard the sounds of trumpets and of horns, and the angels in their various companies cried out with loud cries of glory and with praisings and glorifyings. And certain companies of the angels ascribed glory unto God, and said, "Blessed be God Who is from the beginning, and Who shall endure for ever! Amen." And others of them said, "Holy, Holy, Holy, God of Hosts. All the heavens, and all the earth are filled with His glory. Hosanna in the heights. Blessed be He Who hath come, and blessed be He Who shall | come in the Name of God." And  
 B. fol. 10b. col. 2. others of them said, "Blessed be the Name of God from this time forth, and for ever [Page 384] and ever! Amen." And some of them said, "Holy art Thou, O God. Holy art Thou, O Mighty One. Holy art Thou, O Living One, Who diest not, have mercy upon us." And some of them said, "Glory be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Spirit, now, henceforth, and for ever and ever! Amen."

And again we heard above a great and awful voice which was like unto thunder, and it said, "Open ye the gates, O princes, and let the doors which were from the Creation be opened, and the King of glory and honour shall come in." And again we heard the voices of the celestial companies who were standing by the throne, saying, "Who is this king of glory and honour?" And the voice, which we had heard before, answered and said unto them, "It is God, the Strong and Mighty." And again we heard the voices of the Principalities, and

of the Dominions, | and of the Powers among the angels, B. fol. 11a.  
 saying, "Open ye the doors, O princes, and let the gates col. 1.  
 "which were from the Creation be opened, and the King  
 "of praise and glory shall come in." And we heard other  
 voices from the lords of the Thrones, and [from] the  
 Lords, saying, "Who is this king of glory and praise?"  
 And they answered them, saying, "He is the King of  
 "glory, the Mighty One for ever and for ever." And  
 again we saw the angels waving fans of light, and some  
 of them bore vessels wherefrom there went out scents  
 which for sweetness exceeded those of all the flowers in  
 the world. And some of them smote these angels' wings  
 together, and there went forth from their mouths praises,  
 and cries of joy, and thanksgivings which were like unto  
 a flame of fire; and some of them sang hymns of glory  
 with such sweetness that [all] hearts were ravished.

And when we saw all this we all wept with a sore  
 weeping, and we made lamentation, and said, "O our Lord  
 "and God, forgive us, for we have believed in Thee; | leave B. fol. 11a.  
 "us not orphans." And the head of me, Peter, was col. 2.  
 bowed down to the earth through fear of what I had  
 seen, and my heart was moved. Then my Lord and  
 God looked at me, and He said unto me, "O Peter, be  
 "not sorrowful;" and He stretched out His right hand to  
 me, and said unto me, "Rise up, be strong, and make  
 "thy brethren to be strong, and keep [in your hearts]  
 "what ye have seen." And we all rose up from the  
 ground, and stood upon our feet, and my Lord and God  
 gave unto me a book [studded with] precious stones and  
 pearls, and in it was written the rest of the knowledge  
 which my Lord wished to declare unto me with His lips;

now the book was written by His holy and mighty hand, and there went forth therefrom a light of beauty, the splendour of which exceeded that of the brilliance of the sun when shining. And moreover, He gave me also seven books [studded with] the stone El-maqlîṭōs,<sup>1</sup> which had been written by His own hands. And again He said unto me, "O Peter, behold, there are written in this book B. fol. 11b, "the mysteries which thou didst desire | to know, and col. 1. "thou shalt not reveal them except unto those who are "in the right faith, even as water is in iron." Now my brethren did not know that my God had given unto me this book. And my Lord and God said unto me, "Know, "O Peter, that I never gave this book unto any man "before, and I shall never again give what I have now "given unto thee to anyone except MARY, My mother, "by whom I became incarnate. Know, O Peter, that I "will help thee by means of another Apostle, who shall "be with thee, and who shall help thee in all the cities "whereunto thou shalt journey and shalt preach [Page "386] the preaching of the Gospel therein, and the people "of which thou shalt teach. Do thou everything which "I have commanded thee, and preach in My Name in "all the world." And when I had received into my hand the eight books which our Lord had written with His

<sup>1</sup> ἡ δαμοφάλας : = ἡ δαμογλήλας : = Arab. مَغْنِيطَس, which Dozy (*Supplément*, tom. ii. p. 604) renders by "diamond." The word, however, usually means "magnet, loadstone," and thus we have أَزْدَادُ مَغْنَاطِيْسٍ or مُمَغْنَطُ "magnetized," and مَغْنَاطِيْسِيَّةٌ "magnetism." Compare الحديد يجذب المغنطيس; Mas'ûdî, *op. cit.*, tom. ii. p. 406.

own hand, wherein were written the mysteries which the tongues of the children of men are neither able to utter, nor to understand with their hearts, except those whose hearts are arrayed in the strength of the gracious gift of baptism [I rejoiced. And I.] Peter, saw the race of the angels, and their apparel, and their appearance, and their names. And I saw, moreover, a gathering together of the armies of the angels with flaming chariots of fire, and they were mounted upon horses of light; and when the children of men looked upon them, their eyes were carried away by the sight thereof. And I heard a voice which said, "O Peter, this book is not meet for anyone of the Apostles except thyself alone." And I saw the angels [in] their assemblies bowing down in homage before my Lord and God. Certain of them had their loins girt about with broad girdles of light, and certain of them had girded themselves with bands of light, without fringes, over their apparel; and certain of them wore over their left shoulders long, narrow scarves, with fringes; and in three | places in each scarf, that is, in the middle, B. fol. 11b. col. 2. and where it touched the shoulders, and in the part which hung down over the back were written the words, "In the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, One God." And certain of the angels wore upon their shoulders a broad scarf, which in breadth was as wide as a kerchief, and upon each were written at the four corners, and in the middle, [the words], [Page 387] "We are the good shepherds, and we believe in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit." And some of the angels had round their shoulders girdles, each of which was of the width of two

fingers, and at nine places in each one of them was written, "Serve ye God with fear," and the faces of all of them were like unto fire and unto the lightning which flasheth and is gone. And the heavens, and the earth, and the air were filled with the angels, and with the multitudes thereof. And, moreover, great numbers of the people of Jerusalem at that time saw things which I was  
 B. fol. 12a. seeing, and there were with them many of the Jews |  
 col. 2. who had transgressed against righteousness, and who did not believe in our Lord Jesus Christ. And they stood at that time at the place where they could readily see these things, and fear and dismay came upon them all, and they glorified God. Then some of them who were doubtful concerning what they had seen wished to go up into the Mount of Olives, and there came upon them tongues of fire and burned up many of them.

## CHAPTER II.

HOW PETER SAW A MIGHTY SIMILITUDE OF THE LADY OF US ALL, MARY, THE SPOTLESS WOMAN, AND HER HONOURABLE GLORY.

And again, I saw a cloud in the form of a bow which appeared among the clouds, and upon it was a tabernacle of light, and in the innermost part thereof sat the holy Virgin MARY, who gave birth to our Lord in the flesh. And angels surrounded her, and in their hands were swords and spears of fire, and they said, "Blessed art thou, O fair vine-branch, wherefrom sprang [Page "388] the grape-clusters of salvation. Blessed art thou,

"O chamber, whose womb | bore God, the Lord of Lords;" B. fol. 12b.  
 and when I had seen this, my body burned with fire, col. 1.  
 and my bowels were greatly moved, and my heart was  
 dismayed. And as I looked upon that tabernacle and  
 upon her who was therein, I saw that all the archangels,  
 and martyrs, and saints were saluting her, and saying  
 unto her, "Rejoice, O Mother of the Light, O Mother  
 "of mercy! Rejoice, O Throne of salvation, whereon  
 "sat the God of Gods and the Lord of Lords." And  
 the Virgin Mary went and stood before the throne of  
 God, the Lord of Hosts, and all the hosts said unto her,  
 "Rejoice, O Lady of all living beings." And when the  
 angels and those who were with them had finished sal-  
 uting the Virgin our Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of the  
 Living God, my God, appeared unto her, and all the  
 spiritual beings, and all the beings of light bowed down  
 in homage before Him. Then the Mother of the Light  
 entered into the tabernacle of light wherein our Lord sat  
 upon His throne of | glory, and she sat down with Him B. fol. 12b.  
 for a space of three hours, and none knew what He said col. 2.  
 unto her except herself, and then she came forth from  
 His tabernacle of light. And when she came forth the  
 earth quaked, and I saw the angels crying out in their  
 companies, and frequent shouts of joy went out from the  
 mouths of them all, and much praise, and the whole  
 [universe] was filled with their glorifyings; and I heard  
 voices in the earth, the like of which I had never heard  
 before. And again, I saw a cloud over the Mount of Olives,  
 and I heard the voice of my Lord and God, saying there-  
 unto, "Stand still [in] thy place, O Mount, that thou  
 "mayest be a witness for me to My ascent from thee into

“[Page 389] the heavens; and know, O mountain, that  
 “no one shall ascend from thee except Myself into heaven  
 “until My second coming.” And after this my Lord and  
 God took me by the hand, and raised me up from my  
 knees, and I stood up in great power; and He said unto  
 me, “Awake, O Peter, and look upon these mysteries,  
 B. fol. 13a. “for thou wast the first to become a | witness that I am  
 col. 1. “the Son of the Living God,<sup>†</sup> Who was, and Who is;  
 “and thy heart shall then become the means of ascent  
 “unto heaven. And now, behold, thy soul and thy heart  
 “are strong in thy body, and thy brethren are with thee;  
 “be thou a witness to that which thou hast seen, and be  
 “strong to conceal everything.” And again I saw the  
 Cherubim come, and with them were chariots of light,  
 and when I had seen the angels I was dismayed. Then  
 our Lord ascended upon a chariot of the Cherubim, and  
 the clouds bore Him away, and I heard the sound of  
 trumpets sounding. And I saw the keys of light laid  
 out, and censers filled with incense, not that which is of  
 the earth, but that which is of heaven; and I heard on  
 all sides hymns of praise and psalms. And I heard those  
 who were singing hymns of praise saying, “This is our  
 “God, and there is no other god; the Lord God hath  
 “gone up to the sound of the trump, the Lord God hath  
 “gone up with a shout of joy, the Lord God hath gone  
 “up with tens of thousands of thousands [of angels], |  
 B. fol. 13a. “the Lord God hath gone up with [His] hosts [and among  
 col. 2. “His] armies.” And I Peter and my brethren the disciples  
 watched the chariot whereon Christ our God had mounted

<sup>†</sup> St. Matthew xvi. 16.

until it entered into the first heaven, and then I saw the gates of heaven close.

And as for us, we remained upon the Mount of Olives until the time [Page 390] of evening, and we prayed on the spot wherefrom we saw our Lord ascend into heaven, and we also prayed upon the place where the chariot [rested], and upon the place whereon [stood] the tabernacle in which we had seen our Lord. Then we the Apostles came down from the holy mountain, and entered into the city of Jerusalem, and we came unto our Lady MARY and entered into her house, and saluted her; and we made known to her concerning the Ascension of her beloved Son, Who is our Lord and God Jesus Christ, the Son of the Living God, Who hath existed [for ever]. And every day we the Apostles used to go up into the Mount of Olives at morn and at eve | and pray there. Now three days after the Ascension of our Lord into heaven, James, whom our Lord called His "brother in the flesh", consecrated the Offering, and we all drew nigh to partake thereof; and when ten days had passed after the Ascension of our Lord, we all assembled in the holy fortress of Zion, and we stood up to say the prayer of sanctification, and we made supplication unto God and besought Him with humility, and James also entreated Him concerning the descent of the Holy Ghost upon the Offering. And as we were [standing] thus, we saw tongues of fire coming down from heaven, and they rested upon each and every one of us, and we spake in the tongues of [all] countries, each man in the tongue of the country to which the lot had fallen to him to go; and straightway I Peter stood up among those who were

B. fol. 13b.  
col. 1.

assembled. Then the Hebrews who saw us looked carefully at us whilst we were speaking the tongues of the various countries, and they said concerning us, "Behold, these men are mad." Others also said concerning us, "They have drunk | new wine, and are drunk;" and they

B. fol. 13b. col. 2. disputed among themselves, [Page 391] but I had no knowledge of what they spoke or said. And I Peter spake from the Prophets, and the others spake concerning the descent of the Holy Spirit upon us, even according to the power which the Holy Spirit gave unto us before the angel of the Lord, who was with us at that time; and there was perturbation, and dismay, and great fear over Jerusalem, and over all Judaea. Then many of the men who were in Jerusalem spake with us in divers tongues, and we also conversed with them in these tongues, and they marvelled thereat, and these folk said unto the Jews who were in Jerusalem, "O foolish men, these men are not drunk, neither are they mad, but unto them hath been given the grace of God. And behold, we have seen the miracles of the tongues of fire which came down upon them from heaven when they were gathered together in the fortress of Zion. Now we have known them before this day, and we know that not one among them was able to speak any tongue except the tongue

B. fol. 14a. col. 1. of the Hebrews, | and behold, we have this day seen them speaking in the tongues of the Greeks, and Romans, and Syrians, and Palestinians, and in the tongues of all countries." And the people, who saw the miracles [of the tongues] which came upon us that day, were more in number than seven hundred men, and they belonged to all nations and peoples; and the men of the Hebrews

were more in number than five hundred. And they wished to fight among themselves in Jerusalem, and angry strife rose up concerning us, but, by the mercy of God, God shewed them a vision of the night, and by these means He pacified them and restrained them from fighting and tumult.

And after this the angel of the Lord came and said unto me, "Rise up, O Peter, and get thee up by thyself "into the Mount of Olives, [Page 392] and acquaint thyself with what is written in the books which I have "given unto thee, and understand what is therein." So I went up into the Mount of Olives on the second day of the week, on the day following the festival of the fifty days (Pentecost), and [a cloud] covered me up, and I saw the angel | who had appeared unto me in my dream; B. fol. 14a. and he said unto me, "O Peter, lift up thine eyes towards col. 2. the heavens, and understand that which thou shalt see." And I lifted up mine eyes to the heavens, and I saw a flash of light which carried away the sight, and it distilled dew whereof the smell was like unto the odour of sweet and precious musk. And that dew was dropping down upon those who were dwelling in the graves, and I saw those souls rejoicing and making glad, and they spake, saying, "Blessed are we and the Apostles also, for our "God hath delivered us by His strong right hand, and "by His mighty arm. Blessed are we because our God "hath delivered us from the hand of Satan, the accursed "one." Then straightway that angel said unto me, "I am "he who appeared unto Mary Magdalene at the grave of "Him Who giveth life, and there were with her many "Hebrews, both men and women; and there was with me

B. fol. 14b. "my companion Uriël | the angel, and we were together  
col. 1. "guarding the grave. And we closed the place of burial,  
"and we were those who rolled away the stone which  
"was laid upon the doors of the grave, and we were  
"those who told Joseph, the carpenter, to depart into the  
"land of Egypt, and we also commanded him to return  
"from the land of Egypt unto the land of Galilee." And  
moreover, this angel said unto me, "O Peter, reveal the  
"contents of this book which was given unto thee at the  
"time of the Ascension of our Lord and God into the  
"heavens above, and unto the place where His habitation  
"hath been continually;" and [Page 393] I uncovered  
the eight books which were before me, and the city of  
Jerusalem became bright with the light of the same.

Now as I stood reading the book, behold, there came  
unto me a voice from heaven which said, "O Peter, read  
"and understand, for thou art the storehouse of My  
"mysteries, and thou art the rock whereon I will build  
"My church; keep thou then the mysteries which are  
B. fol. 14b. "written in these eight books | which I Myself have given  
col. 2. "unto thee, for this [service] is meet for thee. First of  
"all preach the Gospel in Jerusalem, and on the sea shore,  
"and in all cities, for I will reveal unto thee many miracles,  
"and I will make thee to perceive what shall come through  
"the Law and the Judgment upon My people who believe  
"in me. And I will give them ordinances out of the  
"Law which I shall command them to keep, and which  
"they shall not withdraw from, either to the right hand  
"or to the left. And know that in these books which I  
"have written for thee with Mine own hand [it is declared]  
"in what manner it is meet that their faith in Me should

"be, and what is seemly for every man whatsoever among  
 "the people, and therein are they ordered to turn away  
 "from the service of idols unto the service of Me. And,  
 "O Peter, go thou unto the city of Antioch, and preach  
 "therein the preaching of the Holy Gospel, for from this  
 "time forth I will send thee whithersoever I please. And  
 "seal thou the eight books which I have given unto thee,  
 "and hide their fastenings, and | let no man whatsoever B. fol. 15a  
 "see them except him that hath been chosen and him col. 1.  
 "that shall be of advantage unto the service of the holy  
 "things which are Mine; for the cloud which covered Me  
 "over shall not leave thee until the day of My second  
 "coming."

And after He had said these things unto me, I Peter  
 came down from the Mount of Olives unto Jerusalem,  
 and I hid the eight [Page 394] books according as my  
 Lord had commanded me, and I made known to my  
 brethren how my God had revealed unto me the names  
 of these two angels whom I had seen upon the earth;  
 then we all ascribed praise unto God Who had bestowed  
 upon us the gift of His mercy. And we preached the  
 preaching of the Gospel in the city, and we departed to  
 the sea-coast, and we called the people into the true  
 faith. Now the first city into which we entered on the  
 sea-coast was called Joppa, and we also arrived at  
 'Îmâhûs (Emmaus), and at Lydda, and we laid a ban  
 upon those who believed | that they might not eat of B. fol. 15a.  
 food which [was declared to be] unclean in the Law. col. 2.  
 And I gave them commandments concerning circumcision  
 according to the Law of Moses, and God appeared unto  
 me in the form of the angel Uriël, and commanded me

to do away the old Law, and to bring in the new. And after these things, when I was praying one day in the city of Joppa, a cloud of light enveloped me, and there descended upon me a sheet which stretched from heaven to earth; and in it there were similitudes of every kind of four-footed beasts which are eaten for food, and every kind of bird, and in that sheet there was a beast in the form of a pig. And a voice cried out unto me from heaven, and said unto me, "Rise, Peter, kill, and eat;" and I saw a finger pointing from heaven to the beast which was in the form of a pig. Then I said unto Him, "Lord, I cannot kill and eat that which is unclean;" and again a voice cried unto me, saying, "That which God hath cleansed man shall not pronounce unclean." Now I heard the voice three times, and each time it called me the finger pointed to [Page 395] the beast which was in the form of a pig; and then the sheet went up and was received into heaven. And I sat down in a state of amazement, and I marvelled at what I had seen, and I made known unto my brethren what I had seen and heard. And I made [the people] to hear the faith according to what was written in the first of these eight books which our Lord had given unto me, and I baptized all the people who believed and who had turned away from the service of idols; and I wished to strengthen them in the true faith through the Law in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Then I commanded them to fast, and to pray, and to sell their fields and estates, and their goods, and to bring their possessions into the house of the community, and I Peter  
B. fol. 15b. received | their riches and divided them among the poor  
col. 2.

and needy of the children of the faith who had been baptized. And I also entered into the two cities of Tyre and Sidon, and preached therein, and through me many people believed in the preaching of the Holy Gospel, which is the Gospel of the kingdom of God, to Whom be glory for ever and ever! Amen.

### CHAPTER III.

OF THE COMING OF CLEMENT INTO THE FAITH OF CHRIST, AND HOW PETER CHOSE HIM TO BE HIS DISCIPLE, ALONG WITH HIS BRETHREN, AND HOW THEY CAME UPON THEIR FATHER AND THEIR MOTHER AFTER THEY HAD LOST ALL HOPE OF THEM; TOGETHER WITH THE MIRACLES AND THE STORIES WHICH SHOULD HERE FOLLOW.

Saith Clement: — Now when my master Peter, the lord of the keys [Page 396] of the treasures of the heavens and the earth, passed to the sea shore, now there were with him also Andrew, and John, and Philip, and certain others of the Seventy-[two] Disciples, I Clement was standing | on the sea shore, and was weeping because B. fol. 16a. there had reached me news of the loss of my mother col. 1. and my brother; and the brethren said unto my master, Peter, "It is meet that we should know and become acquainted with the story of this young man." Then my master Peter came, and said unto me, "Why weepest thou, O young man? Whence comest thou? And who are thy father and mother?" Now he spake unto me in the tongue of the Romans. And I said unto him, "Who art thou, O aged one? For since the time when "I arrived here from my city I have not seen anyone

"who could speak the language of its people except thy-  
 "self. Behold, I have been standing in this place for  
 "three days, but no man hath enquired of me concerning  
 "my history except thyself, and none passed near me  
 "who knew my speech, or whose tongue was known by  
 "me." Then my master said unto me, "I am Peter, the  
 "chief of the disciples of our Lord Jesus Christ;" and  
 straightway he related unto me the preaching of the  
 B. fol. 16a. Holy Gospel, and I believed | through him, and he baptized  
 col. 2. me in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of  
 the Holy Ghost. Then he anointed me with the oil of  
 Mêrôn the holy, which my Lord and God Jesus Christ  
 had given unto him, for he kept it laid up by him, and  
 he taught me the way in which it is meet for those who  
 believe on our Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of the Living  
 God, to keep the Law. And he revealed unto me the  
 mysteries which have been before mentioned, and I wrote  
 them down from his mouth, and laid them up by me;  
 and he gave me the books which were written by the  
 hand of my Lord [Page 397] Christ, and he set me over  
 all His disciples. Now there were with him my brethren  
 in the flesh, that is to say, Kûstôs (Caustus) and Con-  
 stantinus, but I did not know them; and he made me  
 the steward of the mysteries, even as my Lord Christ,  
 the Son of the Living God, had made him the steward  
 of His mysteries. And I became unto him a scribe in  
 B. fol. 16b. Greek and Roman tongues, | and my Lord and God Jesus  
 col. 1. Christ did not reveal unto him my history, nor whence  
 I came, and he did not make enquiries of me concerning  
 my work and handicraft until many days after, when he  
 was going to the city of Laodicea. Now this took place

after our Lord had chosen Saul, whose name was Paul, to be an Apostle. And this Paul was journeying to Damascus and wished to lay waste the churches of God which were therein, and to drive the believers out of the city. And our Lord Jesus Christ appeared unto him on the road, and blinded his eyes and those of all his followers, and Paul said unto Him, "Lord, Who art Thou? "Reveal Thyself to me." Then our Lord said unto him, "Saul, Saul, why persecutest thou Mé, and why shewest "thou thyself to be Mine enemy? It is harmful for thee "to kick against sharp nails." And Paul said unto Him, "Who art Thou, O Lord, so that I may believe in Thee?" And our Lord | said unto him, "Jesus Christ, the Son of B. fol. 16b. "the Living God, Who is called the Nazarene. He it is col. 2. "Who is speaking with thee, and Who hath blinded thine "eyes, and He it is Whom thou persecutest;" and straightway Paul believed in our Lord, and turned away from the work he was doing; and he was injured in the back, and his eyes were made blind. Then God commanded him to go to the city of Damascus, [Page 398] and he came to Ananias, who was one of the disciples therein, that he might open his eyes for him, and that he might baptize him; and immediately he came to him he was baptized by his hands, and straightway he preached the Gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ unto all the Jews and Gentiles in the cities and in the regions round about.

HOW CLEMENT MET WITH HIS FATHER, AND HIS MOTHER, AND HIS BRETHREN. Clement saith:—And we went with our master Peter unto the city of 'Azâtôn (Ashdod), on the borders of Laodicea, and he saw a woman sitting B. fol. 17a. by the gates | of the city, asking for alms; and my col. 1.

master Peter said unto her, "O woman, why askest  
 "thou for alms? For I see strength in thee, and thou  
 "art able to work and to keep thyself alive." And the  
 woman said unto him, "O noble aged one, if thou didst  
 "but know what hath happened unto me in the matter  
 "of trial thou wouldst certainly wish me to die;" and the  
 woman's tears were flowing freely down upon her cheeks.  
 Then my master Peter said unto her, "What is thine  
 "affair, O woman?" And she said unto him, "O noble  
 "aged one, I am a woman from the city of Rome, and  
 "am of the daughters of kings; [my husband's] name is  
 "Justinus, and to him I have borne three children, whose  
 "names are Kôstôs (Caustus), Constantinus, and Clement.  
 "And I had a dream, and my heart was greatly disturbed  
 "thereby, and in consequence I took two of my children  
 "and we embarked on a ship and put out to sea, wishing  
 "to go to the city of Atênâ, [Page 399] or to the city  
 "of Bêrût, for I wished my children to be educated  
 B.fol. 17a. "in one of these two cities. Now the eldest of my  
 col. 2. "children [is called] Kôstôs (Caustus), and the next in  
 "matter of age is Constantinus; and I took these two of  
 "my children with me and we embarked in a ship, and  
 "I left the youngest child, whose name was Clement,  
 "with his father. And the ship wherein we were was  
 "wrecked, and the waves cast me up on one of the  
 "ship's planks on this coast, where I have been for two  
 "years; and I have no knowledge whatsoever of the fate  
 "of my children. For this reason I am smitten with  
 "sorrow, and I sit here by the gates of the city, and ask  
 "the people questions about my children that, peradventure,  
 "I may obtain some news of them." And my master

Peter sent my brethren away to the city of Laodicea for some thing which was needed, and they dwelt in their places (*literally* roads) by the gates of 'Azâţôn (Ashdod); and they rested their backs against the walls of the gates of the city and conversed among themselves.

WHAT HAPPENED TO THE WOMAN | WHO ASKED FOR B. fol. 17b.  
ALMS. Now the woman listened unto what they were col. 1.  
saying, and one talked to the other. And one said, "O  
"my brother, we have been disciples of this holy father  
"for many years, and we neither have information con-  
"cerning nor know the cities wherein we were born."  
And Caustus said unto him, "O my brother, I am of the  
"men of Rome, and belong to a noble family, and the  
"name of my father was Justinus, and that of my mother  
"was Maţrâdôrâ; I had two brethren, one of whom was  
"called Constantinus, and the name of the other, the  
"youngest, was Clement. And my mother saw a vision  
"by reason of which she went forth from Rome, taking  
"me [Page 400] and my brother Constantinus with her,  
"and leaving my youngest brother with his father; and  
"she embarked in a ship, and put out to sea. Then  
"there rose up against us a mighty storm wind, and the  
"ship was broken in pieces (*or* wrecked); but I escaped  
"and reached a piece of land, but I have never heard  
"my tidings of my mother and brother up to this hour."  
Then his companion said unto him, "The same | thing B. fol. 17b.  
"also happened unto me, for I also am of the men of col. 2.  
"Rome, and the ship wherein I sailed was broken to  
"pieces in the sea." And when the woman heard their  
words she went to them, and fell down upon them, and  
she cried out with a loud cry, and wept, saying, "By the

“Living God Whom ye worship, thou and thou, ye are  
 “my children, and I am your mother Matrâdôrâ;” and  
 she told them her history and [gave them] the proofs  
 whereby they might know her, and they then knew of  
 a certainty that she was their mother. Now I Clement  
 was at that time in the city of Laodicea. And Matrâ-  
 dôrâ our mother went to my master Peter, and said unto  
 him, “O aged one, by the Living God Whom thou wor-  
 “shippest, these two disciples of thine are my children,  
 “and I am their mother;” and she told him all her his-  
 tory. Then my master Peter prayed for her, and said,  
 “I will beseech and pray my Lord Christ, Who hath made  
 “me to meet with these thy two sons, that He will also  
 “make thee to meet with their father and with their  
 B. fol. 18a. “young brother.” And I, Clement, | came from the city  
 col. 1. of Laodicea, and the Holy Spirit told my master Peter  
 to enquire of me concerning my history and my city,  
 and he said unto me, “O my son Clement, behold thou  
 “hast been with me in the service of our Lord Jesus  
 “Christ for many years, but I have never made enquiries  
 “of thee either concerning thy city or [Page 401] thy  
 “history. And behold, the Holy Spirit hath commanded  
 “me to ask thee about thy city; and for the sake of our  
 “Lord and God Jesus Christ thou shalt hide nothing of  
 “thine history from me, but thou shalt make me to know  
 “all thine affairs;” and I informed him rightly and truly  
 concerning everything which related unto me. Now my  
 brethren had departed unto a certain city for some need-  
 ful purpose. And when my mother heard my history,  
 she threw herself upon me, and said, “By the Living God  
 “Whom thou worshipping, thou art my son, and I am

"thy mother." And to my master Peter she also said, "O holy master, this is my youngest son Clement whom I mentioned unto thee." Then my master Peter went into the city and | brought out my brethren, and they B. fol. 18a. saw me talking with my mother and this was hard for col. 2. them [to understand], for from the time when I became a disciple of my master Peter, like them I had never held converse with a woman. And they said unto my master Peter, "Seest thou not Clement? Rebuke him, so that he may not speak with our mother." And as we were talking together our mother embraced us, and she wept with a sore and bitter weeping; and my master Peter wept with her, and his heart burned because of our weeping. Thus we came to know each other again.

And we said unto our master Peter, "We know that our Lord Christ will hearken unto thy petition, and that He will grant unto thee everything which thou shalt ask from Him; entreat Him now to make known [unto us] the history of our father, and whether he be alive or dead." Then our master Peter said unto us, "I will ask our Lord Christ to shew me that which we wish (*literally* think), and that ye may see your father alive. And if he be dead I will make supplication unto [Page "402] our Lord to raise him up out of his grave, so that he may be able to see and to | talk with you before B. fol. 18b. me." Then my master Peter raised himself up and col. 1. stood upon his feet, and he turned his face towards the East, and prayed, saying, "O my Lord and God, Jesus Christ, the Son of the Living God, Who didst come down from heaven the abode of Thy holiness, and didst take upon Thyself flesh from the Virgin MARY, the

"chosen one, that Thou mightest deliver the old Adam  
 "by thine Incarnation, Thou hast given us power over  
 "all [Thy] works; and Thou hast given unto me the keys  
 "of the kingdom of heaven; and hast appointed me to  
 "loose, and to bind, and to remit sins; and hast said  
 "unto us that if we believe in Thee we shall do works  
 "which shall be greater than those which Thou didst  
 "perform before the Jews; Thou didst raise up Lazarus  
 "from the dead out of the grave after four days; and  
 "Thou didst raise up the daughter of Jairus the prefect;  
 "hearken Thou unto my petition, according to the cove-  
 "nant which Thou didst make with me, and shew mercy  
 "upon these my disciples, and upon their mother, and |

B. fol. 18b. "make them to see their father alive." Now at that time  
 col. 2.

we were in Laodicea on the sea shore,<sup>1</sup> by the Green  
 River. And when my master Peter had made an end  
 of his prayer we saw a cloud of light coming, and it  
 arrived bearing upon it our father. And there went forth  
 from the cloud a voice, which said, "Get thee forth to  
 "thy sons;" and we saw going forth from the river where  
 we were an old man of shining appearance, and his ap-  
 parel was glorious, and the hair of his head and beard  
 was white like snow, and shining like wool. And my  
 master Peter said unto him, "O aged one, [Page 403]  
 "art thou one of our race, or of another?" For my master

<sup>1</sup> I. e., Λαοδίκεια ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ, the well-known city which  
 was situated in a fruitful valley, and is described by Strabo (ed. Di-  
 dot, p. 640, § 9); it was built by Seleucus Nicator in honour of his  
 mother Laodice. The ancient name of the city was Ramantha, or  
 Ramitha. The "Green River" here referred to is the Nahr Mudiyekeh,  
 or the Nahr Snôbar, or the Nahr al-Kebîr, all of which are quite near  
 Laodicea.

Peter thought that he might be an unclean soul. Then the aged man said unto him in the Roman tongue, "I am a man like unto thyself, O aged one." And my master Peter said unto him, "Tell me thy history, and from whence thou comest;" and he told him everything. Now as soon as I Clement and my brethren heard his voice we said unto my master Peter, "This is our father, in very truth. | Behold, our Lord Jesus Christ hath re-<sup>B. fol. 19a.</sup>ceived thy petition and hath brought him unto us;" and <sup>col. 1.</sup> [our] master Peter said unto us, "Yea, in truth, this is your father." Then he said unto that aged man, "Are these thy sons?" And our father fell upon [our necks], and we embraced each other and wept. And our master Peter said unto him, "I would that thou didst tell us thy history, and by what means thou hast come hither." Then the aged one, that is to say, our father, said unto him, "It is two and twenty years since I lost my sons and their mother, and each and every day I used to go forth from my house outside the city, and sit down upon the sea shore, and make enquiries of the sailors, and boatmen, and strangers, for news of them, but I never found any one who could bring me tidings of them. And this day, when I was standing upon the sea shore according to my daily wont, behold, a moist wind blew, and I saw a cloud whereon was standing a young Man Whose face was seven times | brighter than <sup>B. fol. 19a.</sup>the light of the sun, and He said, 'O cloud, bear this <sup>col. 2.</sup>aged man away and set him down by Peter, the chief of My disciples;' and straightway the wind bore me away upon the cloud, and many who were looking at me marvelled. And I sat upon the cloud, being in a state

“of sleep, until I stood by the side of this [Page 404]  
 “river, and [a voice] said unto me, ‘Get thee forth to thy  
 “‘sons.’ The space of time which hath passed since I  
 “came out from Rome is only a moment, and during this  
 “time I did not know into what city I was coming.”  
 Then my master Peter said unto him, “I am the least of  
 “the disciples of Christ; the young Man Whom thou  
 “didst see upon the cloud was our Lord Jesus Christ  
 “Himself.” And Peter taught him the faith, and the aged  
 man believed. Now there was no water in that place,  
 but my master Peter smote with his staff the dry [bed]  
 of the river wherein was no water, and straightway water  
 welled up therefrom; and it became in that place a pool  
 of water which floweth until this day, and is named the  
 “Fountain of Simon Peter”. And he baptized the aged  
 man therein in the Name of the Father, and of the Son,  
 B. fol. 19b, and of the Holy Spirit; | and he made the sign of the  
 col. 1. Cross over him, and anointed him with the holy oil of Mèrôn,  
 which our Lord and God Jesus Christ had given unto  
 him, and he gave a pledge of his faith by [his] baptism.

And we departed from that place and came into  
 Laodicea, where we dwelt for two years preaching the  
 tidings of the Gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ, and  
 through us there believed multitudes of men whose  
 number could not be counted. And we returned again  
 to Jerusalem and met there with all the disciples, and  
 my master Peter commanded my father and my mother  
 to dwell in Jerusalem.

# CHAPTER IV.

CONCERNING THE PREACHING OF PETER AND JOHN IN THE CITY OF ANTIOCH; AND THEIR CALLING OF MEN TO THE TRUE FAITH OF OUR LORD [Page 405] JESUS CHRIST, AND THE MIRACLES WHICH THEY WROUGHT THEREIN; OF THE COMING OF SAINT PAUL UNTO THEM, AND THE MATTERS WHICH FOLLOWED THEREUPON.

Clement saith:—[I speak] according as my glorious master Peter spake unto me. Now at the time of my return from Laodicea, as I was sleeping in the Fortress of Zion, there appeared unto me the angel who had often | appeared unto me, and he said unto me, "Rise B. fol. 19b.  
"up, and go unto the city of Antioch, and take with thee col. 2.  
"the beloved John, so that ye may preach therein the  
"preaching of the Gospel, and may call people unto the  
"true faith." And I said unto the angel, "I am an in-  
"firm old man, and the road to Antioch is exceedingly  
"long; why didst thou not give me this command when  
"I was in Laodicea, where the road would have been  
"shorter for me?" And the angel was hidden from me,  
and sleep fell heavily upon John, but when we awoke  
we found ourselves outside [the city of Antioch], under  
the sky. Then I said unto John, "My beloved, were we  
"not sleeping in the Fortress of Zion, wherein we dwelt?"  
And he said unto me, "Yea." And I said unto him,  
"Where are we now? Behold, we are sitting outside [the  
"city] without an abode. Have we come hither of our  
"own accord, or hath some wile of Satan [brought us  
"hither], for his wiles are many, or is what I am telling

"thee now a dream?" Now whilst Peter was thus con-  
 B. fol. 20a. versing with John, | behold, two wood cutters came out  
 col. 1. of the city and they were talking together in the Greek  
 language, and I said unto my brother John, "Thou knowest  
 "the language of these men, inasmuch as the knowledge  
 "thereof was given unto thee by the Holy Ghost. Go  
 "then, and enquire of these wood cutters concerning this  
 "country, and ask them what this city is;" so John went  
 unto these men, and he returned, [Page 406] weeping  
 tears and filled with wrath. And I said unto him, "O  
 "beloved one, what hath happened unto thee, and why  
 "weepest thou?" Then John said unto me, "I enquired of  
 "these men concerning this city, and they said unto me,  
 "'Canst thou not see the walls of Antioch before thee?'"  
 Now the wood cutters had doubts concerning John. "And  
 "I told them concerning Christ, the Son of God, [and I  
 "said unto them], Is what ye say unto me true? Then  
 "they rose up against me, and were filled with wrath  
 "against me, and said, 'Who is Christ, the Son of God?  
 "'And who art thou? And whence comest thou?' Then  
 "they debated the matter one with the other, and said,  
 B. fol. 20a. "'Surely this is one of the disciples of Him | Who was  
 col. 2. "'crucified in Jerusalem, Whose blood shall judge us.'  
 "And the woodcutters, who were well versed in the  
 "knowledge of [heathen] gods, said, 'Since this young  
 "man hath no love for his life, let us slay him; but per-  
 "haps [it is better that] he should die by the hands of  
 "'others;' and I did not believe that I should escape from  
 "their evil deeds. This was my discourse with them.  
 "Now if the wickedness of such debased and inferior  
 "men as these be so great, what can we possibly do

"before the princes and governors of this city if we enter therein and preach in the Name of our Lord and God 'Jesus Christ? And how can we teach them the right 'faith?" Then I Peter said unto him, "O beloved, be not 'dismayed at the words of these men, and be not sorrow-stricken, for He Who hath brought us in a single 'night from Jerusalem to this city, a distance of twenty 'days' journey on horses, will prosper our work according 'to the covenant which He made with us."

And after a season we rose up, and came into the city, and we preached therein in the name of our God, and we told them the story of the Gospel, that peradventure they might believe in the kingdom of heaven. | Then the people of the city gathered themselves together <sup>B. fol. 10b.</sup> against us, and scourged us with many stripes, and they <sup>col. 1.</sup> haled us before [Page 407] the priests of idols, and told them our story; and the priests ordered them to shave off one half of the hair of our heads, and they derided us and cast us into prison until the magistrates could take counsel concerning us. Then they carried us to the guard-house which was in the walls of the city, and imprisoned us, and shut the doors upon us, and set a seal upon them. And it came to pass that when they had departed and left us alone, we rose up in prayer, and besought help from our Lord Jesus Christ. Now when the night had come a shining cloud overshadowed us, and we saw our Lord and Redeemer [sitting] upon it, and the Cherubim and the Seraphim were surrounding Him and glorifying Him. And He held converse with us, and said unto us, "O Peter and John, be not dismayed, "and fear ye not, and be not sorrowful, for I will be with

"you even unto the end of the world. It is not meet  
 "for you to marvel at these men because they have  
 "shaved the middle of your heads, for they wish to make  
 B. fol. 20b. "a mock of you, | and to disgrace you thereby, for they  
 col. 2. "do not know of the hair of glory and of the splendour  
 "which shall be yours. And I tell you of a surety that  
 "no man shall have the power to enter into the service  
 "of My holy things, or to make the Offering of My Body  
 "upon the altar of My church unless the crown (*literally*  
 "middle) of his head be shaved, even as is yours at this  
 "present. And it is not meet for a man to be appointed  
 "to the priesthood except he be [shaved] in this wise;  
 "and to the priest the crown of whose head is not shaved,  
 "the priesthood shall not be seemly, for he shall have  
 "no portion with Me, and he shall not enter into the  
 "kingdom of heaven. To the priest who shall die with  
 "this crown upon his head I will grant the forgiveness  
 "of his sins." And He also said unto me, "Peter, on the  
 "morrow I will send unto thee Saul, whom I have named  
 "in baptism [Page 408] Paul, that he may help thee in  
 "everything which thou wouldst do;" and after our Lord  
 had spoken these things unto me He was hidden from  
 my sight.

And it came to pass that when the morning was  
 come I saw in the courtyard of the gates a man journey-  
 B. fol. 21a. ing along, | and I said unto John my beloved, "Come,  
 col. 1. "and look at this man who is passing by; surely it must  
 "be Paul himself. Call him that he may come unto us."  
 And John called him, and he came, and behold, it was  
 Paul himself. Now when Paul had come unto us, and  
 had seen how they had shaved the crown of John's head,

he said unto him, "What is this which they have done unto thee in this city?" And John said unto him, "Marvel not concerning me, for the chief of the Apostles hath also been treated in the same manner." Then Paul opened the gates of the prison-house, and entered in to us, and he embraced me, and was blessed by me. And he said unto me, "Be not sorrowful, O my father, "I swear [unto thee] by the light which appeared unto me on the road to Damascus that my Lord hath sent me unto thee that I may preach in His Name, and I cannot transgress His command." Thus Paul made our souls happy at that time, and he gave courage unto our hearts, and he left us and departed; and he found the magistrates of Antioch, and he held converse with them concerning what he desired, and he entered into their temples. And the magistrates sent men unto us who brought | us to them in the temple of their gods where they were gathered together; and we entered into the foul place, and we found our brother and companion worshipping idols, and he was offering incense to them, and bowing down before them; and our hearts were rent asunder for him, and sorrow was heaped upon us when we saw him bowing down. And when he had made an end of his bowings, he said unto me, "O aged one, Whom dost thou worship?" And I said unto him, "I worship Christ, "[Page 409] the Son of the Living God, Who hath wrought miracles and hath raised the dead." Then he said unto me, "What miracle canst thou work whereby we may know the might of thy belief?" And I said unto him, "I, in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, am able to do whatsoever He used to do." Then Paul said

B. fol. 21 a.  
col. 2.

unto those who were gathered together in the temple,  
 "O ye magistrates, behold, ye have heard what these  
 "men say, that they can work miracles in the name of  
 "this God Who calleth us unto belief in Him. Do ye  
 B.fol. 21b. "desire | that they should make manifest miracles wrought  
 col. 1. "through Him?" And they said unto him, "Are these  
 "men able to open the eyes of those who have been  
 "blind from their mother's wombs?" And Peter and John  
 said unto them, "Yea, we can do [this]." Then Paul said  
 unto those who were gathered together there, "If these  
 "men can work this miracle, and make it manifest before  
 "us, I also can do likewise by the might of the gods;"  
 and straightway they brought in before them two blind  
 people.

And immediately the men of the city were gathered  
 together according to their various sorts and conditions,  
 so that they might see a wonderful thing. And Peter  
 said unto John, "O my beloved one, first of all pray and  
 "make supplication unto our Lord that He will open the  
 "eyes of this blind man." Then John said unto me, "Unto  
 "thee hath been given the greater power, and thou art  
 "our chief and our head, and on this occasion it is meet  
 "for thee to hasten to fulfil this work." And I Peter  
 turned towards the East, and my heart was sorely dis-  
 mayed by reason of the falling away [and] behaviour of  
 B.fol. 21b. Paul, and by reason | of the prayer and supplication  
 col. 2. which he continued to make in the house of idols. And  
 I prayed [Page 410] and made supplication unto my  
 Lord and God, and He helped me, and I drew nigh unto  
 the blind man, and said, "In the Name of the Son of  
 "the Living God, Who hath existed [from eternity], Who

"was incarnate of the Virgin MARY, and Whom the Jews  
 "crucified, let the eyes of this blind man be opened, and  
 "let him see the world clearly;" and straightway the blind  
 man received his sight, and he glorified God, and the  
 people marvelled because of what they had seen. Then  
 Paul said unto them, "Marvel ye not at what ye have  
 "seen, for this aged man possesseth [the gift of] sorcery  
 "whereby he openeth the eyes [of the blind]; but now, I  
 "by the might of the gods will do something which is  
 "better than that which he hath done." So Paul rose  
 up and prayed, and the people thought that he was  
 praying to their idols, but he was praying and making  
 supplication secretly in his heart unto our Lord Christ  
 that He would help him and would accept his petition.  
 Then he drew nigh unto the second blind man, and he  
 laid his hand upon | his eyes, and they became opened, B. fol. 22a.  
 and he saw the world clearly; and he gave glory unto col. 1.  
 God because He had wrought this thing for him. Now  
 the infidels rejoiced and imagined that their gods had  
 done this thing like unto the disciples of Christ, and they  
 paid great honours unto them, and they magnified their  
 gods exceedingly.

And I Peter held converse with my brother John  
 secretly, for we were marvelling at the act of Paul, and  
 wondering whether Simon the magician (having heard  
 the rumour of us) had appeared unto us in the form of  
 Paul, and had wrought this wonderful thing by the might  
 of his magic, that he might be an adversary unto us.  
 And whilst we were meditating the things in our heart,  
 behold, Paul called us into the temple before the ma-  
 gistrates who were filled with wonder, for their hearts

were strengthened, and their souls rejoiced because of what Paul had done. [Page 411] And Paul said unto us, "Behold, we have seen what ye have done, and ye "have seen what our gods have done, and [how] they "have revealed their power among us. Have ye any "other miracles which ye can work?" Then we said unto Paul, | "Whatsoever miracles thou wishest, that is to say, B. fol. 222a. col. 2. "the healing of the sick and suffering, the straightening "of the limbs of the paralysed, the cleansing of the lepers, "the casting out of devils, the making the deaf to hear, "the loosing of the tongues of the dumb, and the raising "up of the dead, by the might of our Lord Christ, the "Son of the Living God, Who hath existed [from eternity], all these things we can do." And Paul said unto us, "To-morrow then shall these things be;" and they took us back to the prison-house, and informed the Emperor<sup>1</sup> of our story and of what had taken place through us and through Paul. Then the Emperor sent messengers unto Paul and unto the priests of the idols, and they brought them unto him, and he enquired of them concerning what had happened; and they informed him of what we had done, and what Paul had done. And the Emperor answered [and spake unto] Paul alone, and enquired of him what district he came from, and what his name was, and what his country was. Then Paul said unto him, "I am Saul, from the city of Tarsus, and my "business is well-known and standeth revealed, for from "my youth up until this present I have made myself

<sup>1</sup> The governor of the city and district of Antioch must be here alluded to.

"an adversary unto these men. And behold, they say |  
 "that they are able to raise the dead; but the dead, O B. fol. 22b.  
 "Emperor, no one can raise except the Creator, and col. 1.  
 "neither I nor any other man among the magicians and  
 "sorcerers hath the power to raise the dead. Thou  
 "knowest well, O Emperor, that which I myself did when  
 "I opened the eyes of a blind man by a mystery, and  
 "that I afterwards made known unto thee the mystery  
 "[whereby I did it]." And the Emperor said unto him,  
 "I have a son who died three months [Page 412] ago,  
 "and his body hath now perished and fallen into decay;  
 "will these men be able to raise up my son?" Then Paul  
 said unto the Emperor, "Bring them quickly, and enquire  
 "of them concerning this thing, so that thou mayest know  
 "what they will say;" so the Emperor sent messengers  
 unto them. And he asked them concerning his son who  
 was dead, if they could raise him up, and they said unto  
 him, "We will raise up thy son, even though he hath  
 "been lying in the grave for a year." Now the wife of  
 the Emperor heard the words as she was sitting inside  
 the palace, and she cried out straightway, saying, | "If B. fol. 22b.  
 "my son Faustinus were to rise from the dead, and I could col. 2.  
 "see him alive [again], I, and all those who are in my  
 "royal palace with me, would believe in the God of these  
 "men. But, O Emperor, do not hearken unto these words,  
 "for the thing is impossible, and we have never heard of  
 "such a thing taking place, except through the Creator  
 "of the heavens and the earth. But if these men are in  
 "truth His disciples, and if they are able to raise up my  
 "son who died three months ago, and whose body hath  
 "fallen into decay, no doubt shall exist in our hearts any

"longer, and we will not listen unto a vain word [cerning them]." And after this Peter said, "If we see "this sign and wonder I also will believe;" and after him all the men agreed together that they would be of like mind, and they went to their houses.

And it came to pass on the morrow that the Emperor sat upon his throne, and the doors were opened round about the tribunal, and all the people entered therein according to their rank and condition; then they brought us also thither, and we entered in and looked upon that great assembly. And the Emperor said unto us, "Are | ye able to do what ye say? Now my son  
B. fol. 23a. col. 1. "hath been dead three months, and [his body] hath become corruption." And we said, "Yea, we are able, "[Page 413] and if thou wilt believe on our Lord and God "thou shalt see His power in greater things than this." Then the Emperor commanded them to dig up the grave wherein the young man had been buried, and to bring out his coffin in the state in which it was; and they did so. And the Empress, the mother of him that was dead, brought forth lamps, and flowers, and incense according to what was meet for kings, and she and all her kinsfolk waited anxiously to see what God would do by our hands. Then we turned our faces towards the East, and we stood up and prayed, and made supplication unto our Lord and God, and we said, "O Lord, let not the hand "of Thy mighty power be far from us. Cast Thou not "us away, and remember the covenant of truth which "Thou didst make with us, and raise up this dead man, "that the people may know that Thou art God the "Creator, and the Vivifier of the dead;" and we rose

up | from our worship. Then I Peter drew nigh unto the B. fol. 23a.  
dead man, and I made the sign of the Cross over him, col. 2.  
and I cried out with a voice which those who were  
gathered together near me might hear, saying, "O dead  
"man, in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ the Nazarene,  
"Whom the Jews crucified in Jerusalem, rise up!" And  
straightway the young man rose up from his coffin, and  
he was trembling by reason of his death swathings, and  
he was wiping his face. Then his mother, who had been  
hidden within the palace, went forth, and cried out, and  
said, "O Peter, I believe in thy Lord and God;" and she  
threw herself upon her son and embraced him, and the  
Emperor also came and embraced his son, and kissed  
him; and all the people lifted up their voices and believed  
in Christ, and the Emperor commanded that we should  
dwell in his palace.

Now Paul was with the Emperor, and there was  
[Page 414] great joy and gladness in the royal palace,  
and in the city, and | all the people of Antioch rejoiced. B. fol. 23b.  
Then was the Emperor afraid because of what he had col. 1.  
seen, and he came to us, and bowed down unto us, and  
was blessed by us. And the Emperor said unto Paul  
(Peter?), "My son hath told me everything which happened  
"unto him, and how these men stood before the throne  
"of God, and how God hearkened unto their intercession  
"on his behalf, and he also told me that there was with  
"them another man whose petition was bold (*or* strong),  
"whose head was bald and shining, whose hair was red,  
"and whose appearance was like unto that of Paul. Now  
"I have meditated upon these things with many thoughts;  
"tell me then concerning your own work [in this matter]

“and hide ye nothing from me.” And I Peter said unto him, “Ask Paul thyself, O Emperor, according as thou desirest.”<sup>1</sup> Then he baptized him straightway, and when he had been baptized [he said unto him], “Thou shalt be anointed with the oil of the Holy Spirit, and thy name shall be written in the Book of Life. And I will reveal unto thee the mysteries of the faith whereby thy soul and thy heart shall be made to rejoice.” Then he  
 B. fol. 23b. turned unto Paul, and said unto him, | “Make me to know  
 col. 2. “the hidden things of thy work.” And Paul said unto him, “If thou wilt be baptized, and thy faith be true, I will make thee to know that which will strengthen thy faith, and make thy heart to rejoice.” And on the morrow, in the early morning, I Peter smote with my staff [the ground] inside the palace, and a fountain of water sprang up; (now this water floweth until this very hour behind the sanctuary which is in the church at Antioch), and I baptized the Emperor and all the people of his kingdom. Then all the men of Antioch hastened to go down into the water that they too might be baptized, and we sealed them with [Page 415] the divine oil of Mèrôn, until they had all been sealed,

And the doors of the palace were closed, and the Emperor sat upon his throne, and cried out unto us, and said unto us, “Behold, I and all the men of my kingdom and my city have accepted the faith, and I now command them to bring hither the remainder [of the people], both from my country of Antioch and from the seven

---

<sup>1</sup> The text of this passage is corrupt, and several lines seem to have been omitted.

"cities, and that ye baptize them by your hands. | As for B. fol. 24a.  
 "me, teach ye me your commandments which shall be col. 1.  
 "meet for [me to observe], that I and those who are  
 "in my following may act according to your religion."  
 Then we said unto him, "The commandment which we  
 "would declare unto thee is, 'Be not an enemy unto our  
 "'Lord Jesus Christ.'" And he said unto us, "If I become  
 "a servant of my Lord Christ, who shall be an adversary  
 "unto him?" And we said unto him, "Break in pieces  
 "thy idols, and root them up from their foundations, and  
 "lay waste their temples, and build churches unto our  
 "Lord;" and he did all these things even as we had  
 commanded him. Then he called Paul by himself, and  
 he made known unto him all his affairs, and his faith  
 was increased, and he began to build the church which  
 is known as *Ḳuesyân*(?) in the name of his son, whom  
 Christ raised from the dead, and he called it after the  
 name of me, Peter. And he built another church by  
 the city wall, towards the East, and he called it after  
 the name of Saint Paul, and he turned the great heathen  
 temple which the ancients had built | in the name of the B. fol. 24a.  
 planet Mars into a church, which was dedicated in the col. 2.  
 name of Saint John our companion.

And after these things we separated, and Paul went  
 unto the city of Tarsus, and preached therein; now it  
 was larger than [all] other cities. And the believing men  
 who were in Laodicea sent messengers unto me, saying,  
 "The waters of the river of *Ḳêsârôs* have risen to an  
 "exceedingly great height, and they have drowned many  
 "[Page 416] men, and covered their fields, and swept  
 "away their cattle." Now they sent this message unto

me and asked me to entreat God to turn back the waters of the flood from overflowing its boundaries. So I sent unto them John the beloved, and I commanded him to bind the waters of the flood by the word of God until they should return to their place and cease to overwhelm any man. And straightway John set out on his journey, and on the road he heard the story of how the waters of the flood had drowned the men of the city, and caused them to perish. And as he continued on his way he soon came to a place where young lambs | were  
 B. fol. 24b. col. 1. pasturing, and he said unto one of the lambs, "Go thou  
 "to the river Kēsârôs, and say unto it, 'John, the disciple  
 "of Christ, 'hath sent me unto thee, and he telleth thee  
 "that thou art bound by the word of God, and that  
 "thou shalt never again pass over thy boundary until the  
 "day of the Resurrection.'" And the lamb went to the  
 river, and spake unto it according as it had been sent  
 to speak by John the beloved; and the flood went back  
 to its [natural] limit. Then all the men cried out by  
 reason of this miracle, and large numbers of the unbelievers  
 who were in Laodicea believed in Christ on that  
 day, and they were in number eighteen thousand men.  
 And John baptized them, and appointed over them priests  
 to teach them, and they built many churches; and after  
 these things John went to the city of Ephesus, and I  
 departed to the city of Rome.

## CHAPTER V.

HOW PETER PREACHED IN THE CITY OF ROME AND  
 CALLED MEN UNTO THE FAITH OF CHRIST, AND HOW  
 MIRACLES [Page 417] WERE WROUGHT [BY HIM THERE],  
 AND OF THE | COMING OF PAUL, AND BARNABAS, AND B. fol. 24b.  
 TIMOTHY, AND TITUS, AND OF MYSELF, CLEMENT, AND col. 2.  
 OF THE MATTERS WHICH APPERTAIN THERETO.

And after these days my master Peter called me  
 Clement, and commanded me and my brethren to go to  
 the city of Rome before him, for thither had our Lord  
 Jesus Christ commanded him to go; and we had to go  
 before him to the country of 'Atênâ (Asia Minor), and [my]  
 master Peter embraced the brethren who were living in  
 the city of Jerusalem. Then we departed to the border  
 of the city of Joppa, and we embarked in a ship and  
 sailed over the sea until [we arrived at] the Island of  
 Cyprus, where we dwelt for three and twenty days, for  
 thus had the Lord told me to do. And after three and  
 twenty days whilst I was still dwelling in the Island of  
 Cyprus, the angel of God appeared unto me, and said  
 unto me, "O Peter, let not thy sojourning upon this Is-  
 "land be [too] pleasant unto thee, but rise up, and go to  
 "the city of Rome;" so I departed thereunto. And | the B. fol. 25a.  
 country was folded up before me like a folded paper, col. 2.  
 until I arrived at the city of Rome and entered therein.  
 Now I had had no food to eat for some days, and when  
 I had come into the city, and had seen its splendour and  
 the great riches of the people I was dismayed. Now I  
 saw a little hill near the gates of the house of one of

the rich nobles of the city, and I sat down thereupon. And that man [was a doer of] good works, and he gave away many gifts to the poor, and he was of a generous nature, and was one who loved the poor stranger. Now the daughter of that man saw that I was poor and wretched, and she said unto her noble and aged father, "O my father, behold, I see on the hill near the gates "of our house a poor man who is not [Page 418] like "unto the poor folk of our city, and I have never seen "misery which is like unto his." And he said unto her, "O my daughter, take thou a golden pitcher and fill it "with water, and take a gold basin, and a napkin of fine "linen, and go forth to that man by thyself, and keep

B. fol. 25a. "thou | thine handmaidens from drawing nigh unto him,  
col. 2.

"and wash his feet with thine hand, and inform me what "he shall say unto thee, and what he seeketh. Surely "he is either a messenger of one of the gods, or a disciple "of the God of heaven Who is in the country of Judaea "and in the city of Jerusalem. I have heard from the "kinsfolk of Nero the Emperor, and from Pilate, who "was the governor of the country of Judaea, that that "God commanded His disciples to hate gold, and to be "humble, and to wear rags, and that they all should make "manifest divine might, for their God hath given unto "them the power to work miracles and wonders. And I "think that if thou wilt go nigh unto him, and will wash "his hands and his feet, and wilt not reject his poverty, "he will heal thee of the disease which is in thee." And that young woman came unto me with her face covered,

B. fol. 25b.  
col. 1. and nothing thereof could be seen except her eyes, and she was carrying a pitcher and | basin upon her shoulders,

and she came up to me and found me in grief and tears. Then she said unto me, "O aged man, weep not. Behold "thou hast found that which thou wast seeking. Put "away from thee thy grief and sorrow, and wash thy "face, and thy hands, and thy feet in this water, and "come into the house of thine handmaiden, that thou "mayest eat of our food and give us thy blessing." And she drew nigh and poured out water into my hands, but she hid her own hands in her sleeves, and the Holy Spirit [Page 419] told me that she had leprosy upon them. And I said unto her, "O daughter, why dost thou "hide thine hands from me? for I am a poor, and very "old man." And she said unto me, "Because of the "honourableness of thine estate; but my history is a long "one, and I have great sickness upon me." Then I said unto her, "Tell me thine history." And she said unto me in grief and sorrow, "By the truth of the gods I will "hide nothing whatsoever of my history from thee. Now "I was once invited to a gathering together of the nobles "of this city, and I went there together with all the [other] "virgins, | and the evil eye fell upon me, and sickness laid B. fol. 25b. "hold upon me." And as she was speaking unto me the col. 2. tears were flowing down from her eyes upon her cheeks like rain by reason of her burning heart, and [her] great sorrow. Then I took a handful of the water and sprinkled it upon her in the Name of Christ, my God, and straight-way the maiden was cleansed from her leprosy, and she ran quickly to her father and informed him concerning her healing by my hand, and she shewed him her flesh, and he saw that she was cleansed from her leprosy. And her father rose up quickly from his bed with joy

and gladness, and he came unto me, and commanded his servants to carry me away and to set me in his house, and he said, "Behold, this day hath come unto me the "grace of God, and life hath entered into my house." Then he bowed down before me, and said unto me, "O "aged noble one, thy coming unto us is good," and he made me to be seated, and he sat down by my side, and  
 B. fol. 26a. he asked me, saying, "Tell me | thy story. Whence art  
 col. 1. "thou, O aged one? And where hast thou come from? "For through thee we have seen the light, and our hearts "rejoice."

And I said unto him, "I am a servant of the servants "of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of the Living God, "[Page 420] Who hath existed [from eternity] and Whom "the Jews crucified in Jerusalem, and He it is Who hath "sent me to this city to call the people [thereof] to His "service, and to baptize with water and with the [Holy] "Spirit those of them who believe, and to anoint them "with the holy oil of Mêrôn in the Name of the Father, "and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit." And the old man said unto me, "I and all my people will believe in "thy God from this time forward." Then straightway I smote the ground in the house wherein we were with my staff, and a great fountain of water sprang up therefrom, and I baptized the old man and all his people; and I received him from the baptism, and I anointed him with the holy  
 B. fol. 26a. oil of Mêrôn. And all the people | of Rome heard of the  
 col. 2. fame of me, and the paralytics, and the sick, and the blind came unto me, and I healed them; and they believed, and I baptized them together with many [other] folk. Then I built a church in the house of that aged

man, whose name was 'Eufrikôs, and my deeds were heard of in all countries (*or* cities), and men knew that I was Peter, the Chief of the disciples of our Lord Christ.

And Paul came unto me from the city of 'Atênâ, and Timothy was with him, together with Titus and Barnabas, his disciples, and Clement and his brethren, my disciples; and we preached the faith in all the city of Rome, until the report of us was heard by the Emperor. And it came to pass that when Simon Magus, who was dwelling on the sea shore, heard the report of us, he came unto us to the city of Rome, that he might lead men astray by his enchantments; but he knew not that the power of God would overcome his might and wickedness, even as it overcame the wickedness of Jannes and Jambres<sup>1</sup> [Page 421], the magicians of Pharaoh in Egypt in the days of | Moses the prophet. Now, I was<sup>B. fol. 26b.</sup> not grieved by reason of his coming to the city of Rome, <sup>col. 1.</sup> because my faith was in Christ, my God. And when I Clement met my master Peter, he appointed me to be the Archbishop of the city of Rome, and he made me chief of the congregation; and he appointed 'Awdayôs (Euodios<sup>2</sup>), the son of Lendayôs (Lendaïos), to be the Archbishop of the city of Antioch; and Paul appointed Mark, the son of 'Arestô, to be the Archbishop of the city of Alexandria; and he appointed Thomas over India; and he appointed Philip to be the preacher in the country of Nôbâ (Nubia), and after he had taught the people of that country he commanded him to return, and to go to

<sup>1</sup> See 2 Timothy iii. 8, 9.

<sup>2</sup> See LIPSIVS, *Apostelgeschichten*, vol. i. p. 203 ff.; vol. ii. part 1. pp. 9 and 215.

the country of Manîêt<sup>1</sup> and [the land of] the Two Rivers (Mesopotamia); and he appointed Thaddeus over the city of Rôḥa (Edessa), and the Island of Syria, and sent him unto Awḵâryês (Abgar<sup>2</sup>), the king of Syria; and he appointed John the beloved over the city of Ephesus. And my master Peter, and Paul, and the rest of the disciples tarried for a few days in the city of Rome.

## CHAPTER VI.

B. fol. 26b. HOW SATAN TOLD PETER WHAT HE WOULD DO | AGAINST  
col. 2. THE BELIEVERS, AND THE PRIESTS, AND THE SERVANTS  
OF GOD, AND HOW HE WOULD LEAD THEM ASTRAY IN  
THE LAST DAYS.

Now at that time my master Peter departed from this place to the city whereunto Philip had gone, and it was a well-known city, and the name thereof was Kartâgôn<sup>3</sup> (Carthage); and Satan appeared unto him on the road, and strove diligently to do battle with him, but my master Peter blew in his face, and spat upon him, and Satan fled from before him, [Page 422] crying out, and saying, "O Son of the Virgin, why hast Thou taken away from me the position which thou didst give me? Behold, my kingdom is ruined, and my sovereignty, that is to say, the worship of idols, is destroyed, and the

<sup>1</sup> Probably a part of Scythia.

<sup>2</sup> See LIPSIVS, *Apostelgeschichten*, vol. ii. part 2, p. 158. Ten of the kings of Edessa bore the name Abgar.

<sup>3</sup> On St. Peter's journey to Egypt, Carthage, Spain, and Britain, see LIPSIVS, op. cit., vol. ii. part 1, p. 222; on "Carthage, which is in Azotus", see LIPSIVS, op. cit., vol. ii. part 2, p. 32.

"idols which were the habitations of myself and of my  
 "hosts have perished. Worship is now paid unto Thee  
 "alone, and I have no pretext against Thy flock; but I  
 "will corrupt all those whom Peter and his companions,  
 "the Apostles, teach through the love of gold and silver,  
 "and by reason of that desire they shall return unto me.  
 "And I will make the worship of idols to reign again,  
 "and I will also make him that attaineth unto the head  
 "of the priesthood among them to | turn aside from the B. fol. 27a.  
 "priesthood, and to take gifts and bribes, so that there col. 1.  
 "shall not be the reward of a priest unto any one of  
 "them; and I will make the priests to transgress the Law  
 "of God, and I will make them to be remote from His  
 "commandments. Hearken, moreover, and I will tell thee,  
 "O Peter. I will cause schisms to be among them, and  
 "they shall attribute to Christ various natures, which the  
 "hearts [of men] cannot understand, and thereby will I make  
 "them to blaspheme against the Holy Ghost, even as I  
 "myself have blasphemed against Him. And I will go  
 "unto the recluses and solitary monks who live in caves  
 "and in desert places, and I will lead them astray by  
 "means of the vain dreams (*or* visions) which I will make  
 "them to see; and I will make my soldiers to have do-  
 "minion over them through Ba'él Zébûl (Beelzebub), who  
 "shall lead them astray, and they shall perform their  
 "desires, and like heathen priests they shall make mani-  
 "fest unto men vain miracles. And I will send my sol-  
 "diers to the churches, so that they may strip from the  
 "mouths of the priests the spiritual prayer whereby they  
 "make supplication that the Holy Spirit may descend  
 "upon the Offering. And I will make them to possess

B. fol. 27a. "the desire | to have intercourse with those who received

col. 2. "them [Page 423] after Christian baptism, and I will plant  
"in their hearts the lust of Sodom so that they may per-  
"form it, and may choose it rather than lawful intercourse  
"with women. And especially shall their power spring  
"from mine when they mingle tares with the wheat, for  
"my commandment is [to sow] tares, and they shall per-  
"form it. And I will make them to cry out against the  
"believers, and to slay them, and to pour out their  
"blood, and to carry them away into captivity; and I  
"will make their blood and their children, which are the  
"children of the tares, to be acceptable offerings, and I  
"will not delay in performing this thing. I swear by  
"the light wherein [Jesus Christ] covered Himself on  
"Mount Tabor, and on the Mount of Olives, and in Ga-  
"lilee, and I swear by the might of thy God, O Peter,  
"with Whom I take counsel, and know ye that He is my  
"King and my God, and that when He was baptized  
"in the river Jordan it was He Who removed me from  
"my place of abode. And I swear unto thee by the time  
"when my Lord and King received power over death,

B. fol. 27b. "and cast it into Tartarus, | that is to say, the depths of

col. 1. "Sheol, for ever, and shut in its face the bolts of brass  
"and iron, that I will cause tribulation to come upon the  
"Christians. And I will fight against them with all my  
"power, and I will never let them alone until the advent  
"of Him that calleth Himself Christ. And with him whom  
"I shall choose and help I will be in everything which  
"he desireth [to do], and I will give him dominion over  
"those who have believed through thee, and through thy  
"companions the Apostles. Hearken, O Peter, for I will

"wipe out all those who follow after the Lord Christ, and  
 "I will destroy them on sea and on dry land. And know  
 "this, O Peter, and understand well, that he (i. e., Anti-  
 "Christ) shall come, and shall mingle temptation with the  
 "kingdom of [Page 424] Christ, and he shall be at that  
 "time the means of ascent for the tares who shall come  
 "from the south, and the period of their days shall be  
 "according to the days of [his appearance]."

And it came to pass that when I Peter heard these  
 words from Satan I made the sign of the cross over my  
 face, and I rebuked him, saying, "He Who abased Him-  
 "self, and | took upon Himself the flesh of man, and ap-B. fol. 27b.  
 "peared among men like one of themselves, shall blot col. 2.  
 "thee out, O Satan, and He shall not give thee dominion  
 "over His servants." And when I had said these words  
 unto him he fled from before me, and I saw that he be-  
 came like a flame of fire; and I heard his voice, saying,  
 "O Son of the Virgin, Thou Son of the Father, Thou  
 "Word of light, Thou strength of 'Adônâya (i. e., אֲדֹנָי),  
 "from the days of times long past whensoever Thou didst  
 "wish Thou didst reveal Thy power unto me." And  
 having said these words he hid himself from me. And  
 again, I Peter and Paul the zealous one went unto the  
 city of Philippi, and we preached therein the preaching  
 of the Gospel of Christ; and Timothy, the disciple of  
 Paul, was there. And here also the rumour of us reached  
 Simon Magus, and he followed us hither, and he cor-  
 rupted the counsel of men, and made them to be remote  
 from the faith. So we left this place and went to Ḳar-  
 tagonâ (Carthage), and when we had entered therein Paul B. fol. 28a.  
 left me and went to the | city of Wârîkôn, the country col. 1.

of Darkness,<sup>1</sup> and between it and the country of the 'Akrâd<sup>2</sup> is a sea (*or* lake), the name of which is Guôrgnôr,<sup>3</sup> and the breadth of which is three hundred stadia; now Paul came unto this place that he might call the inhabitants thereof to the true faith, and he dwelt there for one year and eight months, and [then] he made an end of his preaching therein.

## CHAPTER VII.

[Page 425]. HOW PETER RETURNED TO THE CITY OF ROME AND MADE AN END OF SIMON MAGUS, AND REVEALED THE FAITH OF CHRIST UNTO THE PEOPLE [THEREOF], AND HOW THEY WERE BAPTIZED, AND BUILT CHURCHES, AND HOW THE DISCIPLES WERE GATHERED TOGETHER UNTO PETER, AND HOW THEY APPOINTED A LAW AND A CANON SUITABLE TO THE BELIEVERS, AND HOW THEY SEALED THEM WITH THEIR SEALINGS, AND EXCOMMUNICATED ALL THE TRANSGRESSORS, AND OF THE MIRACLES AND STORIES WHICH APPERTAIN THEREUNTO.

[My] master Peter said:—After these things a cloud carried me Peter, and brought me back unto the city of ẖartâgnâ (Carthage), and I found myself with the brethren and the disciples who were there, and I made known unto them the things which I had seen after [I left them].

B. fol. 28a. And after this | we dwelt in ẖartâgnâ (Carthage) a few  
col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> Presumably the Land of Darkness about which so much is said in the Alexander Legends; see my *Life and Exploits of Alexander*, pp. 372, 396, 440, 453, 473.

<sup>2</sup> I. e., the country of the Kurds.

<sup>3</sup> This lake was probably situated in Armenia.

days, and then we went unto the city of Philippi, and from thence we went to the city of Rome, and we did as we had done formerly, and called the people thereof unto the true faith, and the numbers of those who believed were added unto daily. Then envy laid hold upon Simon Magus,<sup>1</sup> and he came unto us that he might dispute with us, and he was working many mighty deeds by means of his magic, and he strengthened [the hold of] his error over men, and he increased his wickedness, and his sorcery, and his crafty fraud whereby he led men astray; and he made manifest to the people mighty works whereat they marvelled. Now one day he brought an ox and spake some words into its ear, and straightway the ox died, and then they took Simon Magus and myself into the presence of the Emperor of Rome, and we entered therein with the disciples. Then Simon Magus said unto me in the presence of the king, "If thou art "a worker of wonders and miracles, raise up this ox "which hath died;" and I said unto him, "Let him that "hath killed him raise him up." And the Emperor said unto me, "Behold, Simon hath already wrought a great "miracle [**Page 426**], for he hath slain this ox | with his B. fol. 28b. "word; and ye must raise him up by your words;" then col. 1. Simon Magus left us, and went into his own house. And Paul said unto me, "Why do we stand idle?" And I Peter received help by the Holy Ghost, and I made the sign of the cross over the ox, and I said unto him, "In "the Name of Jesus the Nazarene, Whom the Jews crucified

<sup>1</sup> See LIPSIVS, *op. cit.*, vol. ii. part 1, pp. 28—61, and p. 299 ff.; and *The Acts of the Apostles*, viii. 9.

"in Jerusalem, rise up, O ox, from the dead;" then straightway the ox rose and stood up alive, even as he had been formerly. And when the people saw how he had come to life [again], they marvelled and glorified the Creator. Then I said unto the ox, "Go thou unto Simon Magus, and say unto him, Peter, the disciple of Christ, 'the Son of the Virgin, calleth thee;" so the ox went away quickly, and many men followed after him until he came to the house of Simon Magus, and he told him correctly (*literally*, with a straight tongue) what I said unto him, and on that day many men believed; and Simon Magus came with his ox unto the palace of the Emperor, who was sitting upon his throne. Then the

B. fol. 28b. Emperor | said unto Simon, "Dost thou not see what the  
col. 2. "disciple of Him that was crucified hath done?" And Simon said unto the Emperor, "Marvel not at this thing, "for, behold, I will work miracles which are infinitely "greater than those which these disciples have wrought." Then the men who were there said unto him, "What miracles art thou able to work?" And Simon said, "I "can work miracles the like of which neither these nor "any other men can work." And they said unto him, "What wilt thou do?" And he said unto them, "I will "ascend into heaven before your faces." And they said unto him, "Do what thou sayest thou canst do, that we "may see what thou wilt do." Then, whilst I was looking at him, the unclean spirits were gathered together unto him, and he commanded them to bear him away up to the place where [Page 427] he would be hidden from the eyes of men, and they carried him away up until he was [out of sight] in the air. And he cried out unto me, and

said unto me, "O Peter, is the height to which I have  
 "ascended sufficient for thee, or wouldst thou have me  
 "rise higher?" Then I said unto him, "Yea, I wish thee  
 "to rise much higher than this;" so he mounted up  
 higher until he was nigh to disappear from the eyes of  
 men into the air. And Paul said | unto me, "Why do B. fol. 29a.  
 "we stand here idle, O noble master, and do not destroy col. 1.  
 "the work of this magician, and do away his crafty  
 "fraud?" Then straightway I raised myself up towards  
 heaven, and I said, "O ye unclean spirits, in the Name  
 "of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of the Living God,  
 "Who hath existed [from eternity], I bid you to let  
 "Simon Magus drop out of your hands so that he may  
 "fall to the earth; and make ye yourselves to be remote  
 "from him." Then straightway Simon Magus fell to the  
 earth, and he was so much broken that not one whole  
 bone was left in his body; and his brains were dashed  
 out from his head, and all his bowels were scattered  
 abroad, and he became like unto the dung which is cast  
 forth into the streets. And all the people lifted up their  
 voices, and glorified our Lord Christ, and on that day  
 we baptized men in such multitudes that their number  
 could not be counted, and Paul, and Clement, and the  
 other disciples who were there received them from [their]  
 baptism. Now we were baptizing men from that | day B. fol. 29a.  
 until the close of the thirty-third day. And my master col. 2.  
 Peter, and Paul the Apostle, and Barnabas, and Timothy,  
 and Titus his disciple, and Thomas the Elder, and Aga-  
 bus,<sup>1</sup> one of the Seventy-two disciples, and Protheus, and

<sup>1</sup> See Acts xi. 28.

Dionysius, one of the sons of the heathen high-priests, all came unto me [Page 428] Clement, in Rome, and we made ready the Offering, and we all partook thereof. And to large numbers of the people who had believed through us we taught the faith, and the Law of the Christ, and the ordinances thereof; and the number of those who received baptism in Rome [from that time] until the day wherein the disciples were gathered together in my house, was ten thousand, two hundred, and thirteen, both men and women, without reckoning children. And I built a church in my house, and all the faithful, the numbers of whom were added to each day by the help of the might of God, used to come unto us.

And my master Peter commanded me to write an  
B. fol. 29b. account of everything which I had heard | and seen in  
col. 1. connexion with him, and to lay it up in the treasury of books in Rome, and after [I had done so] my master Peter and Paul sealed that which I had written with their seals, and I also [sealed it] with my seal. And I cursed everyone who should reveal these mysteries to the Gentiles, and we cursed every one who should transgress our command, and we bound them by the power which our Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of the Living God, our God, had given unto us. And we said, "Whosoever shall "reveal these mysteries, or even one jot of them to any "strange people, or to any nation of the Gentiles, shall "be bound by the voice (*or* word) of God;" and this excommunication did my master Peter, and the Apostle Paul, and the disciples pronounce over every man who should transgress the commandments of our Lord Christ, and their own behests. Then my master Peter said,

"With my own mouth I say, As God liveth, no man  
"whatsoever shall have the power to reveal | [these mys-B.fol.29b.  
"teries], whether he be a righteous man, or anyone like col. 2.  
"unto him, except [Page 429] the priests of the house of  
"the sanctuary who are pure, and who are righteous in  
"the Law of God; and whosoever shall transgress my  
"commandment let him be excommunicated and accursed,  
"and let the wrath of God descend upon him, and I my-  
"self will enquire before our Lord Jesus Christ concerning  
"the transgression of my commandment." And straight-  
way the Cherubim, and the Seraphim, and the Princes,  
and the Thrones, and the Lords, and the Dominions, and  
the Powers, and the Angels, and all the company of the  
Archangels, spake saying, "Amen. So be it!" Then  
my master Peter added unto the seal of these mysteries  
the seal of the pure Mother of the Light, and Paul also  
said, "I will excommunicate him that shall transgress the  
"commandment of Peter, my prince and my master, even  
"though he be one of the angels of heaven." And Paul,  
the chosen one, also said, "I, and all my brethren the  
"disciples, say, If there shall be among the believers any  
"man in doubt | concerning what is written in this book,B.fol.30a.  
"and he shall say, This is not from God, and God did col. 1.  
"not give it unto Peter, the chosen one, then shall he be  
"excommunicated and accursed, both in heaven and upon  
"earth." And Luke the Evangelist, and all the disciples  
who were with him also spake according to these words;  
and Timothy and Titus also added their seals to the  
sealings of the books. Now the number of the books  
wherein were written the mysteries, and the Law, and  
the commandments which my master Peter revealed unto

me Clement, were eight books; and the books which had been given unto my master Peter did he give unto me, and I copied them according to his commandment, and I laid them in the Cave of the Treasures of Rome, which I have called the "Cave of Life" [Page 430]. And I added unto the things which were revealed unto us some of the doctrines of the Hebrews, which the Emperors Vespasian and Titus had collected; and also the mysteries B. fol. 30a. | which Paul had revealed unto his disciples Protheus and col. 2. Dionysius; and the mysteries which John the beloved had revealed, together with those which our Lord Jesus Christ, and our Lady, the mother of the Light, had revealed unto him, in the first of the eight books. In this book was written the history of the tribe, and families, and kinsfolk of our Lady, the mother of the Light, and the history of the kings of the earth, and the tares, that is to say the heathen rulers(?), and the number of their kings, and the history of the end of the world, and of the constitution of the world which is to come, and the similitude of the city of the heavenly Jerusalem which my master Peter saw, and he described it unto me with his holy mouth, according to what he had seen and heard concerning it.

And after all these mysteries had been revealed unto me, the disciples came together in the great and holy city of Jerusalem, wherefrom the grace of God and the Holy Spirit are not remote, [and they stayed there] until the day of the Resurrection, that is to say, the day of days, the first day of the week, and there the beloved B. fol. 30b. John | preached the preaching of the Gospel. And when col. 1. my master Peter had committed his faith to his book,

and had sealed it with his seal, all the disciples who were in Rome also did likewise. Then there arrived also the books of the disciples who were afar off in which were written their faiths, and my master Peter read them and found them to be right, and perfect, and found that the disciples were agreed as to the right faith, and that they had neither added thereto aught nor taken anything therefrom, for the help [Page 431] of the Holy Spirit was with them, and had made them all to be of one right faith, and not of faiths which were different; and they wrote the books of their faith and the books of mysteries, even as He had sealed them. Then they set thereto as their chief seal the seal of my master Peter, and after it the seal of our Lady, the mother of the Light, and after it the seal of Paul the Apostle, for he was the eye of all the books, and [after it] the seal of John the | beloved, unto whom our Lady the Virgin, theB. fol. 3ob. mother of the Light, had been committed by the word col. 2. of God, and at the end of the seals followed the seal of me, Clement the sinner. And they added curses upon any man whatsoever who should reveal any of these mysteries, except such as had been appointed to be archbishops, and were holy men, and to whom such matters were seemly. Then I Clement spake thus:—"I believe "that God Almighty chose my master Peter before the "world was created, and I also believe that the Father "revealed unto him the mysteries of His Son, and that "He also informed him alone of all the disciples concern- "ing them, and that on the Day of Judgment power will "be given unto him from God to judge all men." And I said, "Woe be unto those who trangress His faith and

"His commandments, or who take bribes as a reward of  
 "priestly office, for their sin shall rank with [that of]  
 "Simon Magus, [and He shall judge them] even as my  
 "master Peter judged him." Now I Clement called that  
 B. fol. 31a. ark | (*or* chest) wherein I had placed the mysteries, "The  
 col. 1. "Ark of the Covenant", and I rolled all the books up in  
 the napkin wherewith [Page 432] my Lord and God,  
 Jesus Christ, girded Himself about when He washed the  
 feet of His disciples, and I covered them over with the  
 face-cloth which was upon His head when He was in the  
 grave. And I, and many of the disciples, placed what  
 remained of His burial wrappings therein; and the garment  
 which had been woven without seam, and which was  
 that in which our Lord was arrayed on the day of His  
 crucifixion, and for which the soldiers cast lots; and the  
 crown of thorns which the Jews plaited for our Lord;  
 and the apparel and tunic of purple in which they dressed  
 Him; and the sponge, and the vinegar, and the worm-  
 wood; and the spear wherewith our Lord was pierced;  
 and the rope wherewith they bound Him upon the wood;  
 and the rods wherewith they scourged Him—all these, I  
 say, we laid up in the "Ark of the Covenant", wherein  
 we had placed the books of mysteries, where they shall  
 B. fol. 31a. be preserved until the time of the second Coming | of our  
 col. 2. Lord Christ. Now I did nothing whatever of these things  
 by my own will, but I acted according to the command  
 of my master Peter, for he told me that God had com-  
 manded him to lay up all these most holy and most  
 precious possessions in the holy city of Rome, and that  
 no enemy should ever have dominion over it, and that  
 no evil should ever enter therein, and that the faith of the

people [thereof] is the right faith. And he said unto me, "Every Christian whose faith shall not be like unto the "faith of the men of Rome at the time when the disciples "were gathered together therein shall be remote from "God, and he shall have no portion with me." And my master Peter informed me that our Lord had made this city to be the habitation of the angels, and that hymns of consecration should never cease therefrom, and that no heathen rulers should enter therein [Page 433]; for this city was intended to be the abode of the saints, and the habitation of the bodies of the holy fathers, and neither wrath nor sword | shall have dominion over it. And God B. fol. 31b. shall make all men desire to go thither, and He shall col. 1. deliver it from those who are its enemies, and who seek to harm it, and they shall not be able [to conquer] it.

## CHAPTER VIII.

HOW CLEMENT ASKED PETER CONCERNING THE REMAINDER OF THE MYSTERIES, AND HOW PETER REVEALED UNTO HIM THE REMAINING MATTERS OF THE ORDINANCES OF THE MYSTERY, AND THE LAW, AND THE COMMANDMENTS, WHICH OUR LORD JESUS CHRIST HAD GIVEN UNTO HIM, AND CONCERNING OTHER DIVINE HISTORIES.

And it came to pass that when I had heard these things from my master Peter, concerning these mysteries, their honour was greatly added to in my sight, and I asked him to inform me concerning the history of the bodies of the fathers, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and the story of the Tables of the Law which Moses, the chosen one, received from the hand of God, (Whose

Names are holy!) and broke in pieces. Then my master Peter said unto me, "Know, O my son, that a certain pure woman shall rule in the last days over the Christian people; and all the bodies of the believing | Patriarchs shall be translated unto the holy city of Rome, and the holy tables of Moses which were among the treasures laid up shall be sought for, and people shall bring them into the city of Rome." And he also said unto me, "Know, O my son, that I have to drink the cup which my Lord Christ drank in the flesh, through the assumption of the human form which He received from my Lady MARY, the pure woman, the mother of the Light. It is for me to be crucified, even as [Page 434] my Lord was crucified, and they shall pierce my hands and my feet with nails. Thou knowest, O my son, that my Lord and God commanded me to protect the churches and the pasture of His sheep, and to feed them in purity; behold, now, I commit them unto thee, for behold, I have to set out upon my way. And Paul the Apostle they will also slay with the sword, but John the beloved shall not taste death except at the time of the second Coming of our Lord to judge [the world], for my Lord and my God made this known unto me, and said unto me, 'No man shall be able to bury the body of | John in the earth, for he is the steward of the mysteries of God,' and there shall be given unto him only even what hath been given unto me, with the exception of the keys of the kingdom of heaven; for our Lord gave them unto me alone, and I shall return them unto Him on the day of His second Coming when He shall judge the living and the dead, and shall

"reward every man according to his work. And know,  
 "O my son, that I am the keeper of the gates of the  
 "kingdom of heaven, and to me it hath been given to  
 "make intercession for all believers; and I have power  
 "to loose their transgressions, and of the race of men  
 "no man except myself hath been chosen for this work,  
 "and this power hath never been given unto any prophet,  
 "or unto any servant, or unto any angel, or unto any  
 "one of the chosen servants of God. And from the time  
 "when God created the world until the end thereof no  
 "such power hath ever been given unto any except  
 "unto us, who are the Twelve holy Apostles. For we all  
 "have seen with our eyes the glory of His Divinity, and  
 "we have touched mighty things with our hands, and  
 "after this we | had understanding in our hearts, and we B. fol. 32a.  
 "believed in Him [Page 435] without doubt. And this col. 2.  
 "power was not given unto any others except us, for  
 "we had full understanding of God, and perfect know-  
 "ledge of Him. Verily I say unto thee, O my son  
 "Clement, that I saw the Son; our Lord Jesus Christ,  
 "with mine own eyes sitting with the Father upon the  
 "throne of the Cherubim, and I am a true witness that  
 "our Lord Jesus Christ, Who took upon Himself the  
 "estate of man from MARY the Virgin, is the Son of the  
 "Living God, Who hath existed [from eternity], and that  
 "it was He Who shewed me the glory of His Godhead  
 "on Mount Tabor, and on the Mount of Olives, and on  
 "the sea. And I saw this same God when He laid hold  
 "upon me with His right hand as He was walking on  
 "the waves of the sea; and I saw that this same God  
 "was He Who delivered me by His mighty power from

"the waves of the sea; and I have seen [His] great  
"wonders. Now if I were to sit down for a whole year  
"and declare His wonders which I have seen, I should  
B.fol.32b. "not be able | to recount [them all], and if I were to  
col. 1. "attempt to write them, all the books in the world would  
"not contain them." Unto Him then, be glory for ever,  
and ever, and ever. Amen, and Amen.

---

[Page 436] THE HISTORY OF THE CON-  
TENDING OF SAINT PAUL WHICH IS TO  
BE READ ON THE FIFTH DAY OF THE  
MONTH HAMLE.<sup>1</sup>

In the Name of God the Father, Whose existence is without beginning, Whose rule hath no end, Whose Being cannot be sought out, Whose years cannot be measured; and in the Name of God the Son, Who was begotten by Him, Who existed before the world and shall endure for ever with Him, Who took upon Himself flesh from Mary the Virgin by His Father's will, but Whose Divine Nature was not changed into His fleshly nature, nor His fleshly nature into His Divinity; and in the Name of God the Holy Ghost, Who sprang from the Father, without His existence (*or* nature) being modified or changed; One God coequal, Three in Persons, and One in Divinity; we now begin to write the history of the contending of Saint Paul, by the help of His grace.

Saint Paul was the tongue of sweet-smelling ointment which scented the church by the doctrine of his mouth. Saint Paul, whose course was beautiful, was the Apostle of the Gentiles, who cried unto them to repent. Saint Paul was the associate of our Lord Jesus Christ in His fetters, and in His punishments; | he was always enduring B. fol. 37a.  
col. 2.

---

<sup>1</sup> I. c., June 29.

tribulation in his journeyings on land and on sea, and he bore the [Page 437] marks of his suffering in his body. Saint Paul sprinkled wisdom from the fountain of his doctrines which watered those who believed, and he made the foolish wise with the knowledge of his understanding. Saint Paul was filled with the Holy Spirit, and he sanctified the Church with the seal of the laying on of his hand, and he made it to increase by the graciousness of his sweetness. Saint Paul was the teacher of the Law and the ordinances which strengthened the believers by the word (*or* voice) of his sacred law, and he made them to rejoice in the report thereof

#### CHAPTER I.

TRUE IS THE WORD WHICH OUR LORD, AND GOD, AND REDEEMER, JESUS CHRIST, spake in His Holy Gospel, saying, "The first shall be last, and the last shall be first."<sup>1</sup> It is a thing to be marvelled at [how] God [dealeth] with His saints, and how He magnifieth and honoureth those who are his chosen ones. He called Paul, the persecutor, unto Him, and He made him to become His Apostle; He sent forth the light of righteousness by his hand, and He made him worthy to bear the Gospel of His grace, B. fol. 37b. and He made him to be the equal of those who | were col. 1. before him in preaching it. And He saith concerning him, "This is a chosen vessel"<sup>2</sup> who shall preach in My "Name in all countries, and before kings, and princes, "and nations, and peoples, and in all the countries over

<sup>1</sup> St. Mark ix. 35.

<sup>2</sup> Acts of the Apostles ix. 15.

“which the heavens extend; for the light of his doctrine shall illumine the hearts of all the believers who dwell upon the face of the earth. And he shall draw them out of the darkness into the light, and out of error into the faith of our Lord Jesus Christ, and of His Good Father, and of the Holy Spirit.” It was this man who became the keeper [Page 438] of the true medicine, and the physician for every kind of sickness and disease, and he healed the disease both of the body and of the soul through the might of God which dwelt upon him. This man by his prayers and supplications made the blind to see, and the lame to walk, and the lepers to be cleansed, and the deaf to hear, and the dumb to speak, and the dead to be raised up. It was unto this man that our Lord Jesus Christ appeared and spake openly several times, and He filled him with the heavenly gift, and poured out upon him the gift of the Holy Spirit, the Comforter, until at length he spake the languages of all countries. And He revealed unto him the knowledge which made foolish the wisdom | of the wise through the B.fol.37b. miracles and wonders which no [man] could do except col. 2. by the hand of God. He interpreted the books of the Prophets, and he revealed the power of the interpretation thereof unto every person, [and in every] place; and he was all things unto all men, until at length he withdrew their minds and their hearts from earthly things unto the kingdom of heaven. He it was who ascended unto the third heaven and saw the hidden mysteries of Christ by reason of his purity, and his virginity, and his striving, and his service, for which things God chose him and made him to be a preacher of the Gospel of His kingdom.

He it was who bore the cross of the sufferings of Christ, and he died daily through the tribulation which came upon him from the evil-doing Jews, for, said he, "I glory "in my suffering so that the power of Christ may be "made stronger in<sup>r</sup> me." He it was who, after the end of his good fight, and after he had been crowned with the crown of righteousness by the hands of the righteous Judge, walked forward in the steps of his divine doctrine, that is to say, the [Page 439] preaching of the Holy Gospel, and he drew all men into the place of rest and  
 B. fol. 38a. into the habitation | of joy, where there was life ever-  
 col. 1. lasting.

## CHAPTER II.

II. Hearken now, O all ye Christ-loving people, whom the grace of Christ hath called into this holy church that ye may celebrate the festival of this chosen and praise-worthy man, the blessed and glorious preacher who maketh intercession on behalf of all of you with God, the great Lord, among the holy ones. Saint Paul was the interpreter of righteousness, and the teacher of the truth, whom God honoured with the mitre of the priesthood and with the crown of the angels. Hearken ye with the ears of your hearts and minds that I may relate unto you a few of the things concerning his striving from the time when God called him into His service, and appointed him to preach the Gospel of His grace, and, O my beloved, the history of this pure and chosen man is as

---

<sup>r</sup> Colossians i. 11.

follows. Saint Paul belonged to a noble and chosen family, and he was of the seed of Abraham, and of the children of Israel; he was of the tribe of Benjamin the Hebrew, and he was learned in the Scriptures, and in the doctrine of the Law of Moses. He was born at Tarsus of Cilicia, and there he grew up; he was a vigorous man of fine, upright stature, and his countenance was ruddy | with the ruddiness of the skin of the pomegranate, his B. fol. 38a. complexion was clear, his nose was high and large, his col. 2. eyes were dark, and his cheeks were full, and bearded, and of the colour of a rose. He was educated with the greatest care and strictness by Gamaliel, the high-priest and Pharisee, the teacher of the Law, who admonished the Jews and made them to act cunningly towards [Page 440] the Apostles, until at length they meditated their slaughter. Now the kinsfolk of Paul called his name "Saul", which is a Hebrew<sup>1</sup> name, and the interpretation of which is "given"<sup>2</sup>, that is to say, it is well-known that God "gave" him; and Luke doth not cease to mention him by this name in the "Acts of the Apostles" until after he made blind the magician<sup>3</sup> who wished to turn the governor of Yâpûs<sup>4</sup> from the faith, but after this Luke calleth him "Paul". Now the name "Paul" is interpreted as meaning "guide to the faith". Before Saul's conversion to the Christian faith he was a priest of the

<sup>1</sup> I. e., אֲשָׁר.

<sup>2</sup> Our author is mistaken here, for the name "Saul" means "asked" i. e., from God.

<sup>3</sup> I. e., Elymas or Bar-jesus; see Acts of the Apostles, xiii. 6—11. See LIPSIVS, op. cit., vol. 11. part 2, p. 283.

<sup>4</sup> I. e., Paphos.

Law of Moses,<sup>1</sup> and he lived, according to the ordinances, a life of righteousness, in perfect blamelessness and beyond all reproof, and he kept the Law of his fathers. He was a zealous observer of the Law of Moses, and an adversary of the churches of God, | and an opponent of the  
 B. fol. 38b. col. 1. Name of Jesus in his early manhood, and he inflicted severe affliction upon the men who held the Christian faith. He used to go into the habitation[s] of the true believers, and drag out men and women alike and cast them into prison, and this he continued to do for a whole year after the beautiful summons of Christ had appeared unto him; and he made himself an adversary, and increased greatly his hostility thereunto, and he kept diligent watch upon them, and strove against the Christians with such might that at length weariness came upon him. And he saw the shedding of the blood of Stephen, who was one of the Seventy-[two disciples], and the chief of seven deacons, and he guarded the garments of those who stoned him, and he made himself a friend of those who wished to slay him.<sup>2</sup> He obtained letters of authority from the priests of the Jews of the city of Jerusalem to the [priests of the] synagogues of Damascus, that they might give him help, because he had found therein certain men and women who [followed in] the path of [Page 441] the Apostles, and that he might be able to bind them

<sup>1</sup> The following description of his personal appearance is quoted by LIPSIVS, (op. cit., vol. ii. part 1, p. 213):—ὁ Πάυλος ἔτι περιῶν τῇ ἡλικίᾳ κονδοειδής, φαλακρός, μισοπόλιος τὴν κάραν καὶ τὸ γένειον εὐρινος, ὑπόγλαυκος, σύνοφρυς, λευκόχρους, ἀνθηροπρόσωπος, εὐπύγων, ὑπογελῶτα, ἔχων τὸν χαρακτήρα, φρόνιμος, ἠθικός, εὐόμιλος, γλυκύς, ὑπὸ πνεύματος ἁγίου ἐνθουσιαζόμενος καὶ ἰώμενος.

<sup>2</sup> Acts of the Apostles vii. 58.

and take them unto the holy sanctuary (i. e. Jerusalem). Thus speaketh Luke the Evangelist, who describeth his apostolic strife, from the beginning of his believing and teaching unto the end thereof, in the "Acts of the | Apostles"; now he saith that afterwards, even up to the time of [his] martyrdom, his disposition was one which was tardy and delaying, and this statement is also found written in a certain book by Eusânas(?) . . .

B. fol. 38b.  
col. 2.

### CHAPTER III.

Luke the Evangelist saith:—And this Saul received power from the chief priests in Jerusalem, to persecute those who believed in Christ, from Jerusalem even unto the cities which were afar off, and he cast many of the saints into prison, and he bound them in chains, both men and women alike, and threw them into prison. And he went to the chief priests of Jerusalem and asked them for a letter of authority to the [men of the] city of Damascus and of the synagogues thereof, and for power to bind in chains any men or women whom he might find on the way and to bring them to Jerusalem. One day as he was journeying along the road about the time of noon, now he was nigh unto the city of Damascus, behold, there fell upon him suddenly a flash of lightning, and a light from heaven rose upon him; and he fell upon his face on the ground by reason of his exceedingly great fear. And he heard a voice from heaven which spake unto him in the Hebrew | tongue, saying, "Saul, Saul,

B. fol. 39a.  
col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> Acts of the Apostles ix. 2.

“why persecutest thou Me? It is ill for thee [Page 442]  
 “to kick and to smite thyself against the goad which is  
 “as sharp as a nail.” And Saul answered and said,  
 “Who art Thou, my Lord?” And our Lord said unto  
 him, “I am Jesus the Nazarene, Whom thou persecutest;  
 “but rise up, and stand upon thy feet, and go into the  
 “city, and it shall be told thee what it is meet for thee  
 “to do.” Now the men who were with Saul on the road  
 stood still and held their peace, but they heard only a  
 voice and saw nothing whatsoever. Then Jesus said unto  
 him, “I have appeared unto thee that I may choose thee  
 “to be a minister unto Me, and a witness of what thou  
 “hast seen of Me. Know, moreover, that I will appear  
 “unto thee, and will deliver thee from among the nations  
 “and peoples unto whom I shall send thee to open their  
 “eyes, and to turn them from the darkness into the light,  
 “and from the works of Satan unto the knowledge of  
 “God, so that they may find forgiveness of their sins, and  
 “a portion with the saints, if they believe in Me. And  
 “now, rise up, and go into the city, and there shalt thou

B. fol. 39a. “learn what it is meet for thee to | do.” Then Saul rose  
 col. 2. up from the ground, and although his eyes were open  
 he could not see, and the men [who were with him] held  
 him by his hands, and led him along, and brought him  
 into Damascus; and he remained there for three days  
 without eating, and without drinking, and without sight.  
 Now there was in the city of Damascus a certain disciple  
 among the Apostles whose name was Ananias, and he  
 was a God-fearing man according to that which is  
 [written] in the Law. And our Lord appeared, and said  
 unto him, “Ananias”, and Ananias said, “Here am I,

"Lord." And the Lord said unto him, "Rise up, and depart, and pass through the street which is called "Straight"<sup>1</sup>, now its name at this present is Market-place<sup>2</sup>, "and seek for a man of Tarsus, of the house of "Judah, whose name is Saul, [Page 443] who prayeth." And behold, whilst Saul was praying, there appeared unto him in a dream a man whose name was Ananias, who came to him and prayed over him, and he laid his hand upon him so that he might receive his sight. And Ananias answered and said, "O Lord, behold I have heard "concerning this man from many, and of all the evil "which he hath wrought on Thy saints in Jerusalem, and "having obtained | power from the chief priests he hath B. fol. 39b. "come hither also that he may bind in fetters all those col. 1. "who call upon Thy Name." Then our Lord said unto him, "Rise up, get thee out, and go unto him, for behold, "I have made this man to be a chosen vessel for Me "that he may go and bear My Name before the Gentiles, "and kings, and the children of Israel, and I will tell him "how great suffering shall come upon him for My Name's "sake." So Ananias departed unto him straightway, and he entered into the house and laid his hand upon Saul, and said unto him, "O Saul, my brother, our Lord Jesus "Christ, Who appeared unto thee on the road, hath sent "me unto thee that thine eyes may be opened, and that "thou mayest see as thou comest along, and that the "Holy Spirit may be fulfilled in thee." And straightway, at

<sup>1</sup> *Acts of the Apostles*, ix. 11. It is usually called Darb all-Mustakim, دَرْبُ الْمُسْتَقِيمِ.

<sup>2</sup> I. e., "Bazaar"; at the present time the "Bazaar of the Carpenters" occupies a portion of the Straight Street.

that very moment, a skin which was as fine as the web of a spider was torn asunder and fell from his eyes, and they were opened, and he saw forthwith. Then Ananias said unto Saul, "Behold, thou must know that the Lord "God of our fathers hath chosen thee, and that thou "mightest know His will appeared unto thee in the form "of a lightning flash, and made thee to hear the voice "of His mouth; and thou shalt be unto Him a witness "before all men concerning what thou hast seen and "heard. Rise up now, and be baptized, and wash away

B. fol. 39b. "thy | sins, and know His Name." Then straightway was

col. 2. Saul baptized, and he took food and ate, and grew in strength, and he dwelt in Damascus for a few days with the Apostles; and immediately [Page 444] he began to preach in the synagogues of the Jews, and he taught in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, saying, "This Christ "is the Son of God;" and all those who heard him marvelled and were astonished in their hearts. And they said concerning him, "Is not this the man who slew those "who believed on this Name in Jerusalem and here? And "did he not come hither for the purpose of putting them "in chains, and carrying them to the high priest?" Nevertheless Saul prevailed over and vanquished the Jews who dwelt in Damascus, and brought them [to the belief] that Jesus was the Christ. And after a few days the Jews took counsel together how they might kill him, and certain men told Saul what the Jews had planned, now they were watching the doors [of the house] by day and by night, and they kept a strict watch upon him also that they might kill him. Then his disciples took him by night and let him down in a basket from the top of the

fortress, [and he departed;] and when he had arrived in Jerusalem he prayed in | the sanctuary. Now whilst he B. fol. 40a. was praying sleep fell upon him, and our Lord appeared col. 1. unto him, and said, "Make haste, and get thee out from Jerusalem, for the people thereof will not receive testimony from thee concerning Me." And Saul said unto Him, "O my Lord, they know that I used to cast into prison and punish in the synagogues those who believed in Thee, and that when they shed the blood of Stephen, Thy martyr, I was standing there with a glad heart, and watching the clothes of those who had slain him." And our Lord said unto him, "Depart, for behold, I will send thee unto the nations which are afar off." Now whilst he was sitting in the sanctuary and preaching, the Jews who knew the Greek language were seeking for him and wishing to kill him; and when his [Page 445] disciples knew this, they took him down to Caesarea, and sent him to Tarsus. And when he had arrived at Jerusalem he terrified the Apostles, for they imagined that he would inflict punishments upon them, and they all were afraid of Saul when they saw him; for they knew him not, and they did not believe that he had joined himself unto the Apostles. Then Barnabas took him and carried him | to the Apostles,<sup>1</sup> and he told them B. fol. 40a. concerning him, and how our Lord had appeared unto him col. 2. and taught him, and how he had seen Him on the road to Damascus, and how He had spoken with him, and how Saul had taught in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ in Damascus. And whilst Saul was dwelling with

<sup>1</sup> Acts of the Apostles ix. 27.

the Apostles in Jerusalem, and was teaching openly in the Name of our Lord Jesus, the heathen began to contend against him, and they also wished to kill him. Now when his brethren knew [this], they brought him out by night, and took him to Caesarea, and sent him to Tarsus, where he dwelt and preached in the Name of Jesus Christ. And all the churches of Judaea, and Galilee, and Samaria, dwelt in peace, and were stablished; and they advanced in the fear of God, and increased in the doctrine of the Holy Spirit.

Now after these things Barnabas departed to seek after Saul, and when he had found him he took him and carried him with him to Antioch, where he continued to preach for a whole year; and he taught many, and they became Christians. Then Saul and Barnabas returned, and they went to the Apostles in Jerusalem, having completed their service; | and they took with them John who was surnamed Mark.<sup>1</sup> Now there were in the church in Antioch prophets, and elders, and Barnabas, and Simon who was surnamed Niger, and Lucius the Cyrenian, and Manasse,<sup>2</sup> the son of the nurse of Herod the king, and Saul [Page 446]; and whilst they were serving God and were praying, the Holy Spirit said unto the brethren, "Separate for Me, and choose out Saul and Barnabas for the work unto which I have called them." Then they fasted, and prayed, and laid their hands upon them, and sent them away to preach in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ in the synagogues of the Jews, and having

<sup>1</sup> Acts of the Apostles xii. 25.

<sup>2</sup> I. e., Manaen; see Acts of the Apostles xiii. 1.

been sent away by the Holy Spirit, they wandered round about in all the islands, and they journeyed unto Sêlê-wenkyâ (Seleucia), and they passed on to Cyprus, and came to Salaminia (Salamis); and they preached therein, and they declared the word of God in the Israelitish congregation. Now John and Mark the Evangelist<sup>1</sup> were with them, and were ministering unto them. And when they had gone round about among all the islands, and had travelled through them, they came to a | city the B. fol. 40b. col. 2. name of which is Yâfûs, that is to say, Paphos, where they found a certain Jew who was a magician and a false prophet; he was a servant of the governor, and his name was Baryâsâ', that is to say, Baryâsôs (i. e., Bar-Jesus),<sup>2</sup> and he was with the prefect Sergius.<sup>3</sup> And he said unto the governor of Paphos (i. e. Sergius), "There is here a "certain wise man whose name is Paul; send and call him." And he sent a messenger and called Saul and Barnabas, for he wished to hear from them the word of God, but the magician whose name is 'Almâs (Elymas), which is interpreted, "sorcerer"<sup>4</sup>, wished to keep back the prefect [from the faith]. And the Holy Spirit filled Saul, that is to say Paul, and he looked at him, and said unto him, "O thou who art filled with wickedness, and sin, and all "evil, thou child of Satan, thou enemy of all righteous-ness, who dost refuse to leave off corrupting the way "of God, remove thyself from being an enemy in the

<sup>1</sup> Probably John surnamed Mark.

<sup>2</sup> I. e., Elymas.

<sup>3</sup> I. e., Sergius Paulus.

<sup>4</sup> **ዘሥረይ** : should probably follow **ዘሰርጊዮህ** : see Acts of the Apostles xiii. 8.

"path of righteousness [Page 447] and integrity. And  
 "now I say unto thee, Behold, the hand of God shall  
 "come upon thee, and thou shalt become blind, and shalt  
 B. fol. 41a. "not see the sun until | the season of thine appointed time  
 col. 1. "hath come." Then straightway his eyesight clouded  
 over and became black, and he sought for some one to  
 lead him, and the prefect, that is to say, the governor  
 of Paphos, who had marvelled and been filled with astonishment, saw him, and believed in God.

## CHAPTER IV.

THEN PAUL AND BARNABAS PASSED ON FROM FÂKÛS (PAPHOS), WHICH IS OPPOSITE THE SEA, and they came to Pargên (Perga), which is in Pamphylia; and John left them and made his way to Jerusalem. And the Apostle Paul and Barnabas departed from Pargên (Perga) which is on the sea, and they came to Pargâ (Perga) a city of Kâmķûlyâ,<sup>1</sup> and they passed on from Pargâ (Perga) and came to Antioch, a city of Bêsîdyâ (Pisidia): and they entered into a church on the Sabbath day, and sat down. And after they had read the Law and the Prophets, the chief priests sent unto them, and said unto them, "Brethren, if there be among you any man who is able "to speak that which is good, let him tell it to the "people." Then Paul rose up, and preached in the church in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, and all the congregation hearkened unto his preaching, and rejoiced,

<sup>1</sup> I. e., Pamphylia. The Ethiopian translator here, as in many other places, read the Arabic letter ف (f or p) as ق (k).

| and they gave thanks for the word of God, and all those B. fol. 41a.  
 whose portion is everlasting life believed. And the word col. 2.  
 of God spread abroad in all countries, and reached even  
 unto the ends of the earth. Then certain Jews stirred  
 up the men of that place to make an attack upon Paul  
 and Barnabas, and they drove them out of their country;  
 so they shook off the dust from their sandals upon them,  
 and departed, and they passed on to the city [Page 448]  
 of Lûkânya (Lycaonia). And the Holy Spirit rested upon  
 the Apostles in full measure, and they rejoiced, and they  
 did in the city of Lûkânyâ (Lycaonia) even as they had  
 done before, and many men, both among the Jews and  
 the Greeks, believed; and they dwelt there a long time  
 teaching, and they spoke in the Name of our Lord, Who  
 made them to see the witnesses of His gracious word.  
 And God wrought signs and wonders by the hands of  
 the Apostles; now the people of the city were of two  
 minds about them, and one half of them inclined to the  
 Jews, and the other half to the Apostles. And the Jews  
 and the heathen fought against their messengers, and  
 heaped insult upon them, and stoned them with stones,  
 and when the Apostles saw them [doing thus] they fled  
 unto the city of | Lûkânyâ (Lycaonia), and Lestrân B. fol. 41b.  
 (Lystra), and Darbên (Derbe), and the borders thereof, col. 1.  
 and there they taught.

Now there was a certain man living in the city of  
 Lestrân (Lystra) whose feet had been lame from his  
 mother's womb,<sup>1</sup> and he had never walked at any time;  
 and he heard Saint Paul talking, and he thought that he

<sup>1</sup> Acts of the Apostles xiv. 8 ff.

would give him alms. And Saint Paul turned and looked at him, and he saw that he had within him living faith, and he said unto him with a loud voice, "In the Name "of our Lord Jesus Christ, rise up, and stand upright on "thy feet;" and straightway he rose up, and departed. And when the people saw what Saint Paul had done, they cried out in the language of their country, and said, "The gods in the form of men have come down [from "heaven] unto us." And whilst they were living there teaching, behold, certain Jews came from Antioch and Iconium, and persuaded the people to entreat them evilly, and they corrupted the hearts of the council to such a degree that they beat and stoned the blessed Paul, and dragged him along the ground, [Page 449] and cast him outside the city, and they believed that he was dead.

B. fol. 41b. Now when the evening had come, his disciples | went to  
col. 2. him, and he rose up, and came with them [into] the city. And on the morrow he departed and went forth with Barnabas to the city of Darbên (Derbe), and they preached therein, and many believed in their doctrine; and they returned to Leştrân (Lystra), and Lûkânâ,<sup>1</sup> and Antioch, and strengthened the souls of the disciples, and made them bold in the faith. And they appointed unto them priests in every church, and they prayed with fastings, and then committed them to the care of God in Whom they had believed. Then Paul and Barnabas returned to Antioch, and they entered into the church and related unto the believers what God had done by their hands, and how they had opened to the Gentiles the doors of the

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., Lycaonia; but read *Iconium*.

faith; and they dwelt with the disciples in Antioch for a long time.

Now there came unto the city of 'Atênâ (Attalia),<sup>1</sup> where Paul and Barnabas had their habitation, certain men of the Jews, who said unto the brethren, "Except "ye be circumcised ye shall not be saved";<sup>2</sup> and because of this thing there was contention between the brethren and the Apostle Paul and Barnabas. And the people came with the priests | of Jerusalem unto the Apostles [and asked them] concerning this opinion, and when they had come unto them they told them everything which God had done for them. Then certain men who were of the sect of the Pharisees and who had become converted, said, "Ye must be circumcised, and we "command you to observe the Law of Moses;" and the Apostles and the priests gathered themselves together so that they might examine into the matter, and there was much contention among them on account thereof. And Peter the master rose up and addressed them with many words, and James said, "I decree that "they [Page 450] shall not in any way afflict those who "have turned unto God among the heathen, but that He "shall be served by them [as they please], provided they "make themselves to be remote from sacrifices [offered] "unto idols, and from [things] strangled in [their] blood."<sup>3</sup> And they agreed concerning this, and they wrote a writing in which these words were set down. "Now it

B. fol. 42a.  
col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> I. e., Attaleia, a city built by Attalus II, Philadelphus, king of Pergamum.

<sup>2</sup> Acts of the Apostles xv. 1, 5.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid., vv. 20, 29.

“is the good pleasure of the Holy Spirit, and it is our  
 “good pleasure also, not to cast upon you any weight  
 B. fol. 42a. “which is greater than this: |—Ye must keep yourselves  
 col. 2. “remote from blood, and [from things] strangled, and from  
 “fornication, and from offering up sacrifices unto idols.  
 “From the observance of these things, however, ye may  
 “not escape, and if ye keep yourselves from the things  
 “[afore mentioned] ye shall do well. Those who hate  
 “you make not to be your companions; keep these things,  
 “and peace be unto you.” And they handed on the  
 writing which they had with them unto the believing  
 Jews, that is to say, to Baryâsôn, who is called Judas,<sup>1</sup>  
 and to Silas, and they sent them with Paul and Barnabas;  
 and they came to Antioch and assembled the synagogue  
 (*or* congregation), and delivered unto them the message,  
 and when they had read it they rejoiced in the doctrine  
 of Silas and Judas, for they were prophets.

And the Apostle Paul dwelt in Antioch, teaching and  
 preaching the word of God, and Silas also was anxious  
 to live with the Apostles Paul and Barnabas; so they  
 tarried in Antioch, and, together with many others, they  
 taught and preached the word of God. And after a few  
 days Paul said unto Barnabas, “Let us turn back and  
 B fol. 42b. “visit the brethren | who are in the [various] cities unto  
 col. 1. “which we have preached the word of God, so that we  
 “may know in what condition they are.” Now Barnabas  
 wished to take with him John, who is surnamed Mark,  
 but Paul was unwilling [Page 451] that he should do so,  
 for Mark had left them in Pamphylia, and had not come

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., Judas, surnamed Barsabas.

with them in the work; and Barnabas went and brought Mark with them, and anger sprang up between them to such a degree that each separated from the other. Then Barnabas took Mark with him and they went to Cyprus, and the Apostle Paul chose Silas, and he departed from Antioch and began to journey round about in all Syria and Cilicia, and he confirmed the churches even unto Dêrbên (Derbe) and Lestrân (Lystra).

Now there was there a certain disciple [called] Timothy, the son of a Jewish widow, and his father was a Greek, and the Apostle Paul wished him to come with him; and Paul took him and circumcised him because the Jews who were living in those parts well knew | that B. fol. 42b. col. 2. his father was a Greek. And they went round about through the cities and were giving orders unto the believers concerning the works which the Apostles and priests in Jerusalem had commanded to be done, and the churches were growing strong in the faith, and the numbers of the believers were added to daily. And Paul came unto 'Afrâkyâ (Phrygia), and the land of Galâtyâ (Galatia), and the coasts opposite Mêsendyâ (Mysia), and they went down to Têrô'dâ (Troas); and a few days later, in the city of Têrô'dâ (Troas), there appeared unto Saint Paul, in a vision of the night, a man of Macedonia who stood and made supplication unto him, and said, "Come over to us, "with Silas and Barnabas, and help us." Then we departed on the Sabbath, and with us was Luke the historian of this work, and we went to Fîlrôs,<sup>1</sup> wherein we took up our abode.

<sup>1</sup> "Loosing from Troas, we came with a straight course to Samothracia, and the next day to Neapolis; and from thence to Philippi." *Acts*, xvi. 12.

And having gone forth on the Sabbath outside the gates of the city by the river side, for there was the house of prayer situated, we sat down, [Page 452] and we began to speak unto the women who were there. Now there was among them a certain woman who sold  
 B. fol. 43a. linen, and she came from the city of | Ta'ṭirôn (Thyatira),  
 col. 1. and she feared God, for God had opened her ears, and she listened unto what Saint Paul said; now her name was Lydia. And when she had been baptized with all her people, she made supplication unto us, saying, "If ye "hold me to be a woman that believeth in God, come "ye into my house and dwell, O servants of God;" and she urged us greatly. And as we were going to prayer there met us a certain young woman who was under the power of a demon, and she brought to her owners much money, for she used to receive gifts, and she followed after Paul and Silas, crying out and saying, "These men "are the servants of God, the Most High, and they teach "the way of life." Now she acted in this wise for many days, and importuned Saint Paul; and he turned and said unto that spirit, "In the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ "I command thee, O evil devil, to go forth from this "woman;" and straightway the devil left her. And the  
 B. fol. 43a. owners of the woman, seeing that | no more moneys  
 col. 2. would be brought in to them by her, seized Paul and Silas, and, dragging them along the ground to the market place, brought them into the presence of the guards and magistrates, and said, "These men are making a commo- "tion in our city, and they are Jews, and they are teach- "ing us a religion which it is not seemly for us to practise, "seeing that we are Romans." Then the people and

the magistrates came together, and they began to beat them with staves, and they rent their garments in pieces, and when they had beaten them severely they cast them into prison and gave orders to the keeper of the gaol to keep them in strict custody; and the [Page 453] keeper of the gaol having been thus commanded, he shut them in the prison-house, and fettered their feet securely in the stocks. And at the time of midnight Paul and Silas prayed and glorified God, and those who were in the prison heard them, and their fetters were struck from off them. Then straightway the wall of the prison-house quaked with so mighty an earthquake that all the foundations thereof shook, and all the doors of the prison-house were opened immediately, and all the prisoners were set free. And when the keeper of the | gaol saw B. fol. 43b. col. 1. that all the doors were opened, he drew his sword and wished to stab himself, for he thought that all the prisoners had escaped. Then Saint Paul cried out and said unto him, "Do thyself no harm, for we are all here;" and he brought a lamp and went, trembling, and did homage unto Paul and Silas, and he brought them outside, and said unto them, "My masters, what must I do "to be saved?" And he said unto him, "Believe on our "Lord Jesus Christ, and be baptized, and thou and all "thy house shall live;" and he declared unto him, and all his house the word of God, and he took them straightway by night and washed their wounds, and he and all his people were baptized. Then straightway he took them up into his own house, and spread a table [for them], and he and all his house rejoiced and believed upon our Lord. And when the morning was come the

magistrates sent their guards, saying, "Release these men, "and let them go in peace;" and the keeper of the gaol told these words to Paul and Silas, saying, "The magi-  
 B. fol. 43b. "strates | have sent to release you, therefore depart ye  
 col. 2. "in peace."

## CHAPTER V.

[Page 454]. AND IMMEDIATELY THEY HAD GONE OUT OF THE PRISON-HOUSE THEY DEPARTED TO THESSALONICA,<sup>1</sup> AND the Apostle Paul entered into a church wherein there were Jews. And he spake unto them from out of the Scriptures for three Sabbaths, and some of them believed, and other people joined themselves unto them; and many men among the Greeks believed, and of noble women also not a few. Then did the Jews rise up against them, and having gone that night to the city of Ḥalb<sup>2</sup> many of the Jews and Greeks who lived in that city believed, both well-known men and women. Now when the Jews of Thessalonica knew that the Apostle Paul was declaring and preaching the word of God in the city of Ḥalb they came thereunto and stirred up the people against him.

Now<sup>3</sup> after these things Paul went out from among them, and he departed unto the city of Ḥalb (Aleppo), which is one of the cities of Syria, and he found there by the roadside a man whose name was Kēwārestēs. And

<sup>1</sup> *Acts*, xvii. 1.

<sup>2</sup> The city here referred to is clearly Beroea (*Acts* xvii. 10) in Macedonia, and our author seems to have confused it with the Beroea of Syria, i. e., Aleppo.

<sup>3</sup> Our author here interpolates a legend about St. Paul which is not found in the Acts of the Apostles.

Saint Paul said unto him, "Dost thou know | what god B. fol. 44a.  
 "the people of this city worship, or what they worship?" col. 1.  
 And Kēwārestēs answered and said unto him, "They  
 "worship the figure of a bird, a golden hawk." And  
 Saint Paul said unto him, "Then hath neither the Naza-  
 "rene nor any one of His disciples come into your city?"  
 And Kēwārestēs said, "None of them hath ever come  
 "hither." Then Saint Paul said unto him, "Tell me, O  
 "my brother, for I am one of the messengers (*or* servants)  
 "of Lûsyûs (Lucius) the governor, and I have come to  
 "bind in chains all the people I find and to carry them  
 "off to the city of Iconium to the chief priests, and the  
 "Sadducees, and the elders of the people, that they may  
 "admonish them." And Kēwārestēs answered and said  
 unto [Page 455] Saint Paul, "It is not meet for any man  
 "to enter into this city until he hath received permission  
 "from Manâsê (Manasseh), the son of Mardocheus, the  
 "prince of the city of Thessalonica, and behold, thou wilt  
 "find twelve men sitting and guarding the gates of the  
 "city of Aleppo.<sup>1</sup> And if | any stranger cometh, and B. fol. 44a.  
 "wisheth to enter into this city, they take him and carry col. 2.  
 "him to the temple and offer him up to the god of this  
 "city. But rise up, and depart unto the city of 'Atênâ  
 "(Attalia(?)), and dwell there for seven days, because after  
 "to-morrow morning they will close the gates of the city  
 "until seven days be fulfilled. After this [time] go thou,

<sup>1</sup> This seems to be the natural rendering of the Ethiopic ሐላብ :  
*Halab*, Arab. حَلَب (Yâkût, ii. p. 304), but the narrative makes it im-  
 possible for this famous city to be intended by the writer, especially  
 if we identify 'Atênâ with Attalia, though 'Atênâ may be another name  
 for Asia Minor.

“and obtain a writing of permission from Manasseh, the son of Mardocheus, and he will give thee permission to enter into this city; but do not enter into this city without the people knowing who thou art, lest they offer thee up as a sacrifice to the god thereof, for I observe that thou art a man of fine and noble stature.” Then Saint Paul said unto him, “Do thou for me an act of kindness and friendship, and give me one of the two garments which thou art wearing that I may put it on, and take me with thee into this city;” and he shewed him the writing [which he had], and said unto him, “I have received this writing from the prefect of one thousand [men], and [from] Ananias the high-priest, and from the governor of the synagogue.” And Kēwārestēs answered | and said unto him, “Come, for we may now go  
col. I. “without [any] hesitation, and if I can find any way I will bring thee into this city; but let us hasten therein before they close the gates of the city, for they will not open them again for us, because the evening hath come and it is well nigh dark.” So Saint Paul went with the man, and they hastened [to the city] before [Page 456] the guards closed the gates thereof, for as soon as they had closed the gates they departed to their own homes, and then they went back to the great iron gate nigh unto which the elders of the city and guards lived.

Meanwhile Saint Paul and Kēwārestēs travelled along their way until they came to the city. Now the people of that city were degraded heathen, and their error was great, and at that time they were gathered together in their temple, for the season of the festival had arrived. And when Saint Paul and Kēwārestēs had come [to the

city], they passed through the gates from the first to the third, and they arrived at the great iron gate, [wishing] to enter therein; now Saint Paul was dressed in the garment which belonged to Këwârestes, and [the guards] had lit candles and lanterns in the gate. And it came | to B. fol. 44b. pass that when 'Arestebên,<sup>1</sup> the captain of the guards, col. 2. saw Saint Paul entering in the city with Këwârestes, he laid hold of them, and said unto them, "For what purpose "have ye come into this city at this time? Would ye "hold in contempt the festival of the gods?" Then one of the soldiers of those who were standing [there] looked into the face of Saint Paul, and knew that he was not one of the inhabitants of the city, and he told the captain of the guard so that he might seize them both. And 'Arestôs answered and said unto Saint Paul, "Whence "hast thou come? And from what people art thou? And "what wouldst thou in this city? And whom knowest "thou here? Tell me the truth before thou diest a death "of suffering." Then Saint Paul answered and said unto him, "I am one of the servants who stand before Fahestôs, "(Festus), the prefect of Jerusalem, and we have heard "concerning this Nazarene, Who is called Christ, that He "hath chosen [Page 457] twelve men and hath sent them "out to preach [unto the people] in every place, and that "they believe that He is the Son | of God. And I, even B. fol. 45a. "I, have come from the Sadducees and from the high- col. 1. "priest Hannâ (Ananias), and I have received from him "authority to bind in chains any of His disciples whom "I can find, wheresoever I find them, and to carry them

<sup>1</sup> A corruption of some name like Artabanus, or Aristabanus.

"to the high-priest and to the princes of the people." Then 'Arestôs bound Saint Paul and Kêwârestes and delivered them over to a certain officer called Timothy, who was of the men of Thessalonica, so that he might guard them until he came, and he said unto him, "When the morning hath come I will write unto Fahestôs concerning them, and I will enquire into their matter. And if there be witnesses for them that he hath sent them, then I shall know that what they say is true, and I will release them immediately, and will treat them well; but if they have no witnesses then we will offer up Paul as a sacrifice to the god of this city, for this day is the day of the festival [in his honour]. And as for Kêwârestes, who shewed him the road to this city, I shall know what to do unto him [as a reward for] his insolence (*or* audacity)."

B. fol. 45a. Now the mother of Timothy was vexed with | a  
col. 2. deadly disease, and many people were gathered together unto her and were weeping; and straightway a young man came and told Timothy, saying, "Thy mother is dead." Then Timothy forthwith bound Saint Paul and Kêwârestes with iron fetters, and he shut them up in a house which was in his garden, and left them there and departed; and he found that his mother had yielded up her spirit, and he straightway rent his garments and cast dust upon his head and face. Now there were many people gathered together there, for his mother was the prophetess of the city. And behold, [Page 458] the angel of the Lord opened the gates of the prison-house wherein Saint Paul and Kêwârestes were bound, and immediately the chains fell off their hands, and the fetters

from their feet, and they melted away even as wax melteth before the face of the fire. And the angel of the Lord said unto Saint Paul, "Fear not, O Paul, for I will be with thee, and I will save and deliver thee in every | place, and many people in this city shall believeB. fol. 45b. in God through thee. But now, rise up and go to the col. 1. place where the mother of Timothy is, and lay thy face upon her face, and the glory of God shall appear in this city before all these people;" and the angel of the Lord departed from them. Then Saint Paul and Kēwārestēs rose up and went forth from the house wherein they had been fettered, and they departed to the place where the mother of Timothy was; now they had lit many lamps there. And Timothy saw Saints Paul and Kēwārestēs standing among the people, and he feared greatly. And he said unto Saint Paul, "Is not [the wickedness] which thou hast committed in times past sufficient for thee but that thou must dare to transgress further? And why have ye escaped from my house so that I must fall into punishment because of you? Can ye not see what great sorrow hath come upon me? Ye have made a tumult among the people, and ye have loosed your fetters so that ye were able to escape; but | when the morning hath come, and I have buried myB. fol. 45b. dead, I shall know how to perform for you that which col. 2. my heart desireth." Then Saint Paul answered and [Page 459] said unto him, "O Timothy, be patient for a little and thou shalt see the joy which shall come into thy house before all these people." And straightway Saint Paul drew nigh unto the dead woman and, opening the bandage which was over her face, laid his own upon

it, and said with a loud voice, "O our Lord Jesus Christ  
 "the Nazarene, the Son of the Living God, Who hast  
 "come into the world for the salvation of the living and  
 "the dead, give life unto the mother of Timothy, so that  
 "Thy glory, and the might of Thy holy Name may  
 "appear before all these people;" and when Saint Paul  
 had said these words, he turned towards her dead body,  
 and said unto it, "O Badrônâ, arise!" And straightway the  
 woman arose, and opened her eyes, and Saint Paul took  
 her by her hand, and lifted her up, and set her upon her  
 bed. And it came to pass that when the people saw  
 what had taken place, they all rose up, and cast them-  
 selves down in homage at the feet of Saint Paul, and  
 they began to salute him, | and they said, "God hath  
 "appeared in the form of a man, and hath come unto  
 "us." Now the time was midnight. Then Timothy took  
 Saint Paul and Kêwârestes and brought them into his  
 house, and he led them up into an upper chamber, and  
 washed them with clean water, and set a table before  
 them. And Timothy said unto Saint Paul, "Tell me, O  
 "my lord, who thou art, and whence thou comest, and  
 "which of the gods thou dost worship?" Then Saint  
 Paul answered and said unto him, "I am a disciple of  
 "the disciples of our Lord Jesus the Nazarene, and I  
 "worship God the Father, and His only Son Jesus Christ,  
 "and the Holy Spirit the Paraclete."

And when the morning was come 'Arestôs sent and  
 brought Saint Paul from [Page 460] the prison-house in  
 the house of Timothy, and Timothy went with the mes-  
 sengers; and 'Arestôs said unto him, "Where are the two  
 "men whom I gave thee?" Then Timothy answered and

said unto him, "They are in my house. This man whose  
 "name is Paul is a righteous man, | and he worshippeth B. fol. 46a.  
 "a God Who is righteous, and good, and merciful, and col. 2.  
 "is called Jesus the Nazarene." And straightway 'Arestôs  
 became exceedingly angry, and he sent Timothy to  
 prison. Now rumours went forth concerning Saint Paul,  
 and that he had raised Timothy's mother from the dead.  
 And when Saint Paul heard that 'Arestôs had cast Timo-  
 thy into prison he rose up to go forth, but the woman  
 who had been dead, the mother of Timothy, laid hold  
 upon him, and would not let him go out. And she said  
 unto him, "Sit thou here so that the people may not see  
 "thee and may not carry thee away and offer thee up  
 "as a sacrifice to the god of this city;" but Saint Paul  
 refused to do so, for he did not wish to do her pleasure,  
 and all the people were entreating him, saying, "Desire  
 "not [this thing], O our lord, and deliver not thyself over  
 "to death." Then the Holy Spirit said unto Saint Paul,  
 "Rise up, and go round about this city, for this is the  
 "day wherein the people shall believe in thee, and shall  
 "receive thy preaching, which is the hope of salvation, and  
 "of the life which is incorruptible and which endureth for  
 "ever." And straightway Saint | Paul rose up and went B. fol. 46b.  
 to the people, and said unto them, "Behold, here am I col. 1.  
 "whom ye seek. What would ye with Kêwârestes? What  
 "is his crime? And why have ye seized him?" And  
 'Arestôs said unto him, "Because he is thy companion,  
 "and he hath guided thee into this city; I must pass  
 "judgment upon him, for this day is the day of the  
 "festival of the god of this city;" and he commanded  
 [Page 46r] them to chastise Kêwârestes, and to inflict

punishment upon him. Then 'Arestôs sent messengers to call the priests of the temple, and he delivered Saint Paul unto them, saying, "Take ye this man who hath "come into this city, and offer him up as a sacrifice to "the gods, for they tell me that he is a disciple of "Jesus Christ, Whom Herod, the son of Archelaus, slew "in the days of Pontius Pilate;" and straightway the priest brought Saint Paul into the temple.

And Këwârestes answered and said unto 'Arestôs, "I beseech thee, O my lord, to send me also with this "man, for I, even I, would die by the same death with  
 B. fol. 46b. "him. For it was I who brought him into | this city, and  
 col. 2. "I would, moreover, give my body instead of his body, "and my soul instead of his soul." Then 'Arestôs said unto him, "I can have no words whatsoever with thee; "but I am innocent of thy blood, and behold, death and "life are placed before thine eyes." And Këwârestes said unto him, "Wilt thou pay no heed unto my wish "that I might give myself in the place of this man?" Then Këwârestes made haste and entered into the temple, and he found Saint Paul there, whither they had brought him so that they might offer him up as a sacrifice unto their god; and they had decorated all the city, and they sent a herald round about bidding all the people to come together into the temple. And the guards came to 'Arestôs and entreated him to release Timothy from his bonds, saying, "This day is the day of the festival of the "god of this city;" and he sent soldiers immediately, and gave order to them to release him. Then 'Arestôs rose up, and came with all the guards and all the people into the temple, and the people [Page 462] filled the

temple even to the doors, and their number amounted to eighteen thousand, without [reckoning] women and children. And Kēwārestēs drew nigh unto the priests, and said unto them, | “I, even I, am of the disciples of Jesus, B. fol. 47a. “and by the death whereby Paul dieth I also will die.” col. 1.

And it came to pass that, when Timothy saw Kēwārestēs accusing himself and condemning himself to death because of Saint Paul before the priests in the temple, he also approached the priests, and said unto them, “I also “am a follower of Jesus the Nazarene, of Whom Paul is “a disciple, and whatsoever befalleth Paul shall befall me “also.” Then was ’Arestōs wroth, and he straightway commanded them to bring fire, and pine wood, and fir wood, and pitch wood, and to build a great furnace in the temple beneath the throne of the statue of the god of the city, and to light a huge fire therein; and he also commanded them to bring out the figure of the golden hawk and to set it upon the throne opposite the fire, and they did even as he commanded them. And ’Arestōs answered and said unto the people, “Behold, death and “life are before all of you who are in this temple. Those “of you who wish for life, let them come and bow down “in worship before the god of this city, and those who “will not bow down shall be cast into this fire.”

| Then straightway Saint Paul stood up in the middle B. fol. 47a. of the temple, and having drawn nigh unto the fire he col. 2. cast himself into the furnace of fire, and he stood up as all the people were looking at him, and cried out with a loud voice, saying, “Unto you I cry, O Timothy and “Kēwārestēs, ye two lost sheep which I have come to “seek and to bring back into the field of the great flock,

“which is the flock of our Lord Jesus [Page 463] Christ, “Come ye into this fire, for ye shall be the salvation of “the people of this city, and through you their faith shall “come into being.” And straightway Timothy made haste, and separated himself from among the people, and he came and leaped into the fire, and stood up by the side of Saint Paul; and when Këwârestes saw [him do thus] he also went down into the fire, and the Holy Spirit came upon him immediately, and he seized the figure of the golden hawk and cast it into the fire. Then straightway Paul, and Këwârestes, and Timothy grasped each other by the hands, and they walked round about  
 B. fol. 47b. in the midst of the fire, | on this side and on that. And  
 col. 1. it came to pass that when the people saw what had taken place, they lifted up their hands towards heaven, and said, “There is no god in the heavens above, or in the “earth beneath, except God the Father, the Sustainer of “the universe, and His only Son, Jesus Christ in Whose “Name Paul hath preached, and the Holy Spirit.” And Saints Paul, and Timothy, and Këwârestes were standing in the midst of the fire, and their hands were spread out in the similitude of the sign of the cross, and at length the people of the city saw with their own eyes the similitude of the sign of the cross in the midst of the fire. Then were sorry all those who saw Paul and those standing with him in the midst of the fire, and they began to cry and to make supplication unto Saint Paul, saying, “We beseech thee, O Apostle of Christ, to come “forth from the midst of this fire, for we believe that no “god existeth except God the Father, and His only Son “Jesus Christ, and the Holy Spirit, Who sheweth His

"wonderful acts by means of His servants | who believe B. fol. 47b.  
 "in Him." And straightway [Page 464] Saints Paul, and col. 2.  
 Kēwârestes, and Timothy came forth from the fire with-  
 out any pain having touched them, neither was the smell  
 of fire on their apparel; nay, they were rejoicing even as  
 a man who hath drunk wine.

And after these things 'Arestôs drew nigh unto Saint  
 Paul, and bowed down at his feet, and saluted him, say-  
 ing, "Forgive me, O Apostle of God, and remember not  
 "against me all the evil which I have done against thy  
 "holiness." Then Saint Paul took his hand, and lifted  
 him up, and said unto him, "Ask God the Father to for-  
 "give thee thy sins, and the Son to put them away from  
 "thee, and the Holy Ghost to destroy thy evil error."  
 And immediately 'Arestôs and his soldiers made haste,  
 and brought out all his possessions, and he distributed  
 them among the poor, and the needy, and the orphans,  
 and those who were in want; and he, and Timothy, and  
 Kēwârestes, became disciples of Saint Paul. And after  
 these things the people said unto Saint Paul, "We beseech  
 "thee, O thou Apostle of our Lord Jesus Christ, | to tell B. fol. 48a.  
 "us where the figure of the golden hawk hath gone." col. 1.  
 And Saint Paul said unto them, "Behold, it is in the fire  
 "until this moment, for I have not sent it to abide in any  
 "other place whatsoever." Then they said unto him,  
 "We wish to know if it is to be found in the fire." And  
 Saint Paul said unto them, "Wait patiently for a little,  
 "and I will tell you everything which hath befallen it.  
 "And," he continued, "send messengers and command [the  
 "guards] to open the gates of the city, and let all the  
 "people go forth and be baptized in the river which is on

"the eastern side of the city, in the Name of the Father, "and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, for the remission "of [Page 465] their sins." Then straightway 'Arestôs, and Timothy, and Kêwârestes opened the gates of the city, and Saint Paul and all the people who were following him went forth, and he took them to the river, and baptized them in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit, for the forgiveness of their sins. And there was great rejoicing throughout the whole city because they had received the preaching [of Saint Paul] and the glory of God had risen upon them; and

B. fol. 48a,  
col. 2.

after this all the people went forth from | the river following Saint Paul. Then Saint Paul entered into the temple, and the seven priests who ministered unto the figure of the golden hawk fled and hid themselves from the sight of the people, for they did not wish to receive Christian baptism; and they went into the innermost recesses of the temple, and hid themselves in the corners of the building thereof. Now when all the people had come in, they sat down, and Saint Paul said unto them, "Where "are your priests? And why have they not come to be "baptized with Christian baptism?" Then they said unto him, "We do not know anything about them, or where "they are;" and a great search was made for the priests among the people, who commanded the soldiers, saying, "Go ye, and seek for them, and when ye have found "them bring them hither, so that we may cast them into "the fire which is burning in the temple;" and straightway the soldiers went forth, and they walked about all the city seeking for them. Then Saint Paul said unto them, "Do not let the people depart until I reveal to them the

"matter of the image of the golden hawk which ye were  
 "wont | to worship." Now the soldiers tarried in their B. fol. 48b.  
 search for the priests, and a great uproar arose in the col. 1.  
 city, and Saint Paul made a sign unto them with his  
 hand that they should hold their peace, [Page 466] and  
 sit down, and immediately the uproar among the people  
 subsided, and they held their peace, even as doth a man  
 who hath no companion [with whom to talk].

Then Saint Paul rose up, and stretching out his  
 hands in the form of the Cross in the temple wherein the  
 fire was still burning, he prayed these words, and said,  
 "Bow down Thine ear to me, O Thou Who dost hearken  
 "unto the words of those who call upon Thee and who  
 "make supplication unto Thee, and hear the petition which  
 "I make unto Thee before all these people, so that they  
 "may believe in Thee, and may know that Thou art He  
 "Who hath sent me to preach in Thy Holy Name; for  
 "it is Thou Who dost reveal Thy wonders and dost  
 "make manifest to all the majesty of Thy mysteries, and  
 "dost show those who love [Thee] the greatness of Thy  
 "glory. And now, O Lord, teach all these Thy people  
 "the glory of Thy Godhead so that they may believe  
 "in Thee, and [may know] that Thou art the Son of  
 "God, and that Thy faith is the true one, and that they  
 "may find Thy gift | which never passeth away. And B. fol. 48b.  
 "shew Thou them the image of this golden hawk in the col. 2.  
 "similitude of a lion, for Thou art able to do all things,  
 "and there is nothing too difficult for Thee, O Thou Who  
 "didst bring the world [into being] out of nothingness,  
 "that all these people may know that Thou art God, and  
 "that there is no other god besides Thee." And it came

to pass that when Saint Paul had said these words, the image of the golden hawk came forth from the fire in the similitude of a lion, and stood in the midst of the temple, and when the people saw him they were all greatly moved, and they scattered themselves among their friends, and lifted up their voices, and glorified God, saying, "Great art Thou, O our Lord Jesus Christ, in the heavens and in the earth." Then Saint Paul rejoiced and was exceedingly glad in his heart by reason of the strength of their faith, and their right mind, and he made a sign unto them [Page 467] to hold their peace. And he said unto the lion which had come forth from out of the flame of fire, "Where are thy priests who serve thee?" And the lion answered and said unto him, "Bear with

B. fol. 49a. "me, O my lord, until | I make known unto thee where  
col. 1. "they are;" and turning his face towards the innermost

recesses of the temple, he went to where the priests were hidden, and he brought forth one of them whom he held in his mouth by the neck, and he dragged him along like a dead man, and cast him down in the midst of the temple. And he went back a second time, and brought out another of the priests from where they were hidden, and the priest was hanging from the lion's teeth like a young kid; and the lion did not leave one of them where they were hidden, but he brought out the seven priests, one after the other, and set them down in the middle of the temple. And the priests were exceedingly afraid, and, by reason of their exceedingly great fear, and through the severity of their fright, they became like unto dead men; and their bodies trembled at the terror of the lion, and they were greatly ashamed before the people.

And when the people saw this they lifted up their voices and glorified God, and they bowed down at the feet of the blessed Paul, and said, "Behold, God having put on flesh hath appeared unto us, and hath come unto us, so that He may heal and save those who have been smitten with the wounds of sin." And the people wished | to slay B. fol. 49a. col. 2. the priests, but Saint Paul answered and said unto them, "Inasmuch as the gracious gift of life hath come to this city in abundance, let no man die [therein] this day." Then the priests rose up and bowed down at the feet of Saint Paul, and they said unto him, "Have compassion upon us, O Apostle of our Lord Jesus Christ, and forgive us our sins, and as thou hast done unto all the people of this city even so do thou unto us, and give us the sign [Page 468] of Christ, the gift which passeth not away;" and Saint Paul sent Kewarestes with them to give them Christian baptism in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit, to Whom be praise for ever and ever. Amen. And the priests went back again to Saint Paul who was in the temple.

And after these things Saint Paul commanded the elders of the city to enlarge the temple, and to build him a church, and they did so, and then he taught them how to offer up the Offering, and how to participate in the Divine Mysteries; and he appointed | Kewarestes to be B. fol. 49b. col. 1. their priest, and he made Timothy and 'Arestôs to be their deacons, and he made 'Arestôs to be the steward of the church. And Saint Paul dwelt with them in the city for a space of three months, and he admonished them, and taught them the commandments of God, and the ordinances and the words of the Prophets, and he

delivered over unto them also the glad tidings of the Gospel of our Lord and Redeemer Jesus Christ. Then after these things Saint Paul wrought many miracles, and wonders, and great and mighty deeds before them, and he opened the eyes of the blind, and those who were bent crooked he made to stand upright, and the deaf heard, and the dumb spake, and he cast out devils, and cleansed the lepers, and healed all men of the various kinds of diseases with which they suffered; and there was great joy in that city. And after these things he departed from them, and when they were setting him on his way their hearts were exceedingly sorrowful, from the least of them even unto the greatest; and they said unto him, "O Apostle of our Lord Jesus Christ, tarry not long away

B. fol. 49b. "from us." So he departed | from them, and went to-  
col. 2. wards [Page 469] the desert, and the lion which came forth from the fire followed Saint Paul from the time he went out from the city of Aleppo to the desert. Then the lion which had been the idol of the people of the city said unto him, "I beseech thee, O Apostle of our Lord Jesus Christ, not to send me away into the punishment of Sheol, for thou thyself knowest that I have no body. I am afraid lest thou destroy me by the power which God hath given unto thee, and by the might whereby thou workest, for I am but dust, and foolish men took me from the earth and melted me into the image of [a golden] hawk, and made me their god, which I am not, and they burned incense before me, and I had no knowledge of anything whatsoever." And Saint Paul answered and said unto him, "Fear not, O lion, for inasmuch as thou hast served me thou shalt live in the desert

"until the day wherein I shall wish for thee;" so the lion took up his abode in the desert as Saint Paul had commanded him, and Saint Paul departed from that place and went to Accho.<sup>1</sup>

## CHAPTER VI.

| AND IT CAME TO PASS THAT AS HE WAS JOURNEY-<sup>B. fol. 50a.</sup>  
ING ALONG THE ROAD, OUR LORD JESUS CHRIST APPEAR-<sup>col. 1.</sup>  
ED UNTO HIM, and said unto him, "Peace be unto thee,  
"O My chosen one, Paul, thou shepherd of My Father's  
"sheep, who seekest those which are lost that thou  
"mayest bring them back into the great fold in the speech  
"of the true preacher, which is the kingdom of My  
"Father, and the holy and ancient church over which I  
"have set thee, thee and thy brethren, to be the head,  
"that thou mayest be strong to keep my testimony, and  
"mayest endure patiently many tribulations for My Name's  
"sake before nations and kings, [Page 470] and before  
"the children of Israel, and that thy blood may be poured  
"out many times upon the mountains, and in the streets,  
"and in the market-places. Now, a great strife is pre-  
"pared for thee in this city, and moreover, thou shalt  
"obtain great glory by reason of the sufferings which  
"thou shalt endure (*literally* receive) until thou hast deli-  
"vered the people from the destruction of the error of  
"Diabolos. Be strong, and fight boldly, and fear thou

<sup>1</sup> I. e., "Ακη or "Ακχω, the ܐܚܝܬ of Judges 1. 31, the عَکَّة of the Arabs, and the modern Acre; in the Acts of the Apostles (xxi. 7) and elsewhere it is called Ptolemais.

"not, for thy reward with My Father shall be great, and  
 "thy crown and the apparel wherein thou shalt be glorious-  
 B.fol. 50a. "ly arrayed shall be | spotless for ever. Verily I say unto  
 col. 2. "thee, O Paul, verily I say unto thee, that reports of thy  
 "name shall go forth into all the ends of the world. I  
 "swear unto thee, O My beloved one, by the Name of  
 "My Father, and by Mine own Name, and by the Name  
 "of the Holy Spirit, that for everyone who shall build a  
 "church in thy Name and shall call upon My name therein  
 "I will build in the kingdom of heaven a house not made  
 "with hands, and I will destroy the writing of his debt,  
 "and I will make him fit to be a child of My kingdom  
 "which is in the heavens. All the churches in the world  
 "which are called after thy name I will make Mine angels  
 "to wait upon and guard; and, of all those who shall visit  
 "thy churches, and shall offer up prayers therein, I will  
 "receive their prayers, and will give them their earnest  
 "desires; and when those who minister in thy church have  
 "completed their ministrations with diligent care, I will  
 "make fair their work in purity and in righteousness. I  
 "will bless them, and their children after them, even as  
 B.fol. 50b. "I blessed Abraham, and Isaac, and | Jacob, and I will  
 col. 1. "multiply them and make them to be many. And if any  
 "man shall make a gift to thy church, or shall endow it  
 "with either a Book of Gospels, [Page 471] or the Books  
 "of the Prophets, or the Books of the Apostles, or the  
 "Book of thy Contendings for reading therein, I will write  
 "his name in the book of life, and I will forgive him all  
 "his sins, and I will give him instead thereof thirtyfold,  
 "sixtyfold, and an hundredfold. And whosoever shall  
 "celebrate thy commemoration in the church, whether he

"shall beautify and adorn thy house, or he clothe the naked, or he feed the hungry, or he give drink to the thirsty, or he receive strangers, or he visit those who are sick and in prison, I will destroy the writing of his debt, and I will make him to become meet to receive a portion and an inheritance with thee in the kingdom of My Father which is in heaven." And having said these things unto him, our Lord ascended into the heavens as he was looking up after Him.

## CHAPTER VII.

THEN PAUL WITH GLADNESS AND REJOICING | JOUR-<sup>B. fol. 5ob.</sup>  
 NEYED on his way, and arrived in the city at the tenth<sup>col. 2.</sup>  
 hour of the day, and the Jews who were there knew him; and he went and tarried in [the house of] a certain man whose name was Sakentes,<sup>1</sup> who was one of the disciples. Then the Jews went to tell Felix,<sup>2</sup> the governor, but they found him not, for he was not there, because he had departed unto another country by reason of some matter which appertained to his office; and when they found not Felix they told Pilate and Hêrmôgânes, the princes of the city, concerning Saint Paul. Now all the people of the city had heard of the fame of him, and how he was following Jesus Christ, and how he had forsaken the religion of the Jews and did preach the Gospel of the kingdom [Page 472] of heaven. And because of this thing all the Jews who were in Arabia, and

<sup>1</sup> Probably the Secundus mentioned in Acts xx. 4.

<sup>2</sup> Acts xxiv. 3.

those who dwelt in the land of Judah, were exceedingly angry with him, and they wished to slay him. Now when it was eventide the elders of the city sent messengers to close the gates and to chain and bolt them, and they also set | guards to watch them, so that no man might be able to escape in secret. And when Saken̄tes heard [this], he went and told Saint Paul, saying, "The elders of the city wish to slay thee; take heed, and know what to do. And behold, they have set guards to watch the gates, and they are lying in wait to seize thee when thou art unaware." And Saint Paul answered and said, "May the help of my Lord Jesus Christ not be far from me! And let me be ready to deliver up my body and all my members that they may crucify them, and inflict punishment upon them, and hack one limb from another, and cast them forth into the fire, for the sake of the Name of Jesus Christ." Now it was midnight, and our Lord Jesus Christ appeared before Saint Paul, and said unto him, "Be strong, O My beloved one, and be of good courage, O My chosen one, for I will be with thee in all thy tribulation until thou dost overcome all those | who stand up against thee."

col. 2.

And when the morning was come, the elders sent messengers to seek for Saint Paul, and behold, a certain man came and said unto the elders, "I have seen the man in the house of Saken̄tes; he belongeth unto the men of Iconium who dwell in the street which is called "Straight'." Then straightway the elders gathered themselves together, and they called the apostles, and the centurion, and Judah, and told them to bring Saint Paul [to them], and they [Page 473] ran, and seized Saint Paul with

Sakentes, and they carried them before the judge; and there was great joy among the elders of the city and among the people of the Jews who were there, for they had been seeking [to take] Saint Paul diligently every day. And they bound Saint Paul with iron fetters, and kept watch upon him until they could come to the hall of judgment. Now the elders had before this time been seeking for Saint Paul daily, | for they imagined that he B. fol. 51b. was overthrowing their religion when he preached in the col. 1. Name of our Lord Jesus Christ. Then the elders commanded that a herald should go round about the city ordering all the people to gather themselves together into the hall of judgment; and they gathered themselves together, the small and the great, and male and female, in such numbers that their number was more than twelve thousand. And the elders came into the hall of judgment and commanded them to bring Saint Paul [there], and they said unto the people, "Say by what means ye would wish to slay Paul;" and some of them said, "Let us tie his hands and his feet, and cast him into the sea;" and others said, "Let us light a fire and cast him into it, and burn him alive;" and others said, "Let us bore holes in his feet, and fasten chains therein, and let us drag him round about through the streets of the city for seven days before we burn him with fire, and then let us cast him to the lions, so that they may devour his body." So the elders commanded them to bore holes in his feet, | and they put chains therein, and they brought two oxen, B. fol. 51b. and having fastened Saint Paul between them they col. 2. suspended him [by] his feet, [Page 474] and dragged him about through the streets of the city over the sharp

stones until his blood flowed like water. And when Sakentes saw Saint Paul tortured by such a cruel punishment, he answered and said unto the people, "How can ye do thus to the Apostle of Christ? Cease ye to do this wicked thing." Then the elders said, "Do thus even unto this man also, and unto every man whose heart shall feel compassion for him, and unto every man of this city who shall be sorry for him."

Then they took Sakentes and bound him with Saint Paul, and they drove the oxen out from the hall of judgment, and they dragged Saint Paul and Sakentes over sharp stones until their blood flowed like water, and until the flesh of their bodies was torn into shreds, and  
 B. fol. 52a. their bones appeared. | And the two disciples wept and  
 col. 1. made supplication unto God, saying, "Give us strength, O our Lord Jesus Christ! O Thou in Whom is strength which cannot be overcome, turn not away thy face from us. Cast us not away, and reject us not, and neglect not us, Thy servants, who love Thee, and remember, O God, that we have delivered our bodies unto death for the sake of Thy holy Name." Then straightway the two oxen which were dragging them along turned into stone, and they and the man who was driving them became dried up figures, just where they stood, in the midst of the city, and they abide there to this day. Now when the people saw this thing they said among themselves, "These men perform their work after the manner of the Twelve magicians who follow Jesus the Nazarene; but works of this kind shall avail them naught, and they shall not be able to deliver them, and we must punish them [Page 475] according to the evil of their works."

Then straightway the people set free Saint Paul and Saken̄tes from between the two stone oxen, and some of them | heaped insults upon their companions because of Saint Paul; but they were not able to make them afraid of the elders and magistrates of the city. And they took Saints Paul and Saken̄tes into the hall of judgment again, and the multitude stoned them with stones as they went; and the guards went and told the prefect what had taken place, and when he had heard it he was exceedingly angry, and he rose up and came into the hall of judgment. Now as he was passing by he saw the two oxen which had been turned into stone, with their driver. And as he was standing in the street, Satan filled every member of his body with anger, and he gnashed his teeth, and he began to pluck the hair out of his head, and he cast himself upon the ground, and he was greatly moved, and he hastened on his way until he came to the hall of judgment. And all the people cried out to move him to wrath, and to give him the power to slay Saint Paul; but he answered them with authority, and said unto them angrily, "Have patience for a little." Then | he said unto Saint Paul, "O magician and seducer of the mind, "I will neither eat, nor drink, and this hour shall not pass "before I have removed thy soul from thy body, for thou "hast, by thy sorcery, cast the evil eye upon me, and "thou hast turned these two oxen into stone in the presence of all these people, whom thou hast wrought upon "with the works of thy deceit, and thou dost wish some "of them to forsake my religion, and to follow Jesus the "Nazarene, and thou dost, moreover, wish to preach in "His Name. But after I have given the command and

B. fol. 52a.  
col. 2.

B. fol. 52b.  
col. 1.

"have made an end of the killing of thee, I will find  
 "means of bringing thy sorcery to naught, and of making  
 "[Page 476] the oxen to again become living bodies and  
 "perfect animals of the same form and appearance as  
 "they possessed in former times."

Then the governor commanded them to bring two  
 bulls of brass, and to place the two disciples in them.  
 And they brought bitumen, and pitch, and sulphur, and  
 fat, and having mixed them together they smeared there-  
 with the two brazen bulls both inside and outside, and  
 they put them into a furnace and burned fire on them  
 B. fol. 52b. for three | days and three nights, and all the Jews who  
 col. 2. were living there rejoiced thereat. And behold, our Lord  
 Jesus Christ the Nazarene came down from heaven, and  
 He entered into the furnace of fire, being followed by  
 Michael and Gabriel, and He made it to remove itself  
 from its place and to be in the middle of the hall of  
 judgment. Now the time was midnight, and flashings of  
 fire went forth from the furnace, and the brilliance of the  
 fiery flame thereof rose upwards to a great height, and  
 it went into all the city and passed through the houses  
 and habitations of the people who were foes to the  
 Apostles, and burned them up, and destroyed all their  
 possessions. And the officers and the elders of the city  
 rose up, together with the men who remained from the  
 burning, and they besought God, saying, "O Lord God  
 "of heaven, let not the blood of these men come upon  
 "us. Since they came [into the city by Thy command  
 "to preach Thy Holy Name, tell us, O Lord, what Thou  
 B. fol. 53a. "commandest | us to do, and we will do it." And it came  
 col. 1. to pass that when all the people had said these words,

and were crying out unto God, and weeping, behold, there came a voice from heaven like the voice of a trumpet, saying, "Gather yourselves together, O all ye people, in "[Page 477] the hall of judgment, for there it is meet "for you to know what ye shall do to deliver yourselves "from this fire. But if ye tarry until the sun riseth the "fire will not leave even one man of this city alive, nay, "it shall consume from the greatest of them even unto "the least, and every animal which is in this city."

Then straightway the lion which Saint Paul had left in the desert came quickly into the city and stood at the door of the hall of judgment, and the elders who had already come into the hall of judgment saw him standing in the fire; and they were afraid, and wished to take to flight, and when they turned round they saw behind them a great wall of fire surrounding the city. Then they were gathered | together and came to the hall of B. fol. 53a. judgment, but they were not able to enter therein through col. 2. [their] fear of the lion which was standing [there]; and moreover, they could not return to the city to hide themselves from the lion which was standing [there], for the wall of fire was closing them in on every side. And looking up into heaven they cried out with a loud voice, saying, "O God, have mercy upon us, and deliver us "from the mouth of this destroying lion, and save us from "his claws." Now whilst all the people were thus crying out in sorrow and in tears, the lion cried out with his voice to them, and said, "Let him that is among you "who would save himself, say, 'I believe in Thee, O my "Lord Jesus Christ, in Whose Name Saint Paul preacheth'." And it came to pass that when the people saw the lion

speaking like a man, they marvelled and cast themselves down in homage upon their faces at the door of the hall of judgment, and they wept tears, [Page 478] and cast dust upon their heads, [saying], "We believe in Thee, O our Lord

B. fol. 53b. "Jesus Christ the Nazarene, the Son | of the Living God,  
col. 1. "to Whom the holy Virgin MARY gave birth." And when the people had made the profession of faith in this wise, the lion came to the hall of judgment and walked round about before them, and the hall of judgment was filled with men from the door to the very end thereof. Then the lion stood at the door of the hall of judgment where the fiery furnace was, and he cried out with a loud voice, saying, "Rise up now, O Saints Paul and Sakençes, ye "servants of the Most High God Jesus Christ, that the "governors of the city and the people may know that ye "are the servants of our Lord Jesus Christ." Then straightway Saints Paul and Sakençes rose up and came forth from the burning fiery furnace which was in the hall of judgment, and not a hair of their heads was singed, and there was no smell of fire upon their clothes whatsoever. And immediately all the people cried out, saying, "There is no god who sustaineth the universe "except God, and His Son Jesus Christ the Nazarene, and "the Holy Spirit, Whom Paul the Apostle preacheth." |

B. fol. 53b. And the people of the city believed, from the least of  
col. 2. them even unto the greatest, and they went out from the city in a body, and took knives in their hands and cut down branches of palms, and branches of olive trees, and adorned the whole city. Then they went to Saint Paul, and he took them to the river and baptized them in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy

Spirit; and he built a church for them; and he delivered unto them the books of the church, and he set Sakençes over them, and taught [Page 479] them all the divine ordinances, and offered up the pure Offering, and guided them into the light and into the holy commandment, that is to say, the Gospel of Jesus Christ, to Whom, with His Good Father, and the Holy Spirit, be praise for ever and ever! Amen.

### CHAPTER VIII.

AND THE APOSTLE PAUL WENT FORTH FROM THE CITY OF ACCHO AND CAME TO THE CITY OF 'ATÊNÂ (ATHENS),<sup>1</sup> AND HE SENT an epistle unto Silas and Timothy, [telling] them to come to him. Now the Apostle was suffering greatly within himself, and his spirit was wroth within him, for he saw all Athens filled with idols; and he used | to converse daily with the Jews and with B. fol. 54a. the wise men in the places of assembly and in the market- col. 1. places, and they used to debate harshly with him. And there were some of the wise men who would have seized Paul, and some of them said of him, "What doth this "sower of words of a new doctrine of devils wish to "teach? For he saith that by the Name of Jesus the "dead shall live." Then they took him to the house of their god, and said unto him, "Tell us, we beseech thee "now, and let us have knowledge of this new doctrine "which thou speakest and teachest; we want to know of "a certainty what this matter is, for thou preachest unto

<sup>1</sup> Acts xvii. 15.

“us a new God Whom we know not. For all the people  
 “of the city of Athens and all those who sojourn here  
 “are sad, and they have nothing [else to do] except to  
 “produce some new thing, and they seek what they may  
 “say and declare.” Then Saint Paul preached unto them  
 Jesus Christ and His resurrection, and they took him and  
 came with him to the house of the judge. And Saint  
 Paul rose up [Page 480] and stood among them, and  
 said unto them, “I see that ye are given up inordinately  
 “to the worship of idols. And behold, as I was going |  
 B. fol. 54a. “round about [the city] I saw in the houses of your objects  
 col. 2. “of service an altar whereon was engraved, ‘The hidden  
 “‘god’.<sup>1</sup> Is this the God Whom ye worship, knowing  
 “Him not? Now He it is Whom I preach unto you, and  
 “He is the God Who created the world and all that  
 “therein is, He is the God of the heavens and the earth,  
 “and He dwelleth not in the house or shrine which hath  
 “been made by the hands [of man], and no man can help  
 “Him, and He wanteth nothing, for He is the giver of  
 “life unto all men, and from one man, Adam, He hath  
 “created all [the people of] the world, that they may  
 “dwell upon the face of the earth. And by His com-  
 “mandment He set aside and made a beautiful habitation  
 “for men so that they might seek God and make enquiry  
 “for Him, for He is not of any one of us, and as for  
 “Him, in Him we move and on Him we depend.”

<sup>1</sup> The Ethiopic አልመክኑ : *el-maknūna* = Arab. الْمَكْنُون i. e.,  
 “hidden secret”; the Syriac version of the Acts renders the Greek  
 Ἀγνώστῳ Θεῷ by ܐܠܗܐ ܠܡܥܘܢ : “of the hidden god”, but the Ethiopic  
 version has ለአገረ ሕዝብ : አምላክ : “to the God who is unknown.”

And having said these words Saint Paul the Apostle went forth from their midst, and after he had spoken unto them he said nothing more, and many men among them joined themselves unto him, | and believed; now <sup>B. fol. 54b. col. 1.</sup> with these were Dionysius,<sup>1</sup> one of the council<sup>2</sup> of 'Aryûs (Mars' [Hill]), and his wife, whose name was Dômârîs (Damaris), was with him. Then Saint Paul went out from Athens, and he came and entered into Corinth, where he found a certain Jew whose name was 'Aḳîlâ (Aquila), and whose city was Pantôn (Pontus). Now this Jew had recently arrived from Italy with Paraskîlâ (Priscilla) his wife, for Claudius had given orders to drive the Jews from Rome, and they came to Saint Paul, for each of the two men was of the same trade, and they dwelt together and worked together at making the coverings [Page 481] for tents. And the work of Saint Paul's hands was that of a tentmaker, and he worked at the making of tents with his hands; and he fasted by night and by day, and he ate only that which was necessary [to keep him alive].

And the Apostle Paul departed from Athens and came to Corinth, and he was speaking in the place of assembly (*or* synagogue) every Sabbath day. Then Silâs and Timothy came from Macedonia,<sup>3</sup> and they found Saint Paul the Apostle in sore straits by reason of the |

<sup>1</sup> Read 𐌲𐌹𐌸𐌹𐌳𐌹𐌸 : 𐌰𐌽𐌸𐌹𐌸𐌹𐌸 : 𐌹𐌸𐌸𐌹𐌸 : 𐌲𐌹𐌸 : = Διονύσιος ὁ Ἀρεοπαγίτης. (Acts xvii. 34).

<sup>2</sup> The famous Council of Areopagus (ἡ ἐν Ἀρείῳ πάγῳ βουλή) which assembled on Mars' Hill, and was one of the oldest courts in Athens.

<sup>3</sup> Acts xviii. 5.

B. fol. 54b. opposition and blasphemies of the Jews; and he cast away  
col. 2 his apparel and said unto them, "Henceforward I am  
"innocent, and your blood be upon your own heads from  
"this hour; I will go unto the Gentiles." And he went  
forth from his own habitation and entered into that of a  
certain man whose name was Titus;<sup>1</sup> now this man had  
become a disciple, and his house was nigh unto the  
church, and he believed on our Lord, and he and the  
people of his house were Christians, as were also many  
of the Corinthians.

Then our Lord spake unto Saint Paul in a vision,  
saying, "Fear not, O Paul, but believe; speak the word  
"and keep not silence, for I have been, and I will be,  
"with thee. No man shall be able to do any evil against  
"thee, and none shall be able to prevail over thee by  
"means of any evil or harmful thing, and through thee  
"many of the Gentiles shall turn unto Me." And Saint  
Paul dwelt there for a full year and six months, and he  
taught the people the word of God; and the Jews gathered  
themselves together [and went to complain of him] to the  
governor of Achaia,<sup>2</sup> but he would not hearken unto their  
B. fol. 55a. words, and he drove them away. Now when | he had  
col. 1. made an agreement with the brethren Saint Paul departed  
in a ship unto Sâma,<sup>3</sup> and with him were Farisâḫîlâ  
(Priscilla) and 'Apâlûs, and they arrived in Ephesus, where  
Saint Paul left them and departed by [Page 482] sea to

<sup>1</sup> I. e., Justus (Acts xviii. 7).

<sup>2</sup> I. e., Gallio, the deputy of Achaia.

<sup>3</sup> I. e., Shâma = Arab. الشَّامُ (Yâḫûṭ, vol. iii. p. 239), a name  
given to Damascus and the country about it, or Syria.

<sup>4</sup> I. e., Aquila (Acts xviii. 18).

Caesarea; and from that place he went on to Antioch, where he dwelt for some days. And again he set out and went round about through the borders of Phrygia, and Galatia, so that he might strengthen all the believers; and he went through the upper borders thereof, and returned to Ephesus. And he found [there] a few believers, and he began to ask them questions, and said unto them, "Have ye received the Holy Spirit since ye have believed?" And they answered and said unto him, "We have not so much as heard that the Holy Spirit existeth." Then he said unto them, "With what baptism, then, were ye baptized?" And they said unto him, "With the baptism of John." Then he said unto them, "John baptized with the baptism of repentance, and preached that men should believe in Him that was to come after him, that is, in Jesus Christ." Now when they heard these words they were baptized in the Name of our Lord Jesus | Christ, B. fol. 55a. and Saint Paul laid his hand upon them, and the Holy col. 2. Spirit descended upon them. And they began to speak, every man in the language of his own country, and they prophesied, and they all were in number twelve men.<sup>1</sup> And the Apostle Paul entered into the Church, and he sat down there talking and teaching openly for three months, and he debated with them, and he led men into the faith, and made them to believe through the work of the kingdom of God, although there were some who denied his doctrine and who persisted in condemning it. And again Saint Paul went down into the school of a certain man whose name was Terdânûs (Tyrannus), and

<sup>1</sup> Acts xix. 7.

he dwelt with him for a space of two years, until all the Jews and Gentiles who lived in Asia had heard of the word of God. And God wrought great and mighty deeds by the hand of the holy Apostle Paul, and many wonders [Page 483] took place through him, and the people took the garments which were on his body, and his cloaks, and the cloth which was about his head, and they cut off pieces from the ends thereof and laid them upon the sick and they recovered, and they drove | out devils, and the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ was magnified. And after these things Saint Paul dwelt in Asia for a long time.

B. fol. 53b.  
col. 1.

#### CHAPTER IX.

AND IT CAME TO PASS IN THOSE DAYS THAT GREAT TRIBULATION [CAME] UPON THOSE WHO KEPT THE LAW OF GOD. Now there was there a certain silversmith whose name was Demetrius,<sup>1</sup> and he made images of Artemis (Diana) in silver. And the people of the city had built a temple wherein they had set up an image of Artemis, and thither they brought all the sick folk who were in the city, and they laid them in the temple where they were healed by Artemis. Now when Saint Paul had come into the temple with a certain man whose name was 'Atrōfimās (Trophimus), he saw many people lying there, and he said unto Trophimus, "What is the matter with these folk who are lying inside the temple?" And Trophimus said unto him, "These are the sick folk whom, having fallen sick in this city, the people bring hither that they may be healed of their sicknesses by Artemis;"

---

<sup>1</sup> Acts xix. 24.

and they went forth from the temple together. Then Saint | Paul went to the keepers of the gates, and said B. fol. 55b. unto them, "I wish to live with you for three days until col. 2. "I find certain men in search of whom I have come "hither, and when I find them I will take them [Page 484] with me to Jerusalem to the chief priests that they "may shut them up in prison." Then the keepers of the gates said unto him, "Trouble not thyself, for we will "shut up in prison everyone we find, and we will send "them to the chief priests that they may cast them into "prison;" and straightway Saint Paul rose up and came into the city. And the keepers said among themselves, "Verily this man is from the temple (*or* synagogue) of "Dêrsôn; let us now receive him, and treat him well, be- "fore he goeth into his city, so that when we ourselves "go to Jerusalem he may treat us well in return for what "we have done for him." Then Saint Paul dwelt seven days in the city before he found a means whereby he could preach openly in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ. Now the people of that city were without any faith | whatsoever. And Saint Paul made himself like B. fol. 56a. unto them, and he feigned to be of their opinion, that he col. 1. might be thought to be at one with them in their counsel. Now he abode in the house of 'Atrôfimôs (Trophimus), and the guards of the city and the keepers of the gates did for him many acts of kindness. And it came to pass that when the seven days were ended, Saint Paul was sitting in the city of Ephesus and meditating within himself, saying, "What shall I do to find a way whereby I "may preach in this great city in the Name of our Lord "Jesus Christ?" Now Saint Paul knew by the Holy Spirit

that he should receive much suffering in that city, and he said within himself, "There are no other means left "for me whereby I may convert these people except by "making myself to be like unto one of the sick folk of "this city. Shall not I first of all become a sick man "that I may save those [Page 485] who are sick? And "afterwards, that which God wisheth me to do I will do."

And in that same night wherein Saint Paul had been

B. fol. 56a. preaching in the house of Trophimus, | he woke up at  
col. 2. midnight, and cried out with a loud voice, like a man  
upon whom some great tribulation had come; and Tro-  
phimus rose up, and said unto him, "What hath happened  
"unto thee?" And he said unto him, "My head is very  
"sick, and all my members, and my body also." Then  
Trophimus said unto him, "Fear not, O my brother, for  
"I will heal thee in the morning. When the day hath  
"come I will take thee into the temple of the great queen  
"Artemis, and she shall heal thee of all thy sickness, and  
"shall remove the suffering which hath come upon thee;"  
and Saint Paul continued to groan and to cry out until  
the morning. And when the morning had come Tro-  
phimus rose up, and taking with him men carried Saint  
Paul, and placed him in the temple, and made him to lie  
with the sick folk. Then Trophimus departed to the  
watchmen [of the temple], and spake unto them, saying,  
"Take heed unto this wise man and teacher, for during the  
"past night he well nigh died of his sickness. And behold,  
I have brought him and placed him in the temple." Then  
the watchmen rose up and came to comfort Saint Paul  
B. fol. 56b. and to visit him. | And Trophimus continued to minister  
col. 1. unto him, and he made [his servants] to take out unto

him some of his own possessions for his service, besides those which the nobles of the city expended upon him. And it came to pass that three days after Saint Paul had been laid out among the sick folk he said unto them, "How many days have ye lain here?" And one of them said unto him, "I have been lying here for three years and seven months;" and another said unto him, "It is three years [Page 486] since I was laid out here, and I have not had one day's relief [during] the whole time; nay, my disease hath increased, and my weakness is greater." Then Saint Paul said unto them, "As for me, it is three days since I lay down here, and I have found no relief whatsoever. Can it be that this god whom we worship is one who knoweth not him that payeth him honour? Or is it because he is deaf and cannot hear that he doth not help him that calleth upon him in his tribulation? If it be not thus we ought to have obtained relief from this sickness. But as for me, I shall depart unto the city wherein they worship a God | Whose Name B. fol. 56b. col. 2. is Jesus, and if ye were to call upon Him He would hearken unto you immediately, and would heal you of all your diseases, and would deliver you out of all the tribulation and affliction which have come upon you. For He illumineth the eyes of the blind, and He healeth the lame and maketh them to walk, and He maketh the deaf to hear, and the dumb to speak, and He cleanseth the lepers, and He casteth out devils, and He raiseth the dead by His word, and He healeth every sickness whatsoever. But, what is greater than all these things, He raised up a dead man from out of the grave after [he had been dead] for four days, and gave him life.

"And, moreover, He blessed five loaves of bread and satisfied five thousand men therewith, besides women and children, and He filled twelve baskets with the broken fragments of what was left of them."

Then all those who were in the temple marvelled at his words, and they said unto him, "Behold, thou hast been lying in this place for three days; hadst thou called upon the name of this Nazarene thou wouldst have been healed of thy sickness. Now we also, all of us, believe |  
 B.fol. 57a. "in Him, and we know that He is the God Who can  
 col. 1. "do everything, [Page 487] and we lift up our voices, saying, One is the God Who revealeth Himself unto those who believe in Him." And Saint Paul answered and said, "I beseech Thee, O God, my Lord Jesus Christ, and I believe in Thee, and that Thou art the Son of the Living God, Who wast born of the holy Virgin Mary." And when he had said these words straightway he cast aside the garment wherewith he was clothed, and he rose up from his couch quickly, and cried out with a loud voice, saying, "Behold, I am healed, and my pain hath departed;" and he began to walk about in the courtyard of the temple, and in all the ways thereof, and he preached to all those who were sick of divers kinds of diseases, saying, "I cried upon the Name of Jesus the Nazarene, and I have been healed of all my disease, and every one who calleth upon the Name of this Nazarene shall, like myself, be healed of all his disease, and he shall rise up sound and whole, and without wound or pain, even as He hath raised me up." Then straightway  
 B.fol. 57a all those who were in the | temple marvelled, and they  
 col. 2. lifted up their voices, saying, "We believe in Jesus the

Nazarene, the Son of the Living God, Who was born of "the pure Virgin MARY." And whilst all the sick folk were saying these words, God sent Michael the Archangel from heaven, and he came into the temple and healed all the sick, and the great idol which was in the temple fell down upon its face. Then all the sick folk who were lying in the temple rose up, and they lifted up their voices, and glorified God, saying, "There is no god save Thee, O Father, Sustainer of all things, and Thine only Son our Lord [Page 488] Jesus Christ, and the Holy Spirit, Thrice holy." And after this Saint Paul said unto all those who had been made whole, "Rise up, and let us go forth into the streets of the city, and let us preach in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, this [God] Who hath healed us from all sickness and disease." So Saint Paul went forth from the temple with all the sick who had obtained the grace of healing following after him, | and they all cried out in the streets, saying, "There is no B. fol. 57b.  
"god except God the Father, and His only Son, Jesus col. 1.  
"Christ, and His Holy Spirit; and blessed be His Apostle, "by whose hand we have found the gift of salvation and "healing, and have recovered from our pain and sickness."

Now when Demetrius,<sup>1</sup> the smith of the idol Artemis, [which was made] of silver in ancient days, saw that it had fallen on its face, he made haste and went to the elders of the city, and told them, saying, "Come and see "this man who is called Saul, who is of the men of Tarsus in "Cilicia, and who liveth in the house of Trophimus. Behold, "it is [only] three days since he dwelt in the temple, but

---

<sup>1</sup> Acts xix. 24

"this night he rose up, and made Artemis, who is great  
 "among the gods, to fall down upon her face. And be-  
 "hold, he is going round about in the city and preaching  
 "in the Name of this Nazarene Who is called Jesus, con-  
 "cerning Whom he saith, He is the son of God." And  
 when the elders of the city heard these words they were  
 exceedingly angry, and having risen up they went quickly  
 B. fol. 57b. into the temple, following Demetrius, | who was going  
 col. 2. before them and shewing them the way. Now Demetrius  
 was a priest of the gods. And when they saw that she  
 had fallen upon her face on the earth, [Page 489] they  
 commanded the soldiers to go and seize Saint Paul where-  
 soever he might be, and to bring him to the hall of judg-  
 ment. Then straightway the soldiers went and searched  
 for him, and they found him in the street of the city,  
 having gathered together much people unto him, and he  
 was preaching unto them in the Name of Jesus Christ;  
 and some of them believed because of the sick folk who  
 were healed, and some of them did not believe, but were  
 disputing concerning the Law of Moses. Then the soldiers  
 seized Saint Paul and placed him in the hall of judgment,  
 and they scourged him severely until the blood ran from  
 him like water; and there was a great tumult in the city  
 because of him, and at length the people began to stone  
 each other. And many men among their nobles and  
 elders believed on our Lord Jesus Christ, but the Jews  
 who were stirring up the elders were more in number  
 than those who believed. Then the governor said unto  
 B. fol. 58a. Trophimus, "O thou destroyer, and enemy, | why didst  
 col. 1. "thou bring this deceiver and worker of iniquity into this  
 "city so that by craft of word and speech he might

"destroy us by his sorcery, and draw us into the doctrine  
"of the Nazarene, the great goddess Artemis being [our]  
"queen? We will slay thee with him, and we will mingle  
"thy death with his." And the governor commanded the  
soldiers to let the lions loose, and straightway there went  
forth a lioness which was with young, and she was  
roaring loudly, and her they sent against Saint Paul.  
Now as soon as the lioness had gone out she at once  
saw with her eyes our Lord Jesus Christ standing between  
the two of them, and the Lord opened her mouth and,  
standing among the men, she lifted up her voice, [Page  
490] saying, "Woe be unto you, O ye judges of this city,  
"who are like unto those who make themselves to be  
"remote from the salvation of their own souls, for ye  
"have delivered over unto death these two men who are  
"not worthy of death;" and having said these words the  
lioness began to lick and to kiss their feet; and then she  
went back into her own place. | Then the people who B. fol. 58a.  
were standing there cried out with a loud voice, saying, col. 2.  
"There is no god except the God of Saint Paul;" and  
many of the people believed in that hour. Now they  
wanted to stone the soldiers with stones, but because of  
fear of what would be done to them later they restrained  
themselves. And the judges commanded them to send  
against Paul and Trophimus another savage lion which  
was living in the days of Alexander, and was accustomed  
to rend men; and the prefect, and all his soldiers, and  
his companions, and all the men of the city, both those  
who believed and those who did not believe, were sitting  
there; and Demetrius the smith, who made image[s] of  
Artemis, was with all the accursed priesthood. Now when

the lion went out from his lair all the people of the city stood upon the platform of the temple because of [their] fear of the lion, and they were looking on from above the lion, which rushed out in great fury roaring as he went, and the sound of his roars made the hearts of men to quake. And the people said among themselves, "If this man teacheth the way of God, He will deliver him

B. fol. 58b. "from the mouth of this savage and ravening lion, and  
col. 1. "we also can believe in his God, in Whose Name he "preacheth, and we need not return to the worship and "adoration of the image of Artemis." Now Saint Paul and Trophimus were bound in the hall of judgment, and all the people were watching them, [Page 491] and they hushed their voices (*or* words), and wished to see their end.

And it came to pass that when the lion went forth he began to go round the hall of judgment, and Saint Paul answered and said unto them, "Unto you I speak, "and I would make known unto the company of the "judges of this city, and unto all the Jews who live here "and who serve gods of gold, and silver, and wood, and "stone, that I preach unto you the way of life and salvation. And behold, I am bound in this hall of judgment, and this lion shall stand before me until God "willeth and commandeth him to fulfil his work; may "God's will, for which we all wait and hope, be done. |

B. fol. 58b. "Let now the priests of your goddess come, and let us  
col. 2. "stand up together in this hall of judgment, and let the "priests of your Artemis make supplication and multiply "their prayers unto her, [and we shall see] if she be able "to deliver them, and shall know if her power can be "made manifest. And let us beseech our Lord Jesus the

"Nazarene, both I and Trophimus, and if He deliver us from  
 "the mouth of this ravening lion which roareth, we will  
 "worship Him and believe that He is a God Who is able  
 "to deliver those who put their trust in Him." And these  
 words were good in the sight of the men of the city and  
 of all the governors, and they all declared that this thing  
 should be [done]. Then the magistrates and judges com-  
 manded that Saints Paul and Trophimus should be released  
 from their bonds, and the prefect said unto Saint Paul,  
 "First of all thou shalt make supplication unto thy God,  
 "so that we may know and be certain of His power,  
 "before these people who are [Page 492] gathered to-  
 "gether in the hall of | judgment, and we will straightway B. fol. 59a.  
 "judge according to the right, even as it should be." col. 1.

Now the people were standing there quiet and were holding  
 their peace, because they wished to hear and to see, for  
 the hour had come and the time had drawn nigh wherein  
 God, our Lord Jesus Christ, should be glorified. Then  
 Saint Paul stood up in the middle of the hall of judg-  
 ment, and he stretched forth his hand[s] in the form of  
 the cross, and said, "I entreat Thee, O my Lord Jesus  
 "Christ the Nazarene, the Son of the Living God, to open  
 "the hearts of all these people that they may know Thy  
 "divinity, O God, Who didst come from the right hand  
 "of Thy Father, and didst shew forth Thy great humility  
 "and patient endurance by Thine advent into the world  
 "in the flesh, and didst accept pain and death upon the  
 "wood of the Cross, so that Thou mightest deliver the  
 "beings whom Thou didst fashion and the work of Thy  
 "hands." And it came to pass that when Saint Paul had  
 said these words, behold, the lion came into the hall of

- B. fol. 59a. judgment to the place where | Saints Paul and Trophimus  
col. 2. were standing, and he did homage and bowed his head  
before them, and he lay down at the feet of Saint Paul  
like a gentle lamb. And when the magistrates and all  
the people of the city saw [this], they lifted up their  
voices, and cried out, saying, "One are God the Father,  
"the Sustainer of all things, and His beloved Son, Jesus  
"Christ our Lord, and the Holy Spirit; He it is Who hath  
"sent unto us His holy Apostle to preach unto us the  
"way of salvation." Then straightway the magistrates  
commanded Demetrius, the high-priest of Artemis, and  
the other accursed priests to come down into the hall of  
judgment, and the priests wept before Saint Paul, say-  
ing, [Page 493] "We beseech thee, O Apostle of our  
"Lord Jesus Christ, do not deliver us into the mouth of  
"this fierce, ravening, and destroying lion, that he may  
"destroy us, and make an end of us, and rend us limb  
"from limb. And behold, we believe and confess our  
B. fol. 59b. "Lord Jesus Christ | the Nazarene, the Son of God." And  
col. 1. immediately Saint Paul pacified the hearts of the judges  
and of all the people, and when they saw the humility,  
and the breaking of heart of the priests, and their belief  
in God, and their true repentance, they would not allow  
the priests to be thrown to the destroying lion; and all  
the people of the city believed in our Lord Jesus the  
Nazarene, the salvation of the beings of heaven and of  
earth. And after these things there sprang up a fountain  
of water from the lair of the lion and it flowed into all  
parts of the temple, and straightway Saint Paul baptized  
all the people, from the least of them even unto the  
greatest, in that fountain of water, and he made them to

be strong in the faith of the Holy Trinity, Father, and Son, and Holy Ghost. Now there was great joy in all the city of Ephesus. Then Saint Paul built for them a church, and delivered unto them the Law of the Book of Moses, and the words of the preaching of the Holy Gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ. And he opened their hearts | to the knowledge of the Scriptures, and he taught<sup>B. fol. 59b. col. 2.</sup> them that Jesus Christ is the Son of the Living God, to Whom be glory and dominion for ever and ever. Amen. Then he appointed Trophimus to be [their] priest, and he taught him the divine mysteries, and the holy ordinances of the Church, and he offered up a pure Offering. This is to what he refers in his words which are written [Page 494] in his First Epistle to the men of Corinth, when he says that he was thrown to the lions at Ephesus.<sup>1</sup> Now there is no place where it was more hopeless for a man to be thrown to the lions than at Ephesus; but there the lions did not attack Saint Paul according to their wont, and the Holy Spirit Who was in him made the lions to appear in his sight like a man in the claws of a lion, and made him to appear in their sight like a lion before a man. Glory be then unto Him Who maketh His wonders manifest by His saints. And they made the lions to abate their evil nature wholly, and made them to submit and be subject unto them. Now when Saint Paul wished to go forth from the city of Ephesus, after all the | people had believed through him, he called all those who<sup>B. fol. 60a. col. 1.</sup> believed, and comforted them, and saluted them with salutations of farewell.

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Corinthians xv. 32.

And Saint Paul departed to Macedonia, and he arrived on the border of Dahles (Greece),<sup>1</sup> and he dwelt there for three months; and the Jews having taken counsel concerning him, he departed therefrom, wishing to travel through Macedonia. And those who were with him were many, Sosipater,<sup>2</sup> of the city of Beroea, Aristarchus and Saken̄tes (Secundus) from Thessalonica, Gallius<sup>3</sup> from Derbe, and Timotheus, and from Asia Tychicus and Trophimus; now those who were with him had gone back, and they waited for him in Troas. Now the Apostle Paul and Luke went forth from Philippi after they had passed a few days there for the eating of unleavened bread, and they departed by sea to Troas, and they dwelt there with them for seven days. And on the day of the Sabbath, which is the First Day of the week, as we were all gathered together and were blessing the table, Saint Paul spake the word of God unto the people, and on the

B. fol. 60a. second day of the week he | lengthened his discourse  
col. 2. until midnight; [Page 495] and there were many lamps there in the house wherein we were gathered together. And as he was sitting [there], a certain young man whose name was Eutychus,<sup>4</sup> who was in the window, slumbered and fell into a deep sleep, and as Saint Paul was speaking unto them great words, he tarried there, and by reason of his slumber the young man fell down from the third storey to the floor; and they took up his dead body. Then Saint Paul went down and fell upon him, and he

<sup>1</sup> ἦλθεν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα: Acts xx. 2.

<sup>2</sup> I. e., Sopater.

<sup>3</sup> I. e., Gaius, Γάιος.

<sup>4</sup> Acts xx. 9.

embraced him and lifted up his dead body to him, and said unto them, "Trouble not yourselves, for his soul is "in him;" and in that same hour his spirit returned unto him, and the young man rose up alive and well. And when all those who were there had seen this they glorified God, the Lord of Saint Paul, who straightway departed to go into Yabes. Then Luke, and those who left with him, departed by sea, and they met with the Apostle Paul in | 'Aysûs (Assos), and they carried him into the B. fol. 6ob. ship, and when he had come to Mîlâtû,<sup>1</sup> he sent mes- col. 1. sengers and made the elders of the church of Ephesus come to him. And he said unto them, "Ye know that "in times past when I came unto Asia, I dwelt with you "always, and I was serving God with exceedingly great "humility and with tears. And ye know of the counsels "which were taken concerning me by the Jews through "hatred, and that I hid nothing of the good things, and "that I made them known and revealed them unto you, "in the market-places and in the houses, and that I spake "unto Jews and Greeks alike, [giving] glory to the Father, "and [putting] confidence in our Lord Jesus Christ. But "henceforth I am constrained in the spirit, and am poured "out in [Page 496] the Sanctuary (i. e., Jerusalem), and I "know not what will come upon me therein. But the "Holy Spirit speaketh unto me everywhere, and telleth "me that there imprisonments and tribulations wait for "me; but my spirit counteth as naught whatsoever the "end | of my course may be, so that I may fulfil the B. fol. 6ob. "charge which I have received from my Lord Jesus Christ col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> I. e., Miletus; Acts xx. 15.

"to become a witness to the preaching of the grace of  
 "God. And I know now that ye will never again see  
 "my face, all of you among whom I have gone about  
 "and preached unto you concerning the kingdom; there-  
 "fore I declare unto you this day, the Sabbath, that I am  
 "innocent of the blood of your community, and as regards  
 "it I have not kept back from your teaching anything  
 "of the good pleasure of God. Take heed now unto your  
 "souls and unto every flock over which the Holy Spirit  
 "shall appoint you as overseers, that ye watch the Church  
 "of Christ which He hath gotten by His blood. For I  
 "know that after I have turned back there shall come  
 "ravening wolves which shall not spare the flock, and  
 "from among you also there shall rise up men, who shall  
 "speak perverse words that they may turn aside the  
 B. fol. 61a. "disciples, who will follow after them | for this thing. Be  
 col. 1. "ye watchful, and remember that for the past three years,  
 "by night and by day, I have not ceased [to pray] with  
 "tears for every man and for every woman among you.  
 "And I commit you unto the protection of God Almighty,  
 "and unto the word of His grace which is able to strengthen  
 "you, and to give you an inheritance with all the saints.  
 "Silver, or gold, or apparel, I do not desire from you, and  
 "ye know that for mine own needs and [Page 497] those  
 "who are with me I have toiled with mine own hands.  
 "And behold, I have made clear unto you everything, as  
 "was right, so that we may labour for and help those  
 "who are sick. And behold, remember the word of our  
 "Lord, Who said, 'Blessed is he who giveth more than  
 "he who receiveth.'" And when he had said these words  
 Saint Paul knelt down upon his knees, and prayed,

together with all those who were with him, and they embraced him, and there was a great weeping among them all, and they began to kiss him and to separate themselves from him.

Then he | departed with those who were with him, B. fol. 61a. col. 2.  
and at length<sup>1</sup> they arrived at Tîrôs (Tyre), where the crew unloaded the goods which were in the ship; and they found again the disciples who had told the Apostle Paul by the Holy Spirit that he should not depart and go up to Jerusalem. And they dwelt with him for seven days and then departed to Accho,<sup>2</sup> and they saluted the brethren who were therein, and they encamped with them for a day; on the morrow they departed and came to Caesarea, and they encamped in the house of Philip, one of the seven preachers, where there were seven<sup>3</sup> virgins who prophesied; and they dwelt with him for many days. Now a certain prophet whose name was Agabus came down from Judaea, and he came unto them and took the girdle of the Apostle, and he bound his own feet therewith, and spake thus, "Thus saith the Holy Spirit:—The "owner of this girdle shall the Jews bind in this wise in "the Sanctuary (Jerusalem). And they shall deliver him "unto the men of the Gentiles;" and when Luke, and the disciples who were with him, and all the | people of the B. fol. 61b. col. 1. country heard these words they besought the Apostle Paul not to depart to the Sanctuary (i. e., Jerusalem).

<sup>1</sup> Before arriving at Tyre he went to Coos, Rhodes, and Patara, where he transhipped and journeying past Cyprus sailed into Syria; see Acts xxi. 1—3.

<sup>2</sup> I. e., Ptolemais; Acts xxi. 7.

<sup>3</sup> In Acts (xxi. 9) the virgins are *four* in number.

Then the Apostle Paul said unto them, "Why do ye weep and inflict pain upon my heart? [Page 498] Am I not willing to be bound, and imprisoned, and scourged, and not that only, but also to die in the Sanctuary for the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ?" So they left him, saying, "God's will be [done]."

And Saint Paul came to the Sanctuary (Jerusalem),<sup>1</sup> and the brethren received him with rejoicings, and they came with him to James with whom there were priests. And the Apostle began to narrate unto them everything which God had done among the Gentiles by His minister, and when they had heard [it] they glorified God, and said unto the Apostle, "O our brother, how few are those who have believed by the side of the thousands of Jews, all of whom hate the Law except those. Behold, it is said by them that thou dost teach that they should not circumcise their children, and that they should not perform the precepts of the Law. And, behold, there are  
B. fol. 61b, "here with us two<sup>2</sup> men, who think | that they are pure.  
col. 2. "Take them, and purify thyself with them, and go forth and make them to go out, so that they may shave their heads; and when each one of them shall know what is said about thee he will [stand] idle, and thus thou shalt be in agreement with the Book of Moses,<sup>3</sup> and with those who keep it;" so the Apostle Paul did thus, and entered into the temple.

<sup>1</sup> Acts xxi. 15.

<sup>2</sup> In Acts (xxi. 23) *four* men.

<sup>3</sup> See Numbers vi. 13—21. The Jews in Jerusalem wished Paul to take the vow of the Nazarite to prove that he was still a Jew; the period required for its fulfilment was seven days.

And it came to pass that when the seventh day had come, and the Jews who had arrived from Asia saw him in the synagogue, all the people overpowered him, and laid hands upon him, and seized him; and all the people came together against him, and drew him outside the synagogue, and they said, "Ye men of Israel, help us. Behold, this is the man who worketh deceit, and who stirreth up men against the Book of Moses, and against this temple, [Page 499] and he teacheth every man in every place [to do likewise]; and a heathen man and a stranger hath he brought into the temple, and he hath defiled the sanctuary." Now they had seen Trophimus, of the city of Ephesus, in the city with them, and they imagined that the Apostle had brought him | into the temple. And as the people were wishing to kill him the prefect of the soldiers came, and seeing the tumult went to him; and when the people saw him they left off beating Saint Paul. Then the prefect commanded that they should bind him with two iron chains, and take him into the hall of judgment, for he wished to examine him. And when the Apostle had come to the steps, the judge was told of [his] deeds, and they made mention before him of what [had happened] before and after [his conversion] to the faith; and there were with him the chief priests and the people, and many accusations were made against him, according to the testimony concerning him [given in] the Acts of the Apostles.<sup>1</sup>

B. fol. 62a.  
col. 1.

And it came to pass that when the night had come our Lord appeared unto the Apostle Paul, saying, "Be

<sup>1</sup> Acts xxi. 29—40.

“strong, and of good courage, O Paul, for as thou art a  
 “witness for Me in the Sanctuary (i. e., Jerusalem) even  
 “so shalt thou be a witness for Me in Rome.” And when  
 the morning had come more than forty<sup>1</sup> men of the Jews  
 gathered themselves together and swore oaths and con-  
 spired among themselves, saying that they would neither  
 eat | nor drink until they had slain the Apostle. Then  
 they drew nigh unto the priests and elders and informed  
 them of this thing, and they asked them to beseech the  
 governor to have Saint Paul brought unto them, as they  
 wished to know of a certainty concerning his acts; and  
 they said unto them, “Let us kill him ourselves without  
 “his coming unto you.” Now the son of the Apostle  
 Paul’s sister heard this, and he informed his mother’s  
 brother thereof, [Page 500] and he sent him to the  
 governor and made known unto him concerning the matter  
 of these men. Then straightway he summoned the magi-  
 strates and the two judges, and he said unto them, “Take  
 “with you two hundred Romans, and seventy horsemen  
 “and eighty bowmen,<sup>2</sup> and get you gone to Caesarea, and  
 “take with you Paul to Philip the governor.”<sup>3</sup> And he  
 wrote a letter to him, and sent it by their hands, inform-  
 ing him of the history of the acts of Paul, and they took  
 him and came to the governor, and they brought the  
 Apostle into his presence; and the governor read the  
 letter, and began to ask him from what country he came. |  
 And after five days there went down the chief priest,<sup>4</sup>

B. fol. 62a.  
col. 2

B. fol. 62b.  
col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> Acts xxiii. 12 ff.

<sup>2</sup> In Acts (xxiii. 23) “Two hundred spearmen.”

<sup>3</sup> Read “Felix the governor.”

<sup>4</sup> I. e., Ananias.

and the priests, and the orator,<sup>1</sup> and they informed the governor concerning the acts of the Apostle; and he (i. e., Felix) made a sign unto him that he should speak, and Paul told him his story with them. Now when he had heard his speech the governor commanded that he should be taken care of and treated with respect, and that no man should keep him from his ministration. And it came to pass that when two years were ended, another governor<sup>2</sup> was appointed to succeed the former governor, who, as he wished to shew a mark of kindness to the Jews before the arrival of the new governor, left the Apostle bound in prison.

Now the new governor dwelt in Caesarea, and after three years<sup>3</sup> he went up to the Sanctuary (Jerusalem). And the nobles of the priests and the elders of the Jews told him concerning the acts of the Apostle, and they asked him to send for him and to have him made to stand before him; now they wished to go, each in his own way, to kill him there. Then the governor said unto them, "He is to be kept under guard in Caesarea, and I "will return thither;" and there were some of them | whoB. fol. 62b. wished to make him take them with him so that they col. 2. might relate to him [Page 50r] the offences of the Apostle Paul, and [advise him] what he should do. And when the governor had returned unto Caesarea, he had the Apostle called, and the Jews surrounded him, and they made him to hear that they were not able to make him safe; and the Apostle had to plead for his life. Then

<sup>1</sup> I. e., Tertullus.

<sup>2</sup> I. e., Porcius Festus; Acts xxiv. 27.

<sup>3</sup> Read "three days."

the governor said unto him, "Dost thou wish to go up  
"to the Sanctuary (Jerusalem) and be judged there?"<sup>1</sup>  
And the Apostle said, "If I have been found to be a  
"transgressor, death is meet for me, and I do not refuse  
"to die; but if there be none of these things [against me]  
"no man can give me [release] therefrom. I appeal unto  
"Caesar." And the governor said unto him, "Unto Caesar  
"thou shalt go." Now all these things happened after the  
Apostle Paul had gone out from the country of Asia (?),  
and had departed into many borders and preached  
therein in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, and in  
the cities of the Jews.

Then the Jews took him to Festus,<sup>2</sup> the governor,  
and Festus delivered him to Agrippa, and there was a  
great dispute between them. And after a few days  
B. fol. 63a. Agrippa the king went down with Berenice | to Caesarea  
col. 1. to salute the governor, and the governor told him the  
matter of the Apostle and the Jews; and the king said,  
"Behold, I would myself like to hear the speech of this  
"man." And straightway, on the morrow of that very day  
he had the Apostle Paul brought to the governor's house,  
where were the magistrates and the elders of the city,  
and the king said unto him, "Thou art permitted to speak  
"for thyself." Then the Apostle straightway stretched  
out his hand, and he began to speak concerning himself,  
and he called to mind the accusations which the Jews  
had made against him, and he spake unto him many  
words concerning which the Book of the Acts of the

---

<sup>1</sup> Acts xxv. 9.

<sup>2</sup> Acts xxv. 7, 22.

Apostles beareth witness; and the Apostle spake at great length. And the governor [Page 502] answered and cried out with a loud voice, saying, "Behold, thou art mad, O Paul; too much [study of] books taketh away the understanding." Then the Apostle said unto him, "I am not mad: nay, I speak the word of truth. For the king hath abundant knowledge concerning the things which have been done, and I know this, O king, even as thou knowest it thyself." And the king said unto him, "A very little more, and thou wouldst persuade me to become a Christian like unto thee." Then the Apostle said unto him, "I make supplication unto God, not for thee only, but for all the people who are listening unto me this day, that they may become even as I am, except these bonds." Then the king, and the governor, and Berenice, and those who were with them rose up, and they began to say, "This man hath done nothing worthy of death, or of imprisonment;" and the king said to the governor, "It would have been possible for this man to go [free], had it not been that he hath appealed to the protection of Caesar."<sup>1</sup>

B. fol. 63a.  
col. 2.

Then straightway the Apostle and the others who were in bonds with him were given over into the hand of the governor<sup>2</sup> of the soldiers of Sēbēstēyā (Caesarea, i. e., Caesarea Sebaste), and they went down into a ship<sup>3</sup> which was to be despatched to the coast of Asia. And on the morrow they came to Tyre,<sup>4</sup> and the governor

<sup>1</sup> Acts xxvii. 31, 32.

<sup>2</sup> I. e., Julius; Acts xxvii. 1.

<sup>3</sup> A ship of Adramyttium; Acts xxvii. 2.

<sup>4</sup> Read Sidon; Acts xxvii. 3.

of the soldiers did an act of kindness to the Apostle, and permitted him to go about among his friends as he needed; now that governor was the captain of a hundred (i. e., centurion), and his name was Julius, and he was to take the Apostle Paul to the country of Rome.<sup>1</sup>

B. fol. 63b. And from here also they departed and came | to the  
col. 1. city the name of which is Lâbâ,<sup>2</sup> and here they dwelt for a long time until the fast of the Jews had passed by. And the Apostle was saying, "Our journey shall be [accompanied] by much hurt and damage, not only of the "lading of the ship, but also [Page 503] of our lives;" but the governor (i. e., centurion) was more obedient to the mandates of the sailors and the master of the ship than to those which were spoken by the Apostle. Then after a little there came forth the storm wind and seized the ship and no man was able to make it to resist the wind,<sup>3</sup> and a mighty storm raised itself up against us for two days, and we cast our apparel (or goods) into the sea; and on the third day we cast adrift the tackling of the ship. Now it was the time of winter, and by day, for many days, the sun did not appear, and there was no moon, and the stars were not seen in the [heavens]; no man on the ship ate any food, and the hope of [saving] their lives was cut off.

And straightway the Apostle Paul stood up among them, and said unto them, "Had ye received my words "some days ago, behold, we should have been saved from

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., Italy.

<sup>2</sup> I. e., Lasea; Acts xxvii. 8.

<sup>3</sup> I. e., Euroclydon.

"this tribulation; but now, be not sorrowful, for not one  
 "soul of you shall be destroyed, | but only that which is B. fol. 63b.  
col. 2.  
 "in the ship. For in this night which is past the angel  
 "of God, Whose I am, and Whom I serve, appeared unto  
 "me, and said unto me, 'O Paul, thou must stand before  
 "'Caesar, and these who are travelling with thee, behold,  
 "'God hath given them unto thee.' Therefore be of good  
 "courage, for I believe by God that what I have spoken  
 "shall come to pass even as He said unto me." And  
 immediately their hearts were strengthened, and fear was  
 removed from them, and their hearts were set at rest.  
 Then after eleven days<sup>1</sup> they wandered about on the  
 sea, and the sailors wished to escape from the ship, and  
 the Apostle said unto the governor and the soldiers,  
 "Unless these sailors remain in the ship ye shall not be  
 "able to live;" and straightway [Page 504] the officer  
 cut the ropes of the boat, and let her go free. And  
 since the violence of the wind and storm had increased  
 upon them, and seeing the weariness and pain of their  
 hearts, | the Apostle began to ask them to take meat, B. fol. 64a.  
col. 1.  
 and to say unto them, "Behold, O my brethren, it is now  
 "the fourteenth day, since, through our fear, we have  
 "eaten any food whatsoever. Take some food, then, for  
 "the support of your lives, for not one hair of any one  
 "of your heads shall be destroyed." And when he had  
 said these words he took bread, and having given glory  
 unto God before them, he divided the bread, and they  
 ate, and they were all consoled and took meat. Now  
 the number of all those who were in the ship was two

<sup>1</sup> I. e., the fourteenth day since they started; Acts xxvii. 33.

hundred, threescore and seventeen souls. And when the day became light the sailors did not know what the land was unto which they had come, and they saw dry land at a distance, and they determined to bring the ship there if they were by any means able to do so. Then they cut the ropes of the anchors, but the sides of the ship were broken by the violence of the waves; and straightway the soldiers meditated slaying those who were in bonds, so that they might not escape,<sup>1</sup> but Julius B. fol. 64a, ius | the governor restrained them from this act, for he col. 2. wished to save the Apostle Paul.

And after these things they were told that the island was Mēlētyā (Melita, Malta),<sup>2</sup> and with great toil they journeyed on until they reached it. Then the barbarians, that is to say, the heathen who lived thereon, appeared unto them, and they performed for them acts of great kindness and charity, and they kindled a fire for them whereat they might warm themselves because of the rain, and frost, and snow which were upon them, and they allowed them to warm themselves. And the Apostle Saint Paul gathered together [Page 505] and brought a great heap of pieces of wood which had been cast away, and threw them on the fire, and there went forth a hooded snake, that is to say, a viper, from out of the fire and bit his hand. And it came to pass that when the heathen saw the viper hanging on his hand they began to say, "This man is a murderer, whom "although he hath escaped from the sea the justice of

<sup>1</sup> Acts xxvii. 42.

<sup>2</sup> Acts xxviii. 1.

"God will not allow to be saved and live;" but Saint Paul freed his hand from the viper, and cast it into the fire, and no harm came upon him, although the heathen thought that he would immediately have swelled up and died. Now when they had waited a long time, and saw the miracle and that no harm whatsoever had come upon him, they said straightway, "This man is a god," and they marvelled exceedingly. And the governor of that island received them into his house for three days joyfully, and he did for them many acts of great kindness and charity. Now at that time the father of the governor was sick of fever, and he had a disease in his bowels, and lay upon his bed. And Saint Paul came unto him, and laid his hand [upon him], and prayed for him, and healed him in the Name of God, and he also healed great numbers of men who were sick of divers diseases in that island, and Saint Paul and his companions found great favour in the sight of the people, who gave thanks unto them exceedingly, and paid them great honours, and when they departed from them gave them what was necessary.

B. fol. 64b.  
col. 1.

Then, after three<sup>1</sup> months they departed and travelled by sea in a ship and arrived in the country of Rome. And when the brethren heard of the coming of Saint Paul with his companions they went out to receive them; and when Saint Paul saw them [Page 506] his heart rejoiced and was exceedingly glad, and he offered up praise and thanksgiving unto God, and he took courage and went into Rome, and the centurion gave him leave

B. fol. 64b.  
col. 2.

<sup>1</sup> Acts xxviii. 11.

to dwell where he pleased with the soldier who was guarding him. Then after three days, the Apostle sent and called the elders of the Jews, and he addressed them and told them what had happened to him, saying, "I have come hither for the sake of the hope of Israel, being bound in this chain." And they appointed unto him a certain day, and they came unto him where he was dwelling quietly, and he discoursed unto them from the Law of Moses and the Prophets concerning our Lord Jesus Christ from morn until eve, and certain men among them hearkened unto him. And the Apostle hired a house with his own money, and dwelt therein in the city of Rome for two years; and he received strangers and shewed hospitality unto all those who came unto him, and he preached concerning the matter of the kingdom of God. | And he was teaching the work of our Lord Jesus Christ openly, without any restraint, and this he ceased not to do until they persecuted him in the days of the Emperor Nero; and there was great joy in the city of Rome because of his coming therein when they saw the miracles and wonders which God wrought by his hand. For he healed the sick, each one of his disease, and he cast out unclean spirits in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, and by the sign of the Holy Cross.

B. fol. 65a.  
col. 1.

And there was a certain young man whose name was Batrik,<sup>1</sup> who stood at the table of the Emperor, and gave him to drink, and he used to come by night to

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e., Patroclus; see LIPSIVS, *Apostelgeschichten*, vol. ii. part 1, p. 93.

the place where Paul was and hearken unto his teaching. Now when he was not able to come into his presence because of the multitude of the people who were in the room [Page 507], he would go to an upper place on the roof so that he might hearken unto his teaching; now once when he was there deep sleep overcame him, and he fell down from off this high place and died. And the rumour came unto the Emperor Nero that Baṭrīk was dead, and he sorrowed for him with a great sorrow, because he loved him dearly. | And it came to B. fol. 65a.  
pass that when Paul knew by the Holy Spirit what had col. 2.  
happened, he said unto the brethren and unto the people who dwelt round about him, "The Enemy Satan wisheth "to bring us into trial; go forth outside the door of the "house, and ye shall find the young man lying there "dead; lift him up, and bring him hither unto me." And they went forth and found the dead man even as he had said unto them, and they brought him unto Paul, the glorious helper. Now when the people saw that the dead man was Baṭrīk they were greatly moved, for they knew he was loved by the Emperor. Then Paul said unto them, "O brethren, fear ye not, and be not moved, "for in this hour shall your faith be made manifest. Rise "up now, and let us beseech our Lord Jesus Christ to "have compassion upon us, and to give life unto this dead "man so that we all may not die." And Paul bowed down and knelt with his face to the ground for the space of one hour, and he prayed without ceasing, and made entreaty unto God, and lifted up himself in abundant supplication; and straightway the man that was dead B. fol. 65b.  
rose up alive, and he had no pain in him, | and Saint col. 1.

Paul sent Batrîk unto the Emperor Nero. Now on the day wherein Nero heard of the death of Batrîk he was in the bath, and when he returned and went into the palace he found that Batrîk had made ready the table according to his wont. And before he could enter into the palace, all his officers went forth and told him the glad tidings [Page 508] that Batrîk was alive, and that he had made ready the table according to his wont in the palace, and was standing there [waiting]. Then when the Emperor Nero saw Batrîk, he said unto him, "O Batrîk, thou art our life. Who made thee to live after thou wast dead?" And the gracious gift of the Holy Spirit filled the heart of Batrîk, and he said unto the Emperor Nero his lord, "It was my Lord Jesus Christ, the God of gods, the God of olden time, the King of kings, who gave me back my life." Then the Emperor Nero said unto him, "Dost thou imagine that He will reign for ever, and that He will make all [other] kingdoms to pass away?" And Batrîk said unto him, "Yea, all the kingdoms which are beneath the heavens He will make to pass away, and He shall rule alone for ever, and there shall be no other | god besides Him." B. fol. 65b. col. 2. Then Nero smote his hands together, and said, "And dost thou also, O Batrîk, believe in Him?" And Batrîk answered and said unto him, "My lord, I do believe in Him, for He gave me life again after I had been dead." Now whilst he was saying these words there drew nigh unto the Emperor four<sup>1</sup> of the officers who

<sup>1</sup> LEPSIUS (ii. 1. 94) mentions *five*:—Barnabas, Justus, Paulus and Arion from Cappadocia, and Festus from Galatia.

stood before him, and whom he loved, for he had bestowed more gifts upon them than upon any others of the officers who were in the palace, and they never left the presence of the Emperor; and their names were these, Lasayôs, Yôstôs, Kāmîtôs, and Kemtîs, the brother of the Emperor. And they said unto the Emperor, "Know, O Emperor, that this is the hour wherein we "draw nigh that we may become soldiers of the heavenly "Emperor, Who is the Most Ancient, Jesus Christ, the "Son of the Living God;" now these words were hard to the Emperor, and he commanded that they should be scourged severely, and then cast into prison. Then the Emperor was [Page 509] exceedingly sorrowful, and his breast was straitened because of the people who believed in our Lord Jesus, and he made a decree, saying, | "Whosoever shall believe in Jesus Christ, and shall make B. fol. 66a. "mention of His Name with his mouth, shall be slain." col. i.

And it came to pass that when all the soldiers had heard his decree they scattered themselves about through all countries, and they seized everyone who believed in our Lord Jesus Christ and brought him before the Emperor in bonds. Now there were certain noblemen who banded themselves together to watch Paul, and they brought his words unto the Emperor, and they informed him concerning his power, and where he could come upon him. And the Emperor looked at Paul who was bound, and said unto him, "Art thou the man who be- "longeth unto the soldiers of the great and Most Ancient "Emperor? Behold, thou hast come into my hand bound. "Speak, I pray thee, and tell me who is He Whom thou "teachest, and by Whom thou doest these works. Thou

“hast come into my city having acted with deceit, and  
“thou wishest to turn aside [my] armies from my so-  
“vereignty.” Then Saint Paul answered before all the  
people and said unto him, “Nay, not from thy kingdom  
“only would we turn aside thine armies, but from all the  
“world, for after this manner did our Lord command us |  
B.fol.66a. “that we should not close the gates of life unto any  
col. 2. “person whatsoever; and it is meet that thou thyself  
“shouldst belong unto His followers. And this [thy] king-  
“dom and this [thy] glory will not deliver thee unless  
“thou dost bow down and worship this Emperor; and if  
“thou dost ask him He will give thee salvation, and He  
“shall come to judge the world, and to give life unto all  
“those who believe in Him; and the sinners who do not  
“believe in Him He will punish, and will deliver them over  
“unto everlasting judgment.” Now the Emperor Nero  
did not believe what Paul said [Page 510] unto him, and  
he commanded his soldiers to bring bound unto him  
those who believed in Jesus Christ, and to burn them  
alive. And when the wicked Emperor had carried out  
his decree, he passed sentence of death upon the chosen  
ones who believed on the Name of the Lord Jesus Christ,  
and he burned them, and they completed their course  
and the fair beauty of their strife in the fire, and they  
received the crown of martyrdom with glory which never  
endeth from the hand of our Lord Jesus Christ, in Whose  
Holy Name they had believed.

## CHAPTER X.

AND AT THAT TIME OUR LORD JESUS | CHRIST<sup>B. fol. 66b.</sup>  
 APPEARED UNTO SAINT PHILIP WHEN HE WAS IN CAESA-<sup>col. 1.</sup>  
 REA, AND SAID UNTO HIM, "RISE UP, and go unto the  
 "cities of Lystra and Iconium, and behold, I send thee  
 "unto My servant Paul, that he may go with thee thither;  
 "and preach ye therein in My Name, for until this present  
 "the glad tidings of faith in My Name have not been  
 "heard in these two cities." And Saint Philip rose up  
 and went to Saint Paul, and told him how our Lord had  
 appeared unto him, and straightway their hearts gained  
 strength, and they rose up, and stretched out their hands  
 in the form of the cross, and they made supplication  
 unto God, saying, "We make supplication unto our Lord,  
 "and God, and Redeemer, Jesus Christ, the Merciful One,  
 "the Sustainer of all things, the Word of God the Father,  
 "by Whom the heavens and the earth were made  
 "and stablished for ever, until they must pass away by  
 "His command; Who made the sun and established the  
 "day; Who appointed the Moon and the stars for the  
 "night; Who fashioned the children of men | in His own<sup>B. fol. 66b.</sup>  
 "image and likeness; [Page 511] O Thou Who didst<sup>col. 2.</sup>  
 "come down from heaven and didst become man by the  
 "Holy Spirit and the Virgin Mary, and didst deliver Thy  
 "handiwork and what Thine hands had fashioned in the  
 "abundance of Thy compassion and mercy, hear, O our  
 "God and Redeemer, our prayer and our petition, and  
 "look with the eye of Thy mercy upon our misery and  
 "tears, for Thou art our refuge, and our strength, and  
 "our strong place in all the exceedingly manifold tribu-

QQ\*

"lations which come upon us. Have mercy upon us, O  
"our God, by Thy strength, and by Thy right hand make  
"smooth our way so that we may enter into these cities.  
"And, O Lord, grant unto Thy servants the word of  
"glory and preaching in them by [Thy] great power, so  
"that we may publish abroad Thy Name, and may praise  
"Thee openly with words, and with a joyful face, so that  
"Thou mayest stretch out Thine hand and bestow healing,  
"and power, and wonderful acts whereby Thy Holy Name  
"may be praised, O Jesus, our strength, and our fortress,  
"Jesus, our hope and our deliverer, Jesus, the horn of our  
"salvation, Jesus, our boast and our life!"

And it came to pass that when the two disciples  
had said these words in their prayer and supplications, |  
B. fol. 67a. behold, our Lord Jesus Christ appeared unto them, and  
col. 1. filled them with His glory and power, and He made  
strong their hearts, and He spake unto them, saying,  
"Behold, I will put Diabolos to shame, and I will break  
"in pieces all his powers under your feet, and I will rebuke  
"him, and will keep him afar off from you, so that he  
"shall never be able to appear before you. And I will  
"be with you, and I will help you, so that all the men  
"of the city may believe in My Name, through the mighty  
"deeds and miracles which I shall perform by your hands,  
"until the people of these cities shall say, 'These two men  
"are gods in the form of men who have come unto us.'"  
And when the Redeemer had said these words unto them  
[Page 512] He gave them the salutation of peace, and  
ascended into heaven with great glory while they were  
looking at Him. Then straightway a cloud of light came,  
and carried the two of them away, and set them down

on the river bank at Lystra. Now some of the men of that city had believed when the blessed Apostle Paul had come unto them | in times past, and had healed Şawûs,<sup>1</sup> B. fol. 67a. and had raised him up in health and made him to stand col. 2. upon his feet, and they had grown stronger in the faith by reason of the great many signs and wonders which he had made manifest here in the Name of our Lord; but there remained some of them who did not believe in the preaching of the Holy Gospel.

And it came to pass that when the two holy Apostles, Philip and Paul, had arrived on the river bank for the second time, they found the people who did not believe gathered together there, and worshipping their impure gods according to the ordinances of their polluted worship, and they wrought there openly the work of error and iniquity, and they ate and they drank. Then Philip and Paul began to preach the Gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ, and to cry unto them the words of salvation, and when they would not hearken unto the preaching of the Gospel, and would not receive the Divine word, God sent a mighty tumult upon them, through the prayers of these two chosen Apostles, and at length the hearts of all of them were converted unto the faith which is in His Holy Name, through the abundant signs and wonders which God wrought by the hands of the Apostles. | And when they B. fol. 67b. had gone into the city they told their companions who col. 1. were left [therein] what had taken place; and they all went out to the river bank, and they found the pure

---

<sup>1</sup> "And there sat a certain man at Lystra, impotent in his feet." Acts xiv. 8.

Apostles, and our Lord sitting among them with His angels. Then straightway the people asked the Apostles and the men who were there, saying, [Page 513] "How were you saved, and how did your hearts obtain rest from the mighty dread and great tumult which came down upon you?" Then the Apostles answered and said unto them, "We were saved and we obtained the salvation of our souls when we believed in the Name of Jesus Christ, the Saviour of those who put their trust in Him." And the people said unto the Apostles, "We also desire that we may find Him, and that we may believe in Him, so that He may become unto us a Helper and a Saviour in all our affliction." Then the two Apostles answered and said unto them, "He shall come unto you this day, and ye shall see Him with your eyes;" and straightway the hearts of the people of the city were glad, and they were filled with exceedingly great joy. And those people said, "We will neither take ourselves away from this place,

B, fol. 67b. "nor | go back into the city until He shall come unto us,  
col. 2. and we shall find His compassion and His mercy." Now they were gathered together on the river bank, and behold, there came flashes of lightning, and mighty thunder, and a loud and terrifying voice. And it came to pass that when the people saw this they marvelled, and they lifted up their voices, and cried out, saying, "O our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, Thou Son of the Living God, be Thou unto us a Helper, and Redeemer, for behold, we believe in Thy Holy Name, and we trust in Thee with all our hearts. O our God Jesus Christ, Thou Merciful One, look upon our faith in Thy mighty and Holy Name, for our hearts rejoice in Thy mercy

"and in Thy salvation. Our minds are right and strong  
 "in the faith of the preaching of Thine Apostles, and let  
 "our conversion and repentance be accepted by Thee."  
 And when the people had said these words, our Lord  
 had compassion upon them, for He saw their humility,  
 and He accepted their conversion and repentance. Then  
 He said unto the Apostles, "Go ye unto [Page 514] these  
 people, and preach among them, saying, "If there be  
 "among you any man | who desireth God with all his B. fol. 68a.  
 "heart, let him come and follow us to the river, and let col. 1.  
 "him be baptized with Christian baptism for the remission  
 "of sins, and for the receiving of the gift of the grace of  
 "Christ." And straightway all the people of the city of  
 Lystra departed and followed after the pure Apostles  
 until [they came to] the river, and Saints Paul and Philip  
 baptized them in the Name of the Father, and of the  
 Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Then after these things the  
 Apostles brought them all back into the city, and they  
 built for them a church, and they appointed over them  
 priests and deacons, and they delivered unto them the  
 commandments, and laws, and ordinances of God, and  
 the words of His Prophets, and they wrote down for them  
 the glad tidings of the Gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ,  
 and they confirmed them in the right faith, and taught  
 them the knowledge of the ordinances of the sanctification  
 and participation in the Divine Mysteries. And the two  
 blessed Apostles dwelt in that city for three months, and  
 they admonished the people and taught them the way of  
 faith and the divinity of God, to Whom be praise and  
 thanksgiving for ever and ever! Amen.

## CHAPTER XL

B. fol. 68a. | AND AFTER THOSE THINGS THE TWO APOSTLES  
 col. 2. DEPARTED FROM THE CITY OF LYSTRA BY NIGHT, and  
 they came to the sea shore<sup>1</sup> seeking for a ship which  
 might take them to the city of Iconium; and they found  
 the Lord there, for He had gone before them and had  
 made ready a ship for them, and He sat therein in the  
 guise of the master of the ship. [Page 515] And when  
 our Lord saw them, He began to call unto them, saying,  
 "Peace be unto you, brethren, whence have ye come that  
 "ye arrive here at this hour?" Then the Apostles, who  
 did not know that He was the Lord Jesus Christ, said  
 unto Him, "We are seeking for a ship which will take us  
 "to the city of Iconium, for we have need to be there  
 "for a little." And the Lord Saviour answered and said  
 unto them, "I also wish to go there. Come ye and embark  
 "with Me in this ship, and if the Lord Jesus be pleased  
 "to give us fair winds for travelling we will journey  
 "together." Then the two Apostles answered and said  
 unto the Man Who was the Lord Jesus, "Now that we  
 B. fol. 68b. "have found the Name of the Lord | Jesus in Thy mouth  
 col. 1. "Thou wilt fulfil for us all our good pleasure, and our  
 "hope hath grown strong in God that He will not let us  
 "go from Him." And when the two Apostles had embark-  
 ed in the ship they straightway lay down and slept, and  
 when they awoke in the morning they found themselves  
 on the sea shore of Iconium, whilst they were still lying  
 down. And the two Apostles marvelled, and they bowed

---

<sup>1</sup> Or, river bank; both Lystra and Iconium were inland cities.

themselves on their faces, and worshipped God, saying, "We thank Thee, O God, for this great act of kindness which Thou hast done unto us."

Then the Apostles rose up, and set out on the road which would bring them into the city of Iconium, and one of them asked the other, saying, "What shall we do to find an opportunity for preaching in the Name of our Lord in this city, for the men thereof are depraved heathen?" And Saint Paul answered and said, "Behold, a thought hath now come to me, and if thou wishest to perform it we will do so." Then [Page 516] Saint Philip said unto Paul, "What is it, O my brother?" And Saint Paul answered and said unto Philip, "Let us hire a place in the market, and establish ourselves there as teachers, and we will tell the men of this city that we are men who are philosophers, which [word] is interpreted lovers of learning, and we will read learned books by day and by night until we find an opportunity for debating, and disputing, and conversing with them. And we will say unto them, 'Whosoever wisheth to make his son learn the wisdom and knowledge of the philosophers let him bring him unto us;' and [this will we do] until we see what God will do with us." Then Saint Philip answered and said unto Paul, "The plan which thou describest is good, O my brother;" so the Apostles made a place for themselves in the market. And when those who passed along the road and those who were journeying through the streets, said unto them, "What is your handicraft?" the two Apostles answered and said, "We are learned men and philosophers. The Emperor (*or* king) was wroth with us, and drove us away, and we fled |

aB. fol. 68b.  
col. 2.

B. fol. 69a. "before his face, and came and took up our abode in  
col. 1. "this city, and we dwell here in this place in the market  
"that your children may be instructed by us in the wisdom  
"of the philosophers." Now the report of the Apostles  
went forth straightway in the city, and the people said,  
"These two men are of the philosophers, and behold,  
"they have come into our city and dwell in the market-  
"place. Whosoever wisheth to be instructed and loveth  
"the knowledge of the philosophers, let him go to them  
"and be instructed, for with them he will find beautiful  
"wisdom." Then straightway all the people of the city  
came unto them, and they gave their children to the  
Apostles, that they might teach [Page 517] them philo-  
sophy.

And it came to pass that when Diabolos, the accurs-  
ed deceiver, knew that the two Apostles had arrived in  
the city of Iconium, he began to roar like a ravening  
lion, and the flame of the fire of envy burnt in his heart.  
And he gathered together all his hosts, and said unto  
them, "How can I wait patiently until this city shall have  
"escaped from out of my hand? Let me rise up and  
B. fol. 69a. "depart unto the city of Iconium, and I will corrupt | the  
col. 2. "hearts of the men thereof, and I will fill them with envy,  
"and I will make them to torture the bodies [of the  
"Apostles] with fire, and with punishments of divers kinds  
"until they kill them." And the two disciples dwelt in  
the market-place that they might teach the children of  
the men of this city; and Saint Philip used to write texts  
for them to copy, and Saint Paul used to stand up and  
teach them. And there was a certain governor in the  
city who was called Thêwôdâs, and his wife's name was

Euphemia, and they had a little son whom they wished to send to the house of instruction with his companions the [other] children. Now his father Thêwôdâs was an evil and wicked man in all his acts and deeds, and a transgressor of the law, and he multiplied evil more than all the [other] men of the city. And it came to pass that when they heard the report of Saints Philip and Paul, and that they were dwelling in the market-place and teaching learning unto the children of the men of the city, he said unto his wife, "I wish to send a message unto these two | philosophers, Paul and Philip, [asking B. fol. 69b. "them] to eat bread in our house with us this day, and col. 1. "we will deliver unto them our son Theodore that they "may teach and instruct him together with all the [other] "children of the men of the city, for I hear concerning "them that [Page 518] they are exceedingly wise and "learned men. And behold, many of the men of this city "have given their children unto them that they may teach "them the knowledge of the wisdom of philosophy." Then Euphemia his wife answered and said unto him, "If thou wishest to send for them, do so." And straight-way he sent unto them three soldiers of those whom he loved, and he said unto them, "Go ye into the market "and call hither for me these two wise men and philo- "sophers Paul and Philip, who teach the children of this "city;" so the three messengers rose up and went into the market, and they found Philip sitting and writing texts for the instruction of the children, whilst Saint Paul was standing up teaching them. And the messengers | said unto them, "Unto you we speak, O ye two men B. fol. 69b. "who are filled with learning and wisdom, rise up quickly, col. 2.

“for Thêwôdâs the governor of this city inviteth you  
 “into his house, and he wisheth to entreat you cour-  
 “teously, and with love and mercy.” Now this was  
 the first public appearance of the two disciples in  
 the city before they preached unto the people in the  
 Name of the Lord. And the men of this city used to  
 worship the image of a huge bull [made] of silver, and  
 idols of gold. Then straightway Saints Paul and Philip  
 rose up, and gave the children permission to go to their  
 homes from the place of instruction, and they themselves  
 departed with the messengers of the men of the city; and  
 when they had arrived in the house of Thêwôdâs, he  
 rose up and came to receive them and to pay them  
 exceedingly great honour. And straightway he command-  
 ed [his servants] to make ready a table and to cook  
 meats that they might partake of a meal, and he brought  
 several fat oxen and slaughtered them, and twenty suck-  
 B. fol. 70a. ing lambs and kids of the goats, | and thirty chickens  
 col. 1. [Page 519]; all these things he made ready for the table  
 which he had laid for the Apostles. And he also invited  
 all his friends, and acquaintances, and seven of the honour-  
 able nobles of the city to the table which he had pre-  
 pared in his garden; and he slaughtered oxen, and sheep,  
 and many kids.

And when the honourable nobles of the city had  
 come to him, they said unto him, “What is the cause of  
 “this great table which thou hast prepared and of the  
 “joy which is in thy house this day?” Then Thêwôdâs  
 answered and said unto them, “I have made this great  
 “feast in my house for the sake of these two philosophers  
 “who have come into this city and who have entered into

"my house this day, for I want to give my son Theodore  
 "over to them, so that they may teach him wisdom which  
 "is like unto theirs." And the nobles of the city sat down  
 to the feast with the Apostles, but the Apostles feigned  
 only to eat and to drink, for they neither ate nor drank  
 anything that day, and those who sat at the table did  
 not know | that the Apostles were neither eating nor B. fol. 70a.  
 drinking. And straightway Thêwôdàs called his son col. 2.  
 Theodore, and said unto him, "Rise up, and go and sit  
 "at the feet of these wise men;" and he sat down by the  
 feet of Saints Paul and Philip, and he began to kiss them,  
 and they blessed him in the tongue of angels, but he  
 knew not what they were saying. Now the youth was  
 intelligent, and full of understanding, and used to disci-  
 pline, and lowly, and submissive. Then Saint Philip said  
 unto Thêwôdàs, the governor of the city, "Give the com-  
 "mand, and let [the servants] bring a writing tablet, and  
 "ink, and a pen;" and the father of [Page 520] the child  
 said, "This day let us eat, and drink, and sit down, and  
 "make merry, but to-morrow thou shalt do as is good in  
 "thy sight, and we will bring unto thee whatsoever thou  
 "desirest." Now Thêwôdàs was a well known man, for  
 he was the governor of the city, | and was the prince of B. fol. 70b.  
 the people. And when the morning had come he took col. 1.  
 hold of the hand of the child his son, and led him to  
 the house of instruction, now he had with him a eunuch  
 to guard him, and Thêwôdàs delivered them over to  
 the Apostles; and the seven elders of the city also took  
 their children to them that they might teach them  
 the wisdom of philosophy and the path of instruction.  
 Now the Apostles had contrived this plan so that they

might draw the hearts of the men [to them], be it ever so little.

And it came to pass that when the men of the city saw that Thêwôdâs had taken his son, together with the children of the seven elders of the city, to the Apostles, they also took their children to them, so that they might teach them the mysteries of wisdom and learning. Then, seven days after the Apostles had been working, behold Satan arrived, and came into the city in the form of a man of rank who had journeyed from afar, and with him there were many devils who followed their master in the form of attendants; and he came into the market, to the place where the elders and all the men of the city had gathered themselves together and seated themselves,

B. fol. 7ob.  
col. 2.

and he stood up, [being arrayed in the apparel of kings, and spake unto one of the devils, and told [him to say] that he was a king's son. And he was wearing raiment of purple, and he had upon his head a splendid helmet of gold ornamented (i. e., set) with emeralds, and upon his neck a collar of gold, which was also ornamented with emeralds and cut jacinths that shone with an exceedingly great lustre on his lying form, and he held a roll of writing in his left hand, and a sceptre of gold in his right hand; and when Thêwôdâs [Page 521] and his companions, the councillors of the city, saw him, they marvelled at him exceedingly, and they rose up to receive him and to pay him honour. And he said unto him, "Whence comest thou? And whence art thou? And "what seekest thou in this city? We observe, O young "man, thou appearest to be a king's son." Then straightway the young man, who was called the son of the king,

stretched out his hand and gave unto the governors of  
 the city the roll of writing, and when they had opened  
 the seal they found written therein | as follows:—"I Da-B. fol. 71a.  
 "ryânôs, the king of Médôn, have written this epistle col. 1.  
 "unto Thêwôdâs and unto his companions, the princes  
 "of the city of Iconuim, in peace; and let this matter  
 "be well known unto you that I meditate concerning you  
 "great peace. And behold, I have sent unto you 'As-  
 "mênâtôs my son, with this epistle in his hand, and also  
 "my chief counsellor Râm râêl, who, after me, is second  
 "in my kingdom. Now, when they have brought this  
 "letter unto you, ye shall forthwith seek out and inflict  
 "punishments upon these two men who are called Paul  
 "and Philip; and ye shall seize them, and put them in  
 "fetters, for they are both slaves of mine, and they have  
 "escaped from me secretly, and I have sought them  
 "myself with diligence. And moreover, I give you autho-  
 "rity over them, so that if ye desire ye may burn them  
 "in the fire; or if ye desire, throw them into sacks, and  
 "tie up the mouths of the sacks, and cast them into the  
 "sea. For they are sorcerers, | and they have subverted B. fol. 71a.  
 "my rule, and have wrought deeds of shame among my col. 2.  
 "women, and scattered abroad my officers and soldiers,  
 "and overthrown my house, and plundered my city, and  
 "stolen my possessions, and blotted out my hope, and  
 "done away my goods, and destroyed [Page 522] my  
 "pasture (or flock), and they have made accusations  
 "against each other, and they have carried off mine  
 "handmaidens. And I have sent this epistle unto you,  
 "neither by the hand of a governor, nor by the hand of  
 "an envoy, lest ye might be offended by my words, but

"by the hand of my firstborn son and by that of my chief  
 "councillor, than whom there is none more honourable in  
 "my palace. And I swear to you, by the glory of my  
 "kingdom, and by the might of my rule, and by the  
 "glory of mine honour, and by the majesty of the crown  
 "upon my head, and by mine honour, and by the life of  
 "my firstborn and only son, that, when ye have read this  
 "my epistle, if ye do not do unto these two men even  
 "as I have commanded in my epistle I will send and  
 "plunder your country, and will lay waste your cities and  
 B. fol. 71b. "all your borders, | and I will cover all your mountains  
 col. 1. "and land with the feet of my soldiers and the hoofs of  
 "my horses. And I will lay waste all your lofty buildings  
 "and give [the people thereof over] to slaughter; and I will  
 "make your sons and daughters captives; and your beasts  
 "and animals shall be doomed to destruction, and I will  
 "give power [to my men] to defile your women. And  
 "if it be that ye do not wish to slay them with your  
 "own hands, flay the skin off their persons, and bind  
 "with chains of iron their necks and their hands, and put  
 "fetters on their feet, and send them unto me with my  
 "firstborn son, whom I have sent unto you with my letter,  
 "and with my chief councillor, than whom there is none  
 "greater in my palace, whom I have sent unto you.  
 "And do not let me destroy you and punish both you  
 "and your country for the sake of these two sorcerers  
 "who have come unto you, that is to say, Paul and  
 "Philip, and no man shall require the shedding of their  
 "blood from you."

B. fol. 71b. And it came to pass that when [Page 523] Thêwôdâs  
 col. 2. had read the epistle | and all his companions, the princes

of the city with him, they were greatly dismayed, and they bowed down straightway before Satan, who had taken the form of a king's son, and before the other deceiver who had taken the form of a chief councillor. Then they said unto him, "O our lord, thou king's son, live for ever! Thy servants hear thy commandments and they are ready to perform the words of the epistle." And Thêwôdâs and his companions the princes of the city commanded the soldiers who were standing before them, saying, "Go ye to the market, and seize these two men, that is to say, Paul and Peter, and bind them, and throw ropes round their necks and drag them on their faces from the market place until ye have brought them hither." Now the Apostles were not at that time in the market place, for it was the hour for eating, and they had given the children of the men of the city permission to go to their homes and to rest a little until the shadows of the sun should turn, when they were to come back again to the house of instruction | and be taught. And Theodore, B. fol. 72a. col. 1. the son of Thêwôdâs the governor of the city, besought the holy Apostles Paul and Philip, saying, "Come ye with me that ye may eat bread and rest a little until the heat of the sun be less strong, and then ye shall go back again to the market place and teach the children." Now the soldiers returned [to Thêwôdâs] in great terror and consternation, and they said unto the princes, "We went to the house of instruction in the market place, but we could not find Paul and Philip." And again Diabolos spake unto the princes of the city, and said unto them in great wrath, being in a fierce passion, [Page 524] "I will devour your flesh, and will drink your

“blood, because ye treat lightly the words of my lord  
 “the king, and myself also do ye put to shame. Ye  
 “have sent your soldiers to seize these men, and behold,  
 “your soldiers have come and said, ‘We cannot find  
 “them.’” Now the holy Apostles Paul and Philip, having  
 B. fol. 72a. given the children permission to depart to | their homes,  
 col. 2. went daily from the house of instruction to the garden  
 of Thêwôdâs, and they rested there until they went  
 back to the house of instruction to teach the children  
 again; and Euphemia, the wife of Thêwôdâs, ministered  
 much unto Saints Paul and Philip, because she heard  
 from them the words of the Gospel and the ordinances  
 of life which they were teaching unto her. And the  
 grace of the Holy Spirit had taken up an abode in her,  
 and had made thoughts of good to rest in her heart,  
 and she ceased not to sit at the feet of the pure Apostles,  
 Paul and Philip, from the time of their coming into her  
 house until they departed and returned to the market.  
 And they declared unto her the precepts of salvation,  
 that is to say, the precepts of the Law and the Prophets,  
 and the words of the Holy Gospel of our Lord Jesus  
 Christ, the Son of the Living God.

And after this the princes of the city were greatly  
 moved, and dismayed, and in great terror, having sought  
 B. fol. 72b. | for Saints Paul and Philip, and having found them not in  
 col. 1. the market place, and straightway they seized the soldiers  
 whom they had sent, and bound them that they might  
 scourge them. Now there was a brazen image standing  
 close by the place where the governors were sitting,  
 and upon it they hung the soldiers, who were bound  
 hand and foot, with their heads to the ground and the

soles of their feet upwards—now the idol was in [Page 525] the market place—that they might scourge them. And they said unto them, “If ye can bring these two men hither, do so; and if ye cannot, then your souls (or lives) shall take the place of theirs;” so they delivered them over unto death. Now whilst the princes were inflicting these scourgings upon the soldiers, the men of the city came together unto them, not knowing for what purpose the messengers had come, and a man answered and said unto his fellow, “What have these men done that they are scourging them in this manner?” Then one of the servants of the governors answered, saying, “Seest thou not this great and exalted young man who is crowned with a crown of gold, and round whom the governors are standing? He is the son of the king of Médôn, and the other who is standing on his right | hand B. fol. 72b. col. 2. is his chief councillor, and the minister of his power. “And they have come into this city to seek for two men, that is to say, for Paul and Philip, who teach the children of this city wisdom and philosophy.”

And it came to pass that when the men of the city had heard of the arrival of the son of the king of Médôn in their city, their hearts were greatly moved, and they were sorrowful unto death, and they debated among themselves, saying, “Let us make haste to seek for these two men, and let us deliver them unto him without delay. Let us not treat his command lightly, lest he be come enraged at us, and lest his anger wax strong in our city, and he burn it with fire, and send his soldiers against us, and blot out us, and our children, and our wives, and, moreover, he will plunder our possessions,

RR\*

“and will lay waste our city, and will destroy the men  
 “[thereof] with a sharp sword.” Then Satan changed  
 his appearance again, and took upon himself the form  
 of an old man who had passed his days among the men  
 of the city, and he stood up among them, and said unto  
 them, “I have seen Paul and Philip, [Page 526], and with  
 B.fol. 73a. “them were wine, and | flesh, and fish, and Theodore, the  
 col. 1. “son of Thêwôdâs, was going in front of them, and they  
 “were following him until they came to his house. And  
 “besides, I saw a certain woman who was of most beauti-  
 “ful form and face, and appearance, and Paul was hold-  
 “ing her right hand, and Philip was holding her left.” And  
 when Satan had said these words in the hearing of all  
 the multitude, they were filled with wrath against Saints  
 Paul and Philip, and they knew not what had happened;  
 and the rumour [of these things] went out into all the  
 city until it reached the governor. And a certain man  
 among the men of the city came and said unto Thêwô-  
 dâs, “Behold, all the multitude is crying out with a loud  
 “voice and saying that Paul and Philip are eating meat  
 “in thy house with Theodore thy son, and that they have  
 “brought with them a certain woman who is a harlot  
 “into thy house, and that they are eating and drinking  
 “with her.” And it came to pass that when Thêwôdâs,  
 the governor of the city, heard these words, he was ex-  
 ceedingly angry, and his anger burned like fire, and he  
 B.fol. 73a. plucked out | the hairs of his head and beard and cast  
 col. 2. them upon the ground, for Satan had hardened his heart,  
 and had made the slaughter of Saints Paul and Philip,  
 and of his son Theodore, to appear unto him in a fair  
 light. Then Thêwôdâs rose up straightway, and said

unto the governors who were gathered together there, "Sit ye down, and reveal not the matter, and let no man know aught thereof, whilst I go myself and find these two men; and, when I know and am certain of the truth of the word which hath been said concerning them, I will do unto them what I please."

Then immediately Satan went before Thêwôdâs into his house, and he made one of his servants to take the form of a [Page 527] woman of beautiful face and form, and having come [there] quickly she stood up in the porch of the palace, by the great seat which was in the garden. And when Thêwôdâs arrived, he found Satan, who had taken upon himself the form of a woman, standing in the porch of his court yard, and he said unto her, "O woman, what seekest thou here, and who hath brought thee into this house? | If thou dost not tell me the truth B. fol. 73b. col. 1. thou shalt die by an evil death." Then the woman answered and said unto him, "I am a woman who is a harlot, and I am well known unto the men of this city, and I am the possession of those who take pleasure in fornication. Whosoever wisheth for me giveth me my hire and taketh me unto a place wherein a man eateth, and drinketh, and taketh his pleasure; and besides this thine handmaiden hath no knowledge of any other thing whatsoever. Whilst I was sitting in my house, behold, Euphemia, the wife of Thêwôdâs, sent unto me two young women who were her handmaidens, and they had with them two silver bracelets, saying, 'Take these, and rise up, and come unto me quickly in my house, for one of the envoys of the king seeketh my husband' and he wisheth to take him to the king with him; and

"I wish thee to be with him before he goeth where he  
 "will find rest and relief from sorrow.' And when these  
 "young women had come unto me, and had told me  
 "the message of Euphemia, I rose up and departed with  
 B. fol. 73b. "them until | I came unto a place in the market, and I  
 col. 2. "found Theodore her son with the two wise men who  
 "teach the children of the men of this city; now the  
 "name of one of them was Paul, and of the other  
 "Philip, and with [Page 528] them were meat, and good  
 "drink, and cakes made of fine flour in abundance. And  
 "Theodore thy son answered and said unto the young  
 "women who were journeying with me, 'Hath my mother  
 "'sent this woman, and did she call you?' And the young  
 "women said unto him, 'Yea', and immediately Philip  
 "gave her everything which he had with him, both meat  
 "and drink; now Paul took me by my hand and brought  
 "me here, and he also made me to go up into the upper  
 "part of the palace; and they found a place wherein to  
 "make merry secretly on cushions and a bed, and there  
 "we ate and drank and enjoyed ourselves each with  
 "the other. Then again Euphemia said unto me, 'Rise  
 "'up, and depart to thy house, for it is time to sit at  
 "'meat, lest my husband come and find thee in my house,  
 B. fol. 74a. "'and be enraged | at thee;' and Euphemia ate and drank  
 col. 1. "with us, and we found pleasure, and we had great  
 "delight and enjoyment each with the other. And she  
 "said unto me, 'If my husband come and find thee  
 "'here he will slay the two of us, and these two  
 "'men, who have drunk with us.' Now when she  
 "had spoken unto me thus I rose up straightway, and  
 "departed."

And it came to pass that when Thêwôdâs heard these words from the mouth of Satan, who had taken upon himself the form of a woman, his heart was moved, and his soul was terrified, and he breathed loudly through his nostrils, and he was filled with wrath and fierce anger, and he said, "Everything which the son of the king of Médôn hath said is certainly true. Now know I of a truth "that these men are sorcerers, and that they cast spells on "men's wives and destroy their houses; and behold, there "hath come upon me that which came upon him, and "they have defiled Euphemia my wife by their sorceries. "Woe is me! What shall I do? Henceforth I will leave "this city and depart [therefrom], for after this I shall "never be able to lift up my face in the presence of men, | B. fol. 74a.  
"[Page 529] because of the great shame which hath come col. 2.  
"upon my house." Then turning to Satan, who had taken upon himself the form of a woman, he said unto her, "Get thee to thy house, for I will have no speech with "thee, and thou shalt work no error with me." And straightway Satan departed from the house of Thêwôdâs, having taken upon himself his old form, and he came unto the place where the governors were gathered together, and he found Diabolos sitting in their midst; and he said unto him, "Behold, I have done everything which "thou hast commanded me." Then Diabolos answered and said unto his devils, "Be strong, and make yourselves "mighty, O my comrades, for behold, the time when I "shall gain the mastery over these two men, that is to "say, Paul and Philip, [draweth nigh]. Verily I say unto "you that when Peter, the chief of the Apostles, is dead, "I shall have rest, and I shall be able to take vengeance

“upon the others, until I know who is able to set him-  
 “self in opposition to me; and he was their father who  
 “waged war against me. Behold, he shall be removed  
 “from me by a cruel death, and I will never cease to  
 B. fol. 74b. “fight against the others until I have made | an end of  
 col. 1. “them by an evil death.”

Now when Thêwôdâs came in he found Saints Paul  
 and Philip lying down asleep in the innermost part of the  
 house, and his wife Euphemia was sitting at the feet of  
 the Apostles with a bowl of water placed before her, and  
 she was pouring water over their feet and washing them;  
 and she was reading the words of good tidings, that is  
 to say, the Gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ, for she was  
 perfect and instructed in the words of the knowledge of  
 the wise men Paul and Philip, and in their doctrine. And  
 Thêwôdâs answered and said unto her in anger, “O thou  
 “wicked woman in whom there is no fair thing, and who  
 “art not good!” And he also said unto his son Theo-  
 dore, [Page 530] “Thou also shalt die before these two  
 “sorcerers, for thou didst bring them into my house which  
 “thou didst make a house of pollution and fornication.  
 “I swear by the greatness of the might of the gods of  
 “this city, and by the dominion of kings, that I will make  
 “thee to die with them.” Then Euphemia answered and  
 B. fol. 74b. said unto her | husband, “Art thou mad, or art thou  
 col. 2. “possessed of a devil? What is this word which thou  
 “speakest concerning the servants of the Living and Most  
 “High God?” And Thêwôdâs rose up straightway in  
 anger against his wife, and strangled her forthwith, and  
 she fell down quickly and died. And it came to pass  
 that when Saints Paul and Philip heard the noise of the

outcry and high words, they awoke from their slumbers and looked up, and saw Thêwôdâs seizing his son, and dragging him along like a dead outcast; and seeing him dragging him along they looked again and saw Euphemia stretched out dead, and they marvelled greatly, and they knew not the reason of the matter. Then Saints Paul and Philip rose up, and laid hold upon Thêwôdâs, that they might ask him the reason of his words and why he was behaving thus, but he stretched out his hands and smote Saint Paul in the face. And he went and took a sword which was hanging up in the house, and having drawn it out from its sheath he plunged it into the side of his son, and his bowels came out, | and he yielded up <sup>B. fol. 75a.</sup> his soul straightway. After this Thêwôdâs turned to the <sup>col. 1.</sup> Apostles, that is to say, to Saints Paul and Philip, and said unto them, "O sorcerers and deceivers, ye have made "desolate my house, and according to what ye did unto "the king of Mèdôn even so have ye done unto me; ye "have made me childless, and ye have slain my wife, "[Page 53r] and ye have plundered my goods. I will "not kill you at this moment, but I will go and bring "hither your master and all the men of the city, so "that they may see what hath befallen me, and may "become witnesses against you; and then I will do "unto you according to what my heart desireth." Then Thêwôdâs shut the doors [of the house], and shot the bolts, and, taking the keys with him, departed, and he threw dust on his head, and cried out with so loud a voice that his words could be heard in all the city; and he came to the place where the governors were gathered together with Satan in their midst, and

all the men of the city were following him and looking at him.

And it came to pass that when the nobles and  
 B. fol. 75a. governors saw him afar off | they rose up to meet him  
 col. 2. with great trepidation and fear, and they said unto him,  
 "What hath befallen thee that thou criest out and weep-  
 "est in this wise?" And Thêwôdâs said unto them, "O  
 "my brethren, what trial is greater, and what weeping is  
 "more bitter, than that which hath come upon my house  
 "this day? Ask not what hath befallen me, for it is not  
 "seemly that I should declare unto you [the cause of]  
 "my weeping, and the greatness of my sorrow, and the  
 "bitterness of the tears which flow from mine eyes; but  
 "rise up, O my brethren, and see what hath befallen me.  
 "And let the son of the king and the chief counsellor  
 "come with you into my house that I may shew you  
 "what these sorcerers have done unto me, and because  
 "of them I have slain my wife and my son. Woe is me,  
 "for mine injury is mighty, and the tumult in my mind  
 "is great, and I know not what to do, for my only plan  
 "is this—I will shave off the hair of my head, and I will  
 "live henceforth as a wanderer in the desert; I will not  
 "enter into a house, and I will forsake the city. Be-  
 "hold, the lions shall find me and shall devour my  
 B. fol. 75b. "flesh, for death is better in my sight | than life  
 col. 1. "which beareth such deep sorrow and such [Page 532]  
 "terrible disgrace." And when the councillors of the  
 city heard his words they marvelled and were silent;  
 and they said, "True then are the words of the king  
 "of Mêdôn who sent unto us an epistle by the hand of  
 "his son; and yet we have allowed these men to act

"thus evilly against us, and to destroy our city by their sorceries."

And straightway Satan entered in among the governors of the city and led astray their minds, and he filled them with the wickedness of anger against Saints Paul and Philip, and they knew not what would [arise] from this matter. Now whilst Thêwôdâs was with the governors, Saints Paul and Philip rose up, and they stretched out their hands, and cried unto God with abundant supplications for the salvation of the men of this city, and for the remission of their sins. And they also made supplication in prayer in the Hebrew tongue, saying, "O God, the Sustainer of all things, the Father of our Lord, and God, and Redeemer, Jesus Christ, | reject not those who B. fol. 75b. put their confidence in Thee, but put to shame him that col. 2. putteth himself in opposition to us, and bring into disgrace the Enemy who fighteth against us. Look upon us, O God, for Thou art our God, and our strength, and our refuge, and our helper, and give us strength, O God, that we may gather Thy lost sheep into Thy pasture; O God, put to shame Satan and all his hosts, and break utterly all his might, that Thy Holy Name, which is more exalted than any other name, may be praised, O Father, and Son, and Holy Spirit, Holy Trinity, and to Thee be praise for ever and ever. Amen."

And whilst Paul and Philip were praying, behold, our Lord Jesus Christ stood among them in the form of a young Man of beautiful appearance, and He said unto them, [Page 533] "Peace be unto you, O pure, and blessed, and glorious sheep;" and straightway the Apostles bowed down with their faces [to the ground], and they embraced

the feet of our Redeemer. Then the Lord raised them up, and kissed their faces, and said unto them, "O my brethren, fear not, for many tribulations shall come upon you | in this city, but when [the people thereof] put you to the trial I will make many miracles to appear from you, and many of the Gentiles shall believe in Me through you. They shall deliver you over to death, and they shall crucify you, and they shall kindle fire upon your bodies several times; but fear not, for I will be with you, and I will strengthen you, and by your hands I will work many great signs and wonders, and, at length, all the men of this city shall believe in Me through you. Satan shall stand up before you, and shall oppose you face to face that he may cause you anguish. But I will put him to shame, and I will do away his strength, and I will disgrace him, and cast him beneath your feet; and I will make manifest unto everyone his shame, and disgrace, and infirmity, and abasement. Be strong, O My beloved ones, for I will bring all his plots against you to naught, and I will stand by you until [your] last breath. Behold, I have already declared unto you every-thing which shall befall you. I will stretch out My hand and will heal your bodies, so that the punishments may not cause you pain, | and I will slay your enemies, and will destroy those who are hostile unto you; and I will send the help of your angels." And when the Saviour had said these words unto them, He blessed them, and gave them the salutation of peace, and ascended with glory into the heights of heaven.

And after this Thêwôdâs and all the councillors of the city rose up, and also Satan, who had taken upon

himself the form of the son of the king of Mêdôn, the [Page 534] messenger of all sin, and all his hosts which he had collected [and went] into the lower part of the city, and with them were many soldiers, and guards, and all the men of the city. Now Satan tarried, and kept behind them, and he did not go with them because he was afraid of the word (*or* voice) of the Apostles; but Thêwôdâs went before the councillors, and magistrates, and judges, and there followed him the captain of a thousand, and the captain of a hundred, and all the men of the city who had assembled in the crowd went with him. And Thêwôdâs was weeping, and crying out, and scattering dust upon his head. Then when they came to his house | he B. fol. 76b. commanded the soldiers to kindle a fire and to burn down col. 1. the room wherein were the Apostles, and the governors, and the magistrates, and the captain of a thousand, and the captain of a hundred tried to restrain him, saying, "Be patient, and keep thyself quiet for a little, and we will do unto them what is meet. Restrain thy tears a little, that we may find a way to escape from all these men who are following us, and we shall see what hath become of these two men, for, behold, their God was with them; and we know that with Him they will perform many evils which shall be exceedingly greater than this." And straightway he ceased to cry, and quieted himself a little, and he took a key and opened the doors. Then immediately the Spirit of God seized Saints Paul and Philip, and brought them into the hall of judgment, and they found Diabolo s(and Satan) seated there in the form of two governors, and the nobles of the people were gathered together and they stood before him, | and they B. fol. 76b. col. 2.

knew immediately that he was Satan, and Satan was afraid and exceedingly terrified when he saw them [Page 535]. And when they had opened the gates, and had come through the first door into the palace—now they did not allow anyone to enter in with them except the governors of the city and their head men who had come with them—and when Diabolos, who had taken upon himself the form of the son of the king [of Médôn], and who was behind [the people], saw the Apostles, he went quickly into the house of Thêwôdàs, and entered with the governors into the palace. Now when they had come in they found the wife of Thêwôdàs stretched out dead, and her son Theodore likewise. And it came to pass that when the governors saw what had happened, they all cried out, and wept, and rent their garments, and scattered dust on their heads; then when they had come in they could not find the Apostles in the house wherein they were wont to dwell, and they lit lamps and went round about in all the inner parts of the palace, but they could not find them, and Thêwôdàs became like a madman who hath

B. fol. 77a. lost his reason. Then the governors said | unto Satan  
col. 1. who was with them, "O lord the king, it was only with  
"right that thy father sent thee hither about these two  
"men, and now we know of a truth that they are sor-  
"cerers, for, as soon as they knew that we had come into  
"this place to seek them, they would not let us find them  
"by any means." And as the governors were conversing  
among themselves in this wise concerning Saints Paul and  
Philip, they said, "Where have they gone, and what hath  
"become of them?" Then behold, a certain man came  
and cried out, saying, "These two philosophers whom ye

"have gone to seek in the house of Thêwôdàs are now "sitting in the hall of judgment;" and when they heard this they marvelled greatly, and they returned quickly into the hall of judgment, [Page 536] and Thêwôdàs was going before them, and crying out and weeping. And the people scattered dust upon his head, and they also scattered it up in the air; and there was a great tumult in the city.

And it came to pass when they had come into the hall of judgment, that they found | Saints Paul and Philip B. fol. 77a. sitting [there] like the angels of God, and when Thêwôdàs col. 2. saw them he became like a madman who hath lost his reason through unclean spirits, and he wanted to pierce his belly with his hand, and pour out what was therein on account of the exceedingly great sorrow which had come upon him. Then the governors answered and said unto him, "Sit down in thy place, and put away this "weeping, and restrain thyself a little, and quiet thyself, and "we will do unto the Apostles according to that which thy "heart desireth." And the elders of the city commanded that they should put the Apostles in fetters, and bind their hands and their feet, and put chains round their necks, and make iron helmets which should cover their heads [and reach down] unto their necks. Then they made implements which were like unto hands, having palms and fingers of iron, and they put them on the hands of Paul and Philip, and [they reached] to the upper parts of their arms, and each of their hands had upon it a hand of iron, and they drove pegs (*or* nails) through them into their hands. And they also made images of shoulders in iron, into which reached as far

B. fol. 77b. as | their necks, and they drove pegs (*or* nails) through  
col. 1. them from before and from behind. And they also made  
plates of iron which went round all their members, and  
covered over their bodies, so that nothing whatever of  
them could be seen; and they nailed the sides of them  
together with nails which resembled spikes of iron. And  
they also made iron shoes, and they drove spikes of iron  
through their feet until they penetrated them, and reached  
from their soles to their thighs. And they also made  
plates of iron which [Page 537] were like unto masks,  
and they covered over their faces with them, and the  
elders took exceedingly great pains not to leave any one  
of their members not covered over with iron.

Then the elders also brought men who were skilled  
in the art of making enchantments by means of drugs,  
and those who were learned in the art of roasting [men  
alive], and they said unto them, "See that ye do by means  
"of your knowledge that which we set you to do con-  
"cerning these two sorcerers who have wrought this great  
"evil against the men of this city, because we wish to  
"kill them by some evil death, and ye shall find with us  
"a great reward and much honour." Then the men who  
B. fol. 77b. were skilled in the art | of making enchantments by means  
col. 2. of drugs answered and said unto the governors, "Command  
"ye that they bring here to us a talent weight of lead,  
"and a great cauldron of brass, and seven pounds of clear  
"oil, and let them mix with these grease, and wax, and  
"ox fat, and large quantities of materials which will aid  
"the fire in burning, such as bitumen, and pitch, and tar,  
"and sulphur, and seven pounds of resin, and pieces of  
"wood from cedar, and fir, and pine trees, and brush

“wood in very large quantities;” and the governors commanded that everything for which they asked should be brought unto them. Then they brought the materials, and melted them together in the great cauldron, and poured them inside the iron plates which were over the bodies of Saints Paul and Philip, until the plates of iron were made to stick to their bodies; and they also poured over the outside of the plates, within which were the bodies of the Apostles, the lead which they had melted, and it rose upwards from their feet even to their heads. Now in order that the lead might flow freely both on one side and on the other, they dug a pit, and, having made the Apostles to stand | in it, they poured it over them. B. fol. 78a.  
col. 1.

Then the wise men took the Apostles out of the [Page 538] pit, and carried them and set them upon a pillar made of stout pine wood which was about five cubits high from the ground, and which was smeared with bitumen outside; and they nailed their feet to this wood with long spikes, and they set them in the gate of the garden which was entered by the four roads of the city, and they piled up wood round about the Apostles, that is to say, Paul and Philip. And on the outer face of the pile of wood which was heaped up round Saints Paul and Philip were vine branches and plants of flax, whereon the flowers still remained. Then Demetrius said unto the governors, “Send a herald round about all the city, so “that all the people may see the Apostles before we “burn them with fire;” and straightway the governors commanded them to appoint a herald, and to let them go round about in the great gate of the city and cry B. fol. 78a.  
col. 2.  
out, | saying, “Unto thee we speak, O people of this city,

"men and women, great and small, come ye all to the garden which is entered by the four roads of the city, that ye may see suspended the two philosophers who came into this city; for we have found that they were sorcerers, and murder took place in this city because of them." Now when the people heard the words of the heralds, they cried out in the city, [saying], "Gather yourselves together, O all of you, and come ye to the place where the Apostles are." And the children who were being instructed in wisdom by the Apostles came and gathered round the Apostles Paul and Philip—now they were twelve in number—and they wept and beat their cheeks, and said, "Woe be unto us, O our masters, by reason of this punishment which hath come upon you. Whence have ye found this [Page 539] punishment of a cruel and evil death, the like of which no man hath at any time seen, for such a penalty as this hath never before fallen upon any man?"

Then when the people of the city were gathered together, the governors of the city commanded them to kindle the fire about the Apostles; and when | they had set fire  
 B. fol. 78b. col. 1. to the vine branches and to the plants of flax wherefrom the flowers had not been removed, the first burnt fiercely in the heap of wood inside which were Paul and Philip, and the flames of fire mounted up above their bodies by reason of the abundance of the pitch, and sulphur, and bitumen, and tar, and resin, and wax; and some of the oil and other materials burst into mighty flames and blazed up until the whole pile was one great mass of flame, and the men of the city cried out, saying, "Woe be unto these miserable men." Then the Apostles made

supplication unto God, saying, "O our Lord Jesus Christ, "cast us not away from Thee, and reject not Thy servants. "Who shall have compassion upon the sons except their "Father? Thou art our strength, and our refuge, and our "helper in the day of our tribulation." Now all the people of the city wished to stone the councillors with stones, for the groanings of the Apostles and their supplications had come unto God, and the hearts of all the men of the city were mercifully disposed towards them. And one of the governors answered and said unto | the B. fol. 78b. people, "Bear patiently a little, and we will inform you col. 2. "what will happen;" and the scribe of the city quieted the people and commanded them to sit down in patience in their places for a little.

And it came to pass that when the tumult had quieted the governors sent guards into the house of Thêwôdàs, and brought out his wife and his son Theodore, who were dead, to the place where [Page 540] Satan, who had taken upon himself the form of the son of the king of Médôn, was sitting. Then the governors said unto the people, "Do not weep for these murderers, but "shed your tears for these who have been slain by "violence;" and when the people saw the wife of Thêwôdàs and her son stretched out dead, they took stones and cast them at the Apostles. Then Satan stood up among them and hardened their hearts against the servants of God, that is to say, Saints Paul and Philip. And the wife of Thêwôdàs and her son were stretched out dead, and all the men of the city were looking at them; and the governors thought that the Apostles Paul B. fol. 79a. and Philip were dead, and | they told the guards who were col. 1.

standing there to remove the fire from the bodies of the Apostles. Then Demetrius the smith drew nigh unto them and drew out the pegs and fastenings, wherewith they had nailed together the iron plates which surrounded the bodies of the Apostles; and when they opened the plates and removed them from their bodies their skin peeled off them and came away sticking to the plates, and it came off like the skin of an animal which is being flayed, and the blood of the Apostles dripped from their bodies upon the ground. Then the councillors of the city said unto them, "Are ye then still" alive, O "ye wicked and evil sorcerers, notwithstanding all these "tortures which we have heaped upon your bodies?" And Saints Paul and Philip answered and said unto them, "We are not sorcerers as ye think, for we destroy the "magical arts of Satan." Then the councillors commanded [the soldiers] to kindle the fire about them a second time; and when they had done so, behold, our Lord Jesus Christ appeared unto them coming down [Page 541] from heaven, and He extinguished | the flames of fire which  
 B. fol. 79a. were about them, and a cloud of light which was full of  
 col. 2. rain encircled the bodies of Saints Paul and Philip; and all those who saw this marvelled, and said, "If these "men had deserved this sentence of death they would "never have remained alive during all these days wherein "they have kept fires lighted round about their bodies." Now the governors would not allow the people to bury the wife of Thêwôdâs and her son in the earth, but they commanded them to anoint their bodies with myrrh and aloes, so that they might not decay, until they saw what would happen to the Apostles.

Then the governors cried unto Demetrius the smith of Artemis, and said unto him, "We call upon thee as a man of wisdom and knowledge to slay these two men, for, behold, they are alive until this present." And Demetrius answered and said unto them, "I know no other way of inflicting a cruel death upon them except this which I have already wrought upon them; but now I will devise another plan which I will carry out upon them, which is as follows. Let the soldiers stand at a distance from the Apostles and shoot arrows into them now that their skins are stripped off, and their flesh shall be torn in shreds, and shall be destroyed, and they shall die immediately." So the councillors commanded the soldiers to shoot arrows into the bodies of the Apostles, but our Lord Jesus Christ guarded them and covered them, and did not permit one arrow to touch them; and the soldiers stood there, shooting arrows at them for a long time, but they were protected by God, and no harm touched them. Then straightway the councillors and all the people of the city marvelled, and said, "Verily these men must be great [Page 542] magicians, for they do not die; and behold, they are preserved from the fire, and the arrows do no harm to their bodies." And Demetrius the smith answered and said unto the councillors, "I would have you to know now that I have nothing else left to do unto them, and I can obtain no power over them to kill them; for fire will not consume them, and arrows will not touch their bodies. But if ye will hearken unto me, send for Alexander, the governor of Caesarea, and let him come [here], for he will be able to slay them."

B. fol. 79b  
col. 1

And straightway the governors wrote a letter and  
 B. fol. 79b. gave it | unto a centurion that he might take it to Cae-  
 col. 2. sarea, and bring Alexander, the governor thereof, to  
 Iconium, that he might bring upon the Apostles the  
 penalty of death; and when the centurion had departed  
 to Caesarea he gave the letter to the governor. Now  
 when Alexander the governor had read it he commanded  
 them to make ready for him a ship wherein he might  
 embark and depart to the city of Iconium, and he set  
 out in the ship and in a few days arrived at the city of  
 Iconium; and when he met the councillors they told him  
 everything which had happened unto the Apostles. And  
 they informed him, moreover, saying, "Behold, we have  
 "had these two men under guard for many days, and we  
 "bound their hands and their feet in fetters, and we have  
 "no other punishment left which we can inflict upon  
 "them; and we have been unable to gain the mastery  
 "over them, either by wood, or stones, or arrows, or iron,  
 "or fire. Behold, it is now many days since they have  
 "been bound, and they have neither eaten food nor drunk  
 "water; and their bodies have been exposed to the heat  
 "of the sun by day, and to frost by night. And on ac-  
 "count of them Thêwôdâs killed his wife and his son."  
 And it came to pass when Alexander the governor heard  
 those things he marvelled at what the governors had  
 B. fol. 80a. said unto him, and he | said, "I wish to see these men;"  
 col. 1. [Page 543] and they said unto him, "Thou shalt see  
 "them in the morning."

And when the morning had come on the following  
 day, the councillors and Alexander the governor rose  
 up and came to the hall of judgment. Then straightway

Alexander the governor commanded his servant, saying, "Go unto these men, and loose their bonds, and bring them unto me;" and the servant of Alexander went to draw out from their feet the spikes whereby they were nailed upon the wood, when suddenly his hand fell powerless and clave unto the pieces of wood whereunto the feet of the Apostles were nailed, and he was unable to move it in any direction. And when the men who had gone with him came [back] to the governor, they made the matter known unto him, saying, "We never saw any man who was mightier than these two sorcerers;" and he answered and said unto them, "Behold, they do not deserve the penalty of death, for if they did they would not have remained alive during all these days, for although the fire blazed up against them they did not die. Peradventure it is the power of a god and not that of the children of men which worketh | in them. Rise B. fol. 80a. col. 2.

"up, and let us go unto them, so that we may see their works thoroughly, and may know how to pass sentence upon them." Thereupon the councillors rose up, with Alexander the governor, and all the men of the city who had come unto him, and took their seats in the hall of judgment; and they came unto the Apostles; and Alexander the governor commanded the governors, and all the men of the city who had come, to sit down, that he might [be able to] see the Apostles. Now Satan, who had taken upon himself the form of the son of the king of Médôn, had gone away to a distance from their place, for he was afraid of the voice of the Apostles [Page 544] Paul and Philip, and he went outside the city under the form of the chief councillor of the king of Médôn.

Then Alexander the governor rose up, and stood afar off, and looked at the Apostles, and he said unto them, "O ye men, tell me truly: who are ye? Whence come ye? And what is this report which I hear concerning you? Behold, the governors of the city say that  
 B. fol. 8ob. "a murder took place in this city | because of you." And  
 col. 1. the Apostles answered and said unto the governor, "We are the disciples of the Good God, Whose Name is called Jesus; and it is unseemly for us to seek after anything which appertaineth unto magic. We have killed no one, nay, it is our God Who at all times doeth good unto everyone who seeketh, and He it is Who maketh the lame to walk, and the deaf to hear, and the dumb to speak, and the sick to be healed, and the devils to be expelled, and the dead to be raised; and He forgiveth the sins of those who turn unto Him with repentance." Then the governor answered and said unto the Apostles, "If ye can do these things, we wish to see signs of them proceed from you, and then I also will believe in your God." And the Apostles Paul and Philip said unto him, "Ask from us whatever sign thou art prased to ask, that thou mayest know that our God is the God of righteousness, Who hath the power to do everything, and Who is the Maker of all created things." Then the governor answered and said unto the Apostles, "Behold, the wife  
 B. fol. 8ob. "of Thêwôdâs and her son Theodore | have died through  
 col. 2. "you, and I desire that ye ask God to raise them up again, for we wish to know the power [Page 545] of your God." Now in former days this governor Alexander was dwelling in the city of Rome, and he was there before the Emperor Nero passed sentence of death upon

Abbâ Peter, the chief of the Apostles, and condemned him to be crucified; and Alexander was a good man and he feared God, and he had embraced the faith of Christ some time before, when he was in the city of Rome with the Emperor, Nero by the hand of Abbâ Saint Peter. Then Philip and Paul answered and said unto Alexander the governor, "We see that thou art "filled with the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, and behold, His gift resteth in all thy heart. If thy heart "desireth this thing let them bring them (i. e., the dead "bodies) unto us, that thou mayest see the might of our "Lord Jesus Christ and that He may make His wonders "to appear in the city." And straightway they sent the guards, and they brought the dead body of Euphemia the wife of Thêwôdâs, and the dead body of his son Theodore, and they were carrying them | on a bed; and B. fol. 81a. col. 1. their kinsfolk were following after them weeping, for they did not know that the Apostles wished to raise them up from the dead, but they thought that the governor wished to see them, and to pass a sentence of death and destruction upon Paul and Philip because of them. And when they had brought their dead bodies [there] they laid them before the Apostles.

And it came to pass at that time that the hand of the servant of Alexander, which had cleaved to wood under the feet of the Apostles, was healed, and was opened, and he made haste and prostrated himself and bowed down at their feet, which he kissed in the presence of all the people, saying, "Verily, these men are the "servants of the [Page 546] Most High God, and they "teach the doctrine of life." And after this their bonds

were loosed, and the spikes which were driven through the soles of their feet, and by which they were fastened to the wood, were withdrawn, and immediately they walked on their feet to the place where the bodies lay.

Then Paul and Philip stood up and stretched out their  
B. fol. 81a. hands, and prayed, | saying, "O our Lord Jesus Christ,  
col. 2. "Who didst raise up the daughter of Jairus after she was  
"dead; and Who didst raise up the son of the widow,  
"and didst lay hold upon his coffin and say unto him,  
"'O young man, I say unto thee, arise,' and straightway  
"he rose up and Thou didst give him to his mother; O  
"Thou Who didst raise up Lazarus by the call of Thy  
"voice, saying, 'Lazarus, Lazarus, come forth,' whereupon  
"straightway he came forth from the grave after [he had  
"been there] four days; even so do Thou raise up these  
"dead bodies that all the men of this city may believe  
"in Thy Name, for unto Thee, and Thy Good Father,  
"and the Holy Spirit, belongeth glory for ever and ever.  
"Amen." And when they had finished their prayer, Paul  
took hold of the hand of Euphemia, and Philip of the  
hand of her son, and they said with one voice, "In the  
"Name of our Lord Jesus Christ the Nazarene, rise up  
"sound and whole." Then straightway they opened their  
eyes, and the breath returned unto them, and when they  
had risen up they sat holding the hands of the Apostles,  
who made them to stand up before all the people.

B. fol. 81b. And when the governor and all | the men of the  
col. 1. city saw [this], they fell down and worshipped at the  
feet of the Apostles, and they made entreaty unto them,  
saying, "O servants of the Most High God, remember  
"not everything which we have done against you, but

"have mercy upon us; [Page 547] what shall we do to  
 "be saved from our sins, and how can we become wor-  
 "thy of the gift of the grace of Christ?" Now Euphemia,  
 the wife of Thêwôdâs, and her son Theodore were sitting  
 at the feet of the Apostles. And Paul and Philip said  
 unto the councillors, "We only desire one thing, and  
 "that is for you to send and bring hither unto us your  
 "gods and their priests, so that we may try them and  
 "know whether they have any power in themselves or  
 "not." Then the councillors straightway sent after the  
 priests, and when they had come they said unto them,  
 "Go ye and bring hither your gods unto us." And the  
 priests answered and said unto the councillors, "We  
 "are not able to move the gods from their places." Then  
 the Apostles said unto the priests, "Then they are not  
 "gods, for if they were they could go wheresoever they  
 "desired;" and the priests were filled with anger, and  
 said unto the | Apostles, "Your speech betrayeth that ye B. fol. 81b.  
 "are deceivers. For our gods declared aforetime, and col. 2.  
 "told us, saying, 'Behold, these two men who have come  
 "into the city of Iconium are of the twelve sorcerers who  
 "follow Jesus the Nazarene, and they preach in His Name  
 "in every city, saying, These gods whom we worship  
 "are not gods.'" And whilst the priests were thus say-  
 ing unto them, there came down upon them a stroke  
 from heaven, that is to say, blackness, and mist, and  
 smoke, and darkness which could be touched, and they  
 became blind, and were in great tribulation, for they  
 stumbled about and fell down among the people. Now  
 when the councillors and Alexander the governor saw  
 what had happened, they fell down at the feet of the

Apostles, and they cried out, saying, [Page 548] "Verily  
 "your God is a God of righteousness, Who hath made  
 "the heavens, and the earth, and everything which is  
 "therein." Then the Apostles answered and said unto  
 Theodore, the son of Thêwôdâs, whom he had raised  
 from the dead, "Unto thee we speak, and unto thee we  
 "give the command, O young man, through whom and  
 "through whose mother salvation shall come unto the  
 B fol. 82a. "men of this city, Rise up, and enter into | the city, and  
 col. 1. "cry out, raising high thy voice towards the temple, and  
 "say unto the gods, 'O ye gods of this city, unto you I  
 "speak. Thus say the Apostles of the God of righteous-  
 "ness, that is to say, Jesus Christ, Rise up quickly, and  
 "'come unto the place wherein we are.'" And straightway  
 the young man rose up and went to the temple where  
 the idols were seated, and he spake unto them according  
 as the Apostles had told him; and when the idols heard  
 they came down from their thrones, and went after the  
 young man and came to the place wherein were the  
 Apostles. And when the councillors, and Alexander the  
 governor, and all the men of the city saw the silver bull  
 and the golden images going after the young man, they  
 cried out, saying, "There is no god except Jesus Christ,  
 "the Son of the Living God, the God of Paul and Philip."  
 Then straightway the Satan Diabolos, who had  
 taken upon himself the form of the son of the king of  
 Médôn, came and stood in the midst of the councillors,  
 and the second Satan also who was disguised as his  
 chief councillor, and said, "Be ye not astonished at this  
 B fol. 82a. "poor deed which the two men have wrought, for in-  
 col. 2. "deed it is nothing | but the work of sorcery." And

again the Satan, who had taken upon himself the form of the son of the king of Mêdôn, said unto them, "If ye  
"do not do unto them according to what my father  
"wrote unto you concerning them, [Page 549] and if ye  
"do not deliver them into my hand that I may take  
"them to my city that I may do unto them according  
"to my will, I will go unto my father without them; and  
"when my father heareth that ye have not killed them  
"he will be enraged at you, and he will send and destroy  
"this city and will make an end of the people [thereof]  
"with the sharp sword." Now when the councillors heard  
these words they were terrified and were greatly afraid,  
and they withdrew until they were alone, and said, "Let  
"us consider what we shall do unto these two men; we  
"do not wish to deliver them over into the hand of the  
"king, because we have seen mighty deeds [come] from  
"them, but, on the other hand, we are afraid of his wrath  
"lest he send and lay waste this city according to what  
"his son saith." And Alexander the governor answered  
and said unto the councillors, "Do nothing whatsoever  
"until ye have spoken unto Paul and Philip, and what  
"they | say unto us that let us do. And moreover, IB, fol. 82b.  
"will go unto the king [of Mêdôn] and will hold converse col. 1.  
"with him concerning this matter, and I will make you  
"to be blameless, and their God in Whom ye have believed  
"shall do what is good for you." Now the words were  
good in the sight of the councillors, and they called Paul  
and Philip, and said unto them, "Know ye that the king  
"[of Mêdôn] hath sent his son into this city on your ac-  
"count?" and the Apostles answered and said unto them,  
"We knew this from the time when ye put us in fetters,

"and placed us within the plates of iron, and the planks  
 "of wood, and nailed us to the wood; but now, do ye  
 "according to your desire so that ye may be blameless,  
 "and it will cause us no sorrow." Then the counsellors  
 turned and [Page 550] told Diabolos and the Satans to  
 go unto the Apostles; and when the Apostles saw Dia-  
 bolos afar off they knew him. And Philip said, "Behold,  
 "he that stirreth up war cometh unto us; let us do that  
 B. fol. 82b. "which | God commandeth us;" and when Diabolos drew  
 col. 2. nigh unto Paul and Philip he knew their counsel, and  
 straightway he took the form of a flame of fire, and  
 departed, and turned his face away from them in the  
 presence of the councillors and of the men of the city.  
 And Philip rose up and cast his girdle about the neck  
 of Satan, and holding him fast thereby he dragged him  
 along, and Satan's appearance changed from the simili-  
 tude of the son of the king of Médôn into that of a  
 black bull; then straightway he bound him to the silver  
 bull and the golden images which the men of that city  
 worshipped and believed in, and he tied them together.  
 And Paul drew nigh and smote upon the ground with his  
 foot, and the earth opened her mouth and swallowed  
 them up, and they went down into the depth of the  
 abyss, whilst the councillors and all the men of the city  
 were looking on at them. And when the people saw  
 what had happened they lifted up their voices, saying,  
 "Gods in the form of men have come unto us." Now  
 the priests who had not believed became blind, and they  
 besought the multitude to guide them unto the place where  
 B. fol. 83a. the Apostles were, that they might bring upon them the  
 col. 1. mercy of | Christ and the gift of His grace. Then certain

men among the multitude, taking them by their hands, led them to the place wherein the Apostles were, and the seven priests fell down at their feet, and said unto them, "Forgive us, O servants of the Living God the Lord, and "reward not us according to all our shameful words." And when Paul and Philip saw their faith, they laid their hands [Page 551] upon their eyes, and straightway they could see, and they followed the Apostles, and ceased not to minister unto them.

Now when Thêwôdâs, the prince of the governors of the city, saw the mighty acts of God and His wonders which Paul and Philip were doing in the city, and when he saw his wife Euphemia and his son Theodore whom the Apostles had raised from the dead, he went into his house with his soldiers, and brought forth all his possessions and laid them at the feet of the Apostles, and he bowed down before them, and wept, saying, "Forgive your | servant, and remember not all the evil which I B. fol. 83a. "have done against you, but let your mercy come unto col. 2. "me." Then the Apostles took hold of his hands, and said unto him, "Rise up, and fear not, for these things "have come from God, so that all the men of this city "may be saved." And straightway Paul and Philip smote the earth with their feet, and it opened, and a great spring of water welled up, and the Apostles baptized all the men of that city, and the councillors, and Alexander the governor. And they built a church for them and taught them the ordinances [thereof], and how to offer up the Offering, and taught them the divinity of God; and they appointed Theodore, the son of Thêwôdâs, to be their bishop, and they made the seven priests to be

priests and deacons in the church. Now after the Apostles had lived in that city for three months all the people who dwelt therein believed. And Paul and Philip blessed Alexander the governor and all the men of the city, and  
 B. fol. 83b. they commanded them to be strong in the right | faith  
 col. 1. in the Name of God the Father, the Sustainer of all things, [Page 552] and in the Name of His Son Jesus Christ, and in the Name of the Holy Spirit, One God. And they made them to be strong in the faith and fear of God, and they ordained fasts at stated times for them, and they gave them the Law of Moses, and [the books of] the Prophets, and the Holy Gospel, and the Ordinances of the Apostles, and their Canons. Then the two Apostles Paul and Philip returned to Jerusalem, and all the men of the city accompanied them on their way and brought them to the sea, where the Apostles embarked in a ship. And Alexander returned to his city, praising God for the mighty deeds and wonders which he had seen [performed] by the blessed Apostles Paul and Peter. Praise be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Spirit, now, henceforth, and for ever and ever. Amen.

## CHAPTER XII.

AND AFTER THIS SAINT PAUL WENT FORTH FROM JERUSALEM to go and preach unto the Gentiles of the  
 B. fol. 83b. country into which he had entered, and as | he was  
 col. 2. on his way, behold, our Lord Jesus Christ appeared unto him, and said, "O Paul, My chosen one, behold, I have "filled thee with the Holy Spirit, the Comforter, and thou "shalt receive much suffering for My Name's sake, O My

"beloved Paul, yea more than that of all the [other]  
 "Apostles. I will not send thee unto any one stated  
 "portion [of the world], nor unto any one defined place,  
 "but I will send thee everywhere that thou mayest preach  
 "therein. Thy life shall be long in the world, and thou  
 "shalt find much labour among all peoples. Thou shalt  
 "be filled with the spirit [Page 553] of understanding and  
 "wisdom, which shall exceed that of Solomon, and the  
 "whole world shall be filled with thy doctrine and wisdom.  
 "Verily I say unto thee, O My chosen one Paul, that  
 "wheresoever My Gospel shall be preached in all  
 "the world, [the people] shall declare openly, after the  
 "manner of a herald, thy doctrines, and thy words, and  
 "thy ministrations, so that by them the whole world  
 "shall be taught and admonished, among the Jews, and  
 "Greeks, and Gentiles, and [the nations of] Persia, and  
 "the Barbarians, and [the peoples of] Ethiopia, and among  
 "all the heathen, for | the whole world is the portion B. fol. 84a.  
 "of thy preaching, O My chosen one. And among all col. 1.  
 "those who believe thou shalt be called the tenth part  
 "and the third part in the number of the Apostles;<sup>1</sup> and  
 "fear thou not, O My chosen one, for I will be with thee  
 "in every part of the world whithersoever thou goest.  
 "Thy brethren the Apostles shall sit upon twelve thrones,  
 "and shall judge the Twelve Tribes of Israel; and thou  
 "shalt be added unto their number, and thou shalt be the  
 "thirteenth [Apostle]. O My beloved Paul, I swear unto  
 "thee by Myself that all those who shall cry unto thee  
 "in their affliction, whether it be man or woman, I will

<sup>1</sup> I. e., the thirteenth Apostle.

“deliver them out of their tribulation, and will make them  
 “to rejoice. And those who have committed sin, when  
 “having repented they cry unto Me, saying, ‘O God of  
 “‘Saint Paul, forgive us our transgressions’, I will for-  
 “give. And whosoever shall build a church in thy name,  
 “or shall commemorate thy festival, or shall give alms in  
 “thy name, or shall receive strangers, or clothe the naked  
 B. fol. 84a. “in thy name, or | shall write the history of thy strife,  
 col. 2. “and give it to a church that they may read therein, or  
 “shall dedicate an offering and cause the same to be  
 “handed down [after him], will I bless, and I will bless  
 “the children of his house, and his goods, and I will give  
 “his reward unto him a hundredfold in this world, and in  
 “that [Page 554] which is to come life everlasting.” And  
 having said these words [our Lord] saluted his mouth  
 and ascended into the heavens in great glory. Then  
 Saint Paul went on his way rejoicing, and having jour-  
 neyed round about he came to the city which is called  
 Gâhlëyâ, which is, being interpreted, “Folly”.

### CHAPTER XIII.

HEARKEN UNTO ME, O YE BELIEVING PEOPLE, AND  
 I WILL RELATE UNTO YOU THE BLESSED STORY OF WHAT  
 GOD WROUGHT BY THE HANDS OF SAINT PAUL, THE  
 TONGUE OF OIL, THE LAMP OF THE CHURCH, THE HEALER  
 OF OUR SOULS AND BODIES, WHO TRAVELLED INTO EVERY  
 CITY (*or* COUNTRY) SEEKING AFTER THE SHEEP THAT  
 WERE LOST, SO THAT HE MIGHT BRING THEM BACK INTO  
 THE PASTURE OF GOD.

Now as Saint Paul was travelling about and preach-  
 ing he passed by a great city, wherein was a lofty and

mighty fortress (*or* palace) | which was built of marble, B. fol. 84b.  
 and [the people thereof] had protected it with plates of col. 1.  
 red brass; now this city was exceedingly beautiful, and  
 there were numerous streams and trees therein. Now  
 when Saint Paul saw it he marvelled at the beauty there-  
 of, and he said, "I would that I knew what god the people  
 "of this city worship; can it be that they worship idols?"  
 And again he said, "Thou, O God, art compassionate  
 "unto those who serve Thee, and who worship Thee, and  
 "Thou pourest out Thy mercy upon Thy servants, good  
 "and bad [alike]." And as he was marvelling at the  
 beauty of the city and at its exalted position, a certain  
 man came out therefrom and walked about the ways  
 thereof; and Saint Mâr Paul met him, and said unto him,  
 "Peace be unto thee, brother;" and the man answered  
 and said unto him, "And upon thee be peace." Then  
 Saint Paul asked him, [Page 555] saying, "O my brother,  
 "what is this city called?" And he said unto him, "Its  
 "name is Gâhlëyâ;" then Saint Paul said in his heart,  
 "If the name of this city be Gâhlëyâ, the people thereof  
 "must be fools, for the interpretation of [the name]  
 "Gâhlëyâ is | Folly". And again Saint Paul answered and B. fol. 84b.  
 said unto him, "My brother, whom do they worship in col. 2.  
 "this city?" And the man said unto him, "They worship  
 "the great goddess Artemis." Now when Saint Paul  
 heard this he was exceedingly sorry for the city, the  
 people of which were unbelievers, and he said unto the  
 man, "I wish to enter into the city," but the man said  
 unto him, "The people of this city will not allow thee to  
 "enter, because thou art a stranger." And Saint Paul  
 said unto him, "May not strangers enter therein?" and

the man said unto him, "They may not enter in." Then Saint Paul said unto him, "Why may not strangers enter therein?" And the man said unto him, "Because we know that there have gone forth from Galilee twelve men who travel two by two in every country, and who preach a God Whose Name is Jesus, Whom the Jews crucified upon a wooden cross and slew. And these men com-

B. fol. 85a. "mand the rich to distribute their possessions among | the  
col. 1. "poor, and they order him that hath a wife to put her  
away and to live in purity; for this reason the gates of  
this city are closed. And they have set guards on the  
upper part of the fortress, and have placed there in-  
struments for casting stones the whole day long. Now  
these guards live on the upper part of the fortress, and  
they keep watch on this side and on that, and when  
they see a stranger drawing nigh unto the city they cast  
stones at him to prevent him [Page 556] from entering  
therein." And when Saint Paul heard this he sorrowed  
with a great sorrow for that city, and for those who  
dwelt in it; and the man went on his way.

Now whilst Saint Paul was pondering these things in his mind he saw two men on the road to the city, and he made haste to meet them, [and he found that] they were Peter and Andrew his brother; and behold, they had come from that city, and when he saw them he saluted them with a spiritual salutation, and said unto them, "Whence come ye?" And they said unto him, "From this city which thou seest, for we drew nigh unto

B. fol. 85a. "the gates thereof and were wishing to enter | therein.  
col. 2. "And the men there enquired of us, saying, 'Whence  
[come] ye?' and we said unto them, 'We are strangers;'

"and straightway the guards lifted up their slings and hurled stones at us and would not allow us to enter therein." And it came to pass that when Saint Paul heard these words from them, his mind woke up like a lion that roareth to rend prey, and he said unto them, "O my brethren, by the good pleasure of God I will contrive some means whereby I shall enter into this city, and I will make the men thereof to come forth and seek you, and they shall receive you, and shall also bring you into the city. And when God hath prepared the way for us, and we have entered therein, that which God hath spoken unto us we will speak, for our Lord and Master saith unto us in the Holy Gospel, 'Where two or three are gathered together in My Name there I will be also in the midst;' but go ye to these trees and rest there, until I go and obtain information about this city."

Then Peter and Andrew did according to what Saint Paul had told them. And by the good pleasure of God there came along two men by | another road, and they B. fol. 85b had with them the apparel which the accursed [Page 557] col. 1. priests and worshippers of the idols which are in the temple of Artemis wear therein; and Saint Paul said unto them, "My brethren, whither go ye?" And they said unto him, "We are men who make the apparel of the priests, and we are now travelling about from one temple of the gods to another, that we may sell our work unto the priests who live therein." Then Saint Paul said unto them, "And I on my part have come out of a temple, and am seeking to buy raiment such as that which ye have with you, for I am a priest;" and those men sold

him raiment, and Saint Paul bought it from them and arrayed himself therein, and the men went on their way. Now when Saint Paul had arrayed himself in this apparel, his heart grew strong, and he went into this city, and he said, "O my Lord Jesus Christ, "Who didst make the light to rise upon me when I was "going into the city of Damascus, and didst hold converse with me, though I am utterly unworthy, do Thou "prepare my way that I may come into this city, and "may preach Thy Holy Name [therein]." Then Saint Paul went on until he came | to the city, and when he stood up by the gates the watchmen saw that he was dressed in the apparel of the priests, and they came down quickly, and opened the gates for him, and brought him into the city with honour, saying, "Come in, O our lord." And Saint Paul said unto them, "Let one of you come "with me to [the governor in] the hall of judgment, for "I have been sent unto him with the words of a message "by those who have dominion in the temple of the king." Now one of the watchmen belonged to the servants of the governor of the city, and he went with Saint Paul until he brought him to the hall of judgment, and by the good pleasure of God he found the governor sitting at the council of magistrates in the midst of [Page 558] the city, and all the nobles of the city were gathered together unto him. And when they saw Saint Paul coming towards them dressed in the apparel of the priests they all rose up and received him. And they bowed down before him, thinking that he was [one] of the priests of the temple of the king, and they made him to sit upon a lofty throne, and they sat in a low place at his feet.

B. fol. 85b.  
col. 2.

Then Saint Paul | said unto them, "I am the chief of the B. fol. 86a.  
 "priests, and I minister continually unto the gods who col. 1.  
 "are in the temple of the king; and last night the gods  
 "appeared unto me, and sent me unto you, and com-  
 "manded me to say that which I would say unto you."  
 And the governor of the city and the nobles thereof  
 answered and said unto him, "Speak, O master, and  
 "declare that which the gods have commanded thee, and  
 "we will hearken and be subject thereunto." Then Saint  
 Paul said unto them, "The gods commanded me last  
 "night that I should speak unto you thus:—There shall come  
 "unto you two men of the men of Galilee, companions of  
 "the Galilean, against Whom the Jews rose up and Whom  
 "they slew; and these men shall declare unto you that  
 "this Galilean is God; and that He hath commanded  
 "them to make every man to separate himself from his  
 "wife; and that He hath commanded the rich to distribute  
 "their goods among the poor; and moreover, they will  
 "command [you] not to worship the gods of the king.  
 "And the gods have commanded me to pass a stern  
 "sentence of judgment upon them, and to drive them  
 "forth into the uttermost parts of the | city as befitteth B. fol. 86a.  
 "them." And the governor and the elders of the city col. 2.  
 said with one voice, "Have the gods appeared unto thee  
 "in very truth and spoken [thus]? Behold, these two men  
 "came to the city this morning and wished to enter in,  
 "but the watchmen prevented them from doing so, and  
 "cast [Page 559] stones at them."

Now when Saint Paul heard [these words], he rose quickly, being filled with wrath and anger, and he said unto them, "Send [men] with me to take me out of the

“city, that I may seek for them and may bring them  
“back into this hall of judgment, and may bring upon  
“them everything which the gods have commanded me.”  
Then the governor sent his soldiers to seek for Peter and  
Andrew and to bind them and to bring them back into  
the hall of judgment, according as Saint Paul had com-  
manded; and the soldiers went out quickly on the road  
upon which the watchmen told them that the two men  
had gone, and they went on seeking for them with deli-  
gence until they came unto the place wherein were the  
Apostles. And the soldiers said unto them, “Whence  
B. fol. 86b. “are | ye?” And Peter said unto them, “We are men of  
col. 1. “Galilee;” and when the soldiers heard these words from  
them, they laid hold upon the disciples, and bound them,  
and threw chains round their necks, and at length they  
brought them into the city. Then the rumour went  
abroad throughout the whole city that the two men had  
arrived who belonged to the twelve men from the country  
of Galilee, who led men astray from the worship of the  
gods, and who said that Jesus the Nazarene, Whom [the  
Jews] slew, is indeed God, and who command men to  
separate themselves from their wives, and who command  
the rich to distribute their goods among the poor. And  
all those who were in the regions round about the city,  
both men and women, and great and small, gathered  
themselves together and came into the hall of judgment.  
Now when Saint Paul saw the great number of the multi-  
tude, and that the soldiers had brought Peter and Andrew  
in bonds, [Page 560] he prayed within himself, saying,  
B. fol. 86b. “Behold, O my Lord | Jesus Christ, Thou seest our poor  
col. 2. “estate, and Thou seest this beautiful city and that all

"the people who dwell therein are bound under the yoke  
 "of Satan the Enemy; we beseech Thee, O Lord, to help  
 "us, and do Thou turn them into the right faith. Thou hast  
 "said unto us, O Lord, with Thine own mouth of righte-  
 "ousness, that 'Wheresoever two or three are gathered  
 "together in My Name there will I be in their midst',  
 "and Thou hast said unto us Thy servants likewise, 'Be-  
 "hold, I send you forth like sheep among wolves, be ye  
 "'wise as the serpent, and harmless as the dove.'"

And when Paul had finished his prayer he turned  
 his face towards Peter and Andrew, and said unto them,  
 "What are your names? From what city are ye? Of  
 "what nation and tribe are ye? And for what purpose  
 "have ye come unto our city?" Then Peter and Andrew  
 said unto him, "We are Galileans, and we have come from  
 "the holy city of Jerusalem; we are Twelve in number,  
 "and we are disciples of the Good God Whose Name is  
 "Jesus Christ. And our Lord | hath commanded us and B. fol. 87a.  
 "taught us to go forth into all the world and to preach col. 1.  
 "the Holy Gospel." And Saint Paul said unto them, "Is  
 "it true [what] the gods have declared unto me concern-  
 "ing you, that ye will not cease from your evil work, that  
 "ye separate men from their wives, that ye command the  
 "rich to become poor, and that ye make a stir in all the  
 "world, saying, 'The great God, our God, hath sent us to  
 "'preach the Gospel in all the world?' Tell us now, what  
 "is the Gospel? and declare unto us what is therein."  
 Now Saint Paul said this wishing to make them to declare  
 the [Page 561] Gospel, and to pour the words thereof

1 St. Matthew x. 16.

into the ears of the multitude. Then Peter rejoiced at this, and opening his mouth he began to declare the Gospel from the beginning even unto the end, and Paul meanwhile made prayer and supplication unto God that He would open the hearts of the men of the city to the knowledge of Him, and that He would confirm the words of the Holy Gospel in their breasts. And when Peter

B. fol. 87a. col. 2. had made an end | of declaring the words of the Gospel, and how our Lord Jesus Christ came down into the world from heaven; and how He was conceived and brought forth by the Holy Virgin Mary; and how He was baptized and preached the Gospel of the kingdom of heaven, and worked miracles; and how He suffered in the flesh by His own will, and by the good pleasure of His Father and the Holy Spirit, that He might redeem us; and how He died, and was buried, and rose from the dead on the third day; and how He ascended into heaven, and sat at the right hand of His Father; and how He will come again in His glory, with all His angels, to judge the quick and the dead, and to reward every man according to his work; then he began to curse the idols which have no breath (*or* spirit) in them, saying, "They are graven stones, "the work of the hand of man, and things which are "made with implements of iron; they have mouths, and "speak not; eyes have they, and see not; ears have they, "and hear not; noses have they, and smell not; feet have

B. fol. 87b. col. 1. "they, and walk not; they speak not | with their throats; "and there is no breath in their mouths. May all those "who make them become like unto them, and all those "who put their trust in them!"<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See Psalm cxv. 5 ff.

And Saint Paul said unto them, "Is it true, as  
"I hear, that ye blaspheme [Page 562] the gods? I have  
"just heard with mine own ears and I have seen with  
"mine own eyes everything which ye have said in  
"your perversity." Then Paul commanded that Peter and  
Andrew should be made to stand between four soldiers,  
and that they should scourge them with whips made of  
untanned leather, and meanwhile he wept with the eyes  
of his heart, and he made supplication, saying, "I beseech  
"Thee, O God the Father, Thou Sustainer of all things,  
"Thou Father of our Lord and Redeemer Jesus Christ,  
"as Thou didst send Thine angel unto the city of Babylon  
"and didst deliver the Three Children from the furnace  
"of fire, even so at this present, O Lord, send Thine  
"angel to these my fathers the disciples, and remove  
"[them] out of the hands of these sinners so that the  
"suffering of scourging may not come upon them, and  
"so that Thy Holy Name may be glorified in this great  
"city; to Thee be glory for | ever and ever. Amen." B. fol. 87b.  
col. 2.  
And when Saint Paul had finished his prayer he saw  
the angel of God standing behind the backs of the saints,  
and in his hand was a golden staff upon which was a  
cross of precious stones, and he was holding back the  
stripes from the bodies of the saints. Now when the  
soldiers were wearied with scourging them they cried  
out to the governor, and said unto him, "We cannot  
"overcome these men, for to scourge them is as if we  
"were to scourge stones and iron;" and the governor said  
unto Saint Paul, "Send them to the prison-house, for the  
"time for eating hath arrived." Then Saint Paul said  
unto him, "I swear by the gods of the king that I will

"neither eat nor drink this day, nor take any pleasure whatsoever, until I have taken the vengeance of the gods "on these unbelieving men." And when the governor heard these words from him he went into his house, and left Saint Paul in [Page 563] the hall of judgment.

Now by the good pleasure of God there died at  
 B. fol. 88a. that hour one of the great princes of the nobles | of that  
 col. 1. city whom the king loved exceedingly, and all the people of the city who worshipped idols were subject unto him. He was an exceedingly kind and merciful man, for he fed the hungry, and clothed the naked, and remitted to the debtor his debt when he had not wherewithal to pay; and he visited those who were in prison, and sent his servants unto them with everything which they wanted, for he had great riches; and he had also many children, and servants without number; and because of him (i. e., his death) there came into the city much grief that day. Now the disciples were in the prison-house; and Saint Paul ceased not to pray that night and to make supplication unto God that He would turn the hearts of the men of that city into submission unto Him, and in like manner Saints Peter and Andrew, who were in the prison-house, made unto God the whole night through petitions which were like unto those of Saint Paul. And when the light had risen the governor came with all the nobles  
 B. fol. 88a. of the city unto Saint Paul | in the hall of judgment, and  
 col. 2. told him of their sorrow because their companion and friend had died. Then straightway Saint Paul gave thanks unto God in his heart, and said unto the governor, "The "gods have given me power over these Galileans, and I "shall be able to destroy them by a right judgment, for

"they say that their God doth raise the dead, and open  
 "the eyes of the blind, and make the lame to walk, and  
 "cleanse the lepers." Then Saint Paul commanded them  
 to bring Saints Peter and Andrew from the prison-house,  
 and he also [Page 564] commanded them to bring the  
 dead man before them; and he said unto them, "Ye say  
 "that your God raiseth the dead and healeth every kind  
 "of sickness by your hands;" and the disciples said unto  
 him, "Verily it is well known." And Saint Paul said  
 unto them, "Behold, there is before you a dead man  
 "who died yesterday, and his people wish to bury | B. fol. 88b.  
 "him; if ye beseech your God, and He maketh him to col. 1.  
 "live again and to appear again unto his wife and  
 "children, we all will believe in your God, but if ye do  
 "not raise him up we will burn you with fire in this city."  
 And the governor and all the nobles of the city who  
 were with him spake even as Saint Paul spake. And  
 Saint Peter said, "I can do this by the might of my God."

Then the governor ordered them to bring nigh the  
 dead man, who was [lying] on the bier swathed ready  
 for burial, before the holy disciples, and his wife, and his  
 children, and his servants; and all the men of the city  
 came likewise, and they were all weeping. And Saint  
 Paul answered and said unto Saints Peter and Andrew,  
 "Behold him that died! Beseech ye your God that He  
 "may raise him up." Then straightway Saints Peter and  
 Andrew rose up, and having made the multitude to hold  
 their peace, they stood by the bier of the dead man,  
 and turned their faces towards the East, and they  
 stretched out their hands | to heaven, and cried out, B. fol. 88b.  
 saying, "O our Lord and God, Jesus Christ, Who didst col. 2.

"raise up Lazarus from the dead, after he had been [in  
 "the tomb] four days, as soon as Thou didst call unto  
 "him, saying, 'Lazarus, Lazarus, come forth!' and when  
 "he heard Thee he came forth alive; and Who didst  
 "also raise up the son of the widow of Nain, [Page 565]  
 "when he was [lying] on his bier and they were carry-  
 "ing him out to bury him, for Thou didst take hold of  
 "his hand, and didst raise him up, and didst give him  
 "to his mother alive, and she took him and brought him  
 "into her house rejoicing; hearken Thou unto the prayer  
 "and petition of Thy servants who call upon Thee. Of  
 "Thy good pleasure, O Lord, let the dead man who hath  
 "been set before us rise up, so that all this multitude  
 "may believe in Thy Holy Name. And unto Thee, and  
 "unto Thy Father, the Good and Merciful One, and unto  
 "the Holy Spirit, be glory for ever and ever. Amen."  
 And Saint Paul also was making entreaty and suppli-  
 cation in his heart unto God for the salvation of the  
 men | of that city, and for the benefit of their souls.

B. fol. 89a.  
 col. 1.

And it came to pass that, when the disciples had said  
 "Amen," the dead man rose up from the bier, having  
 come to life. Then Andrew made haste and loosed  
 his burial swathings, and the dead man stood up be-  
 fore the governor and before the men of the city;  
 and all the men who were gathered together mar-  
 velled greatly, and they cried out with a loud voice,  
 saying, "Verily there is no god except the God of  
 "the strangers, Saints Peter and Andrew." And Saint  
 Peter drew nigh unto the dead man, and made over  
 him the sign of the cross, and said, "In the Name  
 "of Jesus, let there pass away from thee the fear of

"death and of the strength of the judgment which is  
"therein."

Then the man who had been raised up from the  
dead fell upon his face at the feet of the holy dis-  
ciples, and embraced them, saying, "Blessed be the hour  
"wherein ye came into this city." And Saint Peter spake  
unto him, saying, "What didst thou see in Gehenna?"  
Then the man who had been dead said, "It were | better B. fol. 89a.  
"for man not to be born on the earth, for, by my faith, col. 2.  
"I say [Page 566] that I never saw any punishment  
"greater than that of the worshippers of idols. When  
"my soul went forth from my body the angels of wrath  
"received it, and took it to the punishment of Gehenna.  
"There I saw the chief of the angels of Gehenna, and  
"the angels of punishment standing round about in fear  
"and trembling, and their appearance was terrible. And  
"I saw also a river of flaming fire, and their chief com-  
"manded his servants to put my soul in the place where  
"the worshippers of idols are punished until he could  
"make them to know the power of God their Creator;  
"so they took my soul straightway, without mercy, and  
"they brought me unto that fearful place. And whilst I  
"was undergoing punishment there I looked at you, O  
"my lords, and saw you following a young man with an  
"exceedingly bright face, and his radiance was brighter  
"than that of the sun in his splendour. In his right hand  
"he held a staff of gold, on the top of which was a  
"cross, and he came unto the place | wherein I was. B. fol. 89b.  
"Then he stretched out the staff which was in his hand col. 1.  
"and with it he touched the fire, and the blazing fire  
"changed its form, and darkness appeared; and the light

"appeared, and all those who were torturing me were scattered. And moreover, I heard the voice of a company of angels who were offering thanksgiving unto the Name of the Lord, saying, 'Blessed be the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Spirit.' Then the young man commanded one of those who were ascribing blessings unto Him to take me by my hand, and he delivered me over unto you as ye see me at this present. And I beseech you, O my masters, to dispose of me according to what ye wish, only I make supplication unto you that ye send me not back unto this punishment of torture." And it came to pass that when these words came to the [Page 567] ears of the multitude, they lifted up their voices and glorified God.

Then Paul made a sign to the multitude that they should hold their peace, and he said unto the disciples in the presence of the governor and of all the elders of the city, "Good is the work which ye have just performed; ye have besought your God, | and He hath raised  
 B. fol. 89b. col. 2. "up this dead man. But it is not meet that the king, or the judge, or the governor, should accept one witness, for only by the testimony of two or three shall every thing be established." And Paul said unto the judge, "Is there in the city any man upon whom Satan hath a hold?" Then the governor said unto him, "My brother hath a son whom for the last thirty years Satan hath kept dumb, and several times this Satan hath taken him up into a high place, wishing to hurl him down therefrom and to kill him. In like manner he wisheth to cast him into the fire and burn him, and similarly, he would throw him into the sea, and had it not been

"for the eight servants who guard him, four by day and  
 "four by night, this Satan would have destroyed him."  
 Then Saint Paul said unto the disciples Peter and Andrew,  
 "Heard ye what the governor hath said concerning his  
 "brother's son? If now ye will ask your God to cast out  
 "this Satan and heal this young man, and if ye compel  
 "the earth to be subject unto you, and it open | its mouth, B. fol. 90a.  
 "and ye cast this Satan down into the depths of Sheol col. 1.  
 "with all these men looking on, then I and the governor,  
 "and all these men, will believe in your God." And  
 straightway the governor and all his men cried out, say-  
 ing, "We believe in the God of these strangers who have  
 "raised up for us the dead man." Then Peter and An-  
 drew stretched out their hands forthwith [Page 568] to  
 heaven, and they made supplication, saying, "We beseech  
 "Thee, O God, the Father of our Lord and Redeemer  
 "Jesus Christ, to send to us in this hour Michael the  
 "Archangel, who grasped in his right hand the prophet  
 "Habakkuk and took him from the land of Judah into  
 "the pit [of lions] in Babylon of the Chaldees to Daniel  
 "the prophet. And he had with him food which he had  
 "prepared for his harvestmen who were in the land of  
 "Judah, and Daniel ate and drank, and Habakkuk re-  
 "turned unto his fields in that same hour. Yea, O Lord,  
 "hear us in this hour, and send Thine angel to pass the  
 "sentence of doom upon the Satan who liveth in the B. fol. 90a.  
 "son of the governor's brother, and give us strength, O col. 2.  
 "Lord, and make us mighty to cast him out from this  
 "young man, and let us make him to have his abode in  
 "Gehenna, that these men may know that Thou art the  
 "God of heaven and of earth, and that their faith may

"be confirmed in Thee." And Saint Paul was meanwhile making petitions unto God in his heart similar to those which Peter and Andrew were making.

And it came to pass that when they had said "Amen," they brought [unto them] the young man whom Satan had hold upon, and he was much moved and Satan was torturing him. And the angel of God vexed the Satan sorely, and the Satan made the young man to beat upon the ground with his feet, and to foam at the mouth like a wild boar, and he leaped upon the men and began to bite and tear their bodies, and to rend their garments; and when they saw the young man acting in this wise they all fled. Then Saint Andrew made haste and went forth from the place where the men were gathered together, and he made the sign [of the cross] on the ground round about them, saying, "In the Name

B. fol. 90b. "of our Lord Jesus Christ, | let no one go forth from  
col. 1. "this multitude, neither man nor woman, and let them  
"not remove themselves from the place [Page 569] wherein  
"they are standing, and let them not take away the soles  
"of their feet from this place into any other, until they  
"have seen the wonderful thing which God will do." And  
it was with the people even as Saint Andrew said, for  
the feet of all the men clave to the ground where  
they were standing, and there fell upon them fear and  
dismay, and they marvelled more than they did at the  
man who was raised up from the dead. Then they cried  
out with a loud voice, saying, "We beseech Thee, O  
"God of Andrew, to set us free, for the soles of our feet  
"have become like unto dry stone;" and Andrew said  
unto them, "When the young man hath been healed, and

"ye have seen Satan going forth from him and descend-  
 "ing into Gehenna before you, then straightway shall ye  
 "be set free, and ye shall go where ye will. Fear ye  
 "not." And meanwhile Paul was beseeching God in his  
 heart, and making supplication unto Him, that He would  
 heal | the young man. Then Saint Paul said unto Saints B. fol. 90b.  
 Peter and Andrew, "Your work is right, but in the end col. 2.  
 "ye must have three witnesses. As the first ye have  
 "raised up the dead man; and as the second ye made  
 "the feet of the men to cleave to the earth; but when  
 "ye cast out the unclean Satan from this young man,  
 "and all the multitude shall see him going down into  
 "Gehenna, then will I myself believe, and I will deny the  
 "gods of the king, and I will forsake the priesthood and  
 "this honourable rank wherein I live, and I will bow  
 "down to your God and believe in your faith, I, and the  
 "governor, and the elders [of the city], and all [this]  
 "multitude." And straightway the governor and all the  
 multitude cried out, saying, "We will believe in your  
 "God, and in your true faith, [Page 570] but we beseech  
 "you, O servants of God, to set loose our feet." Then  
 Saint Peter answered and said unto Saint | Andrew, "Dost B. fol. 91a.  
 "thou wish to sow for me to reap? Or shall I sow and col. 1.  
 "thou reap after me?" And Saint Andrew said unto him,  
 "Thou, O our father and master, shalt sow first of all,  
 "and I will reap after thee." Then Saint Peter drew  
 nigh unto the young man whom Satan was making to  
 move to this side and to that, and to go from one  
 place to the other, at the same time making him to utter  
 cries and to foam at the mouth like a [wild] boar, but  
 the Satan which was dwelling upon him was unable to

flee, for the holy disciples were preventing him from departing, that the work of God might be made manifest in him. And straightway Saint Peter cried out, saying, "In the Name of my Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God, "Who is from of old, Who was crucified upon the wood "of the cross in the days of Pontius Pilate, come forth "from this young man, and let thy form be made manifest before this multitude, that the people may see and  
 B. fol. 91a. "know that there is no god except the Lord | God, Who  
 col. 2. "hath in truth made the heavens, and the earth, and  
 "the sun, and the moon, and the stars, and all the ordinances of the heavens, and the sea, and the rivers, "and the springs, and all that move therein, and the light "and the darkness, and creeping things, and beasts and "cattle, all of which were made by Thy will and at "Thine exalted command, and over which Thou didst "make man to be governor, and didst bless him. And "now, hearken Thou unto me, and shew Thy might unto "this multitude, for unto Thee, and Thy Good Father, "and the Holy Spirit be glory, now, henceforth, and for "ever and ever."

Now when Saint Peter had ended his prayer he said "Amen," [Page 571] and the young man fell down and became as one dead; and Satan went forth from him in the form of a great darkness wherefrom flashes of flame appeared, and his face, which resembled that of a boar, was exceedingly black, and fire went forth from his eyes. And great numbers of the people who were standing there became like dead men at the sight of his horrible  
 B. fol. 91b. appearance, but they were unable to | depart from their  
 col. 1. places, for the word of Saint Andrew was working with

great power. And Saint Peter turned his face to Saint Andrew his brother, and said unto him, "Behold, "I have sown, do thou now reap;" and Saint Andrew said, "In the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and "of the Holy Ghost, let this ground be cleft to its very "foundations, and let Satan go down into the depth of "Gehenna and never again come forth therefrom." And in that same hour the earth was moved to its very foundations, and it opened itself, and the Satan went down into it, and the earth covered him up, and became as it was aforetime. Now whilst Saints Peter and Andrew [were doing] all these things, and all that happened there after was taking place, Saint Paul ceased not to make entreaty and supplication unto God. Then Saint Peter took hold of the young man by his hand, and raised him up, and he made over his face the sign of the cross in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, and the heart and all the members of the young man had rest, and he bowed down with his face to the ground, and did homage unto the holy disciples.

Then Saint Paul made haste | and stood up among B. fol. 91b.  
the multitude, and he rent asunder the apparel of the col. 2.  
chief priest in which he had dressed himself; and he cast it afar off from him, and he did homage at the feet of the holy disciples, and he saluted them, and made supplication unto them, saying, [Page 572] "O my lords, tell "us the story of your belief and of the Divinity of your "God, for He is the God of gods, and the God of "heaven and of earth, and I believe in Him with my "heart, and my soul, and my spirit." And straightway

the feet of the multitude were loosed, and every one of the people was able to depart whither he pleased. Then the governor and all the nobles of the city who were sitting with him, and all the men of the city, did homage to the holy disciples, saying, "We beseech you, O our lords, to teach us your faith, and to bring us nigh unto your God, for He is the God of the heavens and of the earth." And the holy disciples answered and said unto them, "Say thus:—We believe in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit, the Holy Trinity, coequal and undivided;" and immediately all

B. fol. 92a. the men | of the city cried out with a loud voice, saying,  
col. 1. "We believe in the Father, and in the Son, and in the Holy Spirit, the coequal Trinity, the God of Saints Peter and Andrew." And Saint Paul was praying in his heart, with a right mind, saying, "I beseech Thee, O my Lord Jesus Christ, Who in days of old didst send fire unto Elijah the Prophet and didst consume the messengers of Ahab the king, even so at this present, O Lord, send Thou fire from heaven and burn up the temple of Artemis from its roof even to its foundations." And in that same hour, when the men of the city were declaring their belief in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, and of His Good Father, and of the Holy Spirit with a loud voice, there was thunder in the heavens, and lightning appeared, and whilst the people were looking on fire came down from heaven and smote the four corners of the temple, and nothing was left thereof [Page 573] upon the face of the earth.

And after this Saint Peter said unto the people, "Come, let us depart to the eastern side of the city, unto

"the hollow place which is in the desert, | beneath the tree which is in the open country, that all these men may be baptized therein; and we will beseech our Lord and God to make a spring of water to gush forth from the tree so that these men may be baptized therein in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit, and so that your faith and your hearts may be purified." Then all the men of the city followed the holy disciples to the eastern side of the city with Saint Paul going at their head in joy and gladness because of the conversion of the city to the knowledge of God. And the people of the city were giving thanks unto Saint Paul, saying, "Glory be to God through thee, for thou didst bring into our city these men who brought us out from the error wherein we dwelt through the abundant miracles which God hath wrought by their hands, and they have brought us | out from the darkness into the light by means of their abundant wonders." Now when they had arrived in the place behind the palace (*or* fortress) the disciples stood up before the multitude, and turned their faces towards the East, and they stretched out their hands towards heaven, saying, "We beseech Thee, O God, the Sustainer of all the world, and Thine Only Son, our Lord Jesus Christ, and the Holy Spirit, Whom Thou hast given unto us, as Thou didst hearken unto Moses the Prophet, Thy servant, in the desert, and didst command him to smite [Page 574] the rock with the rod which was in his hand, and fountains of water gushed forth therefrom until they became rivers, and all the tribes of Israel that were in the desert in those days drank their fill, even so, O Lord, this day do Thou hearken

B. fol. 92a.

col. 2.

B. fol. 92b.

col. 1.

"unto Thy servants. And be pleased, O Lord, to make  
 "a spring of water to gush forth from the rock, and let  
 "it fill this desert and become a sea; and let the waters  
 "thereof be sweet, and let them neither change nor dry  
 "up until the end of the world. And let it be for a  
 "memorial of us Thy servants, and let great numbers of  
 "the men of this city who have believed in Thee be  
 "baptized therein."

B. fol. 92b. And when they had | finished praying they said,  
 col. 2. "Amen," and meanwhile Saint Paul was helping them by  
 praying in his heart. Then Peter and Andrew drew nigh  
 and together smote the rock with their feet, saying, "In  
 "the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the  
 "Holy Ghost, let there go forth from thee water which  
 "is sweet [to the taste], and pleasant of smell;" and im-  
 mediately there burst from the rock great and abundant  
 streams of water which welled up until they filled the  
 desert, and they formed a vast pool of water. And the  
 multitude marvelled exceedingly, and said, "Verily we  
 "have worshipped devils all the days of our life, and we  
 "knew it not. May God make His grace to abound to-  
 "wards us, and may He make long His compassion upon  
 "us, in such wise that He take not vengeance upon us  
 "quickly, and may He not reward us according to our  
 "works." Then the disciples said unto the multitude,  
 "Let the people remove their garments and apparel, and  
 "let them go down unto the water, and plunge themselves  
 "therein three times, saying, 'We are baptized in the Name  
 "'of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost;'"  
 and the people did even as the holy disciples had com-  
 manded them, from their greatest even unto their least.

And when they were baptized | Saint Peter commanded B. fol. 93a.  
them to go into [Page 575] the city; and he then com- col. 1.  
manded the women to come to the fountain of water  
which had come forth out of the rock, and he baptized  
them in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and  
of the Holy Ghost. Now the water was of a most beau-  
tiful smell upon the bodies of those who were baptized,  
and it was more beautiful than the smell and perfume of  
flowers. And Saints Peter and Andrew blessed the rock  
wherefrom the stream of water had gushed forth until it  
rose up and became as it were a river to the city, and  
they said unto the rock, "Thou shalt never restrain the  
"water which floweth out, and the flow thereof shall  
"neither increase nor diminish for ever. And every one  
"who shall go down into this water, whether they be  
"suffering from any kind of disease, or whether they be  
"tormented by unclean spirits, or whether they be in  
"pain and suffering, if [any] life be left unto them in this  
"world, if they believe in their hearts in the Name of the  
"Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, they  
"shall go forth from them healed of their sicknesses."  
And in that same hour all those who were sick were  
made whole and the blind saw, and the lame walked.  
Then the holy disciples commanded the multitude to  
take pains to build | a church, and every man among B. fol. 93a.  
them brought according as he had the power; some col. 2.  
brought gold, and some brought silver, and some brought  
materials for building; so they built for them a fine and  
beautiful church on the place whereon had stood the  
temple of Artemis, in the name of our holy Lady, the  
Virgin MARY. And they appointed the governor to be

their bishop, and they changed his name and called him "Paul;" and they appointed the young man who was healed of the Satan to be deacon; and the man whom they had raised from the dead they appointed to be priest; and they gave unto them the Holy Mysteries. And Saint Paul wrote for them [Page 576] the Gospels, and the Acts of the Apostles, and the Apostolic Epistles, and all the Canon; and he commanded them to fast on the sixth day of the week, and on the fourth day of the week, and to keep the honourable Forty Days' Fast; and they taught them all the ordinances of the Church. And they dwelt with them for a few days, until they had taught them everything which was necessary, and Saint Peter consecrated for them the bread for the Offering

B. fol. 93b. daily, and made them to offer up the Offering. |

col. 1.

And it came to pass that, when their faith had grown strong in God, the disciples wished to go forth from that city to fulfil their ministrations in the city (*or* country) wherein God had commanded them to enter, and Saint Paul besought the holy disciples before the multitude to take him with them into the city whereunto they were going. Then were the people who had believed sorry with a great sorrow, and they said unto the holy disciples, "It is not meet for you to go forth from "our city, for we are a new plant which ye have planted; "how can ye go forth and leave us to dry up without "nourishment?" But the holy disciples began to make them to keep silence in peace, and at length their souls were able to bear their departure; then they departed from them, Saint Paul being with them, and they blessed the people of that city, and everything which was therein;

so the people accompanied them a short way on their journey, being sorrowful at their departure (*or* separation). And it came to pass that when they were afar off from them Saint Paul recognised as friends | Saints Peter and Andrew, and he saluted them with a spiritual embrace, and the three of them rejoiced and were glad by reason of the saving of the men of that city. Then afterwards Saint Paul set out on his way alone, and he preached the Gospel to the [Page 577] people in every country wherein the disciples had not entered, and he taught them to have faith in our Lord Jesus Christ, and in His Good Father, and in the Holy Spirit, to Whom be glory, and honour, and thanksgiving, and service, and homage, now, henceforth, and for ever and ever. Amen.

B. fol. 93b.  
col. 2.

#### CHAPTER XIV.

AND MOREOVER [WE WILL RELATE CONCERNING] THE PREACHING OF PAUL IN THE ISLAND WHICH IS CALLED MANÂFEKET; may his prayer be with us! Amen.

Now whilst Saint Paul was going about preaching in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ, he came to an island which is called Manâfeket, and he wished to go therein and to preach the Gospel of the Kingdom, but the people thereof prevented him from doing so. Now every one who dwelleth in this island | hath a mark in- scribed upon his apparel, and the mark readeth "Manâ- kân" (i. e., the people of Manâfeket); and if this name be not written on his apparel the people will not allow him to enter the island, because this name is not on his apparel. And Saint Paul meditated in his heart, and

B. fol. 94a.  
col. 1.

said, "It is good that I should write this name on my apparel so that I may convert the men of this island to the knowledge of God;" so he wrote the name "Manâfkân" upon his apparel, and when the watchmen of the gates saw the sign written upon his apparel they permitted him to enter.

And it came to pass that when he had come into the city which is called Manâfeket (now they call the men [thereof] "Manâfkân"), he said, "Let Thy will be [done], O my Lord and God;" and he went round about in the city to ask for food, but no man gave him anything whatsoever, because of the little mercy [Page 578] which was in their hearts. Then he came into a certain open place wherein were great numbers of sick folk who were lying on beds, men and women, children and babes.

B. fol. 94a. Some children were ministering to their parents, and |  
col. 2. some parents were ministering to their children, and some brethren were ministering to their brethren. Now when Saint Paul saw this he marvelled greatly at what he saw, and then he asked one of the men of the city concerning the matter of these sick men, and the reason why they had left their homes and were gathered together in that place. And the man answered and said unto him, "They carry all the sick folk who are in this island and bring them into this open place, and they minister unto them until they die, and immediately [any of them] die they cast them to the dogs that they may devour them." Then Saint Paul said unto them, "Why do ye not leave them in their houses until they are healed? And why, when they are dead, do ye not cast their bodies into graves and bury them?" And the man

answered and said, "They bring them here for the following reason. No one of those who fall ill here, whether he be great or whether he be little, or whether he be male or | female, ever riseth up from his [bed of] B. fol. 94b. sickness until he dieth, and none of them is ever healed col. 1. or riseth up from his couch, and at length when he dieth he is given unto the dogs that they may devour him." And Saint Paul the wise man said unto him, "This matter in this island is hard [to understand]. I have travelled over many roads, and I have entered great cities, but I never saw the like of this [in any of them]. For multitudes of men fall sick, but they abide in [Page "579] their houses until God willeth that they shall either die or live." Then the man answered and said unto him, "No man hath ever been seen in this island who having been sick riseth up healed, for however long his sickness may linger upon him he at length dieth, whether he be little or whether he be great." And Saint Paul said unto him, "If a stranger were to dwell in this island for a few days, and fall sick, and not recover from his sickness, how long would it be before he died?" Then the man said unto him, "It hath never been heard of for a man to come and dwell with us in this island | B. fol. 94b. until he were even as we are, and wrote upon his ap- col. 2. parel the name Manâfek, and then he would become even as we are in our divinity, and his acts would be come even as ours." Then Saint Paul said unto him, "Which of the gods then do ye worship?" And the man said unto him, "We worship the sun." Then Saint Paul the wise man said unto him, "Ye are called Manâfkân, according to the name of your city, because ye worship

"the creature instead of the Creator. When the sun  
"setteth, whom do ye worship? Now God commandeth  
"that ye shall not worship the sun, or the moon, or the  
"stars which appear in the heavens."

And Saint Paul dwelt a few days there and was  
beseeching God to illumine the hearts of the men of this  
city and to convert them unto His commandments. Then  
after fourteen days Saint Paul went round about in the  
place where the sick were gathered together, and he said  
unto them, "My brethren, I am sick even as ye are sick,  
B fol 95a. "and I am afraid lest I die and be | thrown to the dogs."  
col. 1. And they said unto him, "The disease which thou hast  
"contracted shall make an end of thee, [Page 580] for  
"after this thou shalt never rise up from thy bed, and at  
"length thou shalt die, and they will throw thy body to  
"the dogs to eat;" and when these words had been  
said unto him Saint Paul made himself a sick man, and  
he begged for a bed whereon to lie. So they made  
ready a bed for him, even as they were wont to do for  
the sick, only he was not sick, and the might of disease  
was not upon him, but he was exceedingly sick in mind  
by reason of the error of the men of that island whom  
Satan had led astray from faith in God. And when he  
had lain down upon his bed he neither ate, nor drank,  
nor ceased to pray by night and by day with beseeching,  
and entreaty, and supplication, unto God for the souls  
which had gone astray, that He would convert them unto  
the knowledge of Him. Now after this those who mi-  
nistered unto the sick brought him food to eat, and hav-  
ing eaten it he lay down again for seven days like a  
sick man, although he was not sick; and he made prayer

and entreaty unto God | continually for the salvation of B. fol. 95a.  
the men of that island which was called Manâfeket, and col. 2.  
although he appeared to be sick like one of the sick folk  
he was not so, yet by reason of his constant vigil and  
ceaseless prayer his flesh wasted away greatly, and he  
appeared to be sick indeed. And when he had passed  
forty days in this manner upon the island, he had not  
answered any one of the people with a single word, and  
he had not mentioned the Name of God openly to any  
man, but he never ceased to make supplication unto God  
that He would hear his petition, and would prepare the  
men of that city to know Him and His Name. And  
sitting upon his bed he would say, [Page 581] "O my  
"Lord Jesus Christ, hearken unto my petition, and heal  
"me of my sickness, for I am suffering greatly." Then  
one of those who were sick answered and said unto him,  
"If in these few days, when thy sickness hath not been  
"long upon thee, thou speakest in this wise, how much  
"more should say this the sick folk who are gathered  
"together [here], and upon whom their diseases have  
"lingered | for years, and who know that they will never B. fol. 95b.  
"be healed of their sicknesses until they die?" And on col. 1.  
the morrow Saint Paul said, "O my brethren, this day  
"have the pain and the sickness which are upon me be-  
"come less by the might of Jesus Christ, and He hath  
"given unto me healing;" and they marvelled at his words.  
Then he waited yet another seven days, and on the  
morning after the seven days, that is to say, on the eighth  
day, he rose up from his bed, and turned his face to-  
wards the East, and prayed, saying, "O my Lord Jesus  
"Christ, my God, Who sufferedst, and diedst, and rosest

“from the dead, heal Thou me from my sickness, and  
 “all the men of this city, that they may know that there  
 “is no other god besides Thee, and that they may preach  
 “Thy Name openly in this island when Thou pourest out  
 “Thy mercy upon them.”

And Saint Paul was going about among the sick  
 folk of the island who were gathered together there be-  
 cause of their sickness, and when the sick people and  
 those who were ministering unto them saw how he had  
 risen up sound and whole from his sickness and from his  
 B.fol.95b. bed, | they marvelled greatly at what they saw, for in all  
 col. 2. the days of their life they had neither seen nor heard of  
 such a thing. Then the fame of what had happened  
 unto him went forth throughout all the island, saying,  
 that a man who was a stranger had come unto them;  
 that he had written upon his apparel the name which is  
 inscribed upon the garments [Page 582] of every man  
 who dwelleth in this island, or who taketh up his abode  
 therein; and that no man having fallen sick hath ever  
 been healed of his disease except this man; and that the  
 like of the matter which was spoken of had never before  
 been heard of. And the people who were sick asked  
 Saint Paul, saying, “Declare unto us the way whereby  
 “we may be healed, and live.” And Saint Paul said unto  
 them, “No man can be healed except by believing on  
 “our Lord Jesus Christ, and everyone who believeth in  
 “His Holy Name shall be healed from all his sickness.”  
 Then the men who were sick said unto him, “Tell us  
 “how we can believe, so that we may be healed of this  
 B.fol.96a. “sickness;” and Saint Paul said unto them, “Say, We  
 col. 1. “believe and | put our confidence in the Name of the

"Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, Three Persons, and One God. And we also believe that One "of the Three Persons became incarnate of the Holy "Virgin MARY for the salvation of Adam and his seed; "that He was God Who was born of her in the flesh; "that He was baptized in the river Jordan; that He went "about in the world in all respects like a man, except "that He was without sin; that He performed wonders, "and healed the sick and suffering; that He was crucified "upon the wood of the cross; that He died in the flesh; "and rose from the dead, and [came forth] from the "grave alive." Then straightway the sick folk believed with true faith, and in that same hour they were healed of their sicknesses and went about among the other sick folk who were left. And when they saw them, they all cried out together with a loud voice, saying, "We believe "in the Father, and in the Son, and in the Holy Spirit; "and we believe that Jesus Christ, Who is One Person "[Page 583] of Three Persons, was born of the | holy B. fol. 96a. "Virgin Mary, that He died in the flesh, and rose from col. 2. "the dead, the God of Saint Paul." Then straightway all the sick folk rose up from their sick [beds] in that hour, and there was not left one of them upon his bed, but they were all sound and whole, and they were as if sickness had never come upon them. In this wise did all the people of that island believe.

And Saint Paul built for them a church, and he baptized them in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost; and he appointed priests and deacons for them, and he wrote for them the Gospels, and all the Scriptures of the Holy Church, and he tarried

with them for many days; and after he had strengthened their faith in God, and they were healed of their sicknesses, that is to say, the sickness of soul and body, they went back into their houses and were safe until they tasted death, and were buried in graves like all other men. And this is the meaning of Saint Paul's words in B.fol.96b. the Second (sic) Epistle to the men of Corinth,<sup>1</sup> | wherein col. 1. he saith, "I became as it were a sinner unto sinners, "though I was not a sinner against God, that I might "gather sinners together; and I became as it were weak "unto the weak, so that I might gather together the "weak, and might strengthen and deliver them from the weakness of the Enemy;" verily, he was profitable unto many souls. And the men of that city became righteous because he called himself a wicked and a sinful man. Hear also the word of Saint Paul, who saith,<sup>2</sup> "Who shall make me to forsake the love of Christ? "shall suffering, or persecution, or hunger, or affliction? "I have confidence that there is nothing which will make "me to forsake the love of God, neither life, nor death, "nor angels, nor principalities, nor [Page 584] height, nor "depth; and nothing whatsoever shall be able to make "me to be remote from God," to Whom be glory, and thanksgiving, to the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Spirit, now, henceforth, and for ever and ever. Amen.

<sup>1</sup> 1 Corinthians ix. 19--22.

<sup>2</sup> Romans viii. 35, 38, 39.

## CHAPTER XV.

HEAR ALSO, O BRETHREN, THE [STORY OF] THE PREACHING OF SAINT PAUL IN THE CITY OF WÂRÎKÒN<sup>1</sup>; AND | HOW HE CALLED THE PEOPLE THEREOF UNTO THEB. fol. 96b. FAITH IN OUR LORD JESUS CHRIST; AND HOW HE MADE col. 2. MANIFEST MIRACLES AND WONDERS THEREIN; AND HOW OUR LADY THE VIRGIN MARY CAME UNTO HIM TO HELP HIM AND TO STRENGTHEN HIM IN [HIS] PREACHING; AND OTHER MATTERS APPERTAINING THERETO.

And after these things Saint Paul departed unto the city of Ḳartâgnâ (Carthage), and he found me, Peter, dwelling therein. And when I had met him I enquired of him concerning the manner in which the men of Wârîkôn had accepted the faith, and he said unto me, "O man who art fit for the instructing of the men of "the world in the faith of God, when I had separated "myself from thee there came unto me whilst I was "asleep the angel who used to come to thee. And he "said unto me, 'Depart thou unto a city which is on the "border of heaven, that is to say, which is at the ex- "treme limit of the bounds of the earth, and preach "therein in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ'; and I "asked him to help me by means of thee; and he said "unto me, 'It is not meet for thee to say this thing. Nay, "thou art a messenger who hath been commanded [what "to do]. Depart thou unto the place whereunto I have "told thee [to go], for Peter is making ready to dwell in "the city of | Ḳartâgnâ, and in the country of 'Akrâd,<sup>2</sup> B. fol. 97a. col. 1.

<sup>1</sup> See above, p. 513.

<sup>2</sup> See above, p. 514.

"so that our Lord Jesus Christ may set before them His  
 "treasures a second time.' So I departed unto this city,  
 "[Page 585] and, O holy teacher, the size thereof is so  
 "great that it resembleth Rome, only the buildings thereof  
 "are more beautiful, and the fruit and flowers are abund-  
 "ant, and the stream of water which passeth through it,  
 "and which is called Gargâ, is three hundred stadia wide.  
 "Now I came unto this city on the twenty-seventh day of  
 "the month Magâbît,<sup>1</sup> and on that day the men of the city  
 "were celebrating a great festival, and they were making  
 "crowns of roses and wearing garlands, and placing them  
 "on the heads of the graven images, and they were offer-  
 "ing up to them the first offerings of their wheat.  
 "Now there was a statue on the wall of the city with  
 "a talisman, and it was the guardian of the city, and  
 "whensoever the talisman saw a stranger coming into the  
 "city it used to cry out with a loud voice, saying, 'Be-  
 "hold, a stranger cometh unto you;' and when the men  
 "of the city heard these words from the talisman, they

B. fol. 97a. "used to go out and slay | the stranger who was coming  
 col. 2. "into their city. For their law was not to allow a stranger  
 "to enter into their city. Now when I had arrived in the  
 "stream (*or* lake) the talisman cried out in the language  
 "of the city, saying, 'Behold, a stranger hath come unto  
 "'you.' And the men of the city heard the words of the  
 "talisman, for they were at that time gathered together  
 "for their festival on that day, and their king and his  
 "army came to seek me. And when I saw them from  
 "afar off I fled, and went into the caves which I found

<sup>1</sup> I. e., March 23.

"in the mountain by the side of the sea, and in the cave  
 "wherein I was foxes and jackals had taken refuge; and  
 "when I had entered therein I wept with a great weeping,  
 "and hunger and thirst afflicted me sorely, for at that  
 "time hunger (i. e., famine) [Page 586] and great heat  
 "were [in the land]. And I dwelt in the cave until the  
 "night when I went out and drank water from the lake,  
 "and I stood up and prayed before our Lord Jesus Christ,  
 "the Son of the | Living God. Now when the morning B. fol. 97b.  
 "had come and I had gone forth from the cave, that col. 1.  
 "talisman again cried out with a loud voice, like unto  
 "that of thunder, and proclaimed my coming. And when  
 "that talisman cried out it was customary for the waves  
 "of the lake to rise up and to become greatly agitated,  
 "even like the waves of the Red Sea, and the people of  
 "the city went forth to come unto me, and when I saw  
 "them, I fled again to the cave and I sat therein for a  
 "second day. Then having entered therein by reason of  
 "my fear I hid myself in the den wherein the foxes lived,  
 "and I besought God-Christ, and made supplication  
 "unto Him, and I took refuge in thy prayer, O Peter,  
 "thou master, and in the prayers of the brethren, and of  
 "our pure Lady, the mother of the Light, the whole night  
 "long."

"And in the time of morning I went forth to the  
 "lake, and the talisman cried out according to its wont,  
 "and it cried out to such an extent that it made the  
 "rocks and the mountains to quake, and the waves of  
 "the sea were greatly agitated, | and the water thereof B. fol. 97b.  
 "became red like blood, and the men of the city and col. 2.  
 "their companies of soldiers went forth according to their

"wont, and the lake was filled with boats, and I ran and  
 "fled to the cave. And straightway I saw our Lady, the  
 "mother of the Light, standing upon the sea, and she  
 "said unto me, 'O Paul, whither goest thou, and whither  
 "fleest thou? Dost thou flee because thy Lord and God  
 "Christ hath commanded thee? Was it not He Himself  
 "[Page 587] Who said, Fear not those who can slay  
 "your bodies, but who have no power to slay your souls?  
 "Stand thou still then, and be strong before thine enemies,  
 "for I will be with thee, and mine hand shall not be  
 "remote from thee; be strong, and of good courage, and  
 "know that in this sea thou shalt baptize all the men of  
 "this city. Through thee they shall all believe, and with  
 "thee shall be their portion on the day of the resurrection;  
 "be not thou afraid of them. Know too, that if thou  
 "dost put thy hands into this lake it shall be subject  
 "unto thee and shall hearken unto thee." Now whilst I  
 "was holding converse with the mother of the Light, who  
 B. fol. 98a. "was filled | with mercy and compassion, behold, I saw  
 col. 1. "the boats filled with mighty warriors in whose hands  
 "were weapons of war, and they drew nigh unto me.  
 "And it came to pass that when I saw them, O noble  
 "master, I was afraid of them exceedingly, and I was  
 "greatly dismayed, but I took refuge in our Lady Mary,  
 "and she hid me; now I saw her not, but I heard a voice  
 "calling unto me from a cloud, saying, 'O Paul, baptize,  
 "'and cease not.' Then I said with a loud voice, 'O my  
 "'God, make the waters of this lake to be for the baptism  
 "'of these lost sheep which Satan hath carried away  
 "'captive and led astray; O my Lord Jesus Christ, let  
 "'these men receive in this sea the seal of Thy Three

"Names.' And I also took a handful of the waters of  
 "this lake in my hand, and sprinkled it over these ships,  
 "wherein were one hundred and fifty thousand men; and  
 "when they arrived at the side of the lake where I was, |  
 "they came forth from their ships seeking after me, and B. fol. 98a.  
 "I stood up [Page 588] before them, even as the mother col. 2.  
 "of the Light had commanded me, and I was not afraid  
 "of them, for I had placed my confidence in her help.  
 "Now when they had drawn nigh and seen me, they all  
 "bowed down before me, and said unto me with one  
 "mouth, 'Peace be unto thee, O Saint Paul, the Apostle  
 "of our Lord Who became man.' And they held con-  
 "verse among themselves, and said, 'Hasten, O ye who  
 "are gathered together, that ye may see the wonders of  
 "'God Who became man.' Then they said unto me, 'O  
 "'Saint Paul, didst thou see that which we saw as we  
 "were sailing in the boats before we came to thee?' And  
 "I said unto them, 'What did ye see, O new children?'  
 "And they said unto me, 'We saw the gates of heaven  
 "opened, and a right hand which was like unto a flame  
 "of fire reached forth from heaven upon us with thy  
 "hand; and we saw a Woman of light whose face shone  
 "with a radiance which was seven times brighter than  
 "the light of the sun, and she rose up from the bottom  
 "of a cloud of water from which thou wast sprinkling  
 "us, and she embraced us with her arms, | and she B. fol. 98b.  
 "saluted us, and set upon our heads crowns of light.'" col. 1.

"Now when I heard these things from them, O noble  
 "master, I rejoiced with an exceedingly great joy because  
 "they knew everything which God had done with us, and  
 "knew His help for us. And after this there came unto me

"many boats which were filled with mighty men of valour,  
 "and they had with them the weapons of war; and they  
 "said, 'O magician, know that we have with us the writ-  
 "ings and the talismans wherewith the sages Hermes  
 "and Balanyôs used to perform miracles and wonders.'  
 "Now when I had seen them and had heard this speech  
 "from them, I was not afraid, for I believed that my  
 "Lord and God Jesus Christ was with me, [Page 589]  
 "together with the intercession of our Lady, the  
 "pure Virgin Mary. And I cried out to Him, and  
 "said, 'O my Lord and God, as Thou didst have  
 "compassion upon the sheep unto which Thou didst  
 "aforetime make it manifest, even so do Thou now  
 "reveal to these [men] Thy power and Thy compassion  
 B. fol. 98b. "also.' Then I took in my hand | some of the water of  
 col. 2. "the lake and again sprinkled them, and I said, 'Let this  
 "water be unto you in the place of baptism in the Name  
 "of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost,'  
 "and when I had made petitions and prayed, the boats  
 "came to the side of the lake, and all the men came  
 "forth therefrom and bowed down before me. And they  
 "said unto me, 'Peace be unto thee, O Saint Paul, we  
 "praise thee, O Apostle of the God Who became man;'  
 "and they informed me that they themselves had seen  
 "the miracles even as their companions who had come  
 "before had seen them. And next the report of me was  
 "heard by the king of that city, and he and his soldiers  
 "embarked in the boats, wishing to come to me. Now  
 "when their boats drew nigh unto me, I was afraid, and  
 "I lifted up my hands and my eyes to heaven, and I  
 "took refuge with my God, and I made the sign of the

"life-giving cross over the lake, and I said unto it, 'O lake,  
 "I command thee in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ,  
 "the Son of God, to be rent asunder and divided into  
 "parts, so that the land may be revealed, | and so that the B. fol. 99a.  
 "ships of these men may stand still in their places and may col. 1.  
 "not come to me.' And before I had made an end of  
 "my petition the lake was divided into parts, and there  
 "were thirteen roads therein, and the boats stood upon  
 "the ground in the places where they were. Now when  
 "the soldiers saw this they drew their swords, and they  
 "found that they had become like pieces of wood. [Page  
 "590] Then I took in my hand some of the water of the  
 "lake, and sprinkled it over them also, and I said, 'In the  
 "'Name of the Holy Trinity;' and these boats moved on  
 "without any water [to float upon], and immediately they  
 "were lifted up from the ground on which they rested in  
 "the lake the winds bore them along, and the men went  
 "forth from them, and they came to me, and embraced  
 "me, even as did those who came before, and the king  
 "and all the men of the city bowed down before me, and  
 "then I passed with them on the dry road to the city  
 "without the boats."

"And it came to pass that when I had entered the  
 "city I saw all the idols with garlands of roses in their  
 "hands, and with bundles of ears of corn cast before  
 "them as offerings; and when I saw ] this I was sorry B. fol. 99a.  
 "with a great sorrow. Then the men of the city said col. 2.  
 "unto me, 'O noble master, know that on this day we  
 "have a great festival to our idols; now in honour of  
 "whom dost thou command us to celebrate this festival?  
 "Shall it be in the Name of the Father? Or in the

"Name of the Son? Or in the Name of the Holy Ghost?  
 "For in these Names were we baptized.' And I taught  
 "them the faith wherein it was meet for them to worship  
 "God, and I wrote with mine own hand and commanded  
 "them to celebrate the festival in honour of our Lady  
 "Mary, the mother of the Light, by whose intercession  
 "they were saved from the domination of idols; and also  
 "a festival in honour of the day wherein the angel Gab-  
 "riel announced unto our Lady Mary that she should  
 "conceive the Son of God in the flesh, and I made strong  
 "the true faith in their hearts. Now the lake remained  
 "divided into parts for eight days, and the king of the  
 "city said unto me, 'O master, if thou dost command us  
 B. fol. 99b. "to build upon this ground [Page 591], and upon the |  
 col. 1. "places from which the waters of the lake have departed,  
 "and which have become dry land, we will at thy be-  
 "hest build churches which shall be for the men of this  
 "city fair memorials that shall endure for ever, and when  
 "the inhabitants shall see them they shall at all times  
 "remember what took place through the domination of  
 "idols, and they shall glorify God Who hath redeemed  
 "them;' so I gave the command even as they desired.  
 "Then were gathered together in the midst of the lake,  
 "and in the places which had been divided from the rest  
 "and become dry, eighteen thousand men, and they  
 "built many churches there, and among them was one  
 "large church, which was built in the name of our Lady  
 "Mary, the mother of the Light, the length of which  
 "was three thousand cubits, and the breadth thereof  
 "one thousand cubits, and the height thereof one hundred  
 "and fifty cubits, and it was built with lofty pillars.

"And when this church was completed, I put a ban  
"upon the lake by the word of the Living God, Who  
"existeth, that it might surround the church with water  
"every year, but do no harm unto it. And when the  
"time should come wherein the men of the city were  
"wholly saved from the domination of idols, the water  
"should be removed from the church, and the church  
"should be revealed for three days so that the men  
"of the city might keep the festival of the mother | of B. fol. 99b.  
"the Light for a space of three days in that holy place; col. 2.  
"and that they might make offerings and remember  
"what they were wont to do in error, and might de-  
"clare the same from generation unto generation. Then  
"I commanded them to break that talisman which used  
"to announce the arrival of strangers in the city; and  
"I commanded the lake to surround the walls of the  
"city; and I made manifest unto them forty marvellous  
"things which might dwell with them, and I placed  
"them in a public place, so that they might not be  
"hidden, before the eyes of the men of the city [Page  
"592] until the time of the second coming of the Lord  
"Jesus Christ."

And when Saint Paul informed me concerning the  
marvellous things [which he had made manifest] for the  
city, I rejoiced exceedingly, and I besought our Lord  
Jesus Christ to take me to the city and shew it unto me  
so that I might see that which Saint Paul had described  
unto me.

## CHAPTER XVI.

HOW SAINT PAUL WENT TO THE CITY OF WÂRÎKÔN, AND HOW HE SAW IT, AND CONFIRMED THE MEN THEREOF IN THE RIGHT FAITH. Saint Peter | saith:—

B. fol. 100a. col. 1. "As I was standing in the harbour of Kartâgenâ a  
 "cloud overshadowed me, and there were upon it Uriel  
 "and Raphael, the two angels who used to appear unto  
 "me and reveal hidden things; and they said unto me,  
 "'Ascend, O Peter;' and I said unto them, 'Whither shall  
 "'I ascend?' And they said unto me, 'Above this cloud;'  
 "and I ascended upon the cloud, and found that it was  
 "spread out before me like the couch of a bridegroom's  
 "chamber; and it mounted upwards in the air, and I  
 "thought within myself that they were going to carry  
 "me to the city of Rome, and I asked the angels con-  
 "cerning the matter. And they said unto me, 'This is  
 "the city of Wârîkôn, to the men of which Saint Paul  
 "taught the true faith, and which thou thyself didst  
 "desire to see.' And I heard therein a loud outcry, and  
 "many voices, saying, 'Come ye, and let us go forth and  
 "receive the foundation of the Church and the chief of  
 "the Apostles, the master Peter.' Then the cloud let me  
 B. fol. 100a. col. 2. "descend by the gates of the city wherein | [Page 593]  
 "I saw multitudes of men who came forth to receive me;  
 "and in the hands of the priests were censers which  
 "were full of incense, and great numbers of lamps which  
 "were burning, and they drew nigh unto me, and they  
 "did homage unto me, and they besought me to pray  
 "over them, and I did even as they desired. Then I  
 "enquired of them concerning their affairs, and they said

“unto me, ‘We do not lack any good thing of our Lord  
“‘Christ, but in our city there is no olive oil, for there  
“‘are no olive trees therein; we therefore beseech thee  
“‘to ask God, in Whose hand is mercy, that He will  
“‘make olive trees to grow in our city [so that we may  
“‘have olive oil] for Christian baptism, and for burning  
“‘in lamps.’ Then straightway I made supplication unto  
“my Lord and Redeemer Jesus Christ, the Son of the  
“Living God Who liveth, and I sought from Him that  
“for which they had asked me; and immediately, by the  
“command of God, the earth put forth in that city olive  
“trees in abundance, and the number of those which  
“grew there exceeded that of the olive trees | of the B. fol.  
“country of Syria. And I also besought God to drive 100b.  
“out from their country ravening and roaring lions, and col. 1.  
“wandering wolves, and dragons, and destructive and hor-  
“rible beasts of every kind, and my Lord and God re-  
“ceived me, [and granted me] everything which I had  
“asked; and I dwelt in that city many days, and I re-  
“joiced because of what I had seen therein.”

And after this Saint Peter blessed them, and he de-  
parted from them and went upon that cloud whereon  
he had arrived; and when the people saw this they gave  
thanks unto our Lord Jesus Christ, and unto His Good  
Father, and unto the Holy Spirit, to Whom be glory  
for ever and ever. Amen, and Amen. [Page 594]

## CHAPTER XVII.

IN THE NAME OF THE FATHER, AND OF THE SON AND OF THE HOLY GHOST, ONE GOD. HERE BEGINNETH THE MARTYRDOM OF THE HOLY AND BLESSED PAUL, THE APOSTLE OF OUR LORD JESUS CHRIST; NOW THE END OF HIS MARTYRDOM TOOK PLACE ON THE FIFTH DAY OF THE MONTH ḤAMLÊ.<sup>1</sup> IN THE PEACE OF GOD. AMEN.

Then Saint Paul put forward his doctrine and taught the multitude, saying, "O ye men, in whom is | under-  
 B. fol. 100b. "standing, hearken ye, and know, and understand what  
 col. 2. "I say, so that ye all may know the mystery of the first  
 "creation, and of everything which took place in the  
 "matter of the first man whose nature I hold on behalf  
 "of the king. For this is not my life, and this [is not]  
 "my end, but that is life which is everlasting and which  
 "hath no end. And if thou commandest that they shall  
 "cut off my head I will appear unto thee again, and I  
 "shall be alive, so that thou mayest know the truth of  
 "my word, for I shall live in my King Jesus Christ, Who  
 "shall judge the living and the dead, and shall reward  
 "every man according to his work, whether it be good  
 "or whether it be evil." Now when the Emperor Nero  
 heard these words from the speech of Saint Paul, he  
 made a sign to his soldiers in wrath that they should  
 kill him quickly; and when Kîstôs (Acestus) and Lîyûkôs  
 (Longinus) the nobles of the Emperor heard [this] they

<sup>1</sup> I. e., June 29. See LIPSIUS, *Apostelgeschichten*, vol. ii. part 1. p. 142 ff.

took him out to cut off his head. And they said unto Saint Paul, "Where is your King in Whom ye place your "trust? Surely ye do not wish to let Him go free, and bear "all these scourgings for him!" And Paul answered and said unto them, | "O ye men whom error ruleth, and "whose knowledge of God is little, turn ye, and repent, "so that ye may be saved from the scourgings (*or* punish- "ments) which shall come upon the wicked, but not in "the way in which ye imagine; [and ye shall not be "punished] as by an earthly king [Page 595] like your- "selves who shall gather together his soldiers, but we "shall be rewarded in the palace of the heavenly King "for the sins of the world. And this King shall come "and shall judge the world, and unto all those who be- "lieve in Him He shall give life everlasting." Now when the nobles of the Emperor heard these words, they bowed down unto him, saying, "Make us to be- "come of those who follow this King, and then we will "let thee go free whithersoever thou desirest." And Saint Paul said unto them, "I am neither afraid nor terrified "at your punishments that I should flee from God, but "I am the servant of my God, Jesus Christ, the Living "King; and when I know that this [King] hath died the "death which is everlasting, then will I do according "to what ye say unto me. Nay, I shall live with my "God for ever and ever. Amen. And I shall do His "will, and I shall return | unto Him, and I shall sit with "Him when He cometh in the glory of the Father."

B. fol.  
101a.  
col. 1.

B. fol.  
101a.  
col. 2.

Then the nobles of the Emperor said unto him, "How wilt thou be able [to live] after they have cut off "thy head? Wilt thou be able to come alive a second time?"

Now whilst they were holding converse on these things the Emperor sent nine men to find out whether the nobles had cut off the head of Paul or not, and when they arrived they found him alive. And Paul said unto them, "Believe on the Living God, Who can save from death "all those who believe in Him, and Who can endow them "with the life which is for ever," and they answered and said unto him, "Behold, now thou must die, and when "we see that thou hast raised thyself from the dead then "we ourselves will believe;" and they returned to the Emperor. Now Kîstôs (Acestus) and Luḡôs (Longinus) were entreating Paul earnestly, saying, "Teach us the "way of life;" and Paul said unto them, "[Page 596] On "the morrow, at dawn, come ye to the grave wherein "they shall have let down my body, and ye shall find "two men standing [there] praying; now these shall be

B. fol.  
101b.  
col. 1.

"Titus and Lûḡās (Luke), and they shall teach | you the "doctrine of salvation, and shall bring you as an offering "unto our Lord Jesus Christ, our God in truth." And Paul looked towards the East among all those who were gathered together that they might see his martyrdom, and he stretched out his hands and prayed for a long space of time in the Hebrew language; and when he had finished his prayer he held converse with the people who were there in the words of faith in our Lord, and many of those who were gathered together there believed because of the graciousness of his words, and because of the light which was in his face, and the grace which dwelt upon him.

And the messengers returned unto the Emperor Nero, and they told him how they had found Paul hold-

ing converse with Kîstôs (Acestus) and Lûkôs (Longinus) and teaching them the faith; now the Emperor was exceedingly angry, and he sent a strong man with a sword to cut off the head of Paul quickly. And when the master of the sword came to him he bowed his holy head silently and held his peace, and he remained for a long time with his head bowed and the swordsman standing by him; but although he had drawn his sword from its sheath his hand trembled in such wise | that he could not bring it down upon him. And after this he strengthened his heart, and he smote him a blow and the head of Saint Paul fell upon the ground; and there went forth from the body of Saint Paul milk and blood which came upon the swordsman and his apparel. Then those who were gathered together marvelled and glorified God Who had shewn this great act of grace unto His holy Apostle Paul.

B. fol.  
101b.  
col. 2.

And the master of the sword returned and told the Emperor everything which had taken place, and the Emperor Nero and all his judges [Page 597], who were seated with him, were greatly dismayed. Now when it was the ninth hour of the day Paul appeared unto the Emperor, and said unto him, "I am the disciple of Jesus "Christ who came to thy city, and I have taken from "thee multitudes of the people to my King; and behold, "I am alive and am not dead, and behold, there shall "come upon thee evil because thou hast poured out the "blood of many righteous folk, and after a few days "everything which I have told thee shall come upon "thee." And as Paul was saying these words he became hidden from them. Then the Emperor Nero ordered

B. fol. them to bring forth all | who were in bonds in the prison-  
 102a. house of those who had believed in the Name of our  
 col. 1. Lord Jesus Christ; [and among them were] Batrîk (Pa-  
 troclus) the Emperor's servant, and a man whose name  
 was Bâryôs (Barnabas), and a man whose name was  
 Lûkôs, and Kôstôs and Kîstôs,<sup>1</sup> the chosen [friends] of  
 the Emperor, and they betook themselves at dawn to  
 the grave of Paul, and when they had drawn nigh thereto  
 they saw two men standing there praying, and Paul was  
 standing between them in great joy and glory; and they  
 were dismayed, and they trembled in great fear at the sight  
 of his glory. And Titus and Lûkâs (Luke) were afraid  
 and took to flight when they saw these servants of the  
 Emperor whom we have already mentioned, but they  
 sought for them, and found them, and they said unto  
 them, "We do not seek you to put you to death, but  
 "that ye may give us the life everlasting, even as Paul,  
 "who was in this very hour standing in your midst, com-  
 "manded us." Now when Titus and Lûkâs (Luke) heard  
 these words from them, they rejoiced exceedingly, and  
 B. fol. declared | unto them the word of doctrine; and they  
 102a. taught them the faith which is in our Lord Jesus Christ,  
 col. 2. [Page 598] and they gave unto them the doctrine of  
 life for ever and ever. Amen.

Here endeth the Martyrdom of Saint Paul. May his prayer  
 and blessing preserve our King John and our Queen Sakla Wangel,<sup>2</sup>  
 for ever and ever. Amen.

<sup>1</sup> We should expect to find the names Barnabas, Justus, Paulus,  
 Arion, and Festus; see LIPSIVS, op. cit., vol. ii. part. 1. p. 94.

<sup>2</sup> See above, pp. 466, 706.

| The Twelve Apostles prayed, saying, "We have B. fol.  
 "toiled and have been scourged for the sake of Thy <sup>254a.</sup>  
 "Holy Name, what shall our reward be?" And our Lord <sup>cols. 1. 2.</sup>  
 said unto them, "Ye shall pass [into heaven] with  
 "freedom of speech." And the Apostles said, "Whosoever  
 "shall put his trust in our prayer, and shall celebrate our  
 "commemoration, and shall write the book of our con-  
 "tendings, what shall his reward be?" And our Lord  
 said unto the Twelve Apostles, "Whosoever shall put his  
 "trust in your prayers, and shall celebrate your com-  
 "moration, and shall write the book of your contendings,  
 "and your martyrdoms, and your sufferings, shall pass  
 "with you [into heaven] with freedom of speech at the  
 "last day." And now, O our brethren, let us celebrate  
 their commemoration, and put our trust in their prayers,  
 so that we may find with them at the last day a por-  
 tion which shall endure for ever and ever. Amen, and  
 Amen. May God, through the prayers of the Apostles  
 have mercy, alike upon him that wrote [this book], and  
 upon him that had it written, and upon him that readeth  
 it, and upon him that interpreteth it, and upon him that  
 hearkeneth unto its words, for ever and ever. Amen,  
 and Amen. So be it. So be it.

## THE DATES OF THE DEATHS OF THE APOSTLES.

[Page 600] [A Table] whereby we may remember the commemoration days of the deaths of the Blessed Disciples.

MONTH.	DAY OF MONTH.	NAME OF APOSTLE.
Maskarram	(August 29) 1	Bartholomew.
Tekemt	(October 9) 12	Matthew.
„	(October 19) 22	Luke.
Ḥadâr	(November 14) 18	Philip.
Tâḥshâsh	(November 30) 4	Andrew.
Têr	(December 30) 4	John.
Yakâtît	(February 4) 10	James, the son of Alphaeus,
Magâbît	(March 4) 8	Matthias. [Page 601]
Miyâzyâ	(April 12) 17	James, the son of Zebedee.
„	(April 25) 30	Mark.
Genbôt	(May 22) 26	Thomas.
Ḥamlê	(June 26) 2	Thaddeus.
„	(June 29) 5	Saint Peter and Saint Paul.
„	(July 4) 10	The son of Cleopas, Simon, that is Nathaniel.
„	(July 12) 18	James, who was surnamed the brother of our Lord.

## MEANINGS OF THE NAMES OF THE TWELVE APOSTLES.

Simon, that is, "God hath heard me"; Peter, that is, "Rock"; Andrew, that is, "Mighty one", or, "Conqueror"; James, that is, "Grasper of the sole of the foot", or, "Supplanter"; John, that is, "Joy", or "Compassion"; Philip, that is, "Lover of what is beautiful"; Bartholomew, that is, "Wine"; Thomas, that is, "Sun"; Matthew, that is, "Chosen one [of] Lebedyôs, the weaver"; Simon Kananâwî, that is, "Simon of Kânâ", or "Simon Zelotes"; Judas 'As-kôrôtâwî, (now 'Askôrôt is the name of his city,) the betrayer, that is, "He who hath in him wiles (*or* excuses).

---

# ERRATA, EMENDATIONS, &c.

P. 3. l. 7 read የዕቀበነ፡ l. 15 read ወንጌል፡ p. 5.  
 l. 9 delete the word in brackets; p. 7. l. 4 read  
 ለቅዱስ፡ p. 9. l. 14 read ለመስኪናን፡ p. 10. l. 12 read  
 ወጀተረፋ፡ p. 11. l. 7 read ጥሪተነ፡ l. 12 read ማውታ፡  
 p. 12. l. 11 read ቅውስጦስ፡ p. 16. l. 5 read ወንሥ  
 አሙ፡ p. 22. l. 13 read ይንሥኣ፡ l. 15 read በከመ፡  
 p. 24. l. 6 read ይወርሱ፡ l. 11 read ጴጥሮስ፡ (bis),  
 and ወይቤሎ፡ l. 16 read በቃሉ፡ p. 26. l. 3 read  
 ሊተ፡ ll. 8, 15 read ጴጥሮስ፡ p. 35. l. 4 read ወአብ  
 አቶ፡ ll. 6, 22 read ወትቤሎ፡ p. 37. l. 23 read ኀቤየ፡  
 p. 39. l. 5 read በራእይ፡ p. 40. l. 18 read ለዝንቱ፡  
 p. 44. l. 18 read ወከሎሙ፡ p. 45. l. 6 read ጀዕደወ፡  
 l. 26 read ቀዳማዊ፡ p. 46. l. 17 read ክርስቶስ፡ p.  
 47. l. 25 read እምዲበ፡ p. 49. l. 2 read ለጴጥሮስ፡  
 p. 50. l. 10 read ዘርኦ፡ p. 51. l. 5 read ወአበ፡ p. 52.  
 l. 3 read እምቆሮንቶስ፡ p. 53. l. 14 read ተፈጸመት፡  
 l. 18 read (with B) ለአክላስያ፡ (*ecclesia*); p. 54. l. 2  
 read ኢይትከተፍ፡ l. 18 read ፈለስፋያት፡ p. 55. l. 15  
 read ለሞት፡ አይ፡ p. 61. l. 9 read ወይ፡ ሎሙ፡ ለአ  
 ባግዕ፡ l. 12 read ዘኢይትነበብ፡ l. 15 read ነገርከነ፡

l. 22 for ቅጉታነ : B has ቀኖና : p. 62. l. 9 read ዘአ  
 ስመሮ : p. 63. l. 4 read መርሕ : l. 15 read ዕዉቅ :  
 l. 21 read ሰርግ : p. 64. l. 7 read ዘትፈቅዱ : p. 65.  
 l. 4 read ዕሢትክሙ : p. 68. l. 13 read ጴጥሮስ : pp.  
 69, 71. l. 1 read Preaching of Simon, son of Cleo-  
 pas; p. 69. l. 26 read ትደኅኑ : p. 72. l. 3 read ዘይ  
 ቤሉ : p. 76. l. 25 read ፈቃዳ : p. 77 read ወሶበ : በ  
 ዝኅ : p. 79. l. 2 read ፬ውሉደ : p. 85. l. 25 read ወ  
 ውኡቶሙኒ : and add ገብሩ : p. 89. l. 15 read ይበ  
 ውኡ : p. 90. l. 19 read ወሐዋርያኒ : p. 91. l. 9 read  
 ምርግይ : l. 25 read ርኢክሙኒ : p. 94. l. 7 read ልበ :  
 p. 95. l. 18 read ሿዓመት : p. 97. l. 5 read ወእምር  
 ስሐቱ : l. 24 read ሐዋርያ : p. 98. l. 18 read ሊይስ  
 መዕ : p. 101. l. 14 read ወይበፅል : p. 104. l. 7 read  
 የዐቢ : l. 20 read ወሶበ : p. 105. ll. 2. 4 read እርኑ :  
 p. 108. l. 24 read ትትከፈለኒ : p. 110. l. 1 read ወኡብ  
 ትር : l. 10 read አልቦ : l. 23 read መፍትወ : p. 111.  
 l. 2 read ወኢያንብርዎሙ : p. 112. l. 6 read አንቅጺሃ :  
 p. 116. l. 12 read ይቅሥፉከ : p. 118. l. 21 read ወስ  
 ልጣን : p. 119. l. 2 read ወንጌላዊ : l. 10 read ጴጥ  
 ሮስ : p. 121. l. read ወንጌል : p. 127. l. 5 read አመ  
 ቱ : l. 11 read ወንጌለ : p. 136. l. 18 read ፊልጶስ :  
 p. 141. l. 18 read ቤተ : p. 145. l. 14 read ወረከቡ :  
 p. 147. l. 18 read ወኡሥኡቶ : p. 152. l. 11 read  
 ተኩላ : p. 154. l. 27 read (with B) እም፪ዓመት : p.  
 158. l. 11 read ዘይከውን : p. 160. l. 6 read ኢየሱስ :  
 p. 162. l. 14 read እምሀገረ : l. 16 read ዘኅደርነ : p.

165. l. 9 read አንተ፡ l. 14 ወአምላካዮ፡ p. 166. l. 21 read አግብርቲክሙ፡ instead of አጋእስቲክሙ፡ p. 169. l. 16 read ፲ወጀመሠርያን፡ p. 172. l. 1 read ኢትዮጵያዎሙ፡ p. 173. l. 3 read ዳእመ፡ ዓዲ፡ p. 176 read ሷዕደወ፡ p. 177. l. 16 read ወሰገደ፡ p. 179. l. 4 read ዘሐጺን፡ l. 7 read ወአፍጠኑ፡ l. 25 read አግባእከኒ፡ እምግዙፍ፡ p. 182. l. 12 in the place of ወግኒጦን፡ B has ዓምደ፡ መግኒጦስ፡ l. 24 read እስመ፡ p. 183. l. 24 read ሰምዑ፡ p. 186. l. 8 read በፈሪህ፡ p. 187. l. 7 read ወአበይክሙ፡ p. 190. l. 10 read ወአስተንፈሰ፡ p. 191. l. 6 read (with B) ጀአውራጎ፡ p. 193. l. 7 read ዕለታት፡ l. 25 read ፈሣሕኩ፡ p. 194. l. 2 read ሿዕለተ፡ p. 196. l. 2 read ጀጸፍዐትከ፡ p. 200. l. 25 read ዙሎ፡ ምግባረ፡ p. 201. l. 5 read ወእንበይንዝ፡ p. 205. l. 25 read ወኢይተናገረ፡ p. 207. l. 16 read እምደቂቀ፡ p. 208. l. 1 read አምስኪን፡ l. 16 read ወትቅትልዎሙ፡ p. 209. l. 16 read በከመ፡ p. 211. l. 20 read ሰይጣን፡ p. 217. l. 11 read ኢታመክርዎ፡ l. 13 for መንክራቲክሙ፡ read ምግባሪክሙ፡ p. 218. l. 9 B has ወኢይትአመን፡ l. 10 for ላዕለ፡ እለ፡ B has ወደእኅዛ፡ ላዕለ፡ l. 11 read ቦቱ፡ l. 18 read ጽጌ፡ ። አፈወ፡ p. 220. l. 11 for ንጽሕተ፡ B has ርስሕተ፡ p. 222. l. 6 read ንበኪ፡ p. 223. l. 19 read ወአብ፡ p. 227. l. 24 read ሊቀ፡ p. 228. l. 4 read ወርቀ፡ p. 230. l. 3 read እምስራክ፡ p. 231. l. 25 read ይኑበር፡ p. 240. l. 18 read መሐሩኒ፡ p. 245. l. 5 read ፲ወጀእመተ፡ p. 256. l. 19 read አምላክ፡ p. 258. l. 13 read ተቅ

ዋም፡ p. 260. l. 2 read መጽሐፍ፡ p. 265. l. 9 read  
 ፲ወጀክፍለ፡ p. 266. l. 9 read ማመዐልት፡ p. 268. l. 4  
 read ቼአርጣል፡ p. 271. l. 21 read ትምክሕትኪ፡ p.  
 272. l. 25 read ለአማልክት፡ p. 274. l. 3 read ፬ዓመ  
 ት፡ p. 275. 18 read አአምረክ፡ p. 276. l. 17 read  
 ወሰገደት፡ p. 279. l. 10 read መንታ፡ p. 291. l. 2 read  
 ፱ዕደው፡ l. 14 read እጸለዩ፡ l. 18 (margin) read B.  
 243b; l. 26 read አስተዳሎክኒ፡ p. 293. l. 18 read  
 ወደገብአ፡ l. 24 read በከመ፡ p. 299. l. 3 read አኅ  
 ደግ፡ l. 7 read ወታሰተዳሉ፡ l. 9 read ለዛቲ፡ p. 300.  
 l. 11 read በእኩዩ፡ p. 301. l. 15 read እለ፡ l. 23 read  
 ንጸሊ፡ p. 303. l. 3 read ከማከመ፡ p. 308. l. 11 read  
 ጊዜሃ፡ p. 309. l. 4 read አኅዙ፡ p. 310. l. 14 read  
 አበደክመ፡ ፡ ፍፁ፡ p. 312. l. 15 read ትሄዩክመ፡ p.  
 315. l. 2 read ጀከዋኒተ፡ p. 316. l. 4 read ወአንትሙ  
 ሰ፡ p. 320. l. 26 read ከመ፡ l. 27 read ለአውዕአትክ፡  
 p. 323. l. 23 read ንሴሰይ፡ p. 324. l. 19 read ጀንሥ  
 አ፡ p. 330. l. 3 read ሕማመ፡ p. 339. l. 5 read አወ  
 ቦ፡ p. 341. l. 14 read ነሂአ፡ p. 346. l. 14 read ለመ  
 ዓንገርት፡ p. 349. l. 12 read ይብል፡ l. 21 read አም  
 ላክ፡ p. 350. l. 17 read ይትፈሃሕ፡ l. 22 read ወደወዩ፡  
 p. 353. l. 6 read ምላእክቲሁ፡ p. 358. l. 15 read አላ፡  
 p. 360. l. 14 read ወኢትገልፍ፡ p. 361. l. 20 read  
 እምጽሎመት፡ l. 27 read ወድኅረ፡ p. 362. l. 6 read  
 አገብረ፡ p. 363. l. 6 read ቅድው፡ ድራራት፡ p. 368.  
 l. 2 read ፬ዓብር፡ p. 369. l. 26 read ዲያብሎስ፡ p. 370.  
 l. 24 read እምብዙኅ፡ p. 372. l. 6 read ኦብሐት፡ p.

377. l. 4 read በዐታተ፡ l. 10 read ወፈጺሞሙ፡ l. 18  
 read ብእሲ፡ p. 380. l. 13 read ወእለሂ፡ p. 381. l. 8  
 read ገደፍነ፡ l. 10 read ኅደግነ፡ ጥሪተን፡ l. 12 read  
 ኅደግነ፡ l. 22 read አጽሐፎ፡ p. 383. l. 20 read መላ  
 አክት፡ p. 393. l. 1 read ሰማንቱ፡ ቀዳማዩ፡ መጽሐፈ፡  
 l. 21 read ወኅትሞሙ፡ p. 396. l. 11 read መኑሂ፡ p.  
 402. l. 25 read አልባስ፡ p. 409. l. 9 read ቦቱ፡ p.  
 410. l. 22 read መሠርዶ፡ p. 413. l. 25 read ቃላቲሆ  
 ሙ፡ p. 423. l. 16 read ወገደፎ፡ p. 248. l. 20 read  
 አምአሕዛብ፡ p. 431. l. 1 read ስመ፡ l. 2 read ለነሁ  
 ሙ፡ p. 441. l. 4 read ወንጌላዊ፡ p. 445. l. 14 read ወ  
 ነበራ፡ l. 16 read ወተሐንጸ፡ p. 456. l. 2 ይሰወጡ፡  
 l. 4 read ወክዋርስጥስ፡ p. 458. l. 11 read ለገጸክ፡ p.  
 459. l. 4 read ለገጸ፡ p. 470. l. 8 read ወአክሊልክ፡  
 p. 495. l. 22 read ትትሌዐል፡ p. 506. l. 26 read ት  
 ምሀርቶ፡ p. 513. l. 24 read ተመዶጦተ፡ p. 520. l. 22  
 read ወይለብስ፡ l. 23 read ዘመረግድ፡ l. 24 read ወ  
 በክሳዱሃ፡ p. 522. l. 27 read ይትኃሠሠክሙ፡ p. 527.  
 l. 2 read ዘሀሎ፡ p. 531. l. 7 read በቃል፡ p. 546. l.  
 2 read መአሥሪሆሙ፡ p. 559. l. 18 read ገሊላ፡ p.  
 563. l. 2 read ሰብአ፡ l. 22 read ገሊላዊያን፡ p. 568.  
 l. 4 read የማኑ፡ p. 573. l. 23 read ምሥራቅ፡ p. 576.  
 l. 9 read ዘይኤዝዘሙ፡ p. 584. l. 25 read ቀርጣግና፡  
 p. 586. l. 26 read ሰብአ፡

## INDEX.

- |                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Abbanes 323                 | Agrippa 32, 41, 600        |
| Abbûna (Mark) 69            | Agrippina 32               |
| Abgar 510                   | Ahab 88, 678               |
| Abiram 211                  | Ahaz 88                    |
| Abnês 405, 406, 407, 419    | Akar 308                   |
| Abraham 115, 312, 380, 381, | 'Aqîlâ 577                 |
| 382, 384, 523, 531, 566     | 'Aqlabîyôn 195             |
| Abû Şâlih 90                | Aklëbîyôs 197              |
| Acarpus 106, 107            | 'Aklamâtôs 30              |
| Accho 565, 575, 595         | 'Aklamîtôs 31              |
| Acestus 44, 47, 702         | 'Akmâba 32                 |
| Achaia 578                  | 'Aknâdyâ 162               |
| Acre 565                    | 'Aknëstîyân 34             |
| Acts of the Apostles 682    | 'Aqôstôs 132, 135, 136     |
| Adam 5, 38, 105, 157, 170,  | 'Aqûstôs 133, 134          |
| 291, 488, 689               | 'Aqrâbânyâ 32              |
| 'Adônâyâ 513                | 'Akrâd 514, 691            |
| Adramyttium 601             | 'Akrâdyâ 163               |
| 'Afrâkyâ 545                | 'Akëpâs (Acarpus) 166      |
| Africa 146, 156             | 'Akrëpôs (Agrippa) 32, 34, |
| Agabus 517, 595             | 36, 41, 109                |

- 'Akripôs (Acarpus) 107  
 'Akrôsyâ 8, 9, forsakes her husband's couch 10, becomes poor 11, refuses to perform her husband's plan 12, finds 2 dinârs 14, is tempted by her brother-in-law 19ff., is wrecked 20, returns to Rome 24, her sons die 24, they are raised up again 30  
 'Aksentiân 33  
 'Al'sëtôs 135  
 Albinus 33  
 Aleppo 548, 549, 564  
 Alexander 139, 164, 186, 207, 278  
 Alexander, governor of Caesarea, 645, 647, 648, 649, 650, 651, 652, 653, 655  
 Alexander Legends 514  
 Alexandria 20, 255, 310, 311, 509  
 Almas 539  
 'Al-Mêkôs 186  
 Aloes 41  
 Alphacus 264, 404  
 Altâbyôs 33  
 'Altâbyôs 34  
 'Alwâh 183  
 'Ammânyôs 83  
 Amos 53  
 Ananias 483, 534, 535, 536, 550, 551, 598  
 Ananus 83, 84  
 'Anâsēr 65  
 Anatolius 142  
 Andrapolis 406  
 Andrew 49, 404, 467, 481, 660ff., 680, 708, 709  
 Andrew goes to Mesyâ 113, carried by cloud 114, preaches to Kurds 163, goes to Lydia 164, 169, 170, a dove sent to him 171, 173, 174, 175, raises a dead man 175, 177, 179, 181, among the Parthians 183, 184, 186, 187, talks to Christ Who is disguised as a boatman 189ff., 194, 198, stoned 199, cast in fiery furnace 200, bound to the Wheel 202, is sawn asunder 202, 206, meets Dog-face 307, 212, martyrdom of 215, 216, 217, 218, crucified and stoned 220, sets out for the City of Cannibals 270, his adventures 271ff., arrives there 276, cast in prison

- 282, baptizes people 286,  
288, adventures in the  
City of Cannibals 373ff.
- Angels 519
- Anianus, Bishop of Alexan-  
dria 313
- Annas 139
- Antioch 225, 479, 491, 492,  
495, 498, 502, 509, 540,  
542, 543, 544, 545, 579
- 'Apâlûs 578
- Apis 314
- Apocalypse 255
- 'Apâyangê 130
- Apollo 117, image of at  
Kahênât 121, 122, 124,  
125, 126, 128, 341, 344
- Apostle, the Thirteenth 657
- Apostles, Church of at Jeru-  
salem 76
- Apostles, dates of deaths of  
708, meanings of their  
names 709
- Apostolic Epistles 682
- Aquila 577, 578
- Arabia 567
- Arabs 565
- Arachosia 321
- 'Arsâsôs 323
- Archangels 519
- Archelaus 556
- 'Ardâmîs 229, 240
- Arcia 321
- Arcopagite 51
- Arcopagus 577
- 'Arestebên 551
- 'Arestô 509
- 'Arestôs 553, 554, 555, 556,  
557, 559, 563
- 'Argyânôs 215
- Arion 608
- Aristabanus 551
- Aristarchus 592
- Ark of the Covenant 522
- 'Armâtên 61
- Armenia 514
- Armîs 118, 119, 120, 121,  
122, 123, baptized 123,  
tortured 124, 125, is made  
Bishop 128
- Arsenia 324, 325, 326, 327,  
330
- 'Arsônwâ 324, 325, 326, 327,  
328, 329, 330, 333
- Artabanus 551
- Artemus 227, 235, 240, 243,  
244, 249, 254, 580, 585,  
586, 587, 588, 661, 681
- 'Aryûs 577
- Ascension, the, 265, 302,  
475, 478
- Ashdod 483, 485

- Asher 50  
 Asia 53, 224, 225, 228, 253,  
     580, 592, 593, 597, 601  
 Asia Minor 505  
 'Askâtyâ 215  
 'Askôrôt 709  
 Assos 592  
 'Astayôs 354  
 Asyût 183  
 'Aṭbânâ 354  
 'Atênâ 484, 505, 509, 543,  
     549  
 Athens 51, 575, 576, 577  
 Athlete, i. e., Christ, 444  
 'Atrôfimâs 580, 581  
 Attaleia 543  
 Attalia 459, 543  
 Attalus II. Philadelphus 543  
 Augustus 131, 132  
 Aumanius 83, 84  
 Aurelius 139  
 'Awbâkalyôn 316  
 'Awdayôs 509  
 'Awësyâs 353  
 'Awëtyôs Kôrôs 355  
 Awkâryês 510  
 'Aysûs 593  
 Axe, i. e., Christ, 121  
 Axis 215  
 'Azâtôn 483, 485  
 Azotus 510  
 'Azrëyânôs 183, 185, 187,  
     188, 189, 190, 196  
 Babylon 673  
 Badrônâ 554  
 Balaam 445  
 Bâlḵâ 310  
 Barbarians 402, 657  
 Barbaros 402  
 Barímôs 313  
 Bar-Jesus 531, 539  
 Barkâ 313  
 Barmûdâ 60  
 Barnabas 505, 509, 517, 537,  
     538, 539, 541, 542, 543,  
     544, 545  
 Barnabas, an officer of Nero,  
     608  
 Bartholomew, preaching of,  
     906, meets a camel man  
     91, disguises himself 93,  
     is sold as a slave by Peter  
     for 30 staters 94, goes to  
     the Oasis as a vine dresser  
     95, raises camels to life  
     96, restores sight to a  
     blind man 96, makes vines  
     grow miraculously 99, ad-  
     ministers Sacrament 100,  
     raises the dead 101, builds  
     a church in Oasis Parva

- 102, his doctrine 105,  
works cures 107, casts out  
a devil and is put in a sack  
of sand and drowned 108,  
acts of Andrew and Bartho-  
lomew 183, 184, 185, 189,  
193, 194, is stoned 199,  
cast in fiery furnace 200,  
broken on wheel 202, sawn  
asunder 206, meets Dog-  
face 207, 211, 212, 405,  
708, 709  
Bâtôs 183, 185, 186, 188,  
190, 191, 195, 196, 208  
Barsēyôs 47  
Baryâsâ 539  
Baryâsôs 539  
Baryâsôn 544  
Bâryôs 706  
Baṭṭê 307  
Baṭrêḵ 47  
Baṭriḵ 607, 608, 706  
Bâsyôs 382  
Bazaar of Carpenters 535  
Beelzebub 276, 385, 511  
Benjamin 50, 531  
Berenice 600, 601  
Beroea 548, 592  
Bêrût 484  
Bêsîdyâ 540  
Bethlehem 188  
Black Sea 373  
Book of Apostles 567  
Book of Commandments 368  
Book of Contendings of Paul  
567  
Book of Gospels 567  
Book of the Law 303  
Book of Life 315, 502  
Book of Moses 596, 597  
Book of Prophets 303, 567  
Books of the Law 154  
Books of the Prophets 59,  
154  
Books, the Eight, 520  
Bride, i. e., Church, 410  
Bridegroom, i. e., Christ, 410,  
415  
Britain 510  
Bull of Serapis 313  
Bull, Field of, 313  
Bukolos 313  
Caesar 137  
Caesar, Paul appeals to, 600,  
601  
Caesarea 244, 308, 537,  
538, 579, 595, 598, 599,  
600, 645, 646.  
Caesarea Sebaste 601  
Caiaphas 139, 435  
Calends 42

- Camel goes through a needle's eye 366ff.  
 Canaanites 382  
 Cannibals, the City of, 163, 267ff., 370ff.  
 Canon, the, 682  
 Cappadocia 608  
 Carthage 510, 513, 514  
 Caustus 482, 484, 485  
 Cave of Life 520  
 Cave of Treasures 520  
 Chaldees 673  
 Charisius 347, 354  
 Cherubim 265, 379, 467, 474, 493, 519, 525  
 Children of Thunder 50  
 Christodoulos 69  
 Church, the, Hymn of Thomas on, 409  
 Cilicia 531, 545, 585  
 Circumcision 543  
 City of Cannibals 163, 203, 204, 269, 370  
 Claudius 265, 577  
 Clement 23, 30, 31, narrative of 466ff., 484, 485, made Archbishop of Rome 509  
 Cleopas 50, 70, 74, 77, 708  
 Cloud, the, 115  
 Coffin of Peter 41  
 Constantinus 482, 484, 485  
 Coos 595  
 Corinth 53, 577, 591  
 Corinthians 578  
 Cornelius 73  
 Covenant 522  
 Cross, the, 39  
 Crown of Thorns 522  
 Cyprus 20, 22, 505, 545, 595  
 Cyrene 309  
 Dabra Sabrâ 69  
 Dacia 295, 357  
 Dahles 592  
 Dalmâtyâ 137  
 Damaris 577  
 Damascus 289, 290, 483, 532, 533, 536, 537, 578, 663  
 Dan 50  
 Daniel 673  
 Darb al-Mustaḳîm 535  
 Darbên 541, 542  
 Darkness, Land of, 514  
 Daryânôs 76, 623  
 Dasyâ 295  
 Dathan 211  
 David 55, 59, 87, 312, 329, 384  
 Dêmâs 17  
 Demetrius 580, 585, 586, 587, 641, 644, 645

- Derbe 541, 542, 545, 592  
 Dêrbên 545  
 Dêwerîs 32  
 Diabolos 172, 449, 612, 618, 625  
 Diana 580  
 Didymus 404  
 Dione 32  
 Dionysius 407, 518, 520  
 Dionysius, Abbâ, the Arco-  
 pagite, 49, 51, 69, 577,  
 his Epistle to Timothy  
 51ff.  
 Dioscorides 229, 234, 235,  
 239, 240, 243, 246, 247,  
 248, 249  
 Dog-Face, friend of Andrew  
 and Bartholomew 203,  
 204, 205, 208, 209, 213  
 Dômârîs 577  
 Dômâtî'anôs 255  
 Domitian 255  
 Dominions 469, 519  
 Domnos 235  
 Dômôs 235  
 Dorotheus 369  
 Dove, the, sent by Philemon,  
 171, speaks 173, is 60  
 years old 174  
 Drangiana 321  
 East, Apostle prays towards,  
 72, 496  
 Edessa 512  
 Egypt 22, 117, 118, 224, 309,  
 315, 317, 478, 509, 510  
 Egyptians 312  
 Elijah 64, 65, 678  
 Elisha 65  
 El-Maklîtôs 470  
 Elwâh 90, 103  
 Elymas 531, 539  
 Emmaus 479  
 Ephesians 225, 229, 235, 240,  
 241, 251, 252, 253, 254  
 Ephesus 253, 254, 255, 510,  
 578, 581, 591, 593, 597  
 'Esbâsyânôs 89  
 Ethiopia 657  
 'Etnčyâs 21  
 'Etnôsyâ 20  
 Eucharia 32  
 'Eufrikôs 507  
 Euodios 509  
 Euphemia, concubine of  
 Agrippa 32  
 Euphemia, wife of Thêwô-  
 dâs 619, 630, 632, 643  
 649, 650, 651, 655  
 Euroclydon 602  
 Eusânas(?) 533  
 Eutychus 592

- Eve 170, 435  
 Face-cloth of Christ 322  
 Faḥestōs 551  
 Fāḫūs 540  
 Farisāḫilā 578  
 Fast, the Forty Days', 683  
 Felix 567, 598, 599  
 Festus 131, 132, 551, 600, 608  
 Field of the Ox 313, 314, 316  
 Filrōs 545  
 Fire, i. e., Christ, 121  
 Flood, the, 172, 283  
 Fort of 'Ardāmīs 229  
 Fortress of Zion 491  
 Four Gates, the, 7  
 Friend of God, i. e., Abraham, 381  
 Gabra Mar'āwī 235, 368  
 Gabriel 68  
 Gad 50, 424, 429  
 Gadla Ḥawāryāt 66  
 Gādōn 424, 429  
 Gāḥlēyā 659  
 Gaius 592  
 Galatia 53, 545, 579, 608  
 Galāṭyā 545  
 Galilā 137  
 Galileans 665  
 Galilee 139, 538, 663, 664  
 Gallio 578  
 Gallius 592  
 Gamaliel 139, 531  
 Gandāpōr 428  
 Garanius 215  
 Garden of Delight 387  
 Garden of Joy 381  
 Gargā 692  
 Garment, the royal lady's, 60  
 Garment without seam 522  
 Gate, i. e., Christ, 259  
 Gehenna 175, 180, 190, 201, 211, 671, 673, 675, 677  
 Genbot 346, 356, 708  
 Gentiles 63, 183, 222, 314, 518, 535, 578, 580, 595, 657  
 Girdle of Paul 595  
 Girl buried alive in foundations of the bath 234  
 God-bearer, the, 5  
 Gold, story of the bag of, 134  
 Gōnā 405  
 Gospel 128  
 Gospel of God 104  
 Gospel of Matthew in Hebrew 130  
 Gospel of Peace 352

- Gospel of the Kingdom 146,  
     683  
 Gospels 682  
 Greece 111, 190, 592  
 Greeks 269, 476, 541, 548,  
     593, 657  
 Green River 488  
 Gundaforus 321, 323, 405  
  
 Habakkuk 673  
 Hadâr 66, 156, 162, 420,  
     708  
 Hakit 347  
 Halab 549  
 Halb 548  
 Hamlê 42, 43, 66, 75, 77,  
     82, 89, 357, 368, 527, 702,  
     708  
 Hannâ 551  
 Harlôt, story of, 362ff.  
 Hasim, the Dog-Face, 208  
 Hawk, worshipped at Halb,  
     549ff.  
 Hebrews 180, 476, 520  
 Hendakê 295  
 Hermôgânes 567  
 Herod 113, 304, 306, 307,  
     435, 556  
 Holy Gospel 78, 79, 214, 347  
 Holy Mysteries 73, 81, 120,  
     123, 127, 172, 214, 286, 555  
 Holy Scriptures 52, 75  
 Honey used in embalming 41  
  
 Ibrahim al-Khalîl 382  
 Iconium 542, 611, 616, 617,  
     618, 623, 646, 651  
 Idols, vanity of, 165  
 Îmahîs 479  
 Înatôlê 143  
 Incarnation 488  
 India 295, 296, 319, 320, 324,  
     346, 355, 419, 509  
 Isaac the Patriarch 115, 382,  
     384, 523, 566  
 Isaac 199  
 Isaiah 65, 88  
 Israel 123, 297, 327, 435,  
     531, 533, 565, 597, 679  
 Israel Jacob 54  
 Israel, Twelve Tribes of, 17,  
     49  
 Issachar 50  
 Italy 602  
 Iya'onâdîn Ensis 345  
  
 Jacob Israel 34, 115, 382,  
     384, 523, 566  
 Jairus 488  
 Jambres 509  
 James, brother of our Lord,  
     223, 225

- James, son of Alphaeus, 50, 264, 266
- James, the Just, 71, 75, 78, 80, 85, 86, martyrdom of 88
- James, son of Cornelius, 72, 73
- James, son of Zebedee, 49, acts of 295ff., restored sight to a man 298, martyrdom of 304ff., understood speech of animals and birds 305, beheaded by Nero 307, 329, 467, 475, 708, 709
- Jannes 509
- Jeremiah 85, 88; Book of, 54
- Jerusalem 16, 58, 60, 67, 71, 74, 75, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 89, 130, 139, 161, 224, 225, 255, 264, 298, 370, 404, 467, 475, 476, 479, 490, 492, 493, 501, 505, 506, 508, 520, 532, 533, 535, 536, 538, 540, 545, 551, 581, 595, 656, 665
- Jews 52, 56, 63, 71, 76, 79, 80, 85, 86, 88, 89, 138, 149, 184, 239, 252, 264, 289, 377, 380, 395, 435, 472, 488, 497, 501, 508, 530, 531, 533, 537, 541, 543, 544, 545, 548, 567, 569, 577, 578, 580, 589, 592, 593, 595, 597, 600, 606, 657, 663, 664
- John, son of Zebedee, 49, 50, 68, preaching of, 222ff., is wrecked 225, is employed by a bath woman as fireman 229, is beaten 231, raises man from the dead 242, is seized as a slave 245, his last address 258, death 262, lived 70 years after the Resurrection 255, 295, 404, 467, 481, 491, 492, 493, 503, 510, 520, 539, 708, 709
- John Bartholomew 50
- John surnamed Mark 538, 544
- John the priest 167, 168, 169
- John I. 'Alâf Sagad, 466, 706
- Jonathan 62
- Joppa 224, 295, 479, 480, 505
- Jordan 512
- Joseph 50, 54, 115, 405
- Joseph the carpenter 85
- Judaea 188, 294, 342, 476, 506, 538, 595

- Judah, house of, or land, 49,  
     130, 226, 535, 568, 673  
 Judas 'Asḵôrôtâwî 709  
 Judas Iscariot 50, 289, 435  
 Judas son of James 404  
 Judas Barnabas 544  
 Judas Thaddeus, preaching  
     of 357ff., goes to Syria  
     with Peter 358, ploughs  
     a field 359, works a mi-  
     racle 359, death of 368  
 Julius the centurion 601, 608  
 June 42  
 Jupiter Ammon 183, 309  
 Justinus 484, 485  
 Justus 47, 578, 608  
  
 Kahênât, city of, 111, 114  
 Kâlâmdan 252  
 Kâmâdagî 252  
 Kâmitôs 609  
 Kâmkûlyâ 540  
 Kanâyôs 30  
 Kantôryâ 336  
 Kantîryâ 338  
 Kanṭûḵôrôs 321  
 KARBÎL 90  
 Kariyâ 32  
 Kartâgenâ 700  
 Kartâgnâ 691  
 Kartâgôn 510  
 Kartagônâ 513, 514  
 Kemtîs 609  
 Keprâ (Cyprus) 20, 221  
 Kerdon 313  
 Kêrôn 153  
 Kêsârôs 503, 504  
 Kesitôs 44  
 Kêstôs 131  
 Kêwârestes 548, 549, 550,  
     551, 552, 554, 555, 556,  
     557, 558, 559, 563  
 Kewestôs, prefect, 7, 8, be-  
     comes disciple of Peter  
     10, gives his goods to  
     the poor 11, 13, 15, 16,  
     18, 25  
 Kîstôs 45, 46, 702, 704, 705,  
     706  
 Kônṭôrôs 323  
 Koran 382  
 Kôrdônôs 313  
 Kôstôs 484, 706  
 Kôṭ of Mâmrekê 307  
 Krêstadâlû 69  
 Krestôs-'Arde'êt 369  
 Kronos 99  
 Kuesyân 503  
 Kurds 163, 514  
 Kûrônôs 99  
 Kûstôs 47, 482

- Lâbâ 602  
 Lamp, i. e., Christ, 121  
 Languages of animals and  
     birds 305  
 Laodice 488  
 Laodicea 482, 483, 485, 486,  
     488, 490, 503, 504  
 Lasayôs 609  
 Lasea 602  
 Law of the Books of Moses  
     250  
 Law and the Gospel 286  
 Law of Faith 111, 242, 329,  
     346  
 Law of God 73, 381, 519  
 Law of Holy Gospel 346  
 Law of Moses 63, 65, 76,  
     115, 261, 479, 531, 532  
 Law, the Old, 480  
 Lazarus 488, 650, 670  
 Leather dresser, story of,  
     311  
 Lebedyôs 709  
 Ledyâ 163  
 Lendaros 509  
 Lendayôs 509  
 Leștrân 541, 542, 545  
 Levi 49  
 Libya 309  
 Light, i. e., Christ, 121  
 Liķôs 421  
 Lion slays a scoffer 411  
 Lion, the friend of Paul,  
     562, 573  
 Lions' den in Babylon 673  
 Lipsius quoted 32, 41, 70,  
     85, 88, 90, 111, 113, 135,  
     136, 147, 163, 183, 215,  
     222, 227, 232, 243, 250,  
     269, 292, 295, 299, 308,  
     309, 313, 316, 317, 319,  
     321, 325, 347, 351, 353,  
     357, 370, 390, 406, 409,  
     419, 433, 442, 446, 455,  
     509, 510, 515, 531, 532,  
     606, 608, 702  
 Longinus 44, 702, 704, 705  
 Lonyâ 309  
 Lords 469, 519  
 Lucius 538, 549  
 Luck of the city 243  
 Lûkânya 541  
 Lûķâs 45, 46, 764  
 Luķôs 704  
 Luke 45, 46, 47, 48, 137—  
     145, 519, 531, 533, 545,  
     592, 595, 706, 708  
 Luke of Dalmatia 137  
 Lûkiyânôs 324  
 Lûkiyôs 324, 325, 330, 331,  
     332, 333, 334, 336, 337,  
     346

- Lûkôs 706  
 Lûsyûs 549  
 Lûyûkôs 702  
 Lycaonia 541, 542  
 Lydd 295  
 Lydda 479  
 Lydia 163, 164, 168, 171,  
     195, 295  
 Lystra 541, 542, 545, 611,  
     613, 615, 616  
  
 Macedonia 188, 189, 191,  
     192, 193, 347, 545, 548,  
     577, 592  
 Magûbît 289, 294, 447, 692,  
     708  
 — Makâr the devil 179  
 Maķâtrân 183  
 Maķêlôs 41  
 Malta 604  
 Malyôs 313  
 Mamrêkê 308  
 Manaen 538  
 Manâfeķ 685  
 Manâfeķet, Island of, 683,  
     684  
 Manâfķân 683, 684, 685  
 Manâsê 549  
 Manasse 538  
 Manassch 549, 550  
 Manţet 510  
  
 Marâwan 250  
 Marcellus 34, 40, 41  
 Mardocheus 549, 550  
 Mareon 228, 250  
 Marĥanâ 347  
 Mark, Saint, his acts, mar-  
     tyrdom, and death 309—  
     316ff., 539, 708, Abûna 69  
 Mark, son of 'Arestô 509  
 Mark 544, 545  
 Markalyos 34  
 Market-Place 535  
 Marķîyâ 309  
 Marmarâ'ân 228, 251  
 Marmareon 251  
 Marmarica 308, 309  
 Marmûdâ 60  
 Mars 503  
 Mars' Hill 577  
 Mary the Virgin, 5, 6, 68,  
     74, 85, 86, 87, 131, 132,  
     150, 222, 265, 290, 345,  
     379, 470, 472, 474, 487,  
     497, 521, 524, 525, 574,  
     585, 611, 666, 681, 689,  
     691ff.  
 Mary Magdalene 477  
 Maskarram 104, 110, 139,  
     404, 708  
 Mastayôs 350, 354  
 Mastëyôs 355

- Mastius 354  
 Mas'ûdî 382  
 Matrâdôrâ 485, 486  
 Matthew, Saint, 50, acts, and  
     death 111—135, 404, 708,  
     709  
 Matthias 163, 164, preaching,  
     acts, and death of 267—  
     371 ff., 708  
 Mât'yâs 191  
 Maytewanyânôs 351  
 Mazdai 347, 350, 354, 355  
 Mêdôn 623, 627, 634, 637,  
     638, 643, 647, 652, 653,  
     654  
 Mêkôs 186, 191  
 Mëlëtyâ 604  
 Melita 604  
 Melkôs 190  
 Memphis 314  
 Mêrôn, oil of, 482, 490, 508  
 Men with wings of eagles  
     175  
 Mêsendyâ 545  
 Mesopotamia 510  
 Messengers, the Seven, 222  
 Mesyâ 114  
 Meynard, B. de, 382  
 Michael 66, 68, 193, 284,  
     363, 364, 584, 673  
 Michael, Church of, 76  
 Mîlâtû 593  
 Miletus 593  
 Milios 313  
 Milk 40  
 Mîyâzyâ 304, 307, 314, 317,  
     420, 708  
 Moses 63, 115, 250, 509,  
     523, 524, 531, 679  
 Mount of Olives 79, 146,  
     273, 357, 467, 472, 475,  
     477, 478, 512, 525  
 Mount Tabor 512, 525  
 Mygdonia 347, 354  
 Myrrh 40  
 Mysia 545  
 Nahr al-Kebîr 488  
 Nahr Mudîyukeh 488  
 Nahr Snôbar 488  
 Naidas 103, 104  
 N'and'ân-'Ensôs 345  
 Naphtali 50  
 Napkin, the, 522  
 Nasmêfîn 104  
 Nathaniel 50  
 Neapolis 545  
 Nebuchadnezzar 17  
 Needle, the eye of the, 363  
 Nero 41, 44, 46, 47, 60,  
     136, 139, 143, 145, 307,  
     506, 606, 607, 608, 648,

- 649, 702, 705, the five  
 friends of 706  
 Net, i. e., Christ, 259  
 Nicanor 222  
 Nicolas 222  
 Niêndôs 104  
 Niger 538  
 N'indos 103  
 Nisan 317  
 Noah 171, 172, 387  
 Nôbâ 509  
 Nubia 509  
  
 Oases, the, 90  
 Oasis Parva 90, 183, 309  
 Ocean 435  
 Olives, Mount of, 70  
 Osiris 314  
 Osiris-Apis 314  
 Ox, story of the, 516ff.  
  
 Palestine 243  
 Palestinians 476  
 Pamphylia 540, 544  
 Pantôn 577  
 Paphos 531, 539, 540  
 Paraclete 554  
 Paradise 113, 170, 275, 381  
 Paraskîlâ 577  
 Pargên 540  
 Parmenas 222  
 Parthia 130  
 Parthians 183  
 Passover 86, 314  
 Passion, the, 302  
 Patara 595  
 Patmos 252, 253, 255  
 Patroclus 47, 606, 706  
 Paul, Saint, 41, acts and  
 martyrdom of 43—57, 255,  
 345, 483, comes to John  
 and Peter 495, adventures  
 of 498ff., 509, 510, history  
 of contending of 527ff.,  
 539, 541, 702, 708  
 Paulus, officer of Nero, 608  
 Pelagia 407  
 Pelwôn 294  
 Pentapolis 309  
 Pêrâkômnôs 111  
 Perga 540  
 Pergamum 543  
 Persia 320, 657  
 Peter, Saint, his life, and acts,  
 and death 7—37, 54, 56,  
 57, goes with Simon to  
 Jerusalem 71, with James  
 to Jerusalem 79, with Bar-  
 tholomew to the Oasis 91,  
 goes to Rome 114, goes  
 with Philip to Phrygia 146,  
 164, 223, 254, goes with

- James and Thomas to India 296, 320ff., 323, goes with Thaddeus to Syria 357, 389, Acts of, 466ff., 475, 476, 493, 649, 660, 708, 709
- Phalaeon 294
- Pharaoh 242, 435, 509
- Pharisees 86, 87
- Pharos 310
- Philemon, of the beautiful voice, 164, 166, 167, 168, 169, sends a dove for Andrew 171, 173, 174, 177
- Philip the Apostle 50, preaching, acts, and martyrdom of 146—160, 222, 404, 481, 509, 510, 595, 611, 612, 708, 709
- Philip the governor 599
- Philip, father of Philemon, 163
- Philippi 513, 515, 545, 592
- Phrygia 146, 156, 545, 579
- Pilate 150, 342, 506, 535, 567
- Piobsata 83
- Pisidia 540
- Pontius Pilate 72, 556, 676
- Pontus 577
- Porcius Festus 599
- Powers 469, 519
- Princes 519
- Principalities 468
- Priscilla 577, 578
- Prochorus 222, 224, 225, 226, 230, 233, 234, 244, 246, 252, 259
- Prokumenos 111
- Prop, i. e., Christ, 259
- Prophets 85
- Protheus 519, 520
- Pseudo-Areopagita 51
- Ptolemais 565, 595
- Purple tunic, the, 522
- Quantaria 336, 338
- Ramantha 488
- Ramitha 488
- Râm râêl 623
- Raphael 700
- Raukas 169, 170, 172
- Raven, the, 171
- Râwêkâs 167
- Rayêlêyôs 139
- Red Sea 115, 693
- Refuge, i. e., Christ, 259
- Resurrection, the, 255, 265, 300, 302, 468
- Reuben 49

- 
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Rhodes 595  | Salâwëgya 225   |
| Rôbêl 49  | Salawëgyôs 227  |
| Rôha 510  | Sale 382  |
| Rôkôs 170, 172, 173, 174,<br>177, 180, 181, 184   | Salt, i. e., Christ, 259  |
| Rome 7, 12, 13, 21, 24, 25,<br>32, 33, 34, 41, 58, 59, 60,<br>114, 135, 137, 139, 141,<br>142, 230, 320, 485, 490,<br>505, 508, 509, 514, 515,<br>518, 521, 524, 577, 599,<br>602, 605, 648, 649, 700 | Sâma 578  |
| Roman Emperors 7  | Samaria 70, 71, 538   |
| Romans 476, 481, 546, 598   | Samothracia 545   |
| Romeca 230  | Sanctuary (Jerusalem) 593,<br>595, 598, 599, 600  |
| Rômnâ 230, 231, 232, 233,<br>234, 235, 236, 237, 240,<br>247  | Sandarûk 406  |
| Rope 522  | Sanê 455  |
| Rûkôs 169   | Satan 19, 36, 75, 80, 82,<br>138, 147, 157, 167, 169,<br>172, 193, 208, 216, 219,<br>232, 234, 235, 242, 243,<br>244, 245, 246, 247, 248,<br>249, 252, 260, 265, 277,<br>280, 289, 290, 347, 365,<br>477, 491, 510, 513, 534,<br>571, 622, 624, 628, 629,<br>631, 633, 635, 636, 643,<br>672, 673 |
| Rufus 164, 186, 207, 278  | Satan Diabolos 652  |
| Sabinos 313   | Saul 62, 483, 494, 531, 534,<br>535, 539, 585   |
| Sabla Wangêl 'Alaf Mogasâ<br>466, 706   | Şawûs 613   |
| Sadducees 551   | Scribes 86, 87  |
| Sadôm 22  | Scythia 215, 373, 510   |
| Sakenşes 567, 568, 570, 571,<br>574, 575, 592   | Sëbëştëyâ 601   |
| Salaminia 539   | Secundus 567, 592   |
| Salamis 539   | Sekûrâ 353  |

- Selemnis 227  
 Seleucia 225, 539  
 Seleucus Nicator 488  
 Seleukos 227  
 Sêlêwenkyâ 539  
 Selkiyôs 180  
 Semâ'êl 393  
 Seraphim 265, 379, 493, 519  
 Serapis 313, 314, 317  
 Sergius 539  
 Sergius Paulus 539  
 Sêwâ 183  
 Sheol 127, 401, 403, 512,  
     564, 673  
 Shâma 578  
 Sidon 481, 601  
 Silas 544, 545, 546, 547,  
     548, 577  
 Silas the fisherman 141  
 Simeon 54  
 Simon of Kânâ 709  
 Simon Kananâwî 709  
 Simon Magus 40, 498, 509,  
     513, 514, 515, 516, 517,  
     522  
 Simon Niger 538  
 Simon Peter 49, 379, 404,  
     490, 708, 709  
 Simon, son of Cleopas, 50,  
     acts and martyrdom 71  
     —77  
 Simon Zelotes 404, 709  
 Sinope 373  
 Siphor 353  
 Sîwah 183  
 Skin of Saint Thomas 346  
 Snake that speaks 101  
 Spain 53  
 Spear 522  
 Spice 41  
 Sponge 522  
 Sodom 512  
 Solomon 657  
 Sopater 592  
 Sophonias 369  
 Sosipater 592  
 Stephen Protomartyr 88, 222,  
     532, 537  
 Stone of great price 16ff.  
 Strabo 373, 488  
 Straight Street 535  
 Sûkes 215  
 Syria 357, 545, 548, 578, 595  
 Syria, Island of, 510  
 Syrians 476  
 Tables of the Law 523  
 Tâhshâsh 215, 221, 708  
 Taḡwâm 310  
 Talisman of Wariḡôn 692ff.  
 Tarsus 498, 503, 531, 535,  
     537, 538, 585

- Tartarus 512  
 Tartabania 347  
 Ta'tirôn 546  
 Taṭrâbilôn 7, 8  
 Teḡemt 130, 136, 137, 143,  
     145, 419, 708  
 Ter 253, 708  
 Terdânûs 570  
 Terô'dâ 545  
 Têrtēbânî 347  
 Têrtēbânyâ 354  
 Tertia 347, 354  
 Tertullus 599  
 Têryôbastâ 83  
 Thaddeus 50, 357, 405, 510,  
     708  
 Theodore 619, 621, 625, 628,  
     638, 643, 648, 649, 651,  
     652, 655  
 Theophilus 299  
 Thessalonica 548, 549, 552,  
     592  
 Thêwôdâs 618—626, 628,  
     629, 632—639, 643, 644,  
     646, 648, 649, 651, 652  
 Thomas 50, life, acts, mir-  
     acles and martyrdom of  
     319—355, 404, 447, 509,  
     708, 709  
 Thomas the elder 517  
 Thrones 469, 519  
 Thyatira 546  
 Tiberius 317.  
 Timon 222  
 Timotheus 592  
 Timothy, friend of Paul, 51  
     —54, 56, 62, 63—69, 505,  
     509, 513, 517, 519, 545,  
     577  
 Timothy an officer 552—  
     559, 563  
 Tîrôs 595  
 Tîtô 45  
 Titus 45—48, 505, 509, 517,  
     519, 520, 704, 706  
 Titus Justus 578  
 Titus of Gallia 137  
 Trajan 76  
 Treasury of the Pearl, i. e.,  
     Christ 259  
 Tree of Life 40, 121  
 Troas 545, 592  
 Trophimus 580—582, 585  
     —592  
 Tychicus 592  
 Tyrannus 579  
 Tyre 481, 595, 601  
 Twin, name of Thomas, 336  
 Uriël 479, 700  
 Vecius 324, 330, 346

- 
- |                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Vespasian 89, 520        | Xanthippe 32, 33            |
| Victor 369               |                             |
| Viñdafra 321             | Yabes 593                   |
| Vine, i. e., Christ, 440 | Yâfûs 539                   |
| Vinegar 522              | Yakâtît 264, 266, 433, 443, |
| Viper 604                | 708                         |
| Virgins, the Seven, 595  | Yâkûṭ 90, 549, 578          |
| Vizan 351, 353           | Yâpûs 531                   |
|                          | Yôṣṭôs 609                  |
| Wârîḵôn 513, 691, 700    |                             |
| Whale swallows Andrew,   | Zebedee 49, 50, 222, 253,   |
| Rufus, and Alexander 186 | 295, 304, 307, 404          |
| Wine 40                  | Zebulun 50                  |
| Wormwood 522             | Zeryâs 354                  |
| Wright, Prof. W., quoted | Zion 67, 475, 476; Fortress |
| 405, 406, 409, 424, 433, | of 491                      |
| 442, 446, 455            | Ziyârâsôs 354               |
|                          | Zuzanes 351                 |
-

## LIST OF SCRIPTURE QUOTATIONS.

Genesis	Page	Amos	Page
i. 26 . . . . .	265	i. 1 . . . . .	53
xlvi. 36 . . . . .	54	vii. 14 . . . . .	53
<b>Judges</b>		<b>Zechariah</b>	
i. 31 . . . . .	565	viii. . . . .	67
<b>2 Samuel</b>		<b>St. Matthew</b>	
xviii. 33 . . . . .	59	i. 1 . . . . .	312
<b>2 Chron.</b>		v. 11, 12 . . . . .	141
xx. 7 . . . . .	381	vi. 25 . . . . .	440
<b>Psalms</b>		vii. 7 . . . . .	327, 458
i. 15 . . . . .	364	viii. 22 . . . . .	41
lxxix. 2 . . . . .	55	x. 16 . . . . .	223, 277, 386, 665
cxv. 5 ff. . . . .	666	x. 18 . . . . .	109
cxv. 4—8 . . . . .	165	x. 23 . . . . .	141
cxviii. 12 . . . . .	55	xii. 24 . . . . .	276, 385
<b>Ecclesiastes</b>		xiii. 31 . . . . .	283
i. 7 . . . . .	181	xv. 17 . . . . .	181
<b>Isaiah</b>		xvi. 16 . . . . .	474
iii. 10, 11 . . . . .	88	xix. 18 . . . . .	365
xli. 8 . . . . .	381	xix. 24 . . . . .	365
lxiv. 4 . . . . .	40, 440	xix. 23, 24 . . . . .	439
<b>Jeremiah</b>		xxii. 37 . . . . .	365
i. 5 . . . . .	85	xxiv. 5 . . . . .	335
iii. 22 . . . . .	327	xxiv. 35 . . . . .	283
ix. 1 . . . . .	53	xxvii. 46 . . . . .	397
xxiii. 9 . . . . .	54	<b>St. Mark</b>	
<b>Ezekiel</b>		iii. 22 . . . . .	276
xvii. 32 . . . . .	327	vii. 19 . . . . .	181
xxxiii. 11 . . . . .	327	ix. 35 . . . . .	528
xxxiii. 31, 32 . . . . .	167	x. 19 . . . . .	365

St. Mark	Page	Acts	Page
x. 25 . . . . .	365, 439	xvii. 34 . . . . .	577
xiii. 6 . . . . .	335	xviii. 5 . . . . .	577
xiii. 9 . . . . .	109	xviii. 7 . . . . .	578
xv. 34 . . . . .	397	xix. 7 . . . . .	579
<b>St. Luke</b>		xix. 24 . . . . .	581, 585
vii. 25 . . . . .	439	xix. 27 . . . . .	254
x. 3 . . . . .	223	xx. 2 . . . . .	592
xi. 9 . . . . .	458	xx. 4 . . . . .	567
xi. 15 . . . . .	276	xx. 9 . . . . .	592
xvii. 22 . . . . .	53	xx. 15 . . . . .	593
xviii. 20 . . . . .	365	xxi. 1—3 . . . . .	595
xviii. 25 . . . . .	365, 439	xxi. 7, 9 . . . . .	565, 595
xxi. 8 . . . . .	335	xxi. 15 . . . . .	596
xxi. 12 . . . . .	109	xxi. 23 . . . . .	596
xxi. 18 . . . . .	397	xxi. 29—40 . . . . .	597
xxi. 33 . . . . .	283	xxiii. 12 . . . . .	598
<b>St. John</b>		xxiii. 23 . . . . .	598
i. 1 . . . . .	39	xxiv. 3 . . . . .	567
xv. 20 . . . . .	223	xxiv. 27 . . . . .	599
xvi. 33 . . . . .	223	xxv. 7, 9 . . . . .	600
xxi. 18 . . . . .	35	xxv. 22 . . . . .	600
<b>Acts</b>		xxvii. 1—3 . . . . .	601, 602
vi. 5 . . . . .	222	xxvii. 8 . . . . .	601
vii. 58 . . . . .	532	xxvii. 31—33 . . . . .	603
viii. 9 . . . . .	515	xxvii. 42 . . . . .	604
ix. 2 . . . . .	533	xxviii. 1 . . . . .	604
ix. 15 . . . . .	528	xxviii. 11 . . . . .	605
ix. 27 . . . . .	537	<b>Romans</b>	
ix. 28 . . . . .	517	viii. 35 . . . . .	690
xii. 2 . . . . .	307	<b>I Corinthians</b>	
xii. 25 . . . . .	538	ii. 9 . . . . .	40, 440
xiii. 1 . . . . .	538	iii. 19 . . . . .	312
xiii. 6—11 . . . . .	531	ix. 19—22 . . . . .	690
xiii. 8 . . . . .	539	xv. 32 . . . . .	591
xiv. 8 . . . . .	541, 613	<b>Colossians</b>	
xv. 1—5 . . . . .	543	i. 11 . . . . .	530
xv. 20, 29 . . . . .	543	<b>■ Timothy</b>	
xvi. 12 . . . . .	545	iii. 8, 9 . . . . .	509
xvii. 1 . . . . .	548	<b>I St. Peter</b>	
xvii. 10 . . . . .	548	ii. 4—7 . . . . .	55
xvii. 15 . . . . .	575	<b>I St. John</b>	
		i. 1 . . . . .	39





23536

BS  
2440  
G3  
v.2

**Gadla ḥawāryāt.**

... The contendings of the apostles; being the histories of the lives and martyrdoms and deaths of the twelve apostles and evangelists. The Ethiopic texts now first ed. from manuscripts in the British museum, with an English translation, by E. A. Wallis Budge ... London, New York, H. Frowde, 1899-1901.

2 v. pl. (facsim.) 29<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> cm.

Ethiopic title at head of t.-p.; transliterated: Gadla Ḥawāryāt.

Titles in red and black.

CONTENTS.—v. 1. Ethiopic texts.—v. 2. English translation.

1. Apostles—Legends.

I. Budge, Sir

Ernest Alfred Thompson Wallis, 1857-1934, ed. II. Title.

CCSC/ef

A 22—604

General theol. sem. Libr  
for Library of Congress

ra11c1

